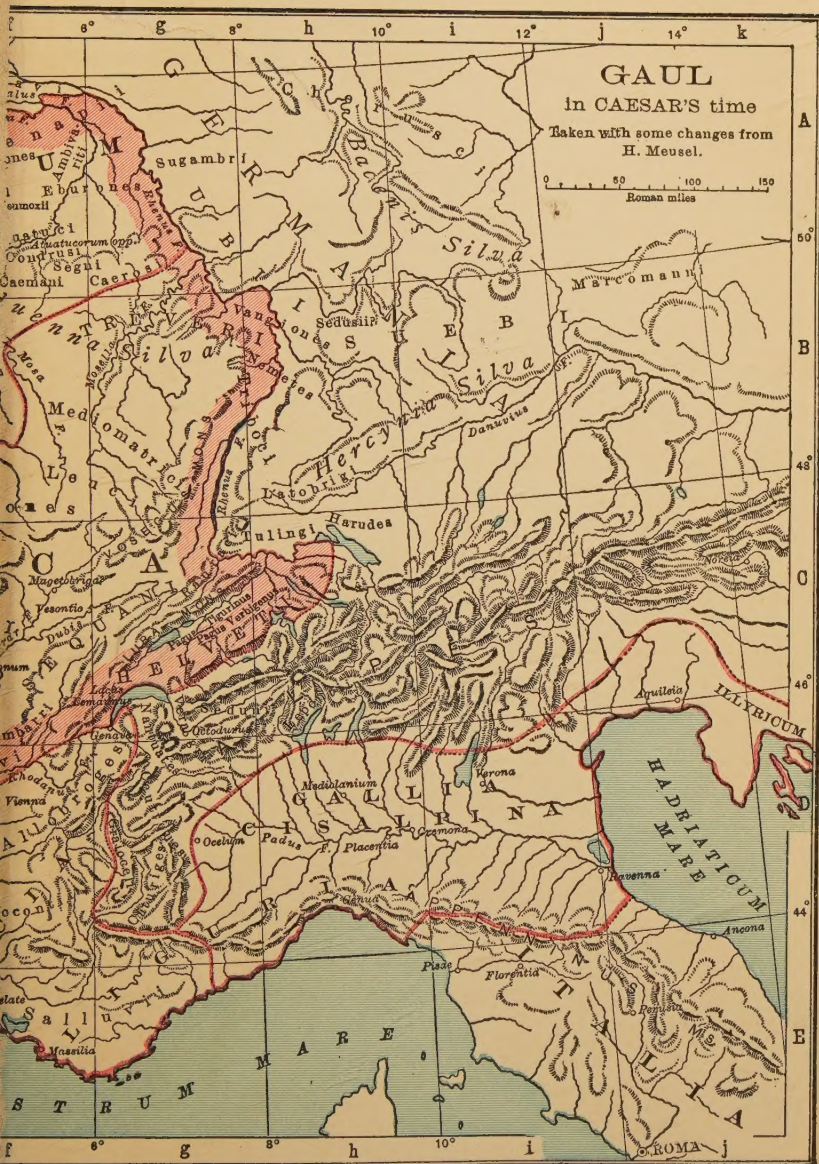
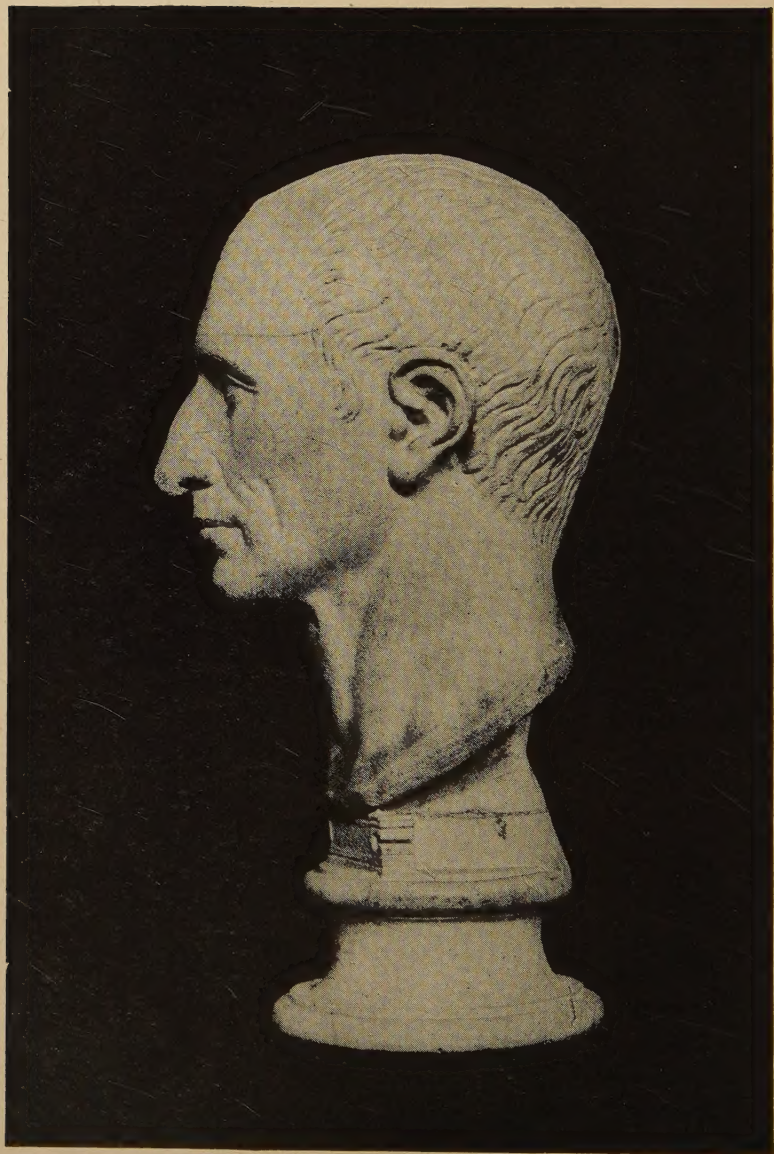


40-46

in CAESAR'S time

A scale bar labeled "Roman miles" with markings at 0, 50, 100, and 150.





GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
From a bust in the British Museum

Caesar's Gallic War

BOOKS I—IV

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES,
VOCABULARY, AND
GRAMMATICAL
APPENDIX

BY
ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER
The University of Kansas

Revised Edition

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
CHICAGO ATLANTA NEW YORK

1926

COPYRIGHT, 1926,
BY
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
267.1

Grateful acknowledgment is made to the many sources from which the illustrations in this book have been secured. Whether or not the picture is copyrighted, credit is given in the list of illustrations wherever the source is direct.

PREFACE

The present book is a revision of the edition of 1907. The purposes and the plan of this book are the same as of that; but every part has been given a searching examination, and many changes have been made with a view to carrying out better the original purposes. The chief aims of the editor in preparing both editions have been:

1. *To emphasize the essentials of the Latin language.*

The Grammatical Appendix contains all the grammar needed for the study of Caesar, and its inclusion in the book makes its use easier than that of a separate volume. Nevertheless, references are given to five standard grammars for those who prefer to use one of them or wish to compare their statements. Throughout the notes the grammatical references emphasize the important matters; and, in particular, a carefully worked out system of references to the absolutely essential principles is used in the notes on Book I, **1-29** and Book II. This is explained on page 68, paragraph 5.

There is a tendency at present to emphasize the applications of Latin. This is right, provided it does not lead to a slighting of the exact knowledge of Latin. It is to be hoped that no teacher will forget that a pupil cannot possibly apply what he does not know. The "objectives" listed in the Report of the Classical Investigation, so far as they can be attained by the study of Latin at all, can be attained only by exact knowledge of Latin. This is clearly stated in the Report, Chapter V, Section 1.

Moreover, whatever method of teaching is employed, it is impossible to read a genuine Latin sentence without an accurate knowledge both of the inflectional forms and of their uses; that is, of syntax. The Report urges with renewed emphasis the recommendation that has been made by every similar report for many years, that pupils be taught to comprehend

Latin in the Latin order; and that a clear distinction be recognized between such comprehension and the translation into English, which should be attempted only after comprehension. In attempting to follow this advice, one must remember that this method requires a more exact and instantaneous recognition of forms and of their possible uses than the usual analytic method does. The exact process of reading Latin in the Latin order is not described in the Report. It is most fully stated in Hale's *Art of Reading Latin*, published by Mentzer, Bush and Co. If the inexperienced teacher finds himself unable to teach the method recommended in the Report, he should find comfort in the words of the Report: "We recognize that successful results have been and can be attained by other methods." But let him remember, too, the words which follow immediately: "We also realize that successful results depend more on the *thoroughness* with which Latin is taught than on any other one factor."

One who wishes to teach the reading of Latin in the Latin order will find no other genuine Latin so well adapted to the purpose as that of Caesar. Even his longest sentences tell the details of their story in the order in which they occurred. If the main verb comes last in the sentence, after a succession of *cum*'s and *ubi*'s and ablatives absolute, it is because the action of the main verb came last. One who really knows the forms and the comparatively few constructions used by Caesar can follow the meaning through most of the sentences without difficulty.

2. *To help the pupil follow the story understandingly.*

It is surely a pedagogical mistake to let the pupil carry away from the study of Caesar nothing but a memory of ablatives absolute and indirect discourse. Caesar tells an interesting story and tells it well. Men of every calling, from professors to emperors, have studied it and written about it. The interest in finding out what Caesar did should serve as an incentive to solve his sentences. Moreover, a neglect of Caesar's thought is

wrong in principle. The habit of careful attention to the subject-matter is the one thing best worth cultivating, whether one reads English or a foreign language; and this should not be forgotten in teaching Caesar.

Therefore as much as possible has been done in the notes and maps to assist in an understanding of the narrative, without introducing any discussion of disputed points. Every effort has been made to adopt the most reasonable theory for each campaign, and to make every note, plan, and map consistent with that theory.

The pupil's progress through the story must be slow, and, however well he understands each move in Caesar's game, he will have difficulty in grasping the whole. It is hoped that the campaign maps may lessen this difficulty by putting before the eyes the total results of the campaigns. In each map the route is laid out on a map of all Gaul, because only in this way can the relation of any one campaign to the whole of Caesar's task be kept constantly before the mind. The system of coloring shows the condition of Gaul at the end of each campaign—how much had been reduced by fighting, how much had yielded without fighting, and how much was yet untouched. A comparison of any two maps will show the results of the intervening operations. Since the scale of these maps made it impossible to show geographical details on them, other maps are given when needed.

3. To exclude the non-essentials.

Many things are known or are guessed about ancient military science which in no way help the pupil to understand Caesar. Many facts and theories of grammar are suggested by Caesar's language which the pupil might find useful at some later day, but which help him neither in translating Caesar nor in writing the Latin composition which should accompany the reading. An honest attempt has been made to give what is helpful and to exclude the useless lumber, though it is not hoped that all teachers would draw the line where the editor has drawn it.

4. *To give the pupil every legitimate help in preparing his work.*

The notes and the meanings of all new words are given on the same page with the text for which they are needed. Words are given only once in the page vocabularies, or twice if they occur first in I, 30-54; and the number of times each word occurs in the first four books is indicated, as explained on page 68, paragraph 2. Pupils should be encouraged to master at their first appearance the primary meanings of words which are to occur frequently. The page vocabularies in the present edition do not repeat the full definitions from the general Vocabulary at the end of the book, unless those definitions are short. They give the primary meaning of the word, and only such other meanings as are needed for the passage at hand.

The notes on the early books now give somewhat more translation than in the former edition, thus making easier the transition from the beginner's book.

The annotated edition, so abundantly supplied with helps, is intended solely for preparation before the class hour, not for use in class. A separate text edition is supplied free by the publishers with every copy of the book. Pupils should be required to get these, use them in class, and leave them in the classroom between recitations. The battle plans are included in the new text edition, which removes one reason for bringing the annotated edition to the class.

5. *To facilitate the omission of parts of Books I-IV and the substitution of parts of Books V-VII.*

The wisdom of such substitutions is perhaps debatable. The story of Books I-IV is fairly complete in itself. It tells the successive steps by which Caesar first gained possession of all Gaul and then secured his conquest against interference from Germany and Britain. The second expedition to Britain added nothing to Roman territory; and the remainder of Books V-VII tells, not of new conquests, but of uprisings and their suppression. On the other hand, Book I contains most of Caesar's indirect discourse, a construction for which the pupil

has little need in his further study of Latin; and parts of the last three books are undeniably more interesting than parts of the first four. The editor recommends the omission of at least I, 30-54, with its overload of indirect discourse.

To facilitate any desired omission, the story of each book is told at its beginning, so that there need be no break in following the events. Book I, 30-54 may be omitted without breaking the system followed in the page vocabularies, because every new word occurring in those chapters is repeated in the vocabularies of the following books if it occurs in them. The whole of Book I may be omitted without losing the benefit of the systematic grammar references, because the references given in I, 1-29 are repeated in the notes of Book II.

In the present edition, notes, maps, and illustrations have been added for the latter half of Book V, probably the most interesting story in Caesar, and for the siege of Avaricum, VII, 15-28, the fullest account of taking a town by the agger. These additions give a wider range of selection from the last three books and make it possible to read everything in those books which, in the opinion of the editor, should be thought of as a substitute for parts of the first four. The text of Books V-VII, however, is printed in full. The unannotated portions, like the selections from the *Civil War* which are given in the text edition, are available for sight reading.

THE CHIEF CHANGES IN THE NEW EDITION

In the preceding pages mention has been made of some changes—the annotation of new portions of Books V and VII, the simplification of the page vocabularies, additional help given in the notes of the early books, and the inclusion of the battle plans in the text edition. A few other points should be mentioned.

Many illustrations have been added, to make clearer the methods of warfare of both Romans and Gauls, to give some idea of Gallic civilization, and to show the actual scenes of events when such views help in understanding the story.

A number of new maps and plans have been added, wherever they seemed likely to help in understanding the story. At a few points recent discoveries and discussions have required changes in the maps. A new map of Roman possessions at the time when Caesar entered Gaul should help in understanding the importance to Rome of Caesar's conquest.

The chief operations of the World War in the country which was Gaul are described in new sections of the Introduction and illustrated by a new map. The notes also call attention to geographical correspondences between Caesar's war and the World War.

Some changes have been made in the text, usually for clearness and simplicity. Meusel's last published text and Mr. Holmes's edition of the Gallic War have been the chief authorities for these changes. Where they agree in bracketing a word or a sentence, the editor has felt free to omit it altogether if he chose. And, in general, when the true reading is doubtful, he has chosen the easier one.

The Index has been divided into a Grammatical Index and an Index of Persons, Places, and Things. The latter is much fuller than the corresponding portions of the Index in the earlier edition. It is hoped that these Indexes will prove helpful to both teachers and students.

I express my sincere and hearty thanks to the teachers who have given me suggestions for improvement; to my own students, who have helped me come to a decision on many doubtful points in the study of Caesar; to the publishers, who have given me every assistance; and especially to their editorial office, which has labored unremittingly toward a perfection which we could not hope to attain.

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER

The University of Kansas
July 16, 1926

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE	1
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS	9
LIST OF MAPS AND COLORED PLATES.	15
INTRODUCTION	17
I. The Importance of the Gallic Campaigns.	17
II. Life of Caesar	20
III. Chronological Table	28
IV. Caesar as General	29
V. Caesar as Author	30
VI. The Gauls	32
VII. Caesar's Army	35
VIII. Caesar's War and the World War	54
IX. Caesar's Geography	60
A BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY	62
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS	64
BOOK I, 1-29	65
BOOK I, 30-54	143
BOOK II	195
BOOK III	257
BOOK IV.	299
THE DIRECT FORM OF THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II	345
GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX	355
VOCABULARY (<i>following 456</i>)	1
GRAMMATICAL INDEX	86
INDEX OF PERSONS, PLACES, AND THINGS.	93

TWO SOURCES OF ILLUSTRATIONS

TRAJAN'S COLUMN

About one hundred and fifty years after Caesar conquered Gaul, the Emperor Trajan similarly conquered the Dacians, who lived in modern Rumania (see map, p. 19). To commemorate his victory he set up this column, which is still standing in Rome. The statue of St. Peter is now on its top, instead of that of Trajan, which stood there originally. Around the column winds a spiral series of carvings, picturing the events of the war. The ribbon of carvings is about three and a half feet wide and 660 feet long, and contains some twenty-five hundred human figures.

These carvings are the most complete and accurate representations we have of Roman arms and methods. Although they are later than Caesar's time, they illustrate his story very well; for Roman arms had changed but little, and Trajan conducted the same kind of warfare. Therefore this book shows several reproductions of scenes from the column. Moreover, many of the cuts which show details of arms, though credited to other sources, were originally drawn from figures on the column.

In one respect the carvings are not true to nature. The figures of men had to be large enough to be seen from the ground. Therefore such things as walls, camps, and bridges had to be reduced in size; and a few figures have to be used to represent a large number, as when Trajan addresses his soldiers, and only seven figures are shown.

The cuts credited to Cichorius in the following list are taken from his *Reliefs der Traianssäule*, Berlin, 1896. His excellent plates are from photographs of casts which are exhibited in the Lateran Museum at Rome.

COINS

Most of the cuts of coins are made from drawings of the coins, not from photographs. This brings out the designs better, since the coins themselves often show the designs only faintly. The crudeness of the designs on Gallic coins is not due to poor drawing, but to the poor workmanship on the coins. Gallic coins were often copies of Greek coins, or copies of copies. The copying of copies went on until the last artists probably did not themselves know what the original design was meant to be; so that, for example, what started as the figure of a horse became only a group of meaningless curves.

The spelling of names on Gallic coins does not always agree with that of Caesar. This is partly because the Gauls themselves did not always agree in their spelling, partly because Caesar chose to make the foreign names look more like Latin, and partly because he did not always catch the exact sounds as he heard them spoken.

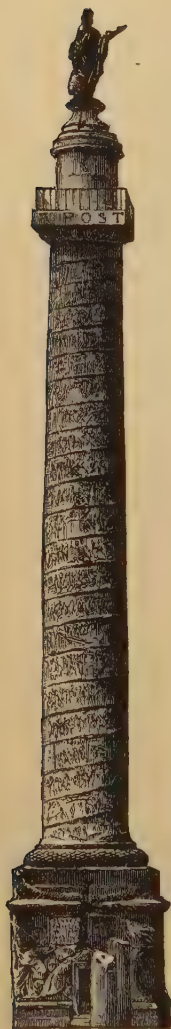


FIG. 1
TRAJAN'S COLUMN

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG.	PAGE
Profile view of the bust of Caesar in the British Museum (photograph)	frontispiece
1. Trajan's Column (drawing from a photograph)	8
2. Front view of the bust of Caesar in the British Museum (photograph, The University Prints)	17
3. A coin of Caesar (Barclay V. Head, <i>A Guide to the Principal Gold and Silver Coins of the Ancients</i> , 66: 18)	20
4. A civic crown (E. C. F. Babelon, <i>Description historique des monnaies de la republique romaine</i> , 2, 139: 30)	22
5. A coin of Caesar (Babelon, 14: 16)	22
6. A coin of Caesar (Head, 66: 17)	24
7. Portraits of Pompey (Babelon, 345-6, 10, 11, 12, 14)	25
8. A coin of Caesar (Babelon, 29: 52)	26
9. A coin of Caesar (Babelon, 19: 30)	27
10. Two coins of Caesar Octavianus (Babelon, 47: 98 and 48: 101)	27
11. Statue of Caesar in the <i>Palazzo dei Conservatori</i> , Rome (photograph, Alinari)	29
12. Bust of Caesar in the Museum of Naples (photograph)	31
13. Gallic warriors (H. Rheinhard, <i>C. Iulii Caesaris Commentarii de Bello Gallico</i> , Tafel XXV, 4, 5, 6)	33
14. A trophy of Gallic arms (Raimund Oehler, <i>Bilder-Atlas zu Cäsars Büchern de Bello Gallico</i> , XXII, 73)	34
15. A Roman soldier's shoe (Ludwig Lindenschmidt, <i>Tracht und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres während der Kaiserzeit</i> , XII, 13)	36
16. <i>Galea</i> (Stephen Cybulski, <i>Tabulae quibus antiquitates Graecae et Romanae illustrantur</i> , V, 5)	36
17. <i>Lōrica</i> (Cybulski, V, 8)	37
18. <i>Pila</i> (drawing)	37
19. Roman sword and scabbard (drawing, after Rheinhard, XX, 6a and 6b)	38
20. Legionary soldier on the march (Cybulski, VI)	38
21. A centurion (Lindenschmidt, I, 6)	40
22. Decorations for gallantry (Lindenschmidt, I, 2, 5)	40
23. The eagle of the legion (Rheinhard, XX-XXI, 3a)	41
24. <i>Signifer</i> (Lindenschmidt, III, 2)	41
25. <i>Tuba</i> (Cybulski, V, 23)	42
26. <i>Cornū</i> (Cybulski, V, 22)	42

FIG.	PAGE
27. Light-armed soldier (drawing, after Rheinhard, XVI, 2)	43
28. Cavalry standard bearer (Oehler, II, 10)	43
29. Plan of a Roman camp (drawing, after Rüstow)	44
30. <i>Vallum</i> and <i>fossa</i> (drawing)	45
31. Camp on the Axona (drawing, after Napoleon)	46
Storming an ancient town (Rheinhard, XIV)	<i>facing</i> 47
32. <i>Acies triplex</i> (drawing)	48
33. Gallic wall (Oehler, XXVII, a, c)	49
34. Side view of agger in process of construction (drawing)	50
35. Soldiers building an agger (Oehler, XIX, 61)	50
36. <i>Plutei</i> (drawing)	51
37. <i>Musculus</i> (drawing)	51
38. Battering-ram (Rheinhard, XXII-XXIII, 19)	51
39. <i>Vinea</i> (drawing)	52
40. <i>Ballista</i> (Rheinhard, XXII-XXIII, 3)	52
41. Catapult (drawing, after Oehler)	53
42. Two coins of Mark Antony (Head, 66: 23 and 25)	54
43. A coin of Caesar (Head 69: 22)	70
44. A Gallic spear head (Joseph Déchelette, <i>Manuel d'archéologie préhistorique celtique et gallo-romaine</i> , II, 3, 1145: 478, 8) . . .	71
45. A coin of the Helvetii (Adrien Blanchet, <i>Traité des monnaies gauloises</i> , 470: 531)	73
46. A coin of the Haedui (Blanchet, 406: 425)	74
47. A Gallic coin (Head, 67: 5)	77
48. View from Lake Geneva to Mount Jura (photograph)	80
49. Gallic mill (Déchelette, 1387: 617, 1, 3)	85
50. Pas de l'Écluse—Mill Race Gorge (photograph, belonging to the Kansas State Normal College, Emporia, Kansas, taken by F. L. Black)	88
51. The Rhone (photograph, Black)	90
52. A Gallic coin (Head, 57: 1)	93
53. Section of Caesar's wall (drawing, after Napoleon)	95
54. The Rhone just below Geneva (photograph)	96
55. A coin of the Segusiavi (Blanchet, 425: 468)	101
56. The sluggish Arar (Saone) (photograph, Black)	104
57. Soldiers crossing a pontoon bridge (Cichorius, Tafel VII) . . .	107
58. A coin of the Bellovaci (Blanchet, 369: 348)	108
59. A coin of the Haedui (Blanchet, 162: 15)	111
60. A Roman auxiliary cavalryman (Lindenschmidt, VIII, 1) . . .	112
61. A coin of the Aulerci Ebuovices (Blanchet, 323: 233)	113
62. Gallic helmets (Déchelette, 1156: 484)	114
63. Gallic bits (Déchelette, 1199: 511, 1, 2)	116
64. A coin of the Haedui (Blanchet, 408: 430)	119
65. A coin of the Bituriges (Head, 67: 3)	120
66. Gallic spear head (Déchelette, 1145: 478, 1)	125

FIG.	PAGE
67. Gallic swords in their scabbards (Déchelette, 1110: 457, 1, 2)	126
68. Gallic method of suspending sword from belt (Déchelette, 1115: 461)	126
69. A Gallic coin (Head, 67: 4)	127
70. Site of the Helvetian camp (photograph, Black)	129
71. View across the battlefield (photograph, Black)	133
72. A Gallic spear point (Déchelette, 1144: 478, 6)	134
73. One-half mold for spear point (J. Evans, <i>Ancient Bronze Imple-</i> <i>ments</i> , 433)	134
74. Gallic shield (Déchelette, 1169: 493)	136
75. A coin of the Lingones (Blanchet, 389: 397)	138
76. Helvetian yoke (Déchelette, 1194: 509)	140
77. Ancient cart and wagon (drawing, after Oehler, VII, 29)	141
78. The general addresses his troops and confers with envoys (Cichorius, Tafel XXI)	147
79. A coin of the Arverni (Blanchet, 419: 455)	149
80. A coin of the Aulerci (Blanchet, 303: 195)	150
81. A coin of the Coriosolites (Blanchet, 315: 217)	153
82. A coin of the Sequani (Blanchet, 402: 419)	154
83. A Gallic coin (Blanchet, 317: 222)	157
84. Reconstruction of a German sword and scabbard (Déchelette, 1133)	159
85. A coin of the Treveri (Blanchet, 352: 307)	161
86. The hill at Vesontio (photograph, Black)	165
87. The country about Vesontio (Ch. Brossard, <i>Géographie pittoresque</i> <i>et monumentale de la France</i> , III, 300)	167
88. A coin of the Leuci (Blanchet, 390: 399)	170
89. The boundary of Alsace (Brossard, III, 255)	172
90. A coin of the Mediomatrici (Blanchet, 396: 410)	176
91. A coin of the Redones (Blanchet, 312: 209)	179
92. Ancient Gallic bit (Déchelette, 1201: 513)	181
93. A Gallic coin (Blanchet, 314: 214)	182
94. An ancient mold for spear heads (Evans, 437)	185
95. The general directs work on fortifications (Cichorius, Tafel LXXI)	186
96. The site of Caesar's small camp (photograph, Black)	188
97. The site of Caesar's large camp (photograph, Black)	190
98. A bit of plate mail (Lindenschmidt, XIII, 11)	192
99. A Roman shield (Cybulski, V, 20)	200
100. A coin of the Remi (Blanchet, 379: 379)	202
101. A British coin (J. Evans, <i>Coins of the Ancient Britons</i> , II, 14)	205
102. Roman soldiers at work (Cichorius, Tafel XV)	207
103. A slinger (drawing, after Rheinhard, XVI, 1)	213
104. A sling (Rheinhard, XX, 11)	216
105. A leaden slug (Oehler, VI)	218

FIG.	PAGE
106. The beginning of a battle (Cichorius, Tafel XXIV)	220
107. Gallic wall (Oehler, XXIV, 80)	222
108. A coin of the Suessiones (Blanchet, 377: 376)	224
109. A coin of the Ambiani (Blanchet, 371: 355)	226
110. A coin of the Nervii (Blanchet, 351: 306)	227
111. Refugees (Cichorius, Tafel LXXVI)	229
112. <i>Vexillum</i> (Cybulski, V, 18)	234
113. Soldiers at work (Rheinhard, XIX, 1)	236
114. A coin of the Atrebates (Blanchet, 345: 298)	238
115. A coin of the Viromandui (Blanchet, 375: 372)	239
116. A Roman and a Gallic cavalryman (photographs of models in the Museum of Saint-Germain)	240
117. A centurion (Lindenschmidt, I, 6)	242
118. A hand-to-hand fight (Cichorius, Tafel LXXXVI)	245
119. A tower (Cybulski, IX)	249
120. The enemy makes submission (Cichorius, Tafel LIV)	251
121. A coin of the Atuatucae (Blanchet, 357: 317)	252
122. A Gallic scabbard and sword (Déchelette, 961: 401, 1, 2)	254
123. Bust of Caesar in Louvre (photograph, The University Prints)	256
124. Probable site of Galba's camp (photograph)	264
125. A coin of the Aulerci Diablintes (Blanchet, 305: 199)	267
126. A bit of the coast of Brittany (photograph, Underwood and Underwood)	268
127. A coin of the Pictones (Blanchet, 297: 178)	270
128. A coin of the Namnetes (Blanchet, 301: 189)	273
129. A coin of Brutus (Babelon, 384: 11)	275
130. The town of Batz (Brossard, II, 217)	277
131. <i>Falx</i> (Rheinhard, XXII-XXIII, 21)	280
132. A Roman galley (Rheinhard, XV)	281
133. Prow of Roman galley (Cybulski, IV)	283
134. A coin of the Venelli (Blanchet, 309: 203)	284
135. A coin of the Lexovii (Blanchet, 320: 228)	286
136. A coin of Crassus (Babelon, 134: 18)	288
137. A coin of the Sotiates (Blanchet, 287: 160)	290
138. The varied occupations of soldiers (Cichorius, Tafel XIII)	293
139. A coin of the Morini (Blanchet, 346: 300)	296
140. Road building and devastation (Cichorius, Tafel XL)	298
141. A Gallic sword (photograph)	303
142. A British coin (Evans, <i>Coins</i> , III, 9)	305
143. A British coin (Evans, <i>Coins</i> , III, 11)	307
144. A British coin (Evans, <i>Coins</i> , III, 10)	312
145. The Romans strengthen their fortifications and receive a sub- missive delegation (Cichorius, Tafel XCVI)	315
146. <i>Cassis</i> (Cybulski, V, 1)	319
147. Caesar's bridge (drawing)	320

FIG.	PAGE
148. Pile driver (drawing)	321
149. A British coin (Evans, <i>Coins</i> , III, 12)	322
150. The Rhine at Bonn (photograph)	325
151. Entrance of harbor at Boulogne (Brossard, I, 339)	329
152. Cliffs near Dover (retouched photograph, Keystone View Company)	331
153. The shore south of Deal (photograph, H. Franklin and Son, Deal, England)	332
154. The eagle (Cybulski, V, 17)	334
155. Cliffs east of Dover (photograph, E. V. Bowles, Dover, England)	337
156. A British coin (Evans, <i>Coins</i> , I, 11)	339
157. British war chariot (Rheinhard, XXII-XXIII, 7)	340
158. Looking north from the entrance of Boulogne Harbor (Brossard, I, 339)	343

MAPS AND BATTLE PLANS

	PAGE
Gaul (<i>colored</i>)	<i>inside front cover</i>
Roman possessions when Caesar went to Gaul	19
World War battle lines	57
An ancient idea of geography	61
Campaign Map for Book I, 1-29 (<i>colored</i>)	<i>facing</i> 67
The Rhone between Geneva and Mt. Jura	87
Battle with the Helvetii—first stage	131
Battle with the Helvetii—second stage	135
Campaign Map for Book I, 30-54 (<i>colored</i>)	<i>facing</i> 145
Vesontio (Besançon)	163
Battle with Ariovistus	187
Campaign Map for Book II (<i>colored</i>)	<i>facing</i> 197
Battle on the Axona (Aisne)	214
Battle on the Sabis (Sambre)	231
The town of the Atuatuca	247
Campaign Map for Book III (<i>colored</i>)	<i>facing</i> 259
Galba's camp.	261
Operations against the Veneti	272
A town of the Veneti	276
Campaign Map for Book IV (<i>colored</i>)	<i>facing</i> 301
Map for IV, 7-19	309
Caesar's First Invasion of Britain	326

COLORED PLATES

Roman officers and soldiers (Lehmann's <i>Kulturgeschichtliche Bilder</i> , 12)	<i>facing</i> 111
The meeting of Caesar and Ariovistus (Gurlitt, <i>History Pictures</i> , 3)	<i>facing</i> 175
A Roman camp (Gurlitt, 1)	<i>facing</i> 287
Caesar's Landing in Britain (Gurlitt, 5)	<i>facing</i> 334

INTRODUCTION

I. THE IMPORTANCE OF THE GALLIC CAMPAIGNS

1. The *Commentaries on the Gallic War* are Caesar's own story of how he conquered the peoples living in what is now France and some of the lands bordering on France. He has told his story simply and directly. It was his genius that made the conquest possible, and the story could not be true without making this evident; but he has spoken of himself as if the writer and the general were different men, and there is no boasting. He has not explained to us the great importance of the war to the Roman State; there is no suggestion of its importance to his personal career; much less has he hinted at his own importance in the history of Rome and the world. These things must be learned from a study of history, not from Caesar's story.

2. **Effect on Rome.** Rome was the governing nation of ancient times. In Caesar's time she had conquered the other nations which touched the Mediterranean, and was governing most of them as provinces; that is, she sent Roman governors to them and collected taxes from them. In this way she governed a comparatively narrow strip of land in southern Gaul;



FIG. 2

CAESAR

This bust is in the British Museum. Compare the frontispiece, which is a profile view of the same bust.

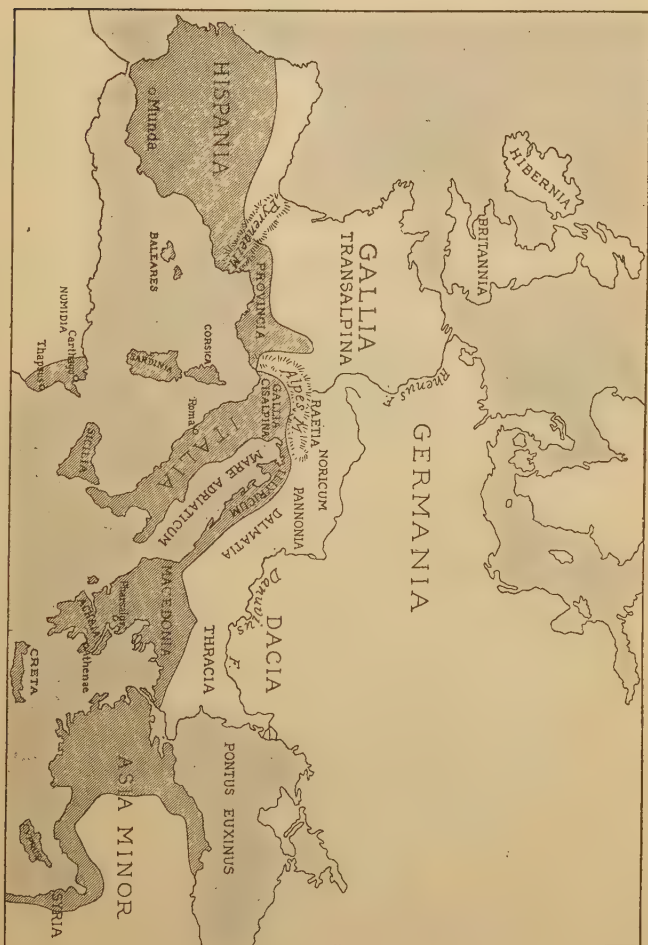
and as this was the particular province which Caesar was sent to govern, he calls it simply "the Province," **Prōvincia** (see map). This province was only partially protected by mountains and rivers from the semicivilized and warlike Gauls on the north; and for this reason it could never be sure of peace and safety until the rest of Gaul was conquered. Moreover, the land on the north was productive and well worth having. Therefore Caesar's conquest of Gaul was justified, from a Roman point of view, both by the value of the land and by the necessity of protecting the Province.

3. **Effect on Gaul.** But there was a better reason for that conquest. Though the Gauls were brave, they were no match for the less civilized Germans, who lived across the Rhine. Just at the time when Caesar took command of his province the Germans had begun crossing the Rhine in great numbers and were driving the Gauls out of their homes. If this movement had not been checked, the homeless Gauls would have been driven to attack Roman territory; and if the Gauls had been exterminated between the Germans and the Romans, then the Romans would have found the Germans still more dangerous neighbors than the Gauls. For the Gauls themselves, too, it was far better to be conquered by the civilized Romans than by the uncivilized Germans. The one means of safety for both Gauls and Romans was that the Romans should govern all the country west of the Rhine and should hold the Germans at bay on the other side of that great river. This was the result of Caesar's conquest of Gaul; and this result is the great justification of his bloody warfare there.

4. **Effect on Caesar.** In their effect on Caesar's own career the Gallic campaigns were all-important, and his career changed the course of history. In Gaul he gained military experience and the devotion of his army. By the aid of that army he overthrew a constitution under which the Roman State was going to ruin, and laid the foundations of an empire which lived for centuries. No doubt he did this from selfish and

ROMAN POSSESSIONS WHEN CAESAR WENT TO GAUL

Roman possessions are shown approximately by the dark shading; but some boundaries were not clearly defined, and Rome virtually controlled some other countries. The pressing need of Rome was to extend her boundaries to the Rhine and the Danube. Caesar extended them to the Rhine; his immediate successors, to the Danube.



ambitious motives; but his ambition was so great that it could never have been satisfied until he had brought the empire he ruled to the highest possible degree of excellence, and his genius was so great that he saw the needful measures and the means to carry them out. The daggers of his assassins gave him too short a time to complete his work; but he did enough to prove himself the greatest man in Roman history.

II. LIFE OF CAESAR

5. Early Years, and Choice of Party. Gaius Julius Caesar was born in the year 100 B.C.,¹ on the twelfth day of the month



FIG. 3

A COIN OF CAESAR

Left: Head of the goddess Venus, who was mother of Aeneas, hero of Vergil's great epic, the *Aeneid*.

Right: Aeneas carrying his aged father, Anchises, and a divine statue from burning Troy.

Caesar claimed descent from this family.

which was then called Quintilis, but which we now, in his honor, call July. Tradition traced the descent of the Julian family back beyond the foundation of Rome, and even to the goddess Venus as its remote ancestor. Caesar, therefore, belonged to the Roman nobility, and in the continuous strife between the Senatorial, or Aristocratic, and the Democratic

parties, might have been expected to side with the aristocrats. For he must have expected to enter the Senate, as he actually did; and the Senatorial party wished the Senate to be supreme, while the Democratic party insisted that all important questions be put to the vote of the people. But none of his own family had been very conspicuous in the state, and his aunt had married Marius, the greatest leader of the Democratic party, the great general who had saved Rome by his victories over the Cimbri and Teutoni. It was natural that his am-

1. Or perhaps in 102. If he was born in 100, he held all the important offices two years earlier than the law allowed.

bition should be fired by his uncle's career, and that his sympathies should incline toward the Democratic party. In his fourteenth year Marius made him priest of Jupiter, an office of some honor and few duties; and in 84, after the death of Marius, he deliberately identified himself with the Democratic party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of the new leader of that party, Cinna.

6. Overthrow of Caesar's Party. But the power of the Democratic party was almost at an end. In 83 Sulla, the leader of the Aristocratic party, returned to Italy with his victorious army, after fighting for several years against Mithridates, in the East. A bloody contest drove the Democrats from power; and in 82 the victor, determined to make a revival of that party impossible, slaughtered its eminent men and so changed the constitution of the state that the Senate was in full control. The young Caesar, as nephew of Marius and son-in-law of Cinna, was too conspicuous to be overlooked. Sulla ordered him to divorce Cornelia. Caesar refused, and had to flee for his life until influential friends persuaded Sulla to pardon him. Sulla's grudging consent is said to have been coupled with the warning that Caesar would prove as dangerous as many Mariuses.

7. Weakness of Opposite Party. But the form of government set up by Sulla did not stand long, and the years which followed his death made more and more clear the need of some strong man who should give order and stability to the state. During those same years Caesar was testing and developing the powers which were to make him the man to do this work.

8. Revival of Caesar's Party. When Sulla died, in 78, the Senate was in complete control: the Democratic party had neither a leader nor any chance to use its strength. Gradually the Senate lost this control, until, in 70, under the consuls Pompey and Crassus, the changes made by Sulla were completely done away with and the Democratic party again had an opportunity, if it could but find a leader. For a time Pom-

pey seemed likely to be this leader. In 66 the people, contrary to the wishes of the Senatorial party, elected him general to serve against Mithridates. This gave him supreme control in Asia Minor, but kept him out of Rome for the next four years.



FIG. 4

A CIVIC CROWN

Ob Civis Servatos = (*Given*)
for the Saving of Citizens.

During all this time Caesar was developing his powers of leadership. He got a taste of military service in Asia Minor, and at twenty he won the civic crown of oak leaves for saving the life of a fellow citizen in battle; but as yet he seems to have had no thought of gaining distinction as general. A born politician, he loved the game of politics for its own sake as well as for its rewards. An excellent orator, both by nature and by training, he used his oratorical powers in furthering the plans of his party. He made friends easily, and his influence over them was strong. Therefore, before he was old enough to take office he was a great favorite with the people and a much-sought-for ally in political scheming; and he was elected without difficulty to the offices of Quaestor (for 68), Aedile (for 65), and Praetor (for 62). The greatest test of his popularity came in 63, when the office of Pontifex Maximus fell vacant and Caesar was elected to this most honorable position over the strongest candidate the Senatorial party could put forward.

10. Caesar's First Military Command. But in spite of ability and popularity, in the year 63 Caesar was thought of as only

9. Development of Caesar's Powers.

During all this time Caesar was developing his powers of leadership. He got a taste of military service in Asia Minor, and at twenty he won the civic crown of oak leaves for saving the life of a fellow citizen in battle; but as yet he seems to have had no thought of



FIG. 5

A COIN OF CAESAR

Left: Head of the goddess Ceres.
Co(n)s(ul) Tert(io) = Consul for the
Third Time, and Dict(ator) iter
(um) = Dictator for the Second Time.

Right: The sacred symbols of the
Pontifex Maximus, Augur, and
Pont(ifex) Max(imus). (The Ponti-
fex Maximus was the highest officer
of the state religion.)

a shrewd politician. Rome looked upon Pompey as her greatest man, because he was her greatest general; and Caesar knew that if he should come into conflict with Pompey his shrewdness could never prove a match for Pompey's army and generalship. Caesar felt that he too must be a general, but he did not know whether he could be; for he had never had an opportunity to try his powers. The opportunity offered itself in 61, when he was sent to govern a part of Spain. There he fought with great success against some of the native tribes. His victories were not very important in themselves, and they attracted no great attention in Rome; but they showed Caesar what he could do and made him eager for a larger field of operations.

11. Caesar's Consulship. Caesar now wanted the consulship, the highest office in the state; if he got it he intended to carry through some measures which would be opposed by the Senatorial party. He therefore needed strong friends. Pompey had returned in triumph from the war with Mithridates, but the Senate had refused to grant some reasonable requests which he had made of it. Crassus, perhaps the wealthiest Roman, had a strong liking for secret politics, especially for political deals which might throw money-making opportunities his way. With these two men Caesar made a secret agreement that each should further the interests of the others; and thus Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus formed what is known in history as the First Triumvirate, a mere personal agreement, with no public sanction. The influence of Pompey and Crassus helped in securing Caesar's election to the consulship for the year 59, and also assisted him, when consul, in passing measures which were for the advantage of each of the three allies. For himself Caesar took a five-year term of office as governor of Cisalpine Gaul (the northern part of Italy), Illyricum (north and east of the Adriatic Sea), and Transalpine Gaul (then including only the southern part of France). See map, p. 19. To protect these provinces he was given an army of four legions.

12. Caesar's Command in Gaul. In 58, therefore, Caesar entered upon his command. Partly because it was best for the Province and the State (2 and 3), and partly because he needed the training and the reputation of a general (10), he determined to conquer all the rest of Gaul. How he did this he tells us himself in the *Commentaries*; and a brief summary prefixed to each book in this edition makes it unnecessary to tell the story here. Since he found the five years originally given

him too short for the full accomplishment of his purpose, he secured an additional five years. By the year 50 the last trace of resistance to Roman authority had been crushed, and Caesar's great task was completed. Moreover, he now had a perfectly disciplined veteran army, enthusiastically devoted to its leader.



FIG. 6

A COIN OF CAESAR

Left: Head of Venus.

Right: A trophy of Gallic arms, and two weeping captives, symbolizing the subjugation of Gaul. (See Fig. 14, p. 34.)

13. Outbreak of Civil War. It was high time that Caesar should have his hands free, for a greater task lay before him. For several years Pompey and Crassus had looked out for his interests in Rome. But in 53 Crassus was killed in battle; and at about the same time Pompey began to feel jealous of Caesar's success and fearful of his power. He gradually turned away from Caesar and attached himself to the Senatorial party, which had always hated Caesar. On the first day of the year 49 the Senate voted that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen, though the time for which the command had been given him had not yet expired. Caesar was then in Cisalpine Gaul, and his reply was an immediate march, with his army, toward Rome.

14. Weakness of the Constitutional Government. But during Caesar's absence from Rome the complete failure of the constitutional form of government had shown that the so-called

republic could not exist much longer. Trials and elections were decided by bribery and bloodshed. The governing party had been so weak that for one entire year a succession of riots had prevented the holding of elections. Now when it was attacked by Caesar it again showed its weakness. Although it had taken steps which were sure to bring on civil war it had done nothing to prepare for that war, except to appoint Pompey its commander in chief. In about two months Caesar had marched victoriously from one end of Italy to the other, and Pompey set sail from southern Italy with his army and most of the Senate, leaving Rome and Italy in Caesar's hands.



FIG. 7

PORTRAITS OF POMPEY

One side of four different coins is shown here.

15. Civil War Makes Caesar Master of Rome. But the hardest fighting of his life lay before Caesar. Pompey had crossed the Adriatic only to gain time for preparation. Besides, while Pompey's strong army lay on the east of Italy, there was another large army of Caesar's enemies in Spain, on the west. But Caesar's magnificent army and wonderful generalship carried him through all difficulties. In 49 he marched to Spain and defeated his enemies there. In 48 he followed Pompey across the Adriatic and utterly routed his army in the great battle of Pharsalus. Pompey himself fled to Egypt, and was assassinated by order of the counselors of the Egyptian king. Caesar followed him to Egypt with an insufficient force and was blockaded for several months in the city of Alexandria by the Egyptian army. Meanwhile the remnants of Pompey's army made their way to the northern coast of Africa, and a new army was there organized to oppose Caesar. In 46 Caesar defeated

this army, too, at Thapsus, so decisively that he is said to have lost but fifty men, while fifty thousand of the enemy fell. Then the sons of Pompey rallied the last opponents of Caesar, in Spain, for a final struggle, and Caesar's victory at Munda in 45 made him the undisputed master of the Roman world.



FIG. 8

A COIN OF CAESAR

Left: The Temple of Clemency. *Clementiae Caesaris = To the Clemency of Caesar.*

(Caesar was the first victor in Roman civil war who shed no needless blood.)

Right: *P. Sepullius Macer*, the commissioner of coinage who had the coins made.

16. Caesar as Statesman. Caesar was no mere soldier, and it was from no choice of his own that he spent all these years in fighting. He became a general because that was the only way to achieve his purpose of becoming sole ruler of Rome. But that purpose was not prompted wholly by personal ambition. He had begun as a politician and had matured into a great statesman. There had been many abuses in the State, and

the civil war had brought in confusion as well. With characteristic energy and clear-sightedness he set himself to bring order out of chaos, to organize the whole empire, and to improve its details. To carry out this work he needed the best men in the state, regardless of party; hence he pardoned those who had fought against him and gave some of them positions of high honor and great responsibility. He reformed the calendar. He took measures to remedy the financial disorders of the country. He planned a codification of the laws. He intended to carry out some great engineering feats, among others the cutting of a canal through the Isthmus of Corinth. In order to protect the frontiers of the empire he planned military expeditions against the Parthians and the nations along the Danube.

17. Assassination of Caesar. Such enormous plans needed time for their execution, and time was denied to Caesar. A form of government which had stood for centuries could not be over-

thrown without grieving some true lovers of their country. One man could not make himself the master of all others, who had previously been his equals, without arousing jealousy. One man could not select the men to fill all offices without disappointing many. Men of all these classes, patriots, would-be rivals, and disappointed office seekers, joined in a conspiracy, and on the fifteenth of March, 44 B.C., Caesar fell beneath their daggers while presiding over a meeting of the Senate. The history of the following years shows the folly of this murder. For themselves the assassins reaped only death, since in a very few years every one whose fate is known had died by violence. For the State the deed was equally disastrous, since the assassination of Caesar merely caused a bloody civil war to intervene between his rule and that of Augustus.



FIG. 9

A COIN OF CAESAR

This was made in 44 B.C., the year of Caesar's assassination.

Left: Head of Calpurnia, Caesar's wife. *Caes(ar) Dic(tator) Quar(to)* = *Caesar Dictator for the Fourth Time*.

Right: A laurel wreath. *Co(n)s(ul) Quinq(ues)* = *Consul for the Fifth Time*.



FIG. 10

TWO COINS OF CAESAR OCTAVIANUS

Octavianus, afterwards called Augustus, was the nephew, adopted son, and successor of Julius Caesar. He punished the assassins, and made the Senate deify Caesar. *Divos Julius* = *the Deified Julius*; accompanying these words is a laurel wreath on one coin, the head of Julius on the other. *Divi F(ilius)* = *Son of the Deified*; accompanying these words on each coin is the head of Octavianus. He is said to have worn the beard shown on one coin in token of mourning for Julius.

III. CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

	B.C.	Caesar's Age.	
18	100		Birth of Caesar, July 12.
	86	14	Marius appoints Caesar Priest of Jupiter. Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator.
	84	16	Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator.
	82	18	Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East.
	80	20	Caesar wins the civic crown at Mytilene.
	78	22	Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome.
	74	26	Caesar sails to Rhodes to study oratory.
	73	27	Caesar is chosen Pontifex. He returns to Rome and is elected Military Tribune.
	70	30	Consulship of Pompey and Crassus. The Sullan constitution is overthrown.
	68	32	Caesar is Quaestor.
	65	35	Caesar is Curule Aedile.
	63	37	Caesar is elected Praetor and Pontifex Maximus. Cicero is Consul. Conspiracy of Catiline exposed.
	62	38	Caesar is Praetor.
	61	39	Caesar is Proprætor in Farther Spain.
	60	40	"First Triumvirate" is formed. Caesar is elected Consul.
	59	41	Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia.
	58	42	Caesar is Proconsul in Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled.
	57	43	Caesar conquers the Belgæ. Recall of Cicero.
	56	44	Caesar's campaign in Brittany.
	55	45	Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompey and Crassus are Consuls for the second time.
	54	46	Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia.
	53	47	Caesar deals with northeastern Gaul. Crassus is slain in Parthia.
	52	48	Caesar crushes a general revolt of the Gauls.
	51-50	49-50	Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.
	50	50	The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate.
	49	51	Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator.
	48	52	Caesar defeats Pompey at Pharsalus. Pompey is killed in Egypt. The "Alexandrian War."
	47	53	Caesar, again Dictator, reorganizes the government.
	46	54	The "African War." The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus.
	45	55	The "Spanish War." Battle of Munda.
	44	56	Caesar Dictator for life. Assassinated March 15

IV. CAESAR AS GENERAL

19. The *Commentaries* present Caesar to our view as a military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.

20. **Characteristics as General.**

The *Commentaries* reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. When it suited his purpose he was deliberate and cautious, watching for the best opportunity to strike a crushing blow. Yet in an emergency he would coolly carry out the most daring plans, so that he sometimes appears even reckless; but this apparent recklessness was the result of swift and unerring decision, based



FIG. 11

CAESAR

Statue in the Palazzo dei Conservatori, Rome.

on a keen insight into the character and probable action of his opponents. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his forces and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally clement.

21. Power over His Men. Caesar won the entire devotion of his army, and this was one of the secrets of his success. He was careful of the comfort and lives of his men. He saw to it that they had an abundance of supplies. He cautioned them against unnecessary risk in battle, and sometimes refused to allow them to fight in dangerous places even when they wished to do so. He ruled by tact rather than by fear. He generously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. But such statements only partially account for his ascendancy over their minds. He possessed in the fullest measure that combination of natural qualities which makes a man a born leader. Therefore his army was the obedient instrument of his will and endured unexampled hardships without a murmur.

V. CAESAR AS AUTHOR

22. Caesar's genius was many-sided, and he might have been no less eminent as an orator and an author than as a statesman and a general, if he had chosen those fields of activity for their own sake. Even as it was, though he spoke and wrote mainly for political effect, he was recognized by his contemporaries as an orator second only to Cicero; and the simplicity, clearness, and terseness of his *Commentaries* have made them a classic from his day to our own. In the purity of their Latinity they rank with Cicero's works as the best that have come down to

us. The interest of the narrative and the quality of the generalship shown in it have made the book a favorite with some of the world's greatest generals. The great Napoleon, for example, recommended it to his officers and himself wrote an abstract of it.

23. Purpose in Writing the *Commentaries on the Gallic War*.

Yet the book was written hastily, probably in the winter of 52-51, after the events narrated in Book VII; and it was written for a political purpose. Absent from Rome and deprived of his two chief supporters by the death of Crassus and the alienation of Pompey, Caesar wished to put himself in a good light before the Roman people. With such a purpose he might have been expected to misstate some facts; and there have been many attempts to show that he did so. But a fair examination of these attempts shows that not one of them is well-founded. There may be occasional mistakes, where Caesar was forced to rely on information furnished him by the Gauls; but it cannot be proved that there is a single intentional false statement in the whole work.



FIG. 12

CAESAR

Bust in the Museum of Naples

24. Caesar's Other Writings. In addition to the *Commentaries*

on the Gallic War, in seven books, we have Caesar's *Commentaries on the Civil War*, in three books. Besides these we know of other works, now lost. We hear of some poetry and a collection of jests. He wrote a treatise on grammar while traveling rapidly from Rome to Spain. He wrote a treatise on astronomy when he reformed the calendar. He wrote an attack on Cato to counteract the effect of certain books which in praising Cato attacked Caesar. All this shows his versatility; but probably no one of these works would have been very valuable if it had been preserved.

VI. THE GAULS

25. First Appearance of the Gauls in History. Some seven centuries before Christ, a tall, fair-haired race of men, the Gauls, began crossing the Rhine and conquering the original inhabitants of the country on its west. In time they overran everything as far as the Pyrenees, partly destroying the original inhabitants, partly uniting with them. About five centuries before Christ, they began crossing the Alps and settling in northern Italy, and in 390 B.C. they took Rome and burned it. Rome was then but a small city, governing only the part of Italy which immediately surrounded it.

26. First Decline of Gallic Power. But from that time on the power of Rome increased and that of the Gauls decreased. A little more than two centuries before Christ, after desperate fighting, the Romans conquered and held northern Italy, Cisalpine Gaul. Again in the years from 123 to 118 there was hard fighting with Gauls, and at the end Rome controlled that part of Gaul which Caesar calls the Province (2).

27. Invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni. In 113 began the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutoni, the most terrible danger of Rome since the day when the Gauls burned the city. It is not known whether they were Germans or Gauls, and probably the Romans of the time did not discriminate between the two races. They crossed the Rhine with their women and children, and marched



FIG. 13
GALLIC WARRIORS

slowly through Gaul, leaving a waste wherever they had passed. Several Roman armies met them and were cut to pieces. At last they made ready to invade Italy, the Teutoni by the western Alps, the Cimbri by the eastern. But the great Marius was now in command of a Roman army. In 102 he met the Teutoni and destroyed them. In 101 he joined the other Roman army and destroyed the Cimbri.

28. Geographical Divisions of Gaul in Caesar's Time. In Caesar's time Cisalpine Gaul was almost as Roman as any other part of Italy. From it Caesar recruited his legions and levied new ones; and later he gave its inhabitants the right of Roman citizenship. The Province was peaceable and loyal to Rome,

although the Allobroges had rebelled only a few years before. Caesar's task was the subjugation of all the rest of the Gauls, the inhabitants of all the country lying north of the Province and west of the Rhine. This is the country which he calls Gallia. However, he divides it into three parts and often



FIG. 14

A TROPHY OF GALLIC ARMS

Such trophies were erected to celebrate victories, and were composed of arms of the defeated enemy. This contains standards, a helmet, a cuirass, spears, war trumpets, and shields. The figures below represent the conquered Gauls.

uses the name Gallia of only the great central part, Gallia Celtica, where the Gallic stock was purest. In the southwestern part, Aquitania, fewer of the Gallic invaders had settled, and the population consisted largely of descendants of the original inhabitants. In the northeastern part, Belgium, Germans had settled in large numbers.

29. Factions in Gaul. If Caesar had found Gaul a compact nation his task would have been more difficult than it was. But faction and division seem to have been a part of the Gallic nature, and he took advantage of this characteristic. Gaul was cut up into many small states, each feeling itself rightfully independent. These states fought frequently with one another, and the weaker of them were either forced into dependence on the stronger or voluntarily attached themselves to stronger states for protection. In this way loose leagues or confederations were formed, between which rivalry and warfare went on. In Gallia Celtica the chief confederations were the one headed by the Haedui

and the one formerly headed by the Arverni, but in Caesar's time headed by the Sequani. But the evils of faction did not stop here. The individual states, for the most part, had no strong governments. Apparently most of them had been governed by kings one or two generations before Caesar's time; but a series of revolutions had generally abolished the

kingly office and had substituted magistrates elected yearly. The real power lay in the hands of rich nobles. Each of these nobles lived surrounded by numerous slaves and retainers; and as there was no power strong enough to keep them in order, individual nobles or leagues of nobles sometimes pushed their continuous rivalries to the point of civil war.

30. Caesar's Use of the Gallic Factions. This factional spirit was of great assistance to Caesar, for he usually found means to attach one faction or the other to himself. For example, at the outset he found two factions in the state of the Haedui, headed by two brothers, Diviciacus, friendly to the Romans, and Dumnorix, hostile to them. By strengthening Diviciacus and checking Dumnorix he secured the help of the state. The state was the leader of one of the two leagues in Celtic Gaul, and Caesar thus secured the submission of all the states in that league without fighting for it. In fact, not only did he have their passive submission, but he obtained from them provisions and men to use in conquering other parts of Gaul.

31. Gallic Civilization. The details of the Gallic manners and customs can be learned best from Chapters 11-20 of Book VI. It will be enough to say here that in Caesar's time the Gauls were not wild barbarians, but had attained a considerable degree of civilization. They had long passed the stage of roaming about from one part of the country to another; though we find, in the first book of the *Commentaries*, that for special reasons the Helvetii intended to leave their homes and find new ones. They had roads and bridges and towns of considerable size, fortified by well-built walls.

VII. CAESAR'S ARMY

THE LEGIONS

32. The legions formed the strength of Caesar's army. When the enemy met him in hand-to-hand battle, the legions bore the brunt of the fighting and won him the victory. But since they consisted of heavily armed, and therefore comparatively slow,

foot soldiers, and since their weapons were useless at any considerable distance, the legions needed the assistance of cavalry and light-armed infantry, to complete their success.

33. Organization of the Legion. In theory a legion consisted of 6000 men; but battles, accidents, and disease so reduced this number that Caesar's legions probably averaged about 4000 men, or even less. The following table gives the divisions of a legion and their theoretical strength:

century [centum, hundred]	=	100 men
2 centuries	= 1 maniple	= 200 men
3 maniples	= 1 cohort	= 600 men
10 cohorts	= 1 legion	= 6000 men

In theory, again, the legions were made up of Roman citizens; but in fact a large part of Caesar's legionary soldiers came from Cisalpine Gaul, which had not yet received the right of citizenship. However, it was thoroughly Romanized, and, in spirit at least, Caesar's legionaries were Roman citizens.

EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIER

(See Fig. 19, and Plate II, facing p. 111)

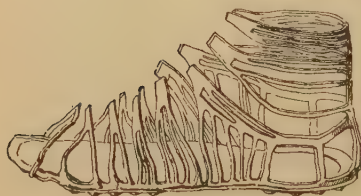


FIG. 15
A ROMAN SOLDIER'S SHOE
In the Museum at Mainz, Germany.

34. Clothing. *a.* A sleeveless woolen shirt, reaching nearly to the knees.

b. Tight-fitting leather trousers, or perhaps merely bandages wrapped about the legs.

c. Shoes or sandals.

d. A heavy

cloak for bad weather. This served also as a blanket at night.

35. Armor. *a.* A helmet (galea, Fig. 16) of leather strengthened by bands of metal.



FIG. 16
GALEA

b. A leather cuirass (*lōrīca*, Fig. 17), a coat strengthened by bands of metal across the shoulders, breast, and back.

c. A curved wooden shield (*scūtum*), covered with leather, and having a metal boss in the center. It was about four feet high and two and a half feet wide.

36. Arms. a. A heavy wooden javelin (*pīlum*, Fig. 18),

with a long iron point which was strong enough to pierce any armor but was likely to bend as it did so. Therefore it could not easily be withdrawn

when it had pierced a shield, and could not be thrown back by the enemy. After the battle the javelins were gathered and straightened by the Romans. Each soldier carried but one javelin.

We have no exact description of Caesar's *pīlum*. The cut on the left is of one used before Caesar's time, the one on the right is later than his time. It may have been between six and seven feet long, and may have weighed as much as eleven pounds.

b. A straight, heavy, two-edged sword (*gladius*, Fig. 19), about two feet long, adapted for either cutting or thrusting, but used chiefly for thrusting. Its scabbard (*vāgīna*) hung from a belt (*balteus*) which passed over the left shoulder. The sword was thus on the right

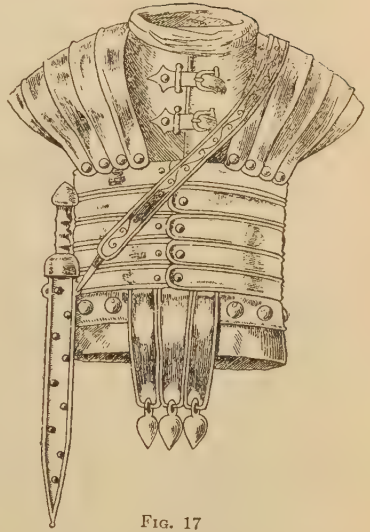


FIG. 17
LŌRĪCA

This is drawn from Trajan's Column, and may not be just what Caesar's men wore.



FIG. 18
PĪLA
One is earlier, the other later, than Caesar's time.

side, out of the way of the shield. But the higher officers, who carried no shield, wore the sword on the left side.



FIG. 19

ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD

37. Individual Baggage. Besides his personal belongings each soldier carried a leather water bag, cooking utensils, and several days' rations of grain, which seems to have been apportioned out only twice a month. All this, weighing from thirty to forty-five



FIG. 20

LEGIONARY SOLDIER ON
THE MARCH

For details, see 34-37.

pounds, was made into a pack (**sarcina**) and strapped on a forked stick; this the soldier carried on his shoulder. Perhaps he carried his share of the tools needed for entrenching the camp; or they may have gone with the heavy baggage (46). With his arms and armor he must have had a load of some seventy pounds, about that of a modern soldier. While encumbered by their packs the soldiers were said to be **impediti**. If the army was attacked on the march the packs were stacked in one place under guard, and the soldiers were then **expediti**. At other times, however, **expediti** means that the army was not accompanied by the train of heavy baggage (53), but the soldiers were carrying their packs. But such marches demanded speed, and doubtless the packs were lightened.

OFFICERS OF THE LEGIONS

(See Plate II, facing p. 111)

38. Lēgātus. All governors of provinces were given several **lēgātī**, deputies or assistants. These legates were not strictly military officers, but were to be employed by the governors in any way they saw fit. Caesar introduced the innovation of putting a legate in command of each legion just before a battle. When one or more legions were detached from the main army for special service, Caesar put a legate in command; and legates were left in command of the winter quarters during Caesar's absence. But no one legate was in permanent command of any one legion.

39. Quaestor. The quaestors were financial officers, elected yearly by the people at Rome. One was chosen by lot to take charge of the finances of each province, so that Caesar always had one with him. He took charge of the pay and the supplies of the army. When he was competent, Caesar employed him in battle as he did his legates, putting him in command of a legion.

40. Praefectus Fabrum. The chief of engineers had charge of such matters as the building of bridges, construction of camps, erection of siege works, repair of artillery, and the refitting of ships. He probably had special assistants, but the actual labor was performed by skilled men detailed from the ranks.

41. Tribūnus. No single officer permanently commanded a legion, as our colonels command regiments. Each legion had six tribunes, who took the chief command in rotation, while the rest probably commanded groups of cohorts or were assigned to special service. In Caesar's army many of the tribunes were experienced and capable officers, who did good service; but others were young men without military experience, who had been appointed only because they were friends or relatives of influential men at Rome whom Caesar wished to please. It was for this reason that Caesar put his legates and

quaestor in command of the legions in battle. On the march or in camp a tribune was in command.

42. **Centuriō.** The centurions commanded centuries, and



FIG. 21

A CENTURION

This is the monument of a centurion named Caelius. He wears the civic crown (9) and many other decorations for gallantry. He carries the cane of vine which was the centurion's badge of office, since centurions had the right of flogging soldiers.

tion above the rank of centurion; but there were grades of centurions from one to the other of which they rose. The highest of all was the first centurion of the first cohort, the **prīmipilus**. He and a few others, perhaps the other five of the first cohort, were called centurions of the first rank (**centuriōnēs prīmōrum ōrdinum**, or **prīmī ōrdinēs**), and were commonly summoned to councils of war along with the tribunes and legates.

there were therefore sixty in each legion. On them fell the immediate management of the men in battle. They fought in the ranks like the men and were expected to set the men an example of conspicuous bravery. In battle their position was at the right of their men, the post of danger, because the shields were carried on the left arm. They were therefore promoted from the ranks on the basis of their strength and size as well as their skill and gallantry. For instances of heroic centurions it is worth while to read V, 44; VI, 38; and VII, 50, 10-21.

They could hope for no promo-



FIG. 22

DECORATIONS FOR GALLANTRY

These are enlargements of such decorations as are worn by Caelius (Fig. 21).

STANDARDS OF THE LEGIONS

43. **Aquila.** Each legion had as its standard a bronze or silver eagle (**aquila**), carried on the top of a wooden staff. It was regarded with almost religious respect, and its loss was the deepest disgrace that could befall the legion. It was in charge of the first centurion of the first cohort, and was carried by a man of conspicuous strength and bravery, called the **aquilifer**.



FIG. 23
THE EAGLE OF
THE LEGION

44. **Signum.** Each cohort had its own standard (**signum**),

carried by a **signifer** (Fig. 24). These standards were of various forms—an open hand, the figure of an animal, etc. On the staff, below the figure, were fastened the decorations of honor which had been bestowed on the cohort—disks, half moons, wreaths, and tassels. The diversity of form was necessary in order that each soldier might recognize easily the standard of his own cohort. In hasty preparation for battle each man found his place by looking for his stand-



FIG. 24
SIGNIFER

He was the standard bearer of the cohort. On Trajan's Column the *signifer* wears the skin of a wild animal over his head and shoulders, but we do not know that the standard bearers in Caesar's army did.

ard; and all through the battle he regulated his movements by those of his standard. For this reason the technical terms for such maneuvers as advancing and retreating are **signa inferre**, **signa referre**, etc.

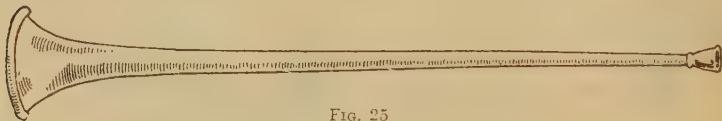


FIG. 25

TUBA

45. Musical Instruments. There were no bands, and the only use made of musical instruments was in the giving of signals. The only instrument mentioned by Caesar in the *Gallic War* is the **tuba** (Fig. 25) a straight, brazen trumpet, blown by a **tubicen**; but others were probably used as well (Fig. 26).

BAGGAGE OF THE LEGION

46. The heavy baggage (**impedimenta**) consisted of tents, provisions, hand-mills for grinding grain, engines of war, etc., and was carried on pack horses or mules (**iumenta**). These were driven or led by the drivers (**mūliōnēs**) and camp servants (**cālōnēs**), who were probably slaves.

AUXILIARY INFANTRY AND CAVALRY

47. Infantry. The light-armed infantry, which Caesar usually calls **auxilia**, contained no Roman citizens. Caesar had slingers (**funditōrēs**, see Fig. 103, p. 213)



FIG. 26

CORNŪ

from the Balearic Islands, and archers (**sagittārii**) from Crete and Numidia; but most of his light-armed infantry was drawn from

friendly Gallic tribes and was armed in the native fashion. He put little reliance on them for serious fighting, but made them useful in various ways: as skirmishers, to delay the enemy's attack; as raiders; in making fortifications at a critical time; for mere show, to impress the enemy with his numbers; and in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were prefects (*praefecti*). Their standard was a banner (*vexillum*, Fig. 112, p. 234) attached to a horizontal cross-piece at the end of a staff.



FIG. 27
LIGHT-ARMED
SOLDIER

48. **Cavalry.** Caesar had no Roman cavalry. During his first six years in Gaul he had none but Gallic cavalry, but in the seventh year he secured some Germans and found them much more effective. They were useless against a line of infantry, but met the enemy's cavalry. Caesar employed them especially as scouts and raiders, or in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were *praefecti*, and their standards were *vexilla* (47 and Fig. 28).

THE CAMP

49. A Roman army never halted even for one night without fortifying its camp (*castra*) with a wall and trench. This must have cost two or three hours of hard work; but it made the army safe from attack, and so allowed the general to choose his own time and place for battle; and in case of defeat the camp was a place of refuge.



FIG. 28
CAVALRY STANDARD BEARER

50. Location and Form of Camp. Whenever it was possible the camp was built on a hill sloping gently toward the enemy, so that the Roman army could form its line of battle in front of

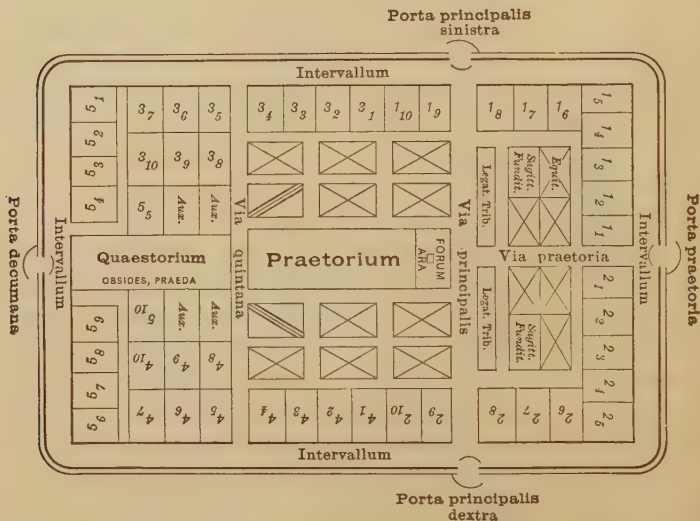


FIG. 29

PLAN OF A ROMAN CAMP

The *Praetorium* was the general's headquarters, so called because the old name for general was *praetor*. The *Porta Praetoria* was the front gate, out of which the general led his army. The rear gate was called *Decumana* because when there was only one legion, the tenth (*decima*) cohort was quartered by it. The *intervallum* was a space left free for the movement of soldiers in defending the camp.

the camp and make the enemy charge up hill. The normal shape of the camp was a square or oblong, but it had to be accommodated to the shape of the hill. Fig. 29 shows the normal shape, while Fig. 30 shows the actual shape of one of Caesar's camps. See also Plate IV, facing p. 287. Within the camp, streets were laid out in accordance with a fixed plan, and every legion, every cohort, every maniple, had always the same location. Fig. 29 shows the normal arrangement for a camp which would accommodate five legions.

51. **Fortifications of Camp** (Fig. 30). The size of the trench (*fossa*) varied, but was usually about nine feet wide and seven deep. The earth, dug out with spades and carried in baskets,

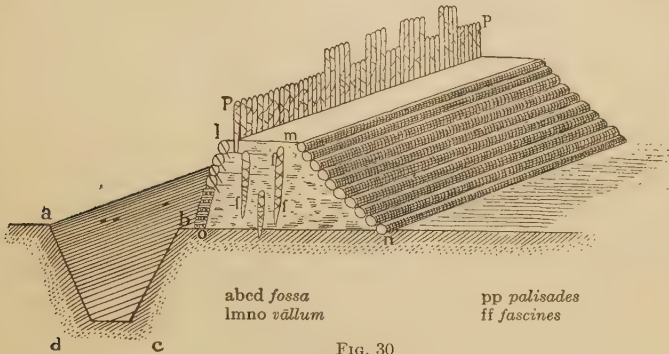


FIG. 30

VALLUM AND FOSSA

was piled up just inside the trench to make the wall (*vallum*). This wall was faced partly with sods, partly with bundles of sticks (*fascines*), so that it was quite steep on the outside. Other fascines were put inside the wall, to strengthen it. It stood about six feet high, was wide enough on top to let the soldiers move about comfortably in fighting, and sloped so gradually toward the inside that soldiers could easily ascend it. Sometimes this slope was faced with logs, so as to make steps. On the outer edge of the top stood a row of palisades (*valli*), about four feet high, which served as a breastwork. In case of an attack the enemy would be halted by the ditch several feet from the wall, and be completely exposed to the Roman javelins, while the defenders stood on a higher position, protected by a breastwork, and could throw their missiles with great effect. In times of especial danger, towers (*turrēs*) were erected at intervals on top of the wall.

52. **Gates of Camp.** Usually there was one gate (*porta*) on each of the four sides; but in the camp represented in Fig. 31

there were two gates in front, where the soldiers had most occasion to pass in and out. The gates were mere openings in the wall, about forty feet wide as a rule. Fig. 31 shows how they were protected. A short curved wall projected into the camp from the left side of the gate. A line of soldiers stood

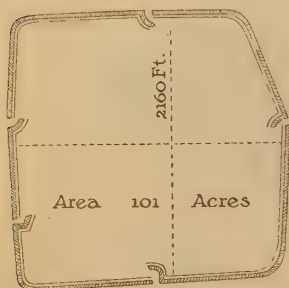


FIG. 31

CAMP ON THE AXONA, II, 8

in the gate, and another manned this wall. If the enemy got into the opening they would be exposed on their shieldless side to a shower of missiles from the wall. Ordinarily this was a sufficient protection, and it left the gates open for a sudden charge from within. But in times of great emergency the gates could be walled up solidly.

THE MARCH

53. Line of March. The vanguard usually consisted of cavalry and light-armed infantry. Under ordinary circumstances each legion was followed by a train of pack animals carrying its baggage; but in the near neighborhood of the enemy all the baggage was brought together, preceded by most of the legions and followed by the rest.

54. Length of March. The length of a day's march of course varied greatly, according to the nature of the country and the need for haste. As the soldier had to carry perhaps seventy pounds of arms and baggage, and as the army had to halt early in the afternoon to give time for making camp, the rate of march of the army could be nothing like that of an unencumbered individual. Probably when there was no need of haste the average march was no more than twelve to fifteen miles, and a day of rest was given about every fifth day. But Caesar, like Napoleon, owed much of his success to his power of inspiring his army to great efforts on the march. When he speaks



PLATE I—STORMING AN ANCIENT TOWN

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------|---|------------------|---|--------|---|------|---|----------|
| 1 | Turris | 2 | Tectio aridatula | 3 | Tectio | 4 | Onop | 5 | Ballista |
|---|--------|---|------------------|---|--------|---|------|---|----------|

of forced marches (**magna itinera, maxima itinera**), we are to think of marches of from eighteen to twenty-five miles a day, or even more. On one occasion he marched four legions, without baggage, fifty Roman miles in less than thirty hours, including all stops.

THE BATTLE

55. Since the legions had to do the serious work of fighting, the line of battle was arranged solely with reference to their tactics. When the enemy were within the short range of the Roman javelins they were met by a volley of these deadly missiles and their ranks were thus broken. Immediately the Romans charged, and the rest of the battle was fought at close quarters with the sword. When possible, therefore, the line of battle was drawn up facing down a gentle slope. This gave greater range to the javelins and greater impetus to the charge; while the enemy must begin the battle breathless from a charge up the hill. The auxiliary infantry might be posted in front of the line, but it was expected to do no more than delay the attack of the enemy and then get out of the way. More often it was posted on the flanks, sometimes merely as a show of strength. The cavalry might meet the cavalry of the enemy. Otherwise it usually merely awaited the rout of the enemy, when it pursued and cut to pieces the fugitives.

56. **Line of Battle.** The line of battle was commonly triple (**triplex aciēs**), though sometimes only double (**duplex aciēs**). In the triple line of battle the first line was composed of the first four cohorts of each legion, standing side by side, with no intervals between the cohorts. Three cohorts of each legion formed the second line, which stood a short distance behind the first, ready to relieve it when it became exhausted in the battle. The remaining three cohorts of each legion formed the third line, in the rear, and were held as a reserve for any emergency. Each of these lines was eight or ten men deep, and only the front rank of the first line could engage in the

battle at any one moment. But that rank would fight vigorously for a few moments, then fall back and be relieved by the next rank, and so on until all the men of the first line had been engaged. Then it was relieved as a whole by the second line.

The men in the ranks did not stand shoulder to shoulder, but with some interval between them; otherwise the front rank could never have used the sword. See what Caesar says about

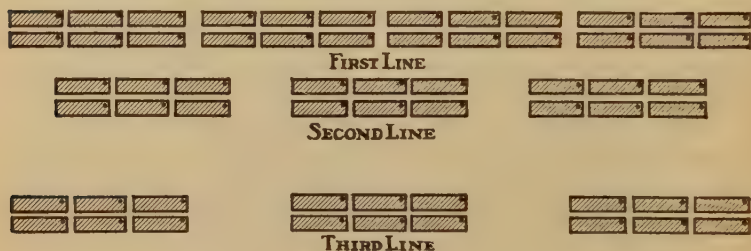


Fig. 32

ACIES TRIPLEX

In actual combat there was not even so much space between the units of the first line as is shown here. The dots indicate the positions of the centurions. The first cohort is on the extreme right of the first line; the fourth, on the left.

the twelfth legion in II, 25, 3-4, and 16-17. In relieving the ranks the men stepped back and forth through these intervals. Doubtless much of their training was in doing this without confusion.

57. Orbis. When surrounded by the enemy and hard pressed, a body of men would form what is now called a hollow square, and what the Romans called a circle (*orbis*), with the baggage and camp servants inside the ring of armed men.

THE CAPTURE OF TOWNS

58. A great part of Caesar's military operations consisted in the capture of walled towns. The fortification of these towns was rather primitive, but it was quite effective (Fig. 33). The face of the wall showed regular rows of log ends separated by

huge stones. No one log could be grappled and pulled out, for they were all fastened together far within the wall. The logs would not burn, for they were each imbedded in stone and earth. A battering-ram could demolish a solid stone wall, but the framework of timbers defied it. Therefore Caesar relied little on making breaches in the walls and entering in that way. But there were three other possible methods—a blockade, a sudden assault, and a formal siege.

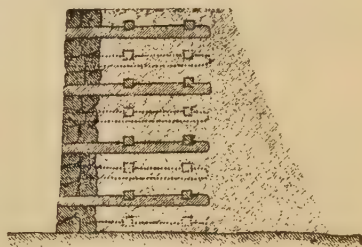
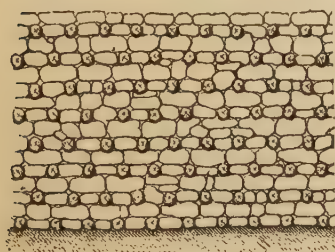


FIG. 33

GALLIC WALL

The cut on the left is a front view, as described in VII, 23; that on the right a cross section.

59. Blockade(*obsidiō*). A ring of fortifications could be built around the town, and the place starved into submission. But this was too slow a method to be employed unless all other methods were hopeless, and Caesar used it only once in the Gallic War (VII, 68-90).

60. Sudden Assault (*oppugnātiō repentina*). If a town had low walls and few defenders, it might be taken by a sudden assault. Archers and slingers kept the wall partly clear of defenders. Soldiers approached the wall in safety by holding their shields over their heads and letting them overlap, forming a *testūdō* (tortoise, Plate I, 3). If there was a trench around the wall, they filled it with bundles of brushwood (*crātēs*, fascines). Then they mounted the wall by means of scaling ladders (*scālae*, Plate I). But such towns would usually surrender without a struggle, so that the method was little used.

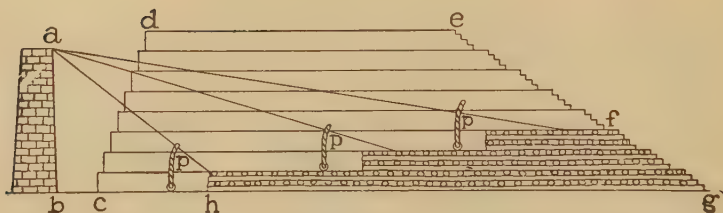


FIG. 34

SIDE VIEW OF AGGER IN PROCESS OF CONSTRUCTION

a b, the enemy's wall. *f g h*, part already constructed. *c d e f h*, part to be constructed. *a b c d*, part to be filled in with earth and rubbish at the last moment. *p p p*, lines of *plutei* protecting the workmen. The lines of direction show the spaces protected by the *plutei*.

61. Formal Siege (*oppugnātiō*). The favorite method was by the use of the **agger** and tower (**turris**). The agger was a great causeway, built of logs and earth, which sloped gradually up toward the top of the wall. Generally it was not intended to be as high as the wall. In that case a tower, several stories



FIG. 35

SOLDIERS BUILDING AN AGGER (?)

If this is an agger, it is disproportionately small. See p. 8. When timber could be got, the agger was built up in this way and then covered with earth. Therefore an agger could be burned (VII, 24, 8). Two soldiers in front are working a piece of artillery. Two other pieces stand on the camp wall in the background.

high, was pushed up the causeway on rollers. From the upper stories, which rose higher than the wall, archers and slingers and artillery shot down the defenders. When the tower was near enough, a draw-bridge was let down from one of the stories to the top of the wall, and the Romans charged across it. Sometimes the causeway was as high as the wall, and thus itself gave access to its top (Fig. 34). Sometimes, if the wall was low and the ground about it level, no causeway was

built, and the tower was pushed over the ground to the wall. Then a battering-ram might be hung in the lowest story, and the drawbridge was let down from one of the upper stories. Plate I illustrates this method of using the tower, as well as several other devices; but the city is not a Gallic town. We do not know the height of Caesar's towers. One ancient writer tells us they should have from ten to twenty stories and should be from 60 to 120 cubits high, about 90 to 180 feet.

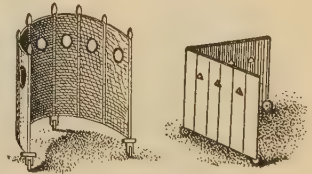


FIG. 36
PLUTEI

62. Means of Protecting the Besiegers. In building the agger and carrying on the other operations of a siege the assailants had to approach within easy range of missiles from the wall; hence they made use of several forms of protection:

a. The **pluteus** (Fig. 36) was a heavy shield, several feet high, mounted on wheels. A line of these, parallel to the wall, gave protection to men working immediately behind it; and they could be moved forward as the work advanced.

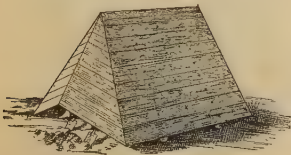


FIG. 37
MUSCULUS

b. The **musculus** (Fig. 37) was a hut with one end open and the other end partially closed. Its roof was strong enough to withstand the shock of great stones which might be dropped

upon it from the wall. It could be pushed up to the wall, and under its shelter men could dig out the foundation of the wall.

c. The **testūdō arietāria** (Plate I, 2) was a similar hut in which hung a battering-ram (**ariēs**), a heavy timber capped with iron, intended to be swung against the wall.

d. The **vinea** (Fig. 39) was a lighter hut, open at both ends. A

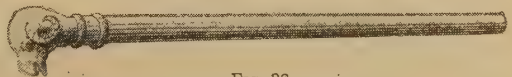


FIG. 38
BATTERING-RAM

number of these placed end to end made a safe covered gallery extending from a point out of range up to the **musculi**, **testudinēs**, or **plutei**.

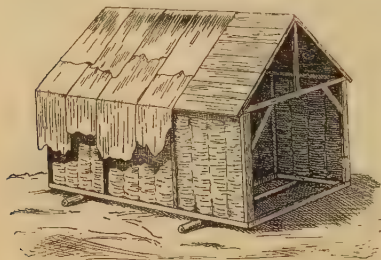


FIG. 39
VINEA

All these huts were pushed forward on rollers.

63. The Artillery. Caesar had with him engines of war the purpose of which corresponded to that of modern artillery. They were too heavy and clumsy to be of much service in battle; hence their chief use was in siege opera-

tions. The general name **tormenta** is derived from **torqueō**, to twist, and was applied to them because the propelling force was obtained by twisting a stick between two tightly stretched horsehair ropes.

a. The **ballista** (Fig. 40) threw heavy stones at a considerable angle from the horizontal. We do not know the range of Caesar's artillery. Other writers tell of **ballistae** which threw stones weighing nearly 60 pounds some 1200 feet, and of a **ballista** which could throw a stone weighing 360 pounds.

b. The catapult (**catapulta**) threw great arrows nearly horizontally. Fig. 41 makes most of its mechanism clear without explanation.

(A) is an arrangement for raising or lowering the rear of the nearly horizontal track, thus regulating the range. The track is grooved to hold a long, sliding carriage, on

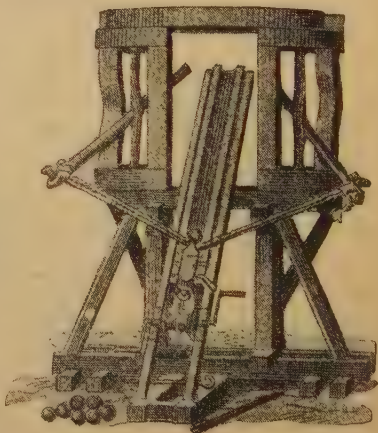


FIG. 40
BALLISTA

the rear portion of which is the trigger (B). The operation of firing was as follows: The carriage was pushed forward till the claws of the trigger were over the bowstring; a block (c) was shoved under the heavy rear end of the trigger, and the claws were thus held down on the string; the carriage was drawn back by means of the windlass, and held in place by the hook (D); the arrow was laid on the grooved upper surface of the carriage, with its end resting on the string between the claws of the trigger; the block (c) was withdrawn and the rear end of the trigger fell by its own weight, thus releasing the string.

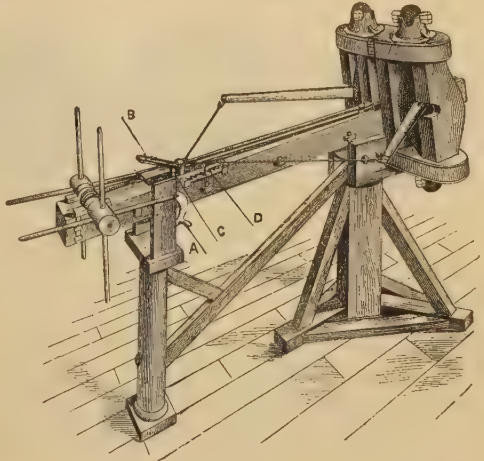


FIG. 41
CATAPULT

c. The **scorpiō** was a small catapult.

d. The **onager** (Plate I, 4) threw stones, like the ballista, but was of different construction.

THE FLEET

64. The fleet is to be considered as belonging to the army, rather than as a separate organization; for when Caesar had need of it he manned it with his legionaries, put tribunes and centurions in command of individual ships, and made one of his legates its admiral. Nautical operations were in charge of **gubernātōrēs**, navigators. The ships of war were about eight times as long as they were broad, and were therefore called

nāvēs longae, in distinction from the transports (*nāvēs onerariae*), which were shorter and wider. They had a mast and single sail, but in battle depended on oars for their propulsion. Their prows (Figs. 42, and 133, p. 283) were armed with metal



FIG. 42

TWO COINS OF MARK ANTONY

Left: A war galley.

Right: An eagle between two standards.

Left: Head of Mark Antony.

Right: Prow of a ship.

beaks (*rōstra*), with which to ram the ships of the enemy. If the Romans failed in this they sought to make the battle as much as possible like a battle on land, their special object being to grapple one of the enemy's ships and board it.

VIII. CAESAR'S WAR AND THE WORLD WAR

METHODS AND IMPLEMENTS

65. Caesar's battles were the hand-to-hand fighting of one mass of men with another. Slingers and archers might do a little damage at a little distance. Caesar's men broke the formation of the enemy by a volley of javelins just before they met. But these were mere preliminaries to the real fighting. At first thought it may appear that explosives, gas, and airplanes have changed all this. Before the World War some military men argued that the bayonet was obsolete. But during the war a competent observer reported: "To come to close quarters, where men can use the bayonet, constitutes the final and decisive stage in nearly every battle and is, therefore, the ultimate aim of all preliminary strategy and tactics. The bayonet is still the decisive weapon in battle, just as it has been since man

first fashioned an edged weapon." Apparently, then, a battle is today essentially what it was in Caesar's day, hand-to-hand fighting, with the preliminaries made more awful and more effective.

66. Many interesting revivals of ancient methods and arms might be noted. Some have said that what distinguished this war from earlier ones was the amount of trench digging. But long before this war someone said that Caesar conquered Gaul with a spade. It is safe to say that Caesar's men, who entrenched every camp they made, did more digging than the soldiers of the late war. Helmets, long obsolete, became an essential part of every soldier's equipment, just as they were in Caesar's army. "Trench knives" were a revival of the Romans' short swords. During the siege of Alesia (VII, 68-90) Caesar devised, as a part of his defenses, a series of pits with sharp stakes set up in the bottom: they are shown in the cut illustrating his fortifications at that point. During the recent war an illustrated paper showed a picture of precisely the same thing; under it were the words, "The Germans devised this method of protecting their trenches."

GEOGRAPHICAL CORRESPONDENCES

67. In Books I, 30-54, II, and IV, 1-15 Caesar tells of marching and fighting on ground which was fought over again in the World War. Yet he never saw some places that are most interesting to us—Verdun, St. Mihiel, and the Argonne. The reason for both the correspondences and the differences may be seen by a study of the map on page 57.

68. Between France and Germany lies a great barrier of mountains and hills. A little north of the Jura Mountains, on the Swiss frontier, the Vosges (*Vosegus*) Mountains begin. They extend north and break down into a wide stretch of broken hills which reaches to the river Meuse (*Mosa*). The only two natural routes between the two countries are (1) south of the Vosges Mountains, through the gap guarded by the

great French fortress Belfort; and (2) through the comparatively level land of Belgium, especially by following the line of the principal railway between Berlin and Paris—Cologne, Liège, and up the Meuse and Sambre (*Sabis*). Both these routes were used by Caesar in approaching the Rhine. So far as they were used in the recent war we may expect correspondences in the geography of the two wars.

69. But there is now a third route, through the hills north of the Vosges. These hills are full of coal and iron, and they are therefore penetrated by railroads and good highways. The troops that attacked Verdun and occupied St. Mihiel and the Argonne came through Coblenz, up the Moselle (*Mosella*), and through Luxemburg. The Germans were defeated at Nancy in the early days of the war. They failed later to take Verdun, after a terrible waste of life. These failures were due in large part to the opportunities for defense afforded by the broken country. The American troops who fought at St. Mihiel and in the Argonne toward the end of the war know the difficulties of that country. Caesar did not use this route because of its difficulty and because there was nothing there that he wanted. Therefore there are no definite correspondences between the two wars along this route. Yet Caesar and Labienus may have approached it in their movements against the Treveri, briefly and vaguely told in Books V and VI.

70. **The Southern Route.** By the southern route Ariovistus entered Gaul and Caesar marched against Ariovistus (see Campaign Map for I, 30-54). Between the Vosges mountains and the Rhine lies Alsace, the Sequanian land occupied by Ariovistus. Alsace was taken from the French by the Germans in 1871 and had been bitterly mourned ever since by the French. Therefore in the early days of the World War the French went past Belfort and began occupying Alsace. But they soon learned that the Germans were invading France by the northern routes and were forced to withdraw troops from Alsace. They therefore formed a defensive line running north



WORLD WAR BATTLE LINES

• • • Farthest advance of the Germans. — Battle line after the Battle of the Marne. — • — • — Boundaries before the war.

This map also shows the modern names of places mentioned in Bks. I, II, IV, and most of those in V-VII.

from Belfort along the Vosges Mountains. This was a "quiet sector," because the Germans never made any serious attack here. Therefore when American troops began coming over in 1917 they were given this part of the line to hold until they were sufficiently trained to be sent into the fighting farther north. So American troops for months looked down over the battlefield of Caesar and Ariovistus, doubtless longing for a chance to do what Caesar had done, drive the Germans out of Alsace.

71. The Northern Route. Caesar used this route four times: it is shown on the Campaign Maps for Books II and IV; and he used it in the operations described in Books V, 24-52, and VI. In 1914 the main invasion of France was by this route. On August 4 the Germans attacked Liège, and three days later they entered the city. They passed Mt. Falhize, the probable location of the town of the Atuatuci (II, 29-33). On August 22 they took Namur, thought by some to have been the town of the Atuatuci. The heroic and unexpected defense made by the Belgians had given the British and French time to throw a comparatively small army across the path of invasion. Its line crossed the Sambre at Charleroi, east of the place where Caesar defeated the Nervii (II, 17-28). At this point occurred the first battle between the French and British and the Germans. The British, on the left, occupied Mons, where Napoleon thought the Nervii put their non-combatants (II, 28). Although the allied army was forced to retreat rapidly and with great losses, it did so in good order. Meanwhile General Joffre, the French commander in chief, was transferring troops and placing them. On September 5 the retreating army and the other allied armies occupied a line some 180 miles long, bending to the south from Paris on the west to Verdun on the east. On that day General Joffre issued his famous order: "The hour has come to advance at all costs, and to die where you stand rather than give way." Then

followed the "Battle of the Marne," and the Germans were forced to retreat in their turn to a line which remained almost unchanged to the last year of the war.

72. This line passed a little east of Rheims, the capitol of the Remi (II, 3), crossed the Aisne (*Axona*) at Berry-au-Bac, where Caesar built his camp against the Belgians (II, 8), ran west along the Aisne valley and past Noviodunum (II, 12), then turned north to the North Sea. In marching from Berry-au-Bac to Noviodunum Caesar must have paralleled this line very closely. In 1917 the Allies made a desperate attempt to break this line north of the Aisne and did drive the Germans back a trifle to a road called *Chemin des Dames*. In the spring of 1918 the Germans made a series of great drives, the first of which was aimed at Amiens (*Samarobriva*), the capital of the Ambiani (II, 15); the last began in the neighborhood of Soissons, was aimed at Paris, and culminated at Chateau Thierry, where the American marines made their famous stand.

73. **Other Geographical Correspondences.** Caesar destroyed the Usipetes and Tencteri (IV, 1-15) at or near Goch, now an important railway point, at which the Germans used to search the trains coming from Holland into Germany.

Caesar's second bridge across the Rhine (VI, 9) was at Coblenz or somewhere within ten miles of it. After the armistice and in accordance with its terms American troops occupied Coblenz for a considerable time.

When Caesar's fleet sailed out of the Loire in the war with the Veneti (III, 7-16), they passed the site of St. Nazaire. This was a little fishing village at the outbreak of the World War, but was made a great port by the Americans, with huge warehouses, docks, and a hospital. From it an American railroad ran to the front.

When Caesar first sailed to Britain (IV, 20-38) he used the harbor of Boulogne. This was the port most used by the British in landing troops and supplies in France.

IX. CAESAR'S GEOGRAPHY

74. Caesar penetrated an unknown country, without compass and without anything that we should recognize as a map. He found his way about by asking questions and following the roads. Since he has left us no complete description of Gaul, Spain, and Britain, we cannot be sure just what he thought about their relative positions. But it is certain that the map on p. 61 shows something like his idea of them, and that it is nearer the truth than anything he could have drawn. In that map, the mainland is drawn from the description of Strabo, the most eminent geographer of his time, who wrote more than fifty years after Caesar and should have known more about geography than Caesar did. But Britain and Ireland are drawn from the description given by Caesar in V, 13; for Strabo thought that Ireland lay north of Britain.

75. No more accurate map than this was drawn for many centuries after Caesar's time; most maps were far worse. No accurate map could ever be drawn until it was possible to calculate the latitude and longitude of the places to be put on the map. The ancients knew how to calculate latitude roughly, but in Caesar's day they had not done it for these countries. It was absolutely impossible for them to calculate longitude; for that calculation depends on knowing the difference in time between two places, which must be ascertained by the use of accurate clocks or some sort of electrical communication. The ancients had neither.

76. The map explains the mistakes made in two of Caesar's chapters. In I, 1, 14-23 he tells us that Belgium lies northeast of an unnamed point, evidently the point at which a Roman would enter Gaul; that Celtic Gaul lies to the north; and Aquitania to the northwest. But in fact Belgium lies to the north, Celtic Gaul to the northwest, and Aquitania to the west. As Caesar entered Gaul over the western Alps, this map makes the divisions lie as he says. Again, in V, 13, 5 Caesar tells us



AN ANCIENT IDEA OF GEOGRAPHY

that the western side of Britain lies toward Spain. This map makes it do so approximately; but Caesar may have thought that Spain lay still farther north than this map shows. Nearly two centuries later an historian wrote that it took half a day to sail from Spain to Britain.

A BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following list of books will suggest those which are most helpful to pupils and teachers who read only English. Those who wish to make a more detailed study of special points will find that Holmes gives references to almost everything of importance in the enormous literature of Caesar, except on the linguistic side.

Editions

T. Rice Holmes. (Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1914.) In this edition the greatest authority on the geographical and military side of Caesar summarizes in useful form the more important discussions contained in his *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul and Ancient Britain*.

Kraner and Dittenberger, revised by H. Meusel. (Weidmann, Berlin, 1913.) Vol. 1 contains Books I-IV. This is virtually a new edition by Meusel. Although the notes are in German, this book is included because the text represents the final conclusions of the greatest authority on Caesar's language and text. The notes and critical appendix give briefly his reasons for the more important readings.

Caesar's Life and Campaigns

T. Rice Holmes. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*; second edition. (Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1911.)

T. Rice Holmes. *Ancient Britain and the Invasions of Julius Caesar*. (Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1907.)

These two books give the best discussion to be found in any language of the geographical and military problems. Mr. Holmes summarizes the views of all his predecessors and gives the evidence in full. The discussions are sometimes too full for a busy teacher.

Napoleon III. *History of Julius Caesar*. (Out of print, but may be obtained at second hand. If possible get the Atlas with the two volumes. The French edition is more easily obtained.) Napoleon III used his imperial resources in employing scholars and military men to make this book, and in financing excavations to determine certain facts. Vol. 2 gives a full and interesting narrative of the Gallic campaigns. Until Mr. Holmes's books appeared, it was the most important contribution to the study of Caesar's story.

Col. T. A. Dodge. *Caesar*. (Houghton, Mifflin and Co., 1894.) This is based on Napoleon's work and may be useful if the latter cannot be ob-

tained. It is included because it is accessible and readable. But it has no independent value, and its statements about places and movements should not be regarded as authoritative.

W. Warde Fowler. *Julius Caesar and the Foundations of the Roman Empire*. (G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York, 1892.) The best life of Caesar.

Plutarch's *Lives*. Every pupil should read the life of Caesar.

Military Affairs

H. P. Judson. *Caesar's Army*. (Ginn and Co., 1888.) This gives much fuller information about the organization and tactics of the Roman army than can be given in the introduction of an edition. It should be at hand for reference.

Eugene S. McCartney. *Warfare by Land and Sea*. In the series "Our Debt to Greece and Rome." (Marshall Jones & Co., Boston, 1923.) An illuminating discussion of ancient military tactics and strategy, and a comparison with modern warfare. It does not cover the ground of Judson's *Caesar's Army*.

R. Oehler. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de Bello Gallico*. (Schmidt und Günther, Leipzig, 1907.) The best collection of illustrations of soldiers, arms, and implements taken from ancient sources. The notes and discussions are in German.

REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS

In the grammatical references, App. = Appendix (following the text); G.-L. = Gildersleeve-Lodge; A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; H.-B. = Hale and Buck; H. = Harkness. In each case the latest revision has been followed.

References are made to books of the text in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic numerals, to lines in light-faced Arabic numerals. Thus, III, 2, 11 = Book III, Chapter 2, line 11.

In the page vocabularies, the figures 1, 2, 3, and 4, following definitions, indicate the number of times the word is used in Books I-IV. An asterisk (*) indicates that the word is used five or more times in those books. Letters following geographical names, for example (Aa), correspond to letters on the margin of the general map, and thus serve as an index to the position of the names on the map.

abbr. = abbreviation.

abl. = ablative.

acc. = accusative.

act. = active.

adj. = adjective.

adv. = adverb, adverbial.

card. = cardinal.

cf. = *cōnfer*, compare.

chap. = chapter.

comp. = comparative.

conj. = conjunction.

dat. = dative.

def. = defective.

dem. = demonstrative.

dim. = diminutive.

distr. = distributive.

e.g. = *exempli grātiā*, for example.

etc. = *et cētera*, and so forth.

f. = feminine.

freq. = frequentative.

fut. = future.

gen. = genitive.

i.e. = *id est*, that is.

impers. = impersonal.

impf. = imperfect.

incept. = inceptive.

ind. = indicative.

indecl. = indeclinable.

indef. = indefinite.

inf. = infinitive.

int. = introduction.

interrog. = interrogative.

intr. = intransitive.

l., ll. = line, lines.

lit. = literally.

m. = masculine.

neg. = negative.

n., neut. = neuter.

n. (in grammatical references) = note

nom. = nominative.

num. = numeral.

ord. = ordinal.

p., pp. = page, pages.

part. = participle.

pass. = passive.

pers. = personal.

pf. = perfect.

pl. = plural.

past pf. = past perfect.

poss. = possessive.

prep. = preposition.

pres. = present.

pron. = pronoun.

reflex. = reflexive.

rel. = relative.

sc. = *scilicet*, supply.

sing. = singular.

subj. = subjunctive.

sup. = superlative.

tr. = transitive.

THE STORY OF BOOK I, CHAPTERS 1 TO 29

WAR WITH THE HELVETII

The Helvetii were a Gallic people living in northern Switzerland. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. During the invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri a part of the Helvetii had left their country independently and defeated a Roman army in 107 B.C. Many of the Helvetii had joined the Cimbri and Teutoni in their attempted invasion of Italy in 102 and 101 B.C. After the disastrous result of these attempts the Helvetii had remained comparatively quiet for a long time; but now, dissatisfied with the narrow limits of their country, they determined to seek wider fields.

The originator of this plan was Orgetorix, their most powerful nobleman. But the Helvetii soon learned that he was trying to further ambitious plans of his own and to use them as tools; that he intended to make himself their king, and then to unite with two neighboring states in the subjugation of all Gaul. The penalty for the crime of aiming at royal power was death, but Orgetorix anticipated the punishment by committing suicide. Yet the Helvetii persisted in the plans which they had adopted at his suggestion. They made all preparations, then burned their homes and gathered near the western end of Lake Geneva, ready to set out.

But Rome had been watching their preparations in some alarm. If the Helvetii marched through the Province, they could not fail to give trouble to the Romans. And what was a more serious matter, if the Helvetii left their country vacant it would be occupied by the Germans; and the Germans were dangerous neighbors. Caesar's term of office as governor of Gaul began in the year of their departure. Learning that the Helvetii intended to set out sooner than he had expected, he hurried to Geneva, so that when they gathered he was there to meet them. He destroyed the bridge across the Rhone, which they had failed to secure, and with his one legion hastily made and manned a line of defenses on the south bank of the river. He then forbade their crossing, and easily checked their attempts to disobey his orders.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. The great host, with its women and

children and thousands of wagons, marched slowly through this to the Saone, and its van crossed the river and began plundering the land of the Haedui. Meanwhile Caesar had hastened back to northern Italy and returned with five legions. The Haedui, who had been nominal allies of the Romans for many years, now appealed to Caesar. He was not sorry to appear as the champion of Gallic freedom, for he thus gained a footing in Gaul. Finding that one of the four divisions of the Helvetii had not yet crossed the Saone, he fell upon it and cut it to pieces. Immediately he crossed the river in pursuit of the main body. For fifteen days he followed it, but on account of the nature of the country he was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibracte. Believing that this action was due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. In a hard-fought battle he defeated them with immense loss; and the remnant of the once proud and mighty people sadly returned to its mountain home.



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR BOOK I, 1-29

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

The coloring shows the part of Transalpine Gaul which had come under Roman control at the end of this campaign. The meaning of the colors is as follows:

Brown indicates the part which belonged to Rome before Caesar came to Gaul.

Red indicates the states which Caesar conquered in battle. The Lato-
brigi and the Tulingi, whom he conquered, lived across the Rhine and cannot be shown on this map. The Boi are shown in the territory given them by the Haedui after their defeat (28, 13-17). Although Caesar had to fight his way through the Ceutrones, the Graioceli, and the Caturiges (10, 12-14), their territory is not colored, because Caesar apparently did not care to force the complete submission of these insignificant mountain tribes.

Blue indicates the states which came under Caesar's control without fighting. It is true that at the end of this campaign the states so colored only asked for Caesar's protection, and did not intend to come under his control; but Caesar soon turned the protectorate into full control. The following considerations determine the amount of Gaul to be colored: envoys came from "nearly all Gaul" (30, 1); but this means only Celtic Gaul; for we learn of the submission of the Belgae in Book II, of the Aquitani in Book III. The part of Sequania occupied by Ariovistus (31, 32) is left uncolored. In II, 34 we are given a list of northwestern states which did not submit till the end of Caesar's second summer in Gaul; these also are left uncolored. We may assume that the rest of Celtic Gaul sent envoys at the end of the present campaign; therefore it is colored.

The line of march shows Caesar's route in crossing the Alps the second time, with the five legions (10, 8-18). It also shows the route of the Helvetii from the point at which they left their territory. After crossing the Arar Caesar's route coincides with that of the Helvetii.

Battlefields are marked by x. The great battle was correctly located near Montmort by Stoffel (*Guerre Civile*, II, 439-453). His plan of the battle is shown on pp. 131 and 135 and is explained in the notes. Bircher afterwards adopted the same location but gave a different plan of the battle, which is approved by Mr. Holmes. But because Bircher's plan robs *circumvenire* (25, 15) of all meaning, and for other reasons, it seems improbable.

GENERAL DIRECTIONS FOR USE OF THIS BOOK

1. A separate text edition is supplied free by the publishers with every copy of this book. Teachers should insist that every pupil get one and use it in class.

2. The page vocabularies give each word when it first occurs. After that, if not remembered, it must be looked up in the general Vocabulary at the end of the book. In the page vocabularies the definition is not always complete; but it usually gives the general meaning, from which others are derived, and a special meaning which fits the passage in the text. Definitions to fit all passages are given in the general Vocabulary. An asterisk after the definition means that the word occurs five or more times in Books I-IV: a figure, 1, 2, 3, or 4, is used when the word occurs less frequently. The pupil will save trouble by mastering at once the first meaning of the words that are to occur frequently.

3. The correct English pronunciation of all proper names is indicated by diacritical marks. For the meaning of these marks see the first page of the General Vocabulary. The English pronunciation of proper names, not the Roman, should always be used in translating.

4. It is impossible to understand and appreciate Caesar's story unless one follows it on the map. The letters in parentheses which follow geographical names, in the vocabulary, correspond to the letters on the margins of the map in the front of the book. By their aid places can be found easily. The campaign maps at the beginning of each book (each half of Book I) show every place mentioned in that book, the route followed, and (by the coloring) how much was accomplished in that book toward the conquering of Gaul.

5. The grammar references in the notes on **1-29** are carefully planned to help the pupil in mastering those principles of syntax which are used again and again all through Caesar and which are needed for reading any Latin. In the notes on **1-29** references are given three times for each of these principles, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference is given, attention is called to the fact: see, for example, the note at the end of Chapter 5. If these references are used as planned, the pupil will make much better progress through the rest of the books. - Remember that syntax only means the way in which words are put together to make sense; it must be learned sometime.

C. IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS

1. Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā

1. Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gallia (gāl'ī-ā), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtica. See map. *

sum, esse, fui, futūrus (App. 66), *intr.*, be. *

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all; as a whole. *

dividō, dividere, divīsī, divīsum, *tr.*, divide, separate; divīsus, *pf. part.* as *adj.*, divided. *

in, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.* With *acc.*, of motion from one place into or toward another place, into, to. With *abl.*, of rest or motion within a place, in. *

pars, partis, *f.*, part. *

trēs, tria, *gen. trium* (III), *card. num. adj.*, three. *

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what. *

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *gen. ūnius* (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one. *

2. incolō, -colere, -coluī, —, *tr.* and *intr.* [colō, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in. *

Belgae, -ārum, *m.* (ABdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), or Belgians. *

alius, -a, -ud, *gen. alterius* (App. 32), another, other. *

Aquitānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *m. pl. as noun*, the Aquitani (āk'wī-tā'nī). *

tertius, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [ter, thrice], third. *

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *gen. ipsius* (App. 59), *intensive pron.*, self (not to be confused with the reflexive suī, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves. *

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language. '3

Chap. 1. A brief description of the great divisions of Gaul, and of their inhabitants.

1. omnis, as a whole, shows that Gallia here has meaning (1) of the vocabulary.

dīvisa: the adjective.

partēs trēs: on the divisions of Gaul, see Int. 28.

quārum ūnam, one of which (parts).

ūnam: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

2. Belgae: pronounce all proper names as indicated in the Vocabulary. See page 68, 3.

aliam, tertiam: supply partem incolunt.

quī = īi quī, those who: a nominative pronoun antecedent is often omitted.

ipsōrum linguā, in their own language. linguā: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna
5 flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmāni-

3. Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celtae (sēl'tē), *better*, the Celts. 1

nostrer, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. [nōs, we], our, ours, our own. *

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., of Gaul, Gallic; *m. pl. as noun*, the Gauls. *

appellō, 1, tr., call by name, name, call. *

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron. (App. 54), this, this man, woman, or thing. *

institūtum, -ī, n. [institūō, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. 3

4. lēx, lēgis, f., law, statute. 4

inter, prep. with acc., among, between; *with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action* (App. 166), with, to, or from each other or one another. *

sui, sibi, sē or sēsē, reflex. pron. of third person (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves. *

differō, differre, distulī, dilātum, tr. and intr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], be different, differ. 1

ā (before consonants), ab (before vowels and some consonants), prep. with abl., from; by. *

Garumna, -ae, m. (DEcd), the Garumna (gā-rūm'nā), or Garonne. 3

5. flūmen, -inis, n. [fluō, flow], river, stream. *

Matrona, -ae, m. (Bef), the river Matrona (māt'rō-nā), now the Marne. 1

et, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and. *

Sēquana, -ae, m. (BCdef), the river Sequana (sēk'wā-nā), better, Seine. 1

6. fortis, -e, adj., strong; brave. *
proptereā, adv. [propter, because of], on this account; **proptereā quod, because.** *

quod, conj., because. *
cultus, -ūs, m. [colō, cultivate], cultivation; civilization. 2

atque, ac (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., and also, and even, and. *

hūmānitās, -tātis, f. [hūmānus, human], humanity, refinement, culture. 2



FIG. 43

A COIN OF CAESAR

This was made after the conquest of Gaul.

Left: Head of Venus.

Right: A trophy of Gallic Arms.

3. Celtae, Galli: case? App. 95, *a*: G.-L. 205; 206; A. 283; 284; B. 167;

168, 2, *b*: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 393, 8.

linguā, institūtis, lēgibus, in language, institutions, and laws. Notice the absence of a conjunction. Latin usually says either "a, b, c," or "a and b and c," while English usually says "a, b, and c." For case see App. 149: G.-L. 397; A. 418; B. 226; H.-B. 441; H. 480.

4. Garumna flūmen: supply *dividit*. **flūmen:** case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320; 321; A. 281; 282; B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2, *a*: H. 393.

inter sē differunt, lit. differ among themselves = differ from one another.

tāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns

7. prōvincia, -ae, f., province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France, now Provence. *

longē, adv. [longus, long], far, far away, distant. *

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, intr. [sum, be. App. 78], be away from. *

minimē, adv. [minimus, least], least, very little. 4

-que, conj. (always translated before the word to which it is attached), and. *

ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward, to, toward; denoting purpose with gerund and gerundive, to, for. *

is, ea, id, gen. eius (App. 57), weak dem. pron. referring to some person or

thing named in the context, this, that, these, those. *

mercātor, -ōris, m. [mercōr, trade], merchant, trader. *

8. saepe, adv., often, frequently. *

commeō, 1, intr. [meō, go], go back and forth; with **ad**, resort to, visit. 1

effēminō, 1, tr. [ex + fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enfeeble. 1

animus, -ī, m., mind; character. *

9. pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, intr. [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; tend. *

importō, 1, tr. [in + portō, carry], carry or bring in, import. 3

proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), nearest, next. *

Germānī, -ōrum, m., the Germani (jēr-mā'nī), better, Germans. *

trāns, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over. *

5. Matrona . . . dividit: the two rivers formed one boundary, and the verb is therefore singular: App. 180, b: G.-L. 285, 2: A. 317, b: B. 255, 3: H.-B. 331, 3: H. 392, 4.

Hōrum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 372: A. 346, a, 2: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 442.

6. quod absunt: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, 1.

7. prōvinciae: see Int. 2, 26.

minimē saepe, least often.

mercātōrēs: Roman traders had for some time penetrated the interior of Gaul, bringing, among other things, strong wines, of which the Gauls were very fond.

8. quae . . . pertinent: notice that in relative clauses the relative almost always stands first and the verb last: everything that stands between the relative and the first finite verb which



FIG. 44

A GALLIC SPEAR HEAD

follows usually belongs to the relative clause.

ad effēminandōs animōs, to weaken the courage. The gerundive construction will be treated later.

9. proximī Germānīs, next to the Germans: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, III: H. 434, 2.

The Germans were less civilized and probably more warlike than the Gauls.

- 10 Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsi in eōrum finibus

10. Rhēnus, -ī, *m.* (ABCfgh), the river Rhine. *

cum, *prep.* with *abl.*, with, along with, together with. *

continenter, *adv.* [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continually. 3

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war. *

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, *tr.*, bear, carry; (*of war*) carry on, conduct. *

11. dē, *prep.* with *abl.*, from, out of, especially down from; concerning; for. *

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason. *

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē'shyī), Helvetian; *m. pl. as noun*, the Helvetii. *

quoque, *conj.*, following the word emphasized, also, too, likewise. *

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [relinquō, leave], remaining, the rest of. *

virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [vir, man], manliness, valor, courage. *

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *tr.* [cēdō, go], go before; surpass, excel. 1

12. ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly. * cotidiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cotidiē, daily], everyday, daily. *

proelium, -i, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement. *

contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [tendō, stretch], strive; contend, fight. *

13. cum, *conj.*, when; since; although. *

aut, *conj.*, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or. *

suus, -a, -um, *reflex. pronominal adj.* referring to subject (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, a) [suī, himself, herself, etc.], his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs. *

finis, -is, *m.*, end, boundary; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. *

prohibeō, 2, *tr.* [habeō, have, hold], keep from, keep, keep out or away from. *

10. quibuscum: use and position of *cum*? App. 140; 60, b: G.-L. 392; 413, 1: A. 413, b; 150, d: B. 222; 142, 4: H.-B. 418, a; 419, 4: H. 473, 1; 182, 2.

11. Quā dē causā, (*and*) for this reason. The relative is often used to connect independent sentences in Latin, but is not so used in English. We must in such cases translate by a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and we may render the connective force of the relative by using *and* or *but*, if we like: App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

Helvētīi: although the rest of the chapter is concerned with the larger divisions of Gaul, Caesar speaks of

this tribe in particular, because it is to be prominent in the following chapters. Helvetia was the old name of Switzerland, and is still used on Swiss stamps.

virtūte: ablative of specification.

12. proeliis, *in battles*; but it is an ablative of means.

13. suis finibus: the reflexives *sui* and *eius* regularly refer to the subject: *suis* therefore refers to the Helvetii. For case see App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 400; 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 464, 1; and notice that the preposition *ab* is often used in the same sense, as in *ab Aquitanis*, l. 4.

eōrum refers to the Germans. For case see App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. (Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; perti-



FIG. 45

A COIN OF THE HELVETII

14. obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold, possess. *
dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, *tr.*, say, tell. *

15. initium, -tī, *n.* [ineō, go into], beginning. *

capiō, capere, cēpi, captum, *tr.*, take. *

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.* (CDfg), the river Rhodanus (rōd'ā-nūs), better, Rhone. *
contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -ten-

tum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold together; bound, shut in. *

16. Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, the ocean. *
atingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tactum, *tr.* [ad + tangō, touch], touch or border on, reach, extend to. *

etiam, *conj.*, and also, also. *

17. Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to the Sequani; *pl. as noun*, Sēquani (Cf), the Sequani (sék'wānī). *

vergō, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, look or lie toward, be situated. 3

septentrionēs, -um, *m.* [septem, seven + triōnēs, plow oxen], the seven plow oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the north. *

18. extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sup. of exterus. App. 44], outermost, farthest, extreme, most remote. *

orior, oriri, ortus sum, *intr.*, arise, begin; rise. *

14. Eōrum refers back to the Gauls as a whole, not to the Helvetii, who have just been mentioned.

quam . . . dictum est, which it has been said the Gauls occupy, or more freely which, as has been said, the Gauls occupy. quam is the object, Gallōs the subject, of obtinēre: App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. The infinitive clause, quam . . . obtinēre, is the subject of dictum est: App. 266: G.-L. 343, 2; 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 589: H. 642.

15. initium capit: Caesar was writing for the Romans. Gaul "begins" at the Rhone for a man who comes from Rome and crosses the Alps, as Caesar did.

ā flūmine, at the river. There are many phrases in which we feel at or

on to be the appropriate preposition, but in which the Romans thought of a starting-point and consequently used ab or ex, which literally mean from.

16. ab Sēquanīs, in the direction of or on the side of. See the preceding note.

17. vergit ad septentrionēs, lies toward the north; i.e., from Rome; or from the Rhone, where Caesar says it begins. This and the following statements, that Belgium lies to the north-east and Aquitania to the northwest, are all mistakes. But if one swings the map of Gaul around so that northwest seems north, all these statements seem right. For the true explanation of the mistake, see Int. 76.

18. extrēmīs finibus: i.e., those farthest from the Roman province.

nent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionēs et orientem sōlem.) Aquitānia ā Garumnā flumine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupi-

19. *inferus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below; *comp.*, inferior, lower. *
spectō, 1, *tr.* [-spiciō, see], look at; look, face. 3

20. sōl, sōlis, *m.*, the sun; ad occidentem sōlem, toward the setting sun or west; ad orientem sōlem, toward the rising sun or east. *

Aquitānia, -ae, *f.* (DEcd), Aquitania (āk'wī-tā'nī-ā). *

21. Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenean; Pȳrēnaei montēs (Ecde), the Pyreneae (pī'rē-nē'ī), better, Pyrenees Mountains. 1

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain. *

22. Hispānia, -ae, *f.* (Eabcd), Hispania (hīs-pā'nī-ā), better, Spain. 2
occāsus, -ūs, *m.* [occidō, fall, set], falling down, setting; with sōlis, sunset; the west. 4

1. apud, *prep.* with acc., at; among. *

nōbilis, -e, *adj.* [nōscō, know], well known, distinguished; noble. *

dives, divitis, *adj.*, wealthy, rich. *Sup.*, dītissimus. 1

2. Orgetorix, -igis, *m.*, Orgetorix (ōr-jēt'ō-rīks). *

M., *abbr.* for Mārcus (mār'kūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Messāla, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala (mār'kūs vā-lē'rī-ūs mē-sā'lā) consul 61 B.C. 2

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*, Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mār'kūs pū'pī-ūs pī'sō kāl-pēr'nī-ā'nūs), consul 61 B.C. 2

cōsul, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. *

rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [rēx, king], kingly or royal authority, royal power. *

cupiditās, -tātis, *f.* [cupidus, eager], eagerness, desire. 3

19. in septentrionēs . . . sōlem: i. e., toward the northeast.

22. ad Hispāniam, near Spain; the reference is to the Bay of Biscay.

inter occāsum . . . septentrionēs: i. e., toward the northwest.

Chap. 2-4. The ambition and downfall of Orgetorix.

Chap. 2. Orgetorix persuades the Helvetii to invade Gaul.

1. nōbilissimus: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

2. M. Messālā . . . cōsulibus, in the consulship of Marcus Messala and



FIG. 46

A COIN OF THE HAEDUI

The name Orgetir is supposed to be Orgetorix. It is possible that this is Caesar's Orgetorix, since his daughter married a powerful Haedian.

Marcus Piso. Case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, a; H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1. These men were consuls in the year 61 B.C.,

ditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitatī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent: *Perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae* 516

3. **inducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ducum, tr.** [ducō, lead], lead or draw on; induce, influence. 4

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f. [coniūrō, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league. 3

nōbilitās, -tātis, f. [nōbilis, well known], nobility; the nobles. 3

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr., make. *

civitatī, -tātis, f. [cīvis, citizen], state; the citizens. *

4. **persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, tr. and intr.** [suādeō, advise], persuade, prevail upon. *

ut and utī, adv. and conj. *With ind.:* (1) as; (2) when. *With subj.:* (1) so that; (2) in order that, to; (3) *with verbs of fearing*, that not. *

cōpia, -ae, f., supply, plenty; pl., forces, troops. *

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, intr. [eō, go. App. 84], go out, depart. 2

5. **perfacilis, -e, adj.** [facilis, easy], very easy. 2

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, tr. and intr. [stō, stand], stand or place before; excel, surpass. *

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtius (App. 32), *adj.*, whole, the whole of; entire, all. *

three years before Caesar went to Gaul. In giving dates the Romans designated the year by naming the consuls of that year.

rēgnī: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, note: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

3. **coniūrātiōnem:** the real purpose of the conspiracy was to make Orgetorix king, although the Helvetii, like most Gallic peoples, had no king. See Int. 29. His real reasons for wishing the people to emigrate were (1) that by making himself leader of the emigration he could get power enough to make himself king; and (2) that as king he wished to conquer the other states of Gaul.

civitatī persuāsit ut exirent, *persuaded the citizens that they should leave=persuaded the citizens to leave.*

civitatī: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346: A. 367: B. 187, II, a: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (b): H. 426, 2.

4. **ut exirent:** mood? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, (a): H. 563, 1; 565.

cōpiīs here includes the women and children.

5. **Perfacile esse . . . potirī** is in-

direct discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in *persuāsit*. Indirect discourse (App. 265) is very common in Caesar, and for this reason its essential principles should be grasped as soon as possible. No reference to unusual details of the construction will be given in I, 1-29. The most essential fact to learn is that when a statement is turned into indirect discourse the verb of the principal clause becomes an infinitive: App. 266: G.-L. 648; 650: A. 580, a: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 589: H. 642, 1. This infinitive, however, cannot properly be translated by an English infinitive. In the present instance, what Orgetorix said was, *perfacile est . . . potirī*, it is very easy to get control. The *est* has become *esse*, but the English equivalent is (*saying*) that it was very easy to get control.

cum . . . praestārent, *since they excelled all in valor.* **virtūte:** case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480. **omnibus:** case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 1: H.-B. 376: H. 429. **praestārent:** mood? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius iis persuasit, quod undique loci naturā Helvetiū continentur: unā ex parte flumine Rhēnō latissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helveticum ā Germanis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter
 10 Sēquanōs et Helvetiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flumine Rhodanō, quī provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His

6. imperium, -rī, n. [imperō, command], command, order; supreme power, sovereignty. *

potior, 4, intr. [potis, powerful], become master of, get control. *

facile, adv. [facilis, easy], easily, readily. *Comp.*, **facilius**; *sup.*, **facilimē** (App. 41). *

undique, adv. [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. *

7. locus, -ī, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place; locality, situation. *

natura, -ae, f. [nāscor, be born], nature. *

ē (only before consonants), **ex** (before vowels and some consonants), *prep.* with

abl., originally denoting motion out of, out of, from; denoting position, in some phrases, on. *

8. lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide. 4

altus, -a, -um, adj., high; deep. *
ager, agrī, m., land; district, territory. *

9. alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius (App. 32), the other (of two); second. *

Iūra, -ae, m. (Cg), the Jura (jū'rá) mountains. 3

10. lacus, -ūs, m., lake. 3

Lemannus, -ī, m. (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-mān'ūs), better, the Lake of Geneva. 3

6. imperiō: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

Id . . . persuasit, lit. *he persuaded this (id) to them more easily on this account (hoc)=he persuaded them to this course the more easily.* **hoc:** case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

iis: see note on *civitātī*, I. 3.

quod continentur: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I. See the map for a range of the details that follow.

7. loci: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1. **naturā:** case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

8. ā Germanis: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 1, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 1, a: H. 461. We have learned in 1, 12-14, that the Rhine did

not prevent frequent battles with the Germans. Later in his work Caesar implies that the pressure of the Germans was one of the reasons for the emigration of the Helvetii. On the other hand, the certainty that Germans would occupy Helvetia was one of the reasons why Caesar would not let the Helvetii emigrate. See Int. 3.

9. alterā ex parte: on a second side. Notice how often a monosyllabic preposition stands between an adjective and its noun.

monte: here, as often, *mōns* means a range of mountains.

10. tertiā: supply *ex parte:* on the third side. The fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.

11. His . . . fiēbat, lit. *by these things it was brought about=the result was.*

rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitīmīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitudīne autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē 15

12. rēs, rei, f., thing; a word of indefinite meaning whose proper translation depends on the context. *

minus, comp. adv. [parvus, little], less. *

lātē, adv. [lātus, wide], widely, extensively. 4

vagor, 1, intr. [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. 4

finitimus, -a, -um, adj. [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; m. pl. as noun, neighbors. *

13. inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum, tr. [ferō, carry], carry into; bellum inferre, to make war upon. *

possum, posse, potui, — (App. 80), intr. [potis, able + sum, be], be able, can. *

homō, -inis, m., human being, man. *

bellō, 1, intr. [bellum, war], make or carry on war, fight. 3

14. cupidus, -a, -um, adj. [cupiō, desire], eager, desirous, fond. 2

magnus, -a, -um, adj., great, large. Comp., maior; sup., maximus. *

dolor, -ōris, m. [doleō, grieve], grief, pain, vexation, annoyance. 3

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [ad + faciō, do], treat, affect; magnō dolōre afficere, annoy greatly. 3

prō, prep. with abl., before, in front of; on account of, in consideration of. *

multitudō, -inis, f. [multus, much], a great number, multitude. *

autem, conj., but; moreover. *

15. glōria, -ae, f., glory, renown, fame, reputation. 2

fortitudō, -inis, f. [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. 1

angustus, -a, -um, adj. [angō, squeeze], compressed, narrow. *

12. ut vagārentur: mood? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

et . . . et, both . . . and.

minus, less than they desired.

finitīmīs: for case see note on omnibus, l. 5.

13. quā ex parte, and on this ground: use of relative? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

hominēs . . . cupidī, being men who were desirous of fighting. bellandī: construction? App. 287: 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 502; 504: B. 338, 1, b: H.-B. 611; 612, I: H. 624; 626.

14. Prō . . . hominum, considering the great size of the population.

15. sē: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

angustōs finēs, (too) narrow limits. finēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. Helvetia comprised rather more than half of modern Switzerland. According to Chap. 29 the population was 263,000, while Switzerland now has a population of nearly 4,000,000.

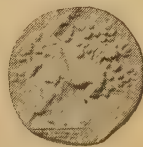
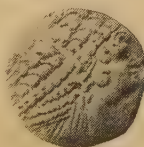


FIG. 47

A GALIC COIN

fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātītūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere,

16. **habeō**, 2, *tr.*, have, possess. *
arbitror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [arbiter, umpire], decide; think, believe. *
longitūdō, -inis, *f.* [longus, long], length, extent. 1
mille, *indecl. num. adj.*, a thousand; *neut. pl. as noun*, milia, -ium, thousands. *

passus, -ūs, *m.* [pandō, extend], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, $10\frac{1}{4}$ inches (five Roman feet); **mille passus**, *pl. milia passuum*, a Roman mile, 4851 feet. *

17. **ducentī**, -ae, -a (CC), *card. num. adj.* [duo, two + centum, hundred], two hundred. *

quadrāgintā (XL), *card. num. adj. indecl.*, forty. 2

lātītūdō, -inis, *f.* [lātus, wide], width, extent, breadth. *

centum (C), *indecl. card. num.*, a hundred. 4

octōgintā (LXXX), *card. num. adj. indecl.* [octō, eight], eighty. 3

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie open; stretch out, extend. 4

1. **addūcō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or draw to; induce, influence. *

auctōritās, -tātis, *f.* [auctor, producer], influence, authority. *

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite; affect, influence. *

2. **cōstituō**, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up; appoint; decide, determine. *

proficiscor, **proficisci**, **profectus sum**, *intr.* set out, start, depart. *

comparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready. *

3. **iūmentum**, -ī, *n.* [iungō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal. 2

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart. *

quam, *adv.*, as; with superlative, and with or without posse, as . . . as possible. *

maximus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of magnus*, great. App. 42], greatest, largest. *

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, quantity. *

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, *tr.* [emō, buy], buy, buy up. 1

16. **milia**: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

Chap. 3. *The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix conspires with other chiefs.*

2. **quae** . . . **pertinērent**, which pertained to setting out = which were necessary for their departure.

ad proficiscendum: construction? App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432: A. 502;

506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

comparāre, **coēmere**, **facere**, **cōfirmāre** all depend on *cōstituērunt*; they decided to get ready . . . to buy . . . to sow . . . and to establish . . .

3. **iūmentōrum**: especially oxen: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, a: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

quam maximum numerum, as great a number as possible or as many . . . as possible.

sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmenti suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad

4. sēmentis, -is, *f.*, sowing. 1
 iter, itineris, *n.* [eō, go], route, road; journey, march. *
 frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, grain crops. *
 5. suppetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum, *intr.* [sub + petō, seek, obtain], be near or at hand. 2
 pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace. 2
 amicitia, -ae, *f.* [amicus, friend], friendship. *
 cōnfirmō, 1, *tr.* [firmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen. *
 6. cōnfiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,

- tr.* [faciō, make], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish. *
 biennium, -nī, *n.* [bis, twice + annus, year], two years. 1
 satis, *adv. and indecl. adj. and noun*, enough, sufficiently; sufficient. *
 dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *tr.*, lead; consider, judge. *
 7. annus, -ī, *m.*, year. *
 profectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [proficiscor, set out], a setting out, departure. 3
 8. dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], pick out, choose. *
 lēgatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [lēgō, delegate], embassy, legation. *

4. ut cōpia suppeteret, in order that a supply might be at hand: mood? App. 225, a, 3: G.-L. 544, I; 545, 1, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

5. cum . . . cōnfirmāre: although the Helvetii were warlike, they wished to march peaceably while encumbered with their women and children and baggage train.

cum proximīs cīvitatibus: the Sequani, Allobroges, Haedui, etc. For case see App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 418; 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. Ad . . . cōnficiendās, lit. for these things to be completed = for completing these preparations. Study carefully this very common gerundive construction: App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628. Compare with it the gerund in l. 2. Notice that *ad* governs *rēs* and that *cōnficiendās* is an adjective in agreement with *rēs*. App. 157: G.-L. 289: A. 286: B. 234: H.-B. 320: H. 394.

But *cōnficiendās* must be translated as if it were a verbal noun (gerund) governing *rēs* as its object.

sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366, a (or 362, 1): H. 425, 4.

biennium . . . dūxērunt, they judged that two years were sufficient. *Dūcō* with this meaning is followed by indirect discourse: see note on 2, 5. The Helvetii intended to spend the years 60 and 59 in preparation and to leave home in the spring of 58.

7. in tertium . . . cōnfirmant, lit. they set their departure into the third year. We should say, set the third year for their departure.

cōnfirmant: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3. Caesar uses the historical present much more freely than English idiom permits it to be used in translating. It is best always to translate by a past.

8. sibi suscipit, he took on himself. For case see note on *omnibus*, 2, 5.



FIG. 48

VIEW FROM LAKE GENEVA TO MOUNT JURA

See map on p. 87. This view is from the east shore of Lake Geneva, across the city, down the course of the river, to the gap called Pas de l'Écluse, Mill Race Gorge. The Helvetii occupied the country to the right of that line; the Allobroges, that to the left. The other side of the mountains belonged to the Sequani.

cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Cataman-
10 taloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs
annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus

9. suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [su(b)s + capiō, take], take or lift up; undertake, take on oneself. *

Casticus, -ī, *m.*, Casticus (kās'tī-kūs). 1

Catamantaloedis, -is, *m.*, Cataman-
taloedis (kāt'ā-mān'tā-lē'dīs). 1

10. filiū, -lī, *m.*, son. 4

pater, -tris, *m.*, father. *

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, great;
pl., many. *

11. senātus, -ūs, *m.* [senex, old], a
body of old men; senate, originally
composed of old men; esp. the admin-
istrative council of Rome. *

populus, -ī, *m.*, the people; a people
or nation. *

Rōmānus, -ā, -um, *adj.* [Rōma,
Rome], Roman. *

amicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [amō, love],
friendly, well disposed; *m. as noun*,
a friend, an ally. *

9. Casticō: case? App. 115: G.-L.
346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B.
362, I, footnote 3, b: H. 426, 2.

10. filiō, Sēquanō: case? App. 95,
b: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1,
2, 3: H.-B. 316, 317, 2, a: H. 393, 1.

11. annōs: case? App. 130: G.-L.

336: A. 423, 2: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387,
II: H. 417.

obtinuerat, *had held*. Always be
suspicious of a translation which
sounds like the Latin word. It may
be right, but it is very likely to be
wrong. *Obtained* would be wrong here.

erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitatē suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, frātrī Diviciācī, qui eō tempore principātum in cīvitatē obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eiūque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. Perfācile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta

12. occupō, 1, tr. [ob + capiō, take], take possession of, seize, occupy. *

ante, adv., and prep. w. acc., before. *

13. item, adv., also, likewise. *
Dumnorig-, -igis, m., Dumnorig (dūm'nō-rīks). *

Haeduus, -a, -um, adj. (Cef), of the Haedui (hěd'ū-i); Haeduan; m. as noun, a Haeduan; pl., the Haedui, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. *

frāter, -tris, m., brother. *

Diviciācus, -ī, m., Diviciacus (dīv'ī-shī-ā'kūs), a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans. *

14. tempus, -oris, n., time. *

principātus, -ūs, m. [princeps, chief], chief place or position; leadership. 4

magis, adv., comp. [magnus, great], more; sup., maximē, especially, in the highest degree. *

plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, -eī, f., populace, common people. 3

15. acceptus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of accipiō, accept], acceptable, beloved by (with dative). 1

idem, eadem, idem (App. 58), dem. pron. [is, this, that], the same. *

cōnor, 1, intr., attempt, try. *

filia, -ae, f., daughter. 4

16. mātirimōnium, -nī, n., marriage; in mātirimōnium dare, give in marriage. 2

dō, dare, dedī, datum (App. 85), tr., give. 4

ille, illa, illud, gen. illius, dat. illi (App. 56), dem. pron., that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it. 4

probō, 1, tr. [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show. 3

cōnātum, -ī, n. [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. 1

ā senātū: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

amicus: an honorary title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests.

12. ut occupāret: (he persuaded Casticus) to seize; this clause is the object of persuādet in l. 9: mood? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1, 2: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565. Such clauses are given various names in the grammars. In this book they are called substantive clauses of desire. For the reason, see App. 228.

13. Dumnorigī depends on persuādet, l. 15.

Haeduō: the Haedui were the rivals of the Sequani for the leadership among the Gallic states. See map, and Int. 29.

quī: i. e., Dumnorig.

14. tempore: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423, 1: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

principātum, the leading position; but he was not a magistrate.

plēbī: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, a: H. 434, 2.

15. ut idem cōnārētur, to attempt the same thing; i. e., attempt to overthrow the constitutional government and make himself king.

ei: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

16. Perfācile . . . perficere, lit. he shows to them to accomplish the attempts to be very easy to do (factū, the supine)=he showed them that it was very easy to carry out the undertaking. esse: see note on 2, 5.

perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium quān tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possent; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

17. *perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum*, *tr.* [*faciō, make, do*], make or do thoroughly; achieve, accomplish. *

18. *nōn, adv.*, not; no. *
dubius, -a, -um, adj., uncertain, doubtful. 1

quān, conj., that not, but that; after negated words of doubt or hindrance, but that, that. *

multum [*acc. of multus, much*. App. 128, b], much; *comp.*, plūs, more; *sup.*, plūrimum, most, very; plūrimum posse, be most powerful. *

19. *exercitus, -ūs, m.* [*exerceō, train*], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. *

conciliō, 1, tr. [*concilium, assembly*], bring together; gain or win over, secure. 1

20. *ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.* [*ōrō, speak*], a speaking, speech, address. *

fidēs, -ei, f. [*fidō, confide*], faith, confidence; pledge, assurance. *

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n. [*iūs, right + iūrō, swear*], an oath. *

21. *per, prep. with acc.*, through; by means of, through the agency of. *

potēns, -entis, adj. [*pres. part. of possum, be able*], powerful, influential. 4

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong. 3

22. *spērō, 1, tr.* [*spēs, hope*], hope. 2

17. *proptereā quod obtentūrus esset*, lit. *because he was about to seize = because he intended to seize*. The clause is causal, like *proptereā quod absunt* in 1, 6; but the subjunctive is used because it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The second important fact about indirect discourse is that all subordinate verbs which in the direct form were either indicatives or subjunctives must be subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H. B. 534, 2, 1; 535, 2: H. 643.

18. *nōn . . . quān*, *that there was no doubt that*.

19. *sē illis conciliātūrum (esse)*, *that he would win for them*. *Esse* is usually omitted from the future infinitive.

illis: i.e., for Casticus and Dumnorix.

20. *Hāc ōrātiōne, by this argument*.

inter sē, to one another.

21. *rēgnō occupātō potīrī posse spērant*, *they hoped that after they had seized the royal power (each in his own land) they could get control of*. *rēgnō occupātō: case?* App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419: B. 227, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1. Latin is very fond of the ablative absolute; English very seldom uses its corresponding idiom, the nominative absolute. Never translate an ablative absolute literally. "The royal power having been seized" is wretched English.

per trēs populōs: i.e., the Helvetii, the Sequani, and the Haedui.

22. *Galliae: case?* App. 111: G.-L. 407, n. 2, d: A. 410, a: B. 212, 2: H.-B. 353: H. 477, 1, 3.

Chap. 4. *Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy, but escapes. His sudden death*.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē

1. indicium, -cī, *n.*, disclosure, information. 1

ēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. *

mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom. *

2. vinculum, -ī, *n.* [vinciō, bind], bond, fetter, chain. 3

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *tr.* [co + agō, lead], lead or bring together, collect; force, compel. *

3. damnō, 1, *tr.* [damnum, damage], declare guilty, condemn. 1

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty. 3

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *tr.* and *intr.*, follow; with poena, be inflicted. *

oportet, -ēre, -uit, —, *intr.*, *impers.*, it is necessary, proper; when translated as personal verb, must, ought. *

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. 4

cremō, 1, *tr.*, burn. 2

diēs, -ēī, *m.*, *f.*, day. *

4. dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dicō, say], speaking, pleading. 1

iūdicium, -cī, *n.* [iūdex, judge], judicial proceedings, trial. 4

5. familia, -ae, *f.*, household (including slaves); retinue. 2

decem (X), *indecl. card. num.*, ten. *

6. cliēns, -entis, *m.*, *f.*, client, dependent, retainer. 3

obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes, money], in debt; *m. as noun*, debtor. 1

7. eōdem, *adv.* [old dative of idem], to the same place. *

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or bring together, assemble. 4

nē (App. 188, b), *conj.* with subj., that . . . not, in order that . . . not. *

1. Ea rēs, *this conspiracy.*

Helvētiis: case? App. 114, c: G.-L. 345: A. 362; 365: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

per indicium: i. e., by informers.

Mōribus: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

2. ex vinculis, *in chains.* See note on 1, 15.

3. damnātum . . . cremārētur, *lit.* it was necessary for the punishment to follow (him) condemned that he should be burned with fire = if condemned it was necessary that the punishment of being burned be inflicted upon him. damnātum: use of participle? App. 283: G.-L. 667: A. 496: B. 337, 2, b: H.-B. 604, 3: H. 638, 2. ut cremā-

rētur is perhaps best taken as a substantive clause of desire in apposition with poenam.

Diē: gender? App. 30, a: G.-L. 64: A. 97, a: B. 53: H.-B. 101: H. 135: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230, 1: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

Diē . . . dictiōnis, *on the day set for the pleading of the case; lit. on the appointed day of the pleading of the case.* causae: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, note: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

5. ad, *about.*

7. per eōs, *by their help.*

nē . . . diceret, *to avoid pleading his case: mood?* App. 225, b: G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

eripuit. Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō,
 10 ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quā ipse sibi mortem cōsciverit.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta

8. ēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], wrest or take away; rescue, save. *

ob, *prep.* with *acc.*, on account of, for. *

incitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, put in motion], set in motion; arouse; exasperate. *

arma, -ōrum, *n.*, arms. *

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right; rights. *

exsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. 1

9. magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [magister, master], public officer, magistrate. *

10. morior, mori, mortuus sum, *intr.* [mors, death], die. 2

neque (nec), *conj.* [ne- + -que, and], and not, not; nor. *

suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion. *

11. mors, -tis, *f.*, death. 4

cōsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, *tr.* [sciscō, resolve], resolve upon;

sibi mortem cōsciscere, commit suicide. 2

1. post, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*: (1) as *adv.*, afterwards; (2) as *prep.*, after. *

nihilō [abl. of nihil, nothing], by no means; nihilō minus, nevertheless. 3

2. ubi, *adv.* and *conj.*: (1) of place, where; (2) of time, when. *

iam, *adv.*, now; ubi iam, as soon as. *

3. parō, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; parātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared. *

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town. *

4. duodecim, *card. num. adj.* [duo, two + decem, ten], twelve. 2

vicus, -ī, *m.*, hamlet, village. *

quadringenti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. 2

privātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, individual. 3

8. Cum cōnārētur . . . -que magistrātūs cōgerent, when the state was attempting . . . and the magistrates were collecting: mood? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

11. ut with the indicative means either as or when; here as.

quin . . . cōsciverit, that he committed suicide.

Chap. 5-8. Caesar thwarts the efforts of the Helvetii to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.

Chap. 5. The Helvetii burn their dwellings. They secure allies.

1. nihilō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

2. cōnantur: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

ut exeant, (namely) to go forth, is a substantive clause of desire in apposition with *id*.

3. ad eam rem, for the enterprise.

parātōs is the adjective.

esse, were: indirect discourse.

oppida, vicōs, aedificia: notice the absence of conjunctions, and see note on 1, 3.

4. numerō: case? App. 149: G.-L.

aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum 5 portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent

5. aedificium, -cī, *n.* [aedificō, build], building, house. *

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum, *tr.*, set fire to, burn. *

praeterquam, *adv.*, besides, except. 1

6. portō, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, take. 3

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [com (b) + ūrō, burn], burn up. 1

domus, -ūs (App. 29, *d*), *f.*, house; home. *

reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [redeō, return], return. 1

spēs, -eī, *f.*, hope, expectation. *

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift; take away, remove. *

7. periculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, peril. *

subeō, -īre, -īi, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go, App. 84], come or go under; undergo, endure. 4

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month. 3

8. molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, grind. 1

cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [cibus, food], pertaining to food; *n. pl.* as noun, provisions; molita cibāria, meal, flour. 2

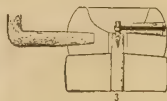


FIG. 49

A GALLIC MILL

The small cut is a drawing with rested handle and axis pin. The grain was poured into the hollow, and worked its way down through the narrow space around the central pin, until it got between the two stones.

quisque, quidque, and quisque, quaeque, quodque, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each. *

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *tr.* [ex + ferō, carry, App. 81], bring or carry out, carry or take away. 2

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *tr.*, order, bid, command. *

397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

ad, about.

5. sēcum: position of cum? App. 52, *a*: G.-L. 413, R. 1: A. 144, note 1: B. 142, 4: H.-B. 418, *a*: H. 175, 7.

6. portātūrī erant, *lit.* they were about to take = they intended to take.

ut parātiōrēs essent, in order that they might be more ready.

domum reditiōnis, of returning home. domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, *b*: H.-B. 450, *b*: H. 419, 1.

spē sublātā: translate the ablative absolute by a temporal clause: when hope was taken away.

7. ad . . . subeunda: construction?

App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628.

trium mēnsium cibāria, supplies for three months. mēnsium: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, *b*: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. Napoleon III estimated that 8500 wagons, drawn by 34,000 draft animals, were needed to transport the necessary provisions and baggage of the Helvetic host: even this is probably an underestimate.

8. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 352: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

domō: case? App. 134, *a*: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, *b*: H.-B. 451, *a*: H. 462, 4.

Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī
 10 cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vicisque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs pro-
 ficiscantur; Boiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in
 agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnābant, receptōs
 ad sē sociōs sibi asciscunt.

9. Rauracī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cg), the Rauraci (raw'rā-sī). 2

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Tulin-
 gi (tū-līn'jī), a *Gallīc* tribe east of the
Rhine. 4

Latobrigī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Lato-
 brigi (lāt'ō-brī'jī), a *Gallīc* tribe east of
 the *Rhine*. 3

ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus sum, *intr.*, make use
 of, use; adopt, accept. *

10. cōnsilium, -lī, *n.*, plan, design;
 course of action. *

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.*
 [ūrō, burn], burn up. 1

ūnā, *adv.* [ūnus, one], together,
 along with. *

11. Boi, Boiōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Boi
 (bō'ī), a *Gallīc* tribe once very powerful
 in southern Germany and Cisalpine
 Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii
 were afterwards settled by Caesar as
 indicated on the map. *

9. utī . . . proficiscantur, *lit.* that
 having used the same plan, their towns
 . . . having been burned, they set out
 along with them=to adopt . . . to
 burn . . . and to set out.

10. cōnsiliō: case? App. 145: G.-L.
 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429:
 H. 477.

11. Boiōs is the object of *asciscunt*:
 App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172:
 H.-B. 390: H. 404.

trāns Rhēnum: i. e., east of the
 Rhine, where they had been exposed
 to German attacks.

12. receptōs . . . asciscunt, *lit.*
 the Boi, received to themselves [ad sē],
 they admit to themselves [sibi] as
 allies=they received among their people

12. Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, per-
 taining to Noricum (a country be-
 tween the Danube and the Alps),
 Norican. 2

trānsēō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* and *intr.*
 [ēō, go. App. 84], go across or over,
 cross; march through; pass through;
 move, migrate. *

Nōreia, -ae, *f.* (Ck), Noreia (nō-rē'-
 yā), a town in Noricum, now Neu-
 markt. 1

oppugnō, 1, *tr.* [ob + pugnō, fight],
 fight against, attack, besiege, assault,
 storm. *

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.*
 [capiō, take], take or get back, recover;
 admit, receive. *

13. socius, -cī, *m.*, companion;
 confederate, ally. *

asciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum,
tr. [ad + sciscō, approve], approve;
 admit or receive (as allies). 2

and joined to themselves as associates
 the Boi, who had, etc.

13. sibi: case? App. 116, I: G.-L.
 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376,
 a: H. 429, 1.

As previously explained, each of the
 most common principles of syntax is
 referred to three times in the notes on
 I, 1-29. At the end of the chapter in
 which the third reference to any con-
 struction has been given, attention is
 called to the fact; and if the pupil has
 not yet mastered the construction, he
 should do so immediately.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Direct object

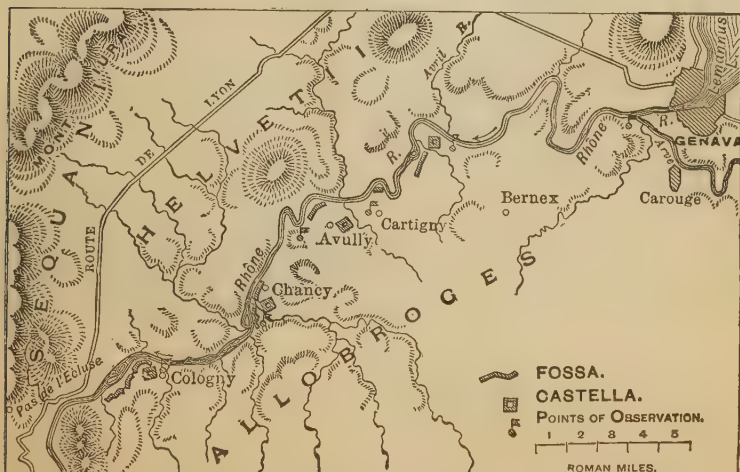
Ablative of specification

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter

1. omnīnō, *adv.* [omnis, all], altogether; in all, only. *

duo, *duae*, duo, *card. num. adj.*, two. *

2. difficilis, -e, *adj.* [facilis, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. 3



THE RHONE BETWEEN GENEVA AND MT. JURA

The Helvetii could either (1) follow the narrow road between the river and Mt. Jura, if the Sequani permitted; or (2) cross the Rhone, if Caesar permitted.

Caesar fortified the southern bank of the river for almost the entire distance, as described in Chap. 8. The points where fortifications are indicated on the map are those which needed the strongest works.

Chap. 6. *The Helvetii decide to march through the Roman Province.*

1. Erant, *there were.*

quibus itineribus, *by which.* Caesar sometimes repeats the antecedent in the relative clause, where English usage requires its omission. Case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, a: H. 476.

quibus . . . possent, *by which they could leave home,* is a clause of char-

acteristic: App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535, a: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, a: H. 591, 1.

domō: case? App. 134, a: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, b: H.-B. 451, a: H. 462, 4.

2. ūnum (*iter*) and alterum (*iter*) are appositives of *itinera duo*: App. 95, b: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282, a: B. 169, 1, 2, 5: H.-B. 317, 2; 319, I, a: H. 393, 4. Study the two routes on the map above.

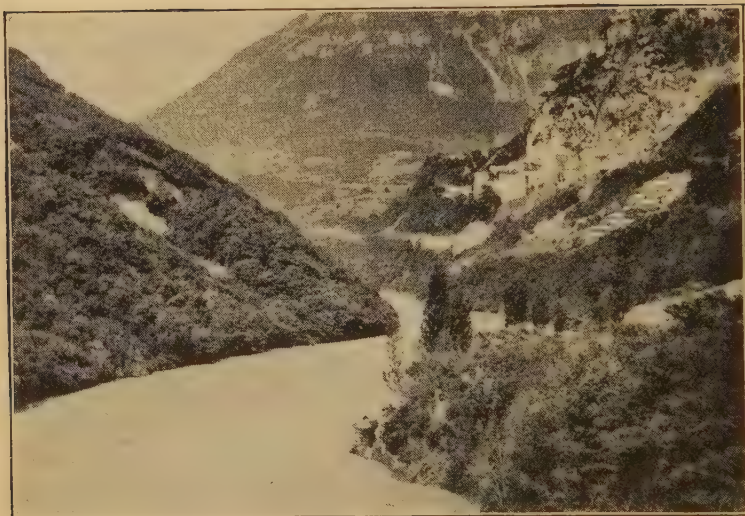


FIG. 50

PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE—MILL RACE GORGE

The route lay along the right bank of the river. The road was bad, and could be made impassable by the Sequani if they chose.

montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carri
 dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile
 5 perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram,

3. *vix*, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely. 4

quā, *adv.* [= *quā viā*], by which way or road; where. *

singulī, *-ae, -a*, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each; one at a time, single. *

4. *impendeō, -pendēre, —, —*, *intr.* [in + *pendeō*, hang], overhang, impend. 2

5. *perpaucī, -ae, -a*, *adj.* [*paucī*, few], very few, but very few; *m. as noun*, a very few men. 4

3. *vix* would usually stand between *quā* and *dūcerentur*: see note on 1, 8. Its unusual position attracts attention; therefore it is emphatic.

4. *dūcerentur*, *could be drawn*. This is another subjunctive of characteristic, but it differs from *possent* in that here the subjunctive mood has

the potential meaning *could*: App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2. The place referred to is Pas de l'Écluse: see map, page 87.

ut possent: mood? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2, a: H. 570.

5. *prohibēre*: supply *eōs*.

multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullīs locīs vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē 10 vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, existimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectionem comparā-

6. multō, [abl. of multus, much], by far, much. 4

facilis, -e, adj. [faciō, do], easy. 4
expeditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of expediō, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed. *

7. Allobrogēs, -um, m. (Dfg), the Allobroges (ā-lōb'rō-jēz). *

nūper, adv., recently, not long ago. 3
pācō, 1, tr. [pāx, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify. *

8. fluō, fluere, flūxī, —, intr., flow, run. 2

vadum, -ī, n., shallow place; ford. *

9. Genava, -ae, f. (Cg), Genava (jĕn'ā-vā), now Geneva. 3

10. pōns, pontis, m., bridge. *

11. nōndum, adv. [nōn, not + dum], not yet. *

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good; (with animō) friendly. *

12. videō, vidēre, vidī, visum, tr., see; in pass., be seen; seem, appear. *
existimō, 1, tr. [aestimō, estimate], think. *

vel, conj., or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or. *

vis, vis (App. 27), f., force, strength. *

13. eō, ire, ī (ivī), itum (App. 84), intr., go, proceed, march, pass. *

pator, patī, passus sum, tr. and intr., endure; permit, allow. *

6. multō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

7. nūper pācātī erant: about three years before, after a desperate struggle to regain their independence.

8. nōn nullīs locīs, at several points. Why is the preposition in not used? App. 151, b: G.-L. 385, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.

vadō trānsitur, lit. is crossed by a ford = is fordable.

Extrēmum: i.e., it is on the northern frontier.

9. est might more naturally have stood before Genava.

10. Allobrogibus . . . persuāsūrōs existimābant, they thought they should either persuade the Allobroges. persuāsūrōs (esse) is the principal verb in indirect discourse: see note on per-

facile esse, 2, 5. In direct discourse their thought was persuādēbimus, we shall persuade.

11. quod vidērentur is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse: App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314: H.-B. 534, 2, I; 535, 2: H. 643.

bonō animō, of a friendly disposition or well disposed. Case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

12. vel coāctūrōs (esse), or should compel them: in the same construction as persuāsūrōs.

ut eōs ire paterentur, to let them pass: a substantive clause of desire, the object of both persuāsūrōs and coāctūrōs.

13. Omnibus rēbus comparātis, when they had made everything ready.

tīs, diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.
 15 Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.



FIG. 51
THE RHONE

At such a point the Helvetii could have crossed easily. Compare Fig. 54, p. 96.

14. *rīpa*, -ae, f., bank (of a stream). *
conveniō, -venīre, -venī, -ventum,
tr. and intr. [veniō, come], come to-
 gether, assemble, meet. *

15. *v.*, abbr. for *quintus*, -a, -um,
ord. num. adj. [quinque, five], fifth. 3

Kal., abbr. for *Kalendae*, -ārum, f.,
 the Calends, the first day of the Roman
 month. 1

Apr., abbr. for *Aprīlis*, -e, adj., of
 April, April. 2

L., abbr. for *Lūcius*, Lucius (lū'-
 shyūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Pisō, -ōnis, m., Lucius Calpurnius
 Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō),
 father-in-law of Caesar, and consul 58
 B.C. 2

A., abbr. for *Aulus* (aw'lūs), a Ro-
 man praenomen. 1

Gabinus, -nī, m., Aulus Gabin-
 ius (aw'lūs gā-bin'i-ūs), consul 58
 B.C. 1

14. *quā diē*: see note on *quibus*
itineribus, l. 1.

quā diē omnēs conveniant, on
 which they should all assemble. Mood?
 App. 225, a, 1: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531,
 2: B. 282, 2: H.-B. 502, 1: H. 590.

15. *a. d. v. Kal. Apr.* = *ante diem*

quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs = the
 twenty-eighth of March. For ex-
 planation, see App. 297-300; but only
 one other such date is found in
 Caesar.

L. Pīsōne . . . cōsulibus: see note
 on 2, 2.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre 5 legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi

1. Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Gaius Julius Caesar (gā'yūs jū'lyūs sē'zār), conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries. *

nūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntius, messenger], announce, report. *

2. mātūrō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [mātūrus, ripe], ripen; make haste, hasten. 2 urbs, urbis, *f.*, city; especially, the city, Rome. 2

3. ulterior, -ius, *adj., comp.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farther, ulterior. *

4. perveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come] come through; come to, arrive at, reach. *

5. miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier. *

imperō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [in + parō, procure], command, order; demand from, levy upon. *

6. legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [legō, choose], a legion. *

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scis-sum, *tr.* [scindō, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. 2

THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition

Purpose clauses

Chap. 7. Caesar hastens to Gaul and delays the Helvetii by a pretext.

1. Caesarī: he had been consul in the year 59, and at the end of his year of office he had immediately become proconsul of Gaul. See Int. 11, 12. He was at this time near Rome, preparing to leave for his province. The news merely hastened his movements.

cum nūntiātum esset: mood? App. 240; 242, *a*: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, *B*: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

id, this fact, is explained by its appositive, the clause eōs . . . cōnārī, that they were planning, etc. eōs: case? App. 123: G.-L. 203, R. 1; 343, 2: A. 397, *e*: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. cōnārī: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 589; 591: H. 642.

2. ab urbe: to a Roman "the city" was Rome.

quam maximīs potest itineribus, lit. by (as great) day's journeys as the

greatest he can = by as long day's journeys as possible. quam maximīs itineribus would have meant the same thing. These two idioms are very common in Caesar. We learn from Plutarch that Caesar traveled about ninety miles a day. itineribus: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. Galliam ulteriōrem, farther Gaul; i.e., the Gaul that lay across the Alps; so called to distinguish it from the northern part of Italy, which the Romans called nearer or Cisalpine Gaul.

4. ad Genavam: use of preposition? App. 131, *a*: G.-L. 337, R. 4: A. 428, *a*: B. 182, 3: H.-B. 453, 1: H. 418, 4.

Prōvinciae imperat, he levied upon the province.

5. militum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

in Galliā: case? App. 151: G.-L. 385: A. 426, 3: B. 228: H.-B. 433: H. 483.

6. legiō: this was the tenth, afterwards Caesar's favorite legion. On the organization of a legion see Int. 33.

dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs civitatis, cuius lēgātīōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent sibi
 10 esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs

7. adventus, -ūs, m. [veniō, come], coming, arrival, approach. *

certus, -a, -um, adj., certain, sure; **certiōrem facere**, inform; **certior fieri**, be informed. *

lēgātus, -ī, m. [lēgō, delegate], one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy; legate. *

8. mittō, mittere, mīsi, missum, tr., send. *

Nammeius, -ī, m., Nammeius (nā-mē'yūs). 1

9. Verucloetius, -tī, m., Verucloetius (vē'r'ū-klē'shyūs). 1

prīnceps, -ipis, adj. [prīmus, first + capiō, take], taking the first place; chief. *

10. sine, prep. with abl., without. *

ūllus, -a, -um, gen., ūllius (App. 32), **adj.**, any. *

maleficiū, -cī, n. [malum, evil + faciō, do], evil-doing, harm, injury. 4

11. nūllus, -a, -um, gen., nūllius, **adj.** [ne- + ūllus, any], not any, no. *

rogō, 1, tr., ask, request. *

12. voluntās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], wish; consent, approval. *

licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est, intr., impers., it is lawful, permitted, or allowed. *

memoria, -ae, f. [memor, mindful], memory; **memoriā tenēre**, remember. *

teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, tr., hold, keep. *

13. Cassius, -sī, m., Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū'shyūs kăsh'yūs lōn-jī'nūs), consul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the Tigurini. 3

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, tr. [ob + caedō, cut, kill], cut down, kill. *

7. certiōrēs factī sunt, lit. were made more certain = were informed. **certiōrēs**: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 317, 3; 320, III: H. 394.

8. nōbilissimōs: used as a noun.

9. quī dicerent, who were to say = to say: a relative clause of purpose.

sibi esse in animō, lit. that there was to them in mind = that they had in mind or intended. **sibi**: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

11. quod habērent is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. See note on 3, 17.

rogāre (sē), that they asked. The speakers said to Caesar *rogāmus*, we ask.

ut sibi liceat, that it be permitted them or that they be allowed. For mood see App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 530, 2: H. 563, 1; 565.

eius voluntāte, with his consent: an ablative of accordance.

12. tenēbat: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I. *

13. occīsum, pulsum, missum are perfect passive infinitives in indirect discourse, and depend on *memoriā tenēbat*, which is equivalent to a verb of knowing. The perfect infinitive represents the action as past at the time of *tenēbat*; that Lucius Cassius had been slain, etc.

pulsuin et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstīmābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad

14. pellō, *pellere*, *pepulī*, *pulsum*, *tr.*, beat, defeat, rout. *

sub, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*: (1) with *acc.*, with verbs of motion, under, beneath; (2) with *abl.*, of position, under, beneath. *

iugum, -ī, *n.* [*iungō*, join], yoke. *
concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.* and *intr.* [*cēdō*, go], go away, yield; allow, permit. *

putō, 1, *tr.*, think, consider, believe. *

15. *inimicus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in-* + *amicus*, friendly], unfriendly, hostile. 3
facultās, -tātis, *f.*, power; opportunity, chance. *

16. *temperō*, 1, *intr.*, restrain or control oneself, refrain. 2

iniūria, -ae, *f.* [*in-* + *iūs*, right], wrong, injustice; injury, violence. *

17. *tamen*, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless. *

spatium, -tī, *n.*, space, distance; length of time, hence, time. *

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [*cēdō*, go], go or come between, intervene. 4

dum, *conj.*, while; till, until. *

18. *respondeō*, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *tr.* and *intr.*, reply, answer. *

ab Helvētiis: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

14. *sub iugum*, under the yoke. This "yoke" was made of three spears, two planted in the ground and the third fastened across their tops. Under this the soldiers of the captured army were compelled to pass, in token of submission and degradation.

concēdendum (*esse*), that permission ought to be granted.

15. *hominēs temperātūrōs* (*esse*), that men would refrain. The future infinitive shows that a future indicative was used in the direct form. Caesar thought *nōn temperābunt*, they will not refrain.

animō: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

datā facultāte may be translated by a conditional clause: *if an opportunity should be given*.

16. *itineris faciendī*: construction? App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503; 504: B. 339, 1: H.-B. 612, I; 613: H. 623; 626.



FIG. 52

A GALLIC COIN

This is a rather good copy of a Greek coin; the charioteer and his horses are easily recognized. But when other Gauls copied such copies instead of the originals, which they could not easily get, the figures grew worse and worse. Compare with this coin Figs. 58, 61, and others in this book, and see p. 8.

17. *dum militēs convenirent*, until the soldiers should arrive.

18. *diem*, time.

sē sūmptūrum, that he should take.

ad dēliberandum: construction? App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432, R.: A. 502; 506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. rever-
20 terentur.

↓ 8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque
quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen
Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum
ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XIX mūrū in altitūdinem

19. dēliberō, 1, tr. [libra, balance],
weigh well; consider, deliberate. 2
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum,
tr. [sub + emō, take], take away,
take. *

sī, conj., if. *

quis, quid, and quī, quae, quod
(App. 61 and 62): (1) *interrog. pron.*,
who? which? what? (2) *indef. pron.*,
especially after sī, nisi, nē, num, any-
one, anything, any. *

volō, velle, volui, — (App. 82), tr.
and *intr.*, wish, be willing, want. *

Idūs, -uum, f., the Ides: the
fifteenth of March, May, July, and
October, and the thirteenth of other
months. 1

20. revertō, -vertere, -verti, -ver-
sum, *intr.*, used in the perfect tenses,
and revertor, -verti, -versus sum,
intr., used in the tenses formed on the
present stem [vertō, turn], turn back,
come back, return. *

1. intereā, adv. [inter, between], in
the meantime, meanwhile. 4

3. influō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *intr.*
[fluō, flow], flow into, empty into. *

4. ūndēviginti (XIX), *card. num.*
adj., *indecl.* [ūnus, one + dē, from +
viginti, twenty], nineteen. 2

mūrus, -ī, m., a wall. *

altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus, high, deep],
height; depth. *

19. sī quid vellent, if they wanted
anything. Why quid? App. 174: G.-
L. 315: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276,
1: H. 186.

reverterentur, they should come
again. This is a principal clause in
indirect discourse, but the subjunctive
is used instead of the infinitive be-
cause an imperative was used in the
direct form. Caesar said sī quid vultis,
revertimini, if you want anything, come
again. The third (see notes on 2, 5 and
3, 17) important fact about indirect
discourse is that all imperatives of the
direct form become subjunctives in the
indirect form: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A.
588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate nouns and adjectives

Agreement of adjectives

Partitive genitive

Subject of infinitive

Substantive clauses of desire

Causal clauses with quod, etc.

Infinitive in indirect discourse

Gerund

Gerundive

Chap. 8. Caesar prevents the Hel-
vetii from crossing the Rhone.

1. legiōne militibusque: case? App.
143: G.-L. 401, R. 1: A. 409: B. 218,
10: H.-B. 423, a: H. 476.

2. ā lacū . . . ad montem: see map,
page 87.

4. mīlia . . . perdūcit, for nineteen
miles he constructed a wall sixteen feet
in height, and a trench. Napoleon
III believed that the banks of the
river were so steep for most of the
distance that no artificial fortifica-
tions were needed, and the map on
page 87 shows the only places where he

pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia 5
dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre
cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat
cum lēgātis vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre

5. pēs, pedis, *m.*, the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length. *

sēdecim (XVI), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., sixteen. 2

fossa, -ae, *f.* [*pf. part. fem. of fodiō*, dig], trench, ditch. *

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead through or along, conduct; construct. 4

opus, operis, *n.*, work; military work or works. *

praesidium, -dī, *n.* [praesideō, guard], guard, garrison. *

6. dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -posi-

tum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place apart; distribute, station. 2

castellum, -ī, *n.* [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. *

commūniō, 4, *tr.* [mūniō, fortify], fortify strongly. 1

quō, *conj.* [*abl. case form of quī*, who, which], in order that, so that, that. *

invītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant. *

8. veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *intr.*, come, arrive. *

negō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, say no, refuse, say . . . not. 1

believed that Caesar constructed the wall and trench—a total of about three miles. There are good reasons for believing that Napoleon was wrong, and that the bank was fortified for nearly the whole distance.



FIG. 53

SECTION OF CAESAR'S WALL

The "section of Caesar's wall," shown in Figure 53, makes clear the method of constructing this wall. The top of the bank was cut down so as to make a steep front sixteen feet high: this was the *murus*. The earth which was dug out was simply thrown down the hill. A line of palisades was set on

top, to serve as a breastwork for the Roman soldiers.

mīlia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387: H. 417.

5. pedum: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

6. dispōnit, stationed at several points. Caesar had too few men to man the entire line. He therefore stationed detachments (*praesidia*) in *castella*, at suitable points, and of course had pickets all along the line. At an alarm the nearest detachments were to run to the threatened point.

quō facilius posset: when is *quō* used in purpose clauses? App. 225, a, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, 2, a: B. 282, a: H.-B. 502, 2, b: H. 568, 7.

sī cōnārentur, if they should try.

sē invītō: construction? App. 150: G.-L. 409: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1.

8. negat sē posse dare, he said that he could not give.

mōre et exemplō: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.



FIG. 54

THE RHONE JUST BELOW GENEVA

At this point crossing would have been difficult

et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare;
 10 et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit.] Helvētīi
 eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs,
 aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn

9. *exemplum, -ī, n.*, example, precedent. 2

10. *ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, tr.* [obs + *tendō*, stretch], stretch before; show; tell, declare. *

11. *dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.* [*iaciō*, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; disappoint. *
nāvis, -is, f., ship, boat. *

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctum, tr., join or unite together. 4

ratis, -is, f., raft. 2

complūrēs, -a, adj. [plūs, more], several, many. *

12. *parvus, -a, -um, adj.*, little, small; *comp.*, minor, minus, lesser, smaller; *sup.*, minimus, -a, -um, least. *

10. *sī . . . cōnentur*, if they should try to use force.

prohibitūrum (sē . . . esse), that he would stop them.

11. *eā spē dēiectī*, lit. cast down from this expectation = disappointed in this expectation. *spē*: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 402: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2, footnote: H. 464.

nāvibus iūctīs, by joining together boats, and thus making a pontoon bridge. See Fig. 57, p. 107.

12. *alii*: we should expect some corresponding word in the previous phrase, *nāvibus . . . factīs*. The meaning is that some of the Helvetii tried to cross by boats and rafts, and others by fords.

numquam interdiū, saepius noctū sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

15

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem

13. numquam, *adv.* [ne+umquam, ever], not ever, never; nōn numquam, sometimes. 3

interdiū, *adv.* [diēs, day], during the day, by day. 1

noctū, *adv.* [nox, night], by night. 4
perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rumpum, *tr. and intr.* [rumpō, break], break through, force a passage. 1

14. mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [mūniō, fortify], fortifying; fortification. *

conkursus, -ūs, *m.* [concurrō, run], a running together. 2

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. *

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, *tr.* [pellō, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. 4

15. cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. 1

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [sistō, stand], abandon, cease, give up. 4

1. relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, *tr.*, leave; *pass.*, be left, remain. *

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route. *

2. propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of. *

angustiae, -arum, *f.* [angustus, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place or pass. *

3. sponte, *abl. (obsolete nom., spōns)*, *f.*, of one's own accord; by one's own efforts. 2

13. sī possent cōnātī, *having tried (to see) whether they could.* For this use of sī, see App. 264, b: G.-L. 460, 1, b; 467: A. 576, a: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, a: H. 649, II, 3.

14. concursū: see note on dispōnit, l. 6.

repulsī, *were repulsed and.*

15. cōnātū is an ablative of separation.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Accusative of extent of space

Ablative of separation

Ablative of means

Ablative absolute

Chap. 9-15. *The Helvetii march out through the territory of the Sequani. Caesar, with a reënforced army, cuts to pieces a fourth of them and follows the rest.*

Chap. 9. *The Helvetii obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.*

1. ūna via, *only the way.* This was through Pas de l'Écluse, the way mentioned in 6, 2.

quā, *and by this.* Case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

Sēquanīs invītīs, *if the Sequani should refuse: ablative absolute.*

2. cum possent: mood? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

suā sponte, *by their own efforts or by themselves.*

3. Dumnorīgem: this is the Dumnorix who is mentioned in 3, 13 as having conspired with Orgetorix. Although that plot had failed he was still seeking a chance to make himself king.

Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.
 5 Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiam in mātirimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs
 10 impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum

4. dēprecātor, *m.* [dēprecor, plead for], mediator, intercessor. 1

impetrō, 1, *tr.*, obtain (*by request*), succeed in obtaining (*one's request*). *

5. grātiā, -ae, *f.* [grātus, pleasing], favor, influence, popularity. *

largitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [largior, bribe], bribery. 1

8. novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new; rēs novae, *pl.*, a change of government, revolution. *

studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, be eager or zealous; desire, strive after. *

beneficiū, -cī, *n.* [bene, well + faciō, do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. *

9. obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, *tr.* [stringō, tie], bind, hold under obligations. 2

itaque, *conj.* [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. *

10. obses, -idis, *m. and f.*, hostage. *

1. renūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, announce], bring back word, report, announce. *

4. ut impetrārent is a clause of purpose.

eō dēprecātōre, *lit.* *he being mediator* = *by his mediation*.

5. grātiā: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

6. Helvētiīs: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, a: H. 434, 2.

8. rēbus: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, b: H. 426, 1.

suō . . . obstrictās, *lit.* *to hold bound by his kindness* = *to keep under obligations*.

10. obsidēs: all through Caesar's narrative we find that states were obliged to bind themselves to carry out their agreements by giving hostages. The hostages were usually the children of the most influential men of the state, and were liable to enslave-

ment or death if the state failed to fulfill its agreement.

11. utī dent perficit, *lit.* *he brings it about that they give* = *he made them give*.

Sēquanī, Helvētiī: supply *obsidēs dent*; i.e., the Sequani bound themselves not to stop the Helvetii, etc. The clauses are substantive clauses of desire, objects of the implied phrase *bound themselves*.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative with special verbs

Dative with adjectives

Chap. 10. Caesar brings more troops from Italy.

1. Caesarī: case? App. 114, c: G.-L. 345: A. 362; 365: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quāe civitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locis patentibus maximēque frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcērat T. Labiēnum lēgātum

2. **Santonī, -ōrum, or Santonēs, -um, m.** (Dcd), the Santonī (sān'tō-nī), or Santones (sān'tō-nēs). 3

3. **Tolōsātēs, -ium, m.,** the Tolosates (tōl'ō-sā'tēz), the people of Tolosa (Ed). 1

4. **intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr.,** understand; see, perceive. *

5. **bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj.** [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. 3

6. **patēns, -entis, adj.** [pateō, be

open], open, unobstructed, accessible. 1
frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj. [frūmentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful, productive of grain. *

7. **T., abbr. for Titus** (tī'tūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Labiēnus, -ī, m., Titus Atius Labienus (tī'tūs ā'shyūs lā'bi-ē'nūs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. *

renūntiātur: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3. Caesar had sent out spies and scouts to report the movements of the Helvetii.

Helvētiis: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. **esse** is the subject of *renūntiātur*.

2. **facere** is the subject of *esse*.

3. **nōn longē:** the distance is really about 130 miles, but the Helvetii would be more dangerous in the territory of the Santones than in their own country, because they would no longer be hemmed in by natural barriers. Caesar had reason to fear that either the Helvetii or the Gauls whom they should drive from their homes would raid the Province; and since it was his duty to protect the Province he was justified in forcing the Helvetii to remain at home. Besides, as he tells us elsewhere, he did not want the Germans to settle in the vacated land of the Helvetii.

4. **Id sī fieret,** if this should be carried out, is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, depending on fu-

tūrum: mood? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314: H.-B. 534, 2, II: H. 643. Caesar's thought was, if this shall be carried out (future indicative), it will, etc.

magnō . . . futūrum ut habēret, that it would be (attended) with great danger to the Province, that it should have.

prōvinciae is a genitive.

5. **ut habēret** is the subject of *futūrum*: mood? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

inimicōs is here used as a noun, and therefore a genitive depends on it. If used as an adjective it would govern the dative.

locis is probably a dative depending on *finitimōs*, though it may be an ablative of place.

7. **mūnitiōnī:** case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370, a, note 1: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, a: H. 429, 1.

lēgātum: *legate*: see Int. 38. The common translation "lieutenant" gives a totally false idea of the position. "Lieutenant general" comes nearer to it.

praeficit; ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemā-
 10 bant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem
 Galliam per Alpēs erat cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire con-
 tendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturigēs, locīs supe-
 riōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Com-
 plūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris
 15 prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiorum ulteriōris prōvinciae

8. praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make before; place over, put in command of. 4

Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy, sometimes including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula. *

9. ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place. *
 cōscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write together in a list, levy, enroll, enlist. *

circum, *prep. with acc.* [circus, a circle], around, about, near. 2

Aquileia, -ae, *f.* (Cj), Aquileia (āk'wī-lē'yā). 1

hiemō, 1, *intr.* [hiems, winter], pass the winter, winter. *

10. hiberna, -ōrum, *n.* [sc. castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. *

8. Ītaliā: i.e., Cisalpine Gaul. itineribus: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

9. cōscribit: he did this without authority from Rome. He had been given only four legions—the one in Transalpine Gaul and the three at Aquileia. But the situation was more serious than the Roman Senate realized. He therefore increased his army to six legions, perhaps 24,000 men. With these legions and some auxiliary troops he had to oppose 92,000 fighting men, according to the Gallic records given in Chap. 29.

10. hibernis: case? App. 134, a: G.-L. 390, 1: A. 426, 1: B. 229: H.-B. 408, 1: H. 461.

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead out. *

11. Alpēs, -ium, *f.* (Cghi), the Alps. *

quīnque (V), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, five. 4

12. Ceutronēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Ceutrones (sū'trō-nēz). 1

Graiocelī, -ōrum, *m.* (Dg), the Graioceli (grā-yōs'ē-lī). 1

Caturigēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Caturiges (kāt'ū-rī'jēz). 1

superior, -ius, *adj.* [comp. of superior, high. App. 44], upper. *

14. Ocelum, -i, *n.* (Dg), Ocelum (ōs'ē-lūm). 1

citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), nearer, hither. *

15. Vocontii, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Vocontii (vō-kōn'shyī). 1

quā proximum iter erat, *where there was the shortest route.* He chose the pass of Mont Genève, and the route is shown on the map facing p. 67. He did not wish to return to Geneva, for by this time the Helvetii had left their country. It is estimated that Caesar spent two months in securing his reënforcements.

11. legiōnibus: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 420: H. 473, 1.

13. Complūribus . . . proeliīs: English order, *his pulsīs* (ablative absolute) *complūribus proeliīs* (ablative of means).

15. prōvinciae: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

11. Helvētīi iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant. eōrūnque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse

16. septimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [septem, seven], seventh. *

inde, adv., from that place, thence. *

17. Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. (Def), the Segusiavi (sĕg'ū-shī-ā'vī). 1

extrā, adv., and prep. with acc., out of, outside of. 1

18. primus, -a, -um, adj., sup., first. *

2. trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, tr. [trāns + dūcō, lead], lead across, lead over. *

3. populor, 1, tr., devastate, ravage, lay waste. 4

4. dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēn-sum, tr. [fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect. *

5. auxilium, -li, n., help, assistance, aid. *

ita, adv., so, thus, in this way or manner. *

mereō, and mereor, 2, tr., deserve, merit. 3



FIG. 55

A COIN OF THE SEGUSIAVI

17. in Segusiāvōs: i.e., into that part of their territory which lies between the Rhone and the Arar. Caesar encamped on the heights above the city of Lyons. Labienus must have rejoined him there.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Possessive genitive

Indirect object

Dative with compound verbs

Ablative of place from which

Ablative of accompaniment

Historical present

Subordinate clause in indirect discourse

Chap. 11. Three states ask Caesar to protect them against the Helvetii.

1. iam, by this time.

angustiās: at Pas de l'Écluse.

2. pervēnerant: i.e., the head of their column had crossed the Arar, though its rear was some miles from that river. They had traveled only about a hundred miles during the two months of Caesar's absence. Much of this time, however, had been spent in negotiations with the Sequani. Their line of march must have been nearly eighty miles in length when moving along narrow roads, and their progress was necessarily slow, especially at the pass. For their route see the map facing page 67.

3. cum possent: causal.

suaque, and their property.

4. rogātum: form and use? App. 295: G.-L. 435, n. 3: A. 509: B. 340, 1, a: H.-B. 618, a: H. 632, 1; 633.—

5. omnī tempore, on every occasion.

Ita meritōs esse, that they had so deserved, depends on the idea of "saying" which is implied in rogātum.

ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessārī et cōsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile
 10 ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi

6. paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost. *
 cōspectus, -ūs, *m.* [cōspiciō, look at], sight, view. *

vāstō, 1, *tr.* [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. 3

liberī, -ōrum, *m.* [liber, free], the free members of the household (as opposed to slaves); children. *

7. servitūs, -ūtis, *f.* [servus, a slave], slavery, servitude. *

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead away, carry off. 1

expugnō, 1, *tr.* [pugnō, fight], take or carry by storm, capture by assault. *

dēbeō, 2, *tr.* [dē + habeō, have], have or keep from someone; owe; with *inf.*, ought, must. *

8. Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Ambarri (ām-bār'ī). 2

necessārīus, -a, -um, *adj.* [necesse,

necessary], necessary; *m. as noun*, kinsman, friend. *

cōsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sanguis, blood], of the same blood; *m. as noun*, kinsman, relative. 3

9. dēpopulor, 1, *tr.* [populor, lay waste], lay waste, ravage. 2

10. hostis, -is, *m., f.*, enemy; *pl.*, the enemy. *

11. possesiō, -ōnis, *f.* [possideō, possess], possession, property. 4

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight. *

12. dēmōnstrō, 1, *tr.* [mōnstrō, show], point out; declare, say. *

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, past; except, besides. *

solum, -i, *n.*, ground, soil. 1

nihil, *n., nom. and acc. sing.*, nothing. *

13. exspectō, 1, *tr.* [spectō, look at], look out for, await, expect. *

6. ut agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint, that their lands ought not to have been devastated. dēbuerint: mood? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

nostrī=Rōmānī. It agrees with exercitūs.

9. sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs, that their lands had been laid waste and that they, etc. In a number of deponent verbs the perfect participle is used with a passive meaning.

10. Allobrogēs quī . . . habēbant: most of the Allobroges were south of the Rhone and were not troubled; but the map shows that some were north, and on the route of the Helvetii.

12. sibi nihil esse reliquī, that to them there was nothing of a remainder =that they had nothing left. sibi: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. reliquī is used as a noun and is a partitive genitive: App. 101, a: G.-L. 369, R. 2: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 2, a: H.-B. 346, a: H. 440, 5, note.

13. Quibus: use of relative? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 303, 2: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

nōn exspectandum (esse) sibi, that it was not to be waited by him=that he must not wait. exspectandum: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-

statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.

15

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs

14. statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum, *tr.* [status, position], put in position, set up; determine, resolve. * fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, luck; property, estate. *

cōsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tum, *tr.* [sūmō, take], take together or all at once; consume, destroy. 3

1. Arar, Araris (*acc.* -im), *m.* (DC-*fg*), the Arar (ā'rār), the modern Saone. 4

2. incrēdibilis, -e, *adj.* [in- + crē-

dibilis, credible], incredible; extraordinary. 4

lēnitās, -tātis, *f.* [lēnis, gentle], smoothness, gentleness. 1

3. oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. 3

uter, utra, utrum, *gen. utrius* (App. 32), *interrog. adj.*, which of two. 1

iūdicō, 1, *tr.* [iūdex, a judge], pass judgment on; decide, determine. *

4. linter, -tris, *f.*, skiff, rowboat. 2
explōrātōr, -ōris, *m.* [explōrō, search out], explorer, scout, spy. *

B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237. sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 215, 2: A. 374, a: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

14. dum pervenirent, until they should arrive.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative of possessor

Relative instead of demonstrative

Chap. 12. Caesar destroys the Tigurini, the rear guard of the Helvetii.

1. Flūmen est Arar, there is a river (named) the Arar.

2. incrēdibilī lēnitāte, of remarkably slow current: descriptive ablative.

ut possit: mood? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

Why is the present tense used? Strictly because Caesar meant *can*, not *could*. Every subjunctive tense has a meaning and is used because that meaning is needed in the sentence; however, subjunctives are almost invariably used in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses. Learn once for all this very important rule, and the

distinction between principal and historical tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, footnote 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

3. in . . . fluat, in which direction it flows; mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

4. ratibus, lintribus: ablatives of means.

trānsībant: at a point about twelve miles north of Caesar's camp. Excavations in this vicinity have brought to light numerous graves which give evidence of hasty interment, as if after a battle.

5. trēs . . . trādūxisse, that the Helvetii had already conveyed three-fourths of their troops across this river. The verb trādūxisse governs two objects—partēs depending on the meaning of the simple verb dūcō, flūmen depending on the meaning of the preposition trāns: App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 388, b: B. 175, 2, a, 1: H.-B. 391, 2: H. 406.



FIG. 56

THE SLUGGISH ARAR (SAONE)

id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquā esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.] Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs aggressus magnam
 10 partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunť atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinūs;

6. quārtus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [quattuor, four], fourth. *
 citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. 3

7. vigilia, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], wakefulness; a watch, *one of the four equal divisions of the night.* *

castrum, -ī, *n.*, fort; *pl.*, castra, -ōrum, fortified camp, camp. *

9. impeditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of impediō*, hinder], hindered, impeded; at a disadvantage. *

inopināns, -antis, *adj.* [*in- + opīnāns*, expecting], not expecting, unaware, off one's guard. 2

aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *tr.* [*ad + gradior*, step], advance to or against; attack. 4

10. concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [*caedō*, cut], cut down, slay, kill. 3

mandō, 1, *tr.* [*manus*, hand + *dō*, give], give into one's hands; intrust, commit; command. *

11. silva, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest. *
 abdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [*dō*, put], put away; hide, conceal. *

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, district, canton. *
 Tigurinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to the Tigurini; *m. pl. as noun*, Tigurini (Cg), the Tigurini (tīg'ū-rī'nī). 2

6. citrā: i.e., on the east.

7. dē tertiā vigiliā, just after (the beginning of) the third watch=just after midnight.

10. mandārunť = mandāvērunt: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

in silvās: from the English point of

nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. ¹ Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset, patrum nostrorum memoria L. Cassium consulem interfecerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita siue casu siue consilio deorum immortalium, ¹⁵ quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Quam in re Caesar non solum publicas sed etiam privatas iniurias ultus est, quod eius socer L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio quo Cassium interfecerant. ²⁰

12. nam, conj., for. *
quattuor (IV), card. num. adj., in-decl., four. *

14. interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tum, tr. [faciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. *

15. siue and seu, conj. [sī, if +ve, or], or if; or; whether; siue . . . siue, either . . . or, whether . . . or. *

casus, -ūs, m. [cadō, fall], what be-falls; accident, chance. *

deus, -ī (nom. pl., dī; dat. pl., dīs), m., god, deity. 4

immortalis, -e, adj. [in- + mortālis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. 3

16. insignis, -e, adj. [signō, mark], marked, remarkable. 4

calamitas, -tātis, f., misfortune, disaster, calamity. *

17. persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solū-tum, tr. [solvo, pay], pay in full; suffer (punishment). 1

18. solum, adv. [sōlus, alone], only, merely. *

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., of the state or people, public. *

sed, conj., but. *

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, tr.,

avenge; punish. 3

19. socer, -erī, m., father-in-law. 1

avus, -ī, m., grandfather. 2.
Pisō, -ōnis, m., Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō), killed in 107 B.C. 1

view we might expect the ablative (place where), but the verb implies motion into—"ran into and hid."

13. cum exisset (for exiisset, from exire): mood? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, 1, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

memoria: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

14. Cassium, sub iugum: see 7, 13-14.

16. quae pars . . . ea, that part which. Not infrequently the antecedent is thus expressed in the relative clause instead of the principal clause, and the relative clause then precedes.

populo: the compound inferō governs the indirect object.

17. princeps persolvit, was the first to pay.

19. Note the accumulation of appositives—Pisōnis with socerī, Pisōnem with avum, lēgātum with Pisōnem.

socerī: in the year 59 Caesar had married Calpurnia, daughter of the Lucius Calpurnius Piso mentioned in 6, 15 as one of the consuls for the year 58. See Fig. 9, page 27.

20. quō Cassium: the same verb interfecerant belongs in the relative clause and in the principal clause.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of time

Result clause

Subjunctive cum clause

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequi posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen
5 trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem

2. cōsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow up; pursue. *

cūrō, 1, *tr.* [cūra, care], care for, provide for; *with gerundive*, have, order. 4

3. repentinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. 3

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, alarm. *

4. viginti (XX), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, twenty. *

aegrē, *adv.* [aeger, ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. 3

6. Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Divico (dīv'ī-kō). 2

7. Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius. 1

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.*, set in motion, drive; do, transact; discuss, speak. *

Chap. 13. *The Helvetii haughtily ask for peace.*

1. ut would usually stand before *reliquās*.

2. pontem faciendum cūrat, *he had a bridge made*; construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b. 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622. This bridge was probably of boats, and was made by the chief of engineers: see Int. 40 and Fig. 57.

in Ararī, *over the Arar*.

4. cum intellegerent, *since they saw, or better, seeing*. The object of *intellegerent* is *illum fēcisse*, *that he had done . . . that which*, etc. *id* is the object of *fēcisse*. ut trānsirent, (*namely*) *the crossing of the river*, is in apposition with *id*: mood? App. 229, a: G.-L. 553, 1: A. 568: B. 297, 1: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 4.

5. lēgātōs, *envoys*.

6. Dīvicō: he was an old man, for the battle was fought 49 years before.

7. Sī: The rest of this chapter and the whole of the next are in indirect

discourse. If the teacher wishes the class, at this point, to make a more detailed study of the construction than is called for by the notes, he will find help in the direct form of these speeches as printed after Book VII.

Remember the important facts already learned—(1) that in every declarative sentence the principal verb will be an infinitive, (2) that in every subordinate clause the verb will be a subjunctive, and (3) that every original command will be a subjunctive. Usually the future infinitive shows that the speaker used a future indicative, a present infinitive shows that he used a present indicative, and a perfect infinitive shows that he used a past tense of the indicative. But note that not every infinitive stands for an indicative in the direct form; for all infinitives in the direct form are retained unchanged in the indirect. Note that every subjunctive follows the rule of sequence of tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511:



FIG. 57

SOLDIERS CROSSING A PONTOON BRIDGE

This is a bridge such as Caesar must have constructed across the Arar. The boats are disproportionately small, as such objects always are on Trajan's Column. See p. 8. The floor of the bridge is built across the boats and has a low railing at the side. The soldiers carry either standards (Int. 44) or packs of baggage (Int. 37).

itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset
atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequi persevērāret, remi- 10
niscerētur et veteris incommōdī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae

10. *sīn*, *conj.* [*sī*, if], if however, but if. 1

persequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow through; pursue, follow up. 2

persevērō, 1, *intr.*, persist, persevere. 1

reminiscor, -i, *intr.* [*mēns*, mind], call to mind, remember. 1

11. *vetus*, -eris, *adj.*, old, former. *
incommodum, -i, *n.* [incommodus, inconvenient], disaster, defeat. 1

prīstinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, former, previous, preceding. 4

A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, footnote 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

Sī . . . faceret, if . . . should make.

9. *Helvētiōs* is the subject of *itūrōs* and *futūrōs*.

eōs is the subject of *esse*.

ubi cōstituisset, where Caesar should have decided = where Caesar should decide.

10. *sīn persevērāret*, but if he

should persist in following them up with war.

reminiscerētur, he should remember. Since this is a principal clause the use of the subjunctive shows that the sentence is not declarative: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

11. *et . . . et*, both . . . and.

incommōdī: i.e., the defeat of Cassius. Case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A. 350, c: B. 206, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī quī flūmen trānsissent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret
 15 aut ipsōs dēspiceret.] sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

12. imprōvisō, *adv.* [imprōvisus, unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. 1

adorior, -oriri, -ortus sum, *tr.* [orior, arise], rise against, attack. *

13. ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum (App. 81), *tr.*, bear, carry, bring. *

14. magnopere, *adv.* [magnus, great + opus, work], with great labor; greatly, exceedingly. *

tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tribūtum, *tr.*, distribute; attribute, ascribe. 2

15. dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. 2

maior, maius, *adj.* [comp. of magnus, great,] greater; *m. as noun*, maiōrēs, ancestors. *

16. discō, discere, didici, —, *tr. and intr.*, learn, be taught. 1

dolus, -ī, *m.*, trick, treachery. 2
 insidiae, -ārum, *f.* [sedeō, sit], a sitting or lying in wait; ambush; artifice, crafty device. *

17. nitor, nitī, nixus sum, *intr.*, rest or rely upon. 1

quārē, *adv.* [quī + rēs, thing]: (1) *interrog.*, why? (2) *rel.*, wherefore; therefore. *

committō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], allow, permit. *

cōsistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], take a stand. *

18. interneciō, -ōnis, *f.* [necō, destroy], extermination, utter destruction. 2

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name. *

19. prōdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give forth; transmit, hand down. 2



FIG. 58

A COIN OF THE BELLOVACI

12. Quod adortus esset, *as to the fact that he had attacked.*

14. nē suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret, *lit. he should not greatly ascribe to his own prowess = he should*

not overrate his own prowess. For mood see note on *reminisceretur*, I. 10.

15. ipsōs, sē: i.e., the Helvetii.

16. ut magis contenderent quam nīterentur, *that they strove . . . rather than relied: a result clause.*

dolō: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

17. Quārē, etc.: the meaning of the last sentence is, "Do not let the spot on which we stand become famous as the scene of your bloody defeat."

ubi cōstitissent, *where they had taken their stand.*

THIRD REFERENCE:

Substantive clause of result or fact

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae obliviscī

1. dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dubitō, hesitate], hesitation. 1

2. commemorō, 1, *tr.* [memorō, call to mind], remind one of; mention. *

3. graviter, *adv.* [gravis, heavy], heavily; seriously; graviter ferre, take to heart, be annoyed or vexed (*at*). *

meritum, -i, *n.* [mereor, deserve], desert, merit. 2

4. accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [ad+cadō, fall], fall to or upon; happen, occur. *

aliquis, -quid, and aliquī, -qua,

-quod, *indef. pron.* [quis, who? App. 62, a], some; any. *

cōsciū, -a, -um, *adj.* [sciō, know], conscious, aware. 1

5. caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *intr.*, be cautious, be on one's guard. 1

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], entrap; deceive. 1

6. timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid. *

7. contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, affront, indignity, insult. 3

obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum, *intr.*, forget. 1

Chap. 14. Caesar proposes terms, which the Helvetii refuse.

1. His: i.e., the envoys.

Eō is an ablative of cause, explained by the clause quod . . . tenēret.

minus dubitātiōnis, less hesitation. dubitātiōnis: partitive genitive.

2. eās rēs: i.e., the defeat of Cassius.

3. eō . . . quō: case? App. 148, a: G.-L. 403: A. 414, a: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

meritō: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

4. quī sī, if they. Caesar uses the singular in referring to the collective noun *populus*, but English prefers the plural. Notice that *populus* is invariably singular unless it means *nations*.

iniūriae, of wrong-doing: case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote 1: H. 451, n. 2.

sibi, lit. conscious to themselves, should not be expressed in translating.

5. nōn fuisse difficile, it would not have been difficult.

eō is an ablative of cause, explained by the clause quod . . . putāret.

dēceptum: supply *populum Rōmānum . . . esse*.

6. commissum (supply *quicquam . . . esse*), that anything had been done.

ā sē, by them; i.e., the Roman people. quārē timēret, because of which they should be afraid. The subjunctive was used in the direct form: see App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 513, 2.

7. timendum, lit. that it must be feared—that they need fear: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237.

Quod sī, but if.

contumēliae: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A. 350, b: B. 206, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eō invitō iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Haeduōs, quod
 10 Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexassent, memoriam depōnere posse? Quod suā victoriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniuriās intulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtatiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere

8. **num**, *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply.* 1

recēns, -*entis*, *adj.*, recent, late. 3

9. **temptō**, 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon. 4

10. **vexō**, 1, *tr.*, harass, plunder, overrun. 3

depōnō, -*pōnere*, -*posuī*, -*positum*, *tr.* [*pōnō*, place], lay down or aside, put away. 3

11. **victōria**, -*ae*, *f.* [victor, victor], victory. *

tam, *adv.*, so, so very. *

insolenter, *adv.*, unusually; arrogantly, insolently. 1

glōrior, 1, *intr.* [glōria, glory], glory in, boast of. 1

12. **diū**, *adv.*, for a long time, long. *

impūne, *adv.* [in- + *poena*, punishment], without punishment. 1

admiror, 1, *tr.* [miror, wonder at], wonder, be surprised. 1

13. **cōsuēsscō**, -*suēscere*, -*suēvī*, -*suētum*, *intr.* [suēsscō, become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, a), be accustomed, be wont. *

enim, *conj.*, for. *

14. **commūtatiō**, -*ōnis*, *f.* [commūtō, change], a changing, change. 2

doleō, 2, *intr.*, feel pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. 2

scelus, -*eris*, *n.*, crime, wickedness. 1

8. **vellet**: the subject is still *populus Rōmānus*.

num posse, *they could not, could they?* or simply *could they?* This is a principal verb, but not in a declarative sentence. For mood see App. 268, II: G.-L. 651, R. 1: A. 586: B. 315, 2: H.-B. 591, a: H. 642, 2.

iniuriarum depends on *memoriam*: App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

quod, *the fact that*. These are substantive *quod* clauses, in apposition with *iniuriarum*. In direct discourse such clauses employ the indicative: App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.

eō invitō, *lit. they being unwilling = against their will*.

11. **Quōd . . . admirārentur** are substantive *quod* clauses, subjects of *pertinēre*.

victoriā: i.e., the defeat of Cassius. For case see App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

12. **sē intulisse**, *that they* [the Helvetii] *had inflicted*.

eōdem pertinēre, *tended to the same result*.

13. **Cōsuēsse** = *cōsuēvisse*. **quō gravius doleant**, *that men might suffer more keenly*.

14. **doleant**: so far the subjunctive tenses have all been imperfects and past perfects, because the indirect discourse depends on the past verb *respondit*. But it is quite common for the writer of indirect discourse to use the tenses that were used in the direct form instead of following the rule of sequence of tenses. Thus presents and perfects are used to the end of the chapter. This use of tenses is called *representatiō*: see App. 270, a.



PLATE II—ROMAN OFFICERS AND SOLDIERS

German prisoners
Legionary in marching order

Officer reporting suc-
cessful engagement

Commander in chief and officers
German standards (on ground)

Lictors
Musicians

eōrum ulciscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturni- 15
ōrem impūnitātem concēdere. (Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī
obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs
intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum
intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem
esse factūrum.) Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus 20
suis institūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint;
eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō
discessit.

15. *secundus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [sequor, follow], following; successful, prosperous. *

interdum, *adv.* [dum, while], at times, sometimes. 2

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diū, long], long. 1

16. *impūnitās*, -tātis, *f.* [in- + poena, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. 1

17. *polliceor*, 2, *tr.* and *intr.*, promise, pledge. *

19. *satisfaciō*, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.* [satis, enough + faciō, make],

make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy. 2

21. *instituō*, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up; train, educate. *

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [ad + capiō, take], take or receive to oneself, accept. *

22. *testis*, -is, *m., f.*, witness. 2

respōnsum, -ī, *n.* [respondeō, answer], reply, answer. 2

23. *discēdō*, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, depart. *

15. *hīs* is the antecedent of *quōs*, l. 14.

secundiōrēs rēs, a considerable degree of prosperity.

diūturniōrem, quite long. The comparative may often be rendered by such words as *too*, *rather*, *quite*, all of which imply comparison with some unexpressed standard.

16. *concēdere* depends on *cōnsuēsse*: *were wont to grant to those whom they wished to punish*.

Cum sint, by itself, might be either causal or adversative. Notice that the *tamen* which follows shows which it is: App. 239: G.-L. 587: A. 549: B. 309, 3: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

17. *ab iīs*: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

factūrōs: supply *eōs* . . . *esse*, that they would do what they promised.

18. *Haeduīs*, like *Allobrogibus*, de-



FIG. 59

A COIN OF THE HAEDUI

Litav is probably the Litavicus mentioned several times in Book VII.

depends on *satisfaciant*: *if they should give satisfaction to the Haedui*.

ipsis: i.e., the Haedui.

19. *sēsē*: i.e., Caesar.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Objective genitive

Ablative of agent

Ablative of cause

Ablative of degree of difference

Adversative cum clause

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter 5 faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īsecūtī aliēnō locō

1. posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [post, after], following, next. *

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *tr.*, set in motion, move. *

2. equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [equitō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. *

4. praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-

sum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send before or in advance. *

5. cupidē, *adv.* [cupidus, desirous], desirously, eagerly. 2

agmen, -inis, *n.*, a marching column; army (in marching order); primum agmen, the van; novissimum agmen, the rear. *

īsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon. *

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [alius, other], of or belonging to another; unfavorable. 4

Chap. 15. The Helvetii march on, followed by Caesar. His cavalry are defeated.

1. castra movent, march on. The map facing p. 67 shows the route followed by the Helvetii. They could not march due west toward the Santones because the country is too mountainous. They therefore marched north, then northwest, intending to reach the Liger (Loire) and march down its valley.

2. equitātum: see Int. 48.

3. quem coāctum habēbat, which he had collected, almost = quem coēgerat: App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

4. quī videant: a purpose clause. quī is plural, agreeing with the collective noun equitātum.

quās . . . faciant, in what direction the enemy were marching. faciant: mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

5. cupidius, too eagerly.

locō: case? App. 151, b: G.-L. 385, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.



Fig. 60

A ROMAN AUXILIARY CAVALRYMAN

This is the monument of an auxiliary cavalry standard bearer. His standard is not the *vexillum* , which was commonly used by the cavalry. Note the absence of stirrups, which the ancients seldom used.

cum equitatū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublāti Helvētīi, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis 10 habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus, populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum

6. paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, few; as *noun*, few, a few, *persons or things*. *

7. cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. 3

quīngentī, -ae, -a (D), *card. num. adj.* [quīque, five + centum, hundred], five hundred. 3

8. eques, -itis, *m.* [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry. *

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so much, so great. *

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout. 2

audācter, *adv.* [audāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. *

9. subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], halt, make a stand. 1

10. lacessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, harass, provoke, attack. *

coepī, coepisse (App. 86 and 86, a), *tr.*, began, commenced. *

11. praesentia, -ae, *f.* [praesēns; praesum, be present], the present moment; in praesentiā, for the present; then. 1

rapīna, -ae, *f.* [rapiō, seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. 1

pābulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [pābulor, forage], getting fodder, foraging. 1

populātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [populor, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. 1

12. circiter, *adv.* [circus, circle], about, near. *

quīndecim (XV), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [quīque, five + decem, ten], fifteen. *

6. paucī dē nostrīs, a few of our men. The rest fled at the instigation of their commander, the treacherous Dumnorix, as Caesar afterwards learned.

8. equitibus: ablative of means.

9. novissimō . . . lacessere, to challenge our men to battle with their rear guard. Both agmine and proeliō are ablatives of means.

10. satis habēbat . . . prohibēre, considered it sufficient . . . to keep. Caesar had never before commanded so large an army or met so strong an enemy. His army was outnumbered by an enemy whom the Romans had long dreaded. Defeat meant the total destruction of his army. Noth-

ing was lost by postponing the battle. Therefore he wisely decided to wait until he could choose his own time and place.

12. Ita utī, in such a way that, introduces a result clause.



FIG. 61

A COIN OF THE AULERCI EBUOVICES

primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum
15 interesset.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent
pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia
sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo

14. *amplus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, large;
amplius, *comp.* as *noun*, more, a
greater distance. *

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [quīn-
que, five], five each, five. 1

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, six
each, six. 1

15. *intersum*, -esse, -fui, -futūrus,
intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be or lie
between, intervene. 3

1. *interim*, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the
meantime. *

cotīdiē, *adv.* [quot, how many +
diēs, day], daily, every day. *

2. *pūblicē*, *adv.* [pūblicus, public],
publicly, on behalf of the state. 2

flāgitō, 1, *tr.*, demand. 1

frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold;
pl., cold seasons. 1

3. *pōnō*, *pōnere*, *posuī*, *positum*,
tr., place, put; *pass.*, be situated. *

modo, *adv.* [modus, measure], only,
merely; nōn modo . . . sed etiam,
not only . . . but also. *



FIG. 62

GALLIC HELMETS

14. *primum*: supply *agmen*.

amplius is the subject of *interesset*.

quīnīs aut sēnīs, five or six (each
day).

mīlibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398:
A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of place

Chap. 16-20. Caesar learns that
Dumnorix is treacherously thwarting
his plans, but pardons him.

Chap. 16. The Haedui fail to fur-
nish supplies to Caesar.

1. *Interim*: i.e., during the fifteen
days of marching.

Haeduōs frūmentum: for the two
objects see App. 125, a: G.-L. 339, a:
A. 396: B. 178, 1, a: H.-B. 393, foot-
note: H. 411.

quod essent polliciti, which [as he
said] they had promised. This subor-
dinate clause employs the subjunctive
to imply that Caesar made the state-
ment in demanding the grain. It is
indirect discourse; but, because there
is no verb of saying and the clause
does not depend on an accusative and
infinitive, it is called "implied indirect
discourse": App. 273: G.-L. 628: A.
592, 3, n.: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, a:
H. 649, 1.

2. *flāgitāre* = *flāgitābat*. Note that
its subject is a nominative. Such an
infinitive is called an historical infini-
tive. See App. 281: G.-L. 647: A.
463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 601.

3. *sub septentriōnibus*, lit. under
the northern stars = toward the north.

frumenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frumentō quod flūmine 5 Ararī nāvibus subvexerat proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē frumentum militibus mētīri oportēret, convocātis eōrum 10 principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in

4. mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe. 3
pābulum, -i, *n.*, fodder, pasture.
age. 2

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at any rate;
nē . . . quidem, not even. *

6. subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vec-
tum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], bring or carry
up. 1

7. āvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum,
tr. [vertō, turn], turn away from. *
nōlē, nōlle, nōlui, — (App. 82), *tr.*
and *intr.* [ne- + volō, wish], not wish,
be unwilling. *

8. cōferō, cōferre, contuli, collā-

tum, *tr.* [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring
or get together, collect, gather. *

comportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry
together, collect. *

adsum, adesse, affui, affuturus,
intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be present,
be at hand. 3

9. instō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum,
intr. [stō, stand], stand upon or near,
be at hand. 4

10. mētior, mētīri, mēnsus sum, *tr.*,
deal or measure out, distribute. 2

convocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call to-
gether, summon, assemble. 4

4. frumenta: the plural means
grain standing in the fields.

mātūra nōn erant: it was now late
in June.

pābuli: for the cavalry horses and
pack animals. The cattle of the Hel-
vetii had swept the country clean.

5. frumentō ūtī: case? App. 145:
G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B.
429: H. 477.

flūmine: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389:
A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, a:
H. 476.

6. nāvibus, in boats, is an ablative
of means.

iter āverterant: see map facing p.
67.

8. Diem ex diē, day after day: diem
is an accusative of duration of time.

dūcere, put him off, is an historical
infinitive.

cōferri, comportārī, adesse (*frū-
mentum*) are the objects of the his-
torical infinitive dicere: they said that
it was being collected, etc.

9. Ubi intellēxit: mood? App. 237:
G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B.
554; 557: H. 602.

sē diūtius dūcī, that he was being
put off too long.

quō diē, on which. See note on 6, 1.

10. frumentum mētīri oportēret,
lit. for him to measure out grain was
right=he had to distribute grain. This
was done twice a month. oportēret:
subordinate clause in indirect dis-
course. Its subject is frumentum
mētīri.

convocātis principibus, summoning,
etc. Remember that the ablative
absolute must not be translated liter-
ally.

hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātūī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitāe necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod,
 15 cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.



FIG. 63
GALLIC BITS

12. *Liscus*, -ī, *m.*, *Liscus* (līs'kūs). 4
summus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of superus*, high. App. 44], highest; chief, supreme. *

praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *intr.* [*sum*, be. App. 77], be before or over, be in command of, be at the head of. *

13. *vergobretus*, -ī, *m.*, vergobret (vēr'gō-brēt). 1

creō, 1, *tr.*, create; elect, choose. 1
annuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*annus*, year], yearly. 1

vita, -ae, *f.* [*cf. vivō*, live], life. 4

14. *nex*, *necis*, *f.*, death. 1

potestās, -tātis, *f.* [*potēns*, powerful], ability, power, authority. *

accūsō, 1, *tr.* [*ad + causa*, cause,

case], bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. 2

15. *emō*, *emere*, *ēmī*, *ēptum*, *tr.*, take; buy, purchase. 2

16. *propinquus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*prope*, near], near, close at hand. *

sublevō, 1, *tr.* [*levō*, lift], lift or raise up; assist, aid. 3

17. *praesertim*, *adv.*, particularly, especially. *

precēs, *precum*, *f.*, prayers, entreaties. 2

18. *dēstituō*, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr.* [*statuō*, set up], set or place aside, forsake, desert. 1

19. *queror*, *querī*, *questus sum*, *tr. and intr.*, complain. *

12. *Dīviciācō et Liscō*: in apposition with *principibus*.

summō . . . *praeerat*, held the highest office.

quem vergobretum: for the two objects see App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, a: H. 410, 1.

14. *in suōs*, over his fellow-citizens.

quod nōn sublevētur, because [as he said] he was not aided. This is implied indirect discourse: see note on l. 1, and App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, a: H. 649, 1.

15. *possit*: supply *frūmentum*.

16. *tempore* is an ablative of time; *hostibus* is an ablative absolute.

17. With *praesertim*, *cum* is almost always causal.

magnā ex parte, in great part.

eōrum precibus: see the complaint of the Haedui in 11, 5-7.

18. *quod sit dēstitūtus*: see note on l. 14.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of the way (route)

Ablative with ūtor, etc.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod antea tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōn nullōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōferant quod dēbeant: 5 Praestāre, sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab isdem nostra

1. **tum**, *adv.*, then, at that time. *
dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last. 3
 2. **anteā**, *adv.* [**ante**, before], formerly, before, previously. 2
taceō, 2, *tr. and intr.*, be silent; keep silent, pass over in silence. 3
prōpōnō, -**pōnere**, -**posuī**, -**positum**, *tr.* [**pōnō**, place], place or put forward; relate; expose. *
 3. **valeō**, 2, *intr.*, be strong; **plūrimum valēre**, be very powerful. *
privātīm, *adv.* [**privātus**, private], privately, as private citizens. 1
 4. **sēditiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sēditiō**, sedition], seditious, mutinous. 1

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in-** + **probus**, good], unprincipled, treasonable, reckless. 1

5. **dēterrēō**, 2, *tr.* [**terreō**, frighten], frighten away or off, prevent, deter. 3

7. **perferō**, -**ferre**, -**tulī**, -**lātum**, *tr.* [**ferō**, bear], bear or carry through; submit to, endure. *

dubitō, 1, *intr.* [**dubius**, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate. *

8. **superō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**super**, over], go over; conquer, overcome. *

9. **libertās**, -**tātis**, *f.* [**liber**, free], freedom, liberty, independence. *

Chap. 17. *Liscus tells Caesar that a powerful faction among the Haedui is working against the Romans.*

1. Supply *id* as the antecedent of *quod* and the object of *prōpōnit*.

2. The direct form of the indirect discourse in this and the following chapters will be found at the end of the text.

Esse nōn nullōs, *that there were some.*

3. **valeat**: for tense see note on 14, 14.

quam magistrātūs: the ablative without *quam* might have been used instead of this nominative: App. 139, *a*: G.-L. 296, R. 1: A. 406; 407: B. 217, 1, 2: H.-B. 416: H. 471, 1.

5. **dēterrēre nē cōferant**, *were preventing . . . from bringing.*

6. **Praestāre . . . sint ēreptūrī**, (*saying*) *that it was better*, etc. This is the indirect form of the malcon-

tents' *sēditiōsa ōrātiō*. The subject of *praestāre* is *perferre*.

sī (Haeduī) iam obtinēre nōn possint, *if they could no longer hold*. The Haedui claimed the leadership among the Gallic states. See Int. 29.

7. **neque (sē) dubitāre**, *nor did they doubt; i.e., they said we do not doubt*.

8. **quīn Haeduīs sint ēreptūrī**, *that they would wrest from the Haedui*. **Haeduīs**: dative with the compound verb of separation: App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, *d*: H.-B. 371: H. 429, 2. **sint ēreptūrī**: form? App. 75: G.-L. 129: A. 194, *a*: B. 115: H.-B. 162: H. 236. Mood? App. 229, *d*: G.-L. 555, 2: A. 558, *a*: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, *b*: H. 595, 1.

superāverint, *should conquer*, is a perfect subjunctive, for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.

unā: the adverb.

10 cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūtiārī. Hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus Caesarī ēnūtiārīt, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmīttit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. Dicit 5 liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā,

11. coērcēō, 2, *tr.*, restrain. 1
necessariō, *adv.* [*abl. of neces-*
sarius, necessary], necessarily, un-
avoidably. *

12. quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*: (1) *in-*
terrog., how much? how great? (2) *rel.*,
as much as. *

2. dēsīgnō, 1, *tr.* [signō, mark],
mark out; mean, indicate. 1

sentiō, sentiēre, sēnsī, sēnsū, *tr.*,
perceive; realize, know. 4

3. iactō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of iaciō*, throw],
throw repeatedly; talk about, dis-
cuss. 2

celeriter, *adv.* [celer, swift], quickly. *
concilium, -li, *n.*, gathering, assem-
bly, council. *

dīmīttō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,
tr. [mittō, send], send in different di-
rections, send away or off, dismiss. *

4. retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,
tr. [teneō, hold], hold back, detain,
keep. *

quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quae-
situm, *tr. and intr.*, inquire, ask. *

sōlus, -a, -um, *gen. sōlius* (App. 32),
adj., alone, only. *

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [conveniō, come
together], a coming together, meet-
ing. 1

5. liberē, *adv.* [liber, free], freely,
without restraint, boldly. 1

sēcrētō, *adv.*, separately, privately,
secretly. 2

6. reperīō, reperīre, repperī, re-
pertum, *tr.* [pariō, procure], find; find
out, discover, ascertain. *

vērū, -a, -um, *adj.*, true. 4
audācia, -ae, *f.* [audāx, bold], bold-
ness, daring. 1

10. Supply *ea* as the antecedent of
quae and as one of the subjects of
ēnūtiārī.

11. sē: i.e., Liscus, the chief magis-
trate.

12. coactus, *under compulsion*.
quantō . . . fēcerit is an indirect
question, the object of *intellegere*.

Chap. 18. Liscus tells Caesar of the
power of Dumnorix, and that he favors
the Helvetii.

2. plūribus praesentibus, *when*
many were present.

4. ex sōlō, *from him in private*.

Most verbs of asking may take two
accusatives (see note on 16, 1), but
the person is more commonly ex-
pressed by the ablative with a prepo-
sition: App. 125, *a*: G.-L. 339, *a*, R. 1:
A. 396, *a*: B. 178, 1, *a*: H.-B. 393, *c*:
H. 411, 3.

6. reperit esse vēra, *he learned that*
this was the truth; explained by the
indirect discourse which follows.

Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, *that Dum-*
norix was the very man or that it was,
in fact, Dumnorix. By putting to-
gether what is said of Orgetorix in 4,
5-6, and the following description of

magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam 10 rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud

7. liberālitās, -tātis, *f.* [liber, free], freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. 2

8. portōrium, -rī, *n.*, toll; import and export duty. 2

9. vectigal, -ālis, *n.*, tax, tribute; *pl.*, revenues. 2

pretium, -tī, *n.*, price. 2
redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmtum, *tr.* [emō, buy], buy up, purchase. 3

10. liceor, 2, *intr.*, bid (at an auction). 2

contrā, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*: (1) as *adv.*, against him or them; (2) as *prep.*, against. *

audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, dare, risk, venture. *

nēmō, *acc.* nēmīnem, *m., f.* [ne- + homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. *

11. familiāris, -e, *adj.* [familia, household], personal, private; rēs familiāris, personal property, private property. 4

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *tr.*, increase, augment, add to. 3

largior, 4, *tr.* [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. 1

12. sūmptus, -ūs, *m.* [sūmō, spend], expense. 1

semper, *adv.*, always. 3

13. alō, alere, aluī, altum, *tr.*, nourish, feed, support. 4



FIG. 64

A COIN OF THE HAEDUI

Dumnorex is supposed to be the Dumnorix of Caesar.

Dumnorix we are able to appreciate the extraordinary power of some of the Gallic nobles. They were forerunners of the feudal barons of later times.

summā audāciā, (*a man*) of the utmost boldness. For case see App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

8. rērum: case? App. 106, *a*: G.-L. 374: A. 349, *a*: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 450.

portōria . . . redēmta habēre, *he*

had bought up the import duties and taxes. Instead of collecting the duties and taxes by its own agents, the state sold at auction the privilege of collecting them. The successful bidder collected all he could, paid to the state the amount of his bid, and pocketed the difference.

9. parvō pretiō: thus defrauding the state. For case see App. 147: G.-L. 404: A. 416: B. 225: H.-B. 427, 1: H. 478.

redēmta habēre: differs how from redēmisse? App. 286, *b*: G.-L. 238: A. 497, *b*: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, *a*: H. 640, 2.

10. illō licente, when he bid: App. 150.

12. comparāsse: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

13. domī: case? App. 151, *a*: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, *a*: H. 484, 2.

finitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā
 15 mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō
 collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātře
 et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre
 et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō
 nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia
 20 eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae
 atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, sum-
 mam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō

14. largiter, *adv.* [largus, large], largely; largiter posse, have great influence. 1

potentia, -ae, *f.* [potēns, powerful], power, authority, influence. 2

15. mātēr, -tris, *f.*, mother. 3

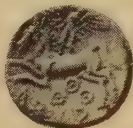


FIG. 65

A COIN OF THE BITURIGES

Biturīgēs, -um, *m.* (Cde), the Bituriges (bit'ū-rī'jēz). 1

illic, *adv.* [ille, that], in that place, there. 1

16. collocō, 1, *tr.* [con + locō, place], place; nūptum collocāre, give in marriage. *

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. 3

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister. 2

17. nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, *intr.*, veil oneself for the marriage ceremony, marry. 1

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *intr.*, favor. 1

18. cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum, *tr. and intr.*, desire; wish well to, favor. *

affinitās, -tātis, *f.*, alliance by marriage, relationship. 2

ōdī, ōdisse (App. 86), *tr.*, *pf.* with meaning of *pres.*, hate, detest. 2

20. dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum, *tr.* [minuō, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. 1

antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ante, before], former, old, ancient. 2

21. honōs, -ōris, *m.*, honor. 3

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up again, restore. 4

14. causā: see Vocabulary.

16. collocāsse: supply nūptum.

ipsum: i.e., Dumnorix. His wife was the daughter of Orgetorix: see 3, 15.

sorōrem ex mātře, sister on his mother's side; i.e., his half-sister.

17. nūptum: construction? App. 295; G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, 1, b; H.-B. 618: H. 632; 633, 1.

in cīvitātēs: the accusative implies "sent them into and caused them to be married there."

18. Helvētiīs: indirect object with verbs meaning "to favor."

suō nōmine, on his own account.

20. dēminūta: supply sit.

21. Sī quid: why quid? App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, a; B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

summam in spem venire, he entertained the highest hopes.

22. imperiō, under the sovereignty: case? App. 142, b; G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 474, 1.

populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, (sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset ²⁵ factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātūi quem auxiliō Caesarī Haedui mīserant Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitatīs, sed etiam

24. dēspērō, 1, *intr.* [spērō, hope], despair, be hopeless. *

25. equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, cavalry. *

adversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* advertō, turn to], turned to or against; adverse, unfavorable. *

29. perterreō, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify. *

1. cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *tr.* [co + (g)nōscō, learn], learn, ascertain; *pf.*, I have learned, I know (App. 193, I, a). *

2. accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [ad + cēdō, go], come to; be added. *

4. iniussū, *abl. m.* (no other case exists) [iubeō, order], without command or order. 1

25. quod . . . esset factum, as to the fact that an unsuccessful cavalry engagement had been fought, etc. = as to the . . . engagement which, etc. See 15, 5-7.

paucīs ante diēbus, *lit.* before by a few days = a few days before. diēbus is an ablative of degree of difference, with the adverb ante.

26. initium factum (esse), that the beginning had been made: object of reperiēbat.

27. auxiliō Caesarī, as an aid to Caesar. For the two datives see App. 119, a: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Contracted verb forms
Descriptive ablative

Chap. 19. Caesar consults Diviciacus about the punishment of his brother.

1. cum certissimae rēs accēderent, since the most clearly proved facts were added. These facts are stated in the following quod clauses, which are in apposition with rēs. For tense see App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267: H.-B. 476: H. 198; 543.

2. quod trādūxisset: kind of clause? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3. Mood? App. 274: G.-L. 663: A. 593: B. 324, 2: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. quod . . . cūrāset, *lit.* that he had taken care of hostages to be given between them = that he had caused hostages to be exchanged. eōs = Helvētiōs et Sēquanōs.

dandōs: construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 605, 2; 612, III: H. 622.

4. iniussū . . . cīvitatīs, without his own orders and those of the state.

5 inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, (satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitatem animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē
10 voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem

5. insciēns, -entis, *adj.* [in- + sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware. 1

7. animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [animus, mind + ad + vertō, turn], turn the mind to; notice; animadvertere in, with *acc.*, punish. *

8. repugnō, 1, *intr.* [pugnō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. 2

9. studium, -dī, *n.* [studeō, be zealous], zeal, eagerness; good-will, devotion. *

10. ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ē + grex, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, remarkable. 2

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [iūstus, just], justice, fair dealing. 2

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [temperō, control oneself], prudence, self-control, judgment. 1

11. supplicium, -ci, *n.*, punishment. 4

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, *tr.* [ob + fendō, strike], strike against, hurt; animum offendere, hurt the feelings, offend. 1

12. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. *

priusquam or prius . . . quam, *conj.*, sooner than, before. *

quisquam, quicquam, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any person or thing. *

13. vocō, 1, *tr.* [vōx, voice], call, summon. 3

interpretes, -etis, *m.*, interpreters. 1
removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move back or away, remove. 4

14. Valerius, -rī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs trōō-sīl'ūs). *

5. ipsīs: i.e., Caesar and the Haedui.

6. causae: partitive genitive with *satis*, which is used as a noun and the subject of *esse*.

quārē animadverteret, *why he should punish.* For mood see App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 513, 2.

8. ūnum, *one thing*, is explained by its appositive, the clause *quod cognōverat*.

9. Note the lack of conjunctions, and see the note on 1, 3.

10. cognōverat, *lit. had learned = knew.*

11. nē offenderet, *that he should offend.* Meaning of *nē*, and mood? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

eius: i.e., Dumnorix.

12. priusquam . . . cōnārētur, *before he ventured on anything.*

13. per . . . colloquitur: English order, *colloquitur cum eō per*, etc.

14. prīncipem: not necessarily a chief, but a prominent man.

suam, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur; simul communefacit quae ipsō praesente in concilio de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur ut sine eius offensione animi vel ipse de eo causam cognitam statuatur, vel civitatem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea, quod, cum ipse gratiam plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, 5

16. colloquor, -loqui, -locutus sum, *intr.* [con-+loquor, speak], speak (*with*), have a conference. *

simul, *adv.*, at the same time. *

communefacio, -facere, -feci, -factum, *tr.*, remind forcibly. 1

17. separatim, *adv.* [separo, separate], separately, privately. 2

18. peto, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, *tr. and intr.*, seek, hunt for; ask, request. *

hortor, 1, *tr.*, urge. *

19. offensio, -onis, *f.* [offendo, hurt], offense. 1

1. lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear. 2

complexor, -plecti, -plexus sum, *tr.* [plecto, fold], embrace, clasp. 1

2. obsecro, 1, *tr.* [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat. 1

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy; severe, serious. *

scio, 4, *tr.*, know, understand. *

5. adulescentia, -ae, *f.* [adulescens, youth], youthfulness, youth. 1

15. cui . . . habebat, *in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters.* cui: case? App. 115, a: G.-L. 346, n. 5: A. 367, a, n. 2: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, b.

16. quae sint dicta, quae dixerit: indirect questions.

ipsō: i.e., Diviciacus.

18. ut . . . statuatur, *that without wounding his [i.e., Diviciacus's] feelings he might either himself [i.e., Caesar] investigate the case and pass sentence on him [i.e., Dumnorix].*

THIRD REFERENCE:

Sequence of tenses

Chap. 20. *At the earnest request of Diviciacus Caesar spares Dumnorix, but he takes precautions for the future.*

1. complexus: probably kneeling and clasping Caesar's knees, for this

was the ancient attitude of suppliant entreaty.

2. ne quid: why quid? App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

gravius, *too severe.*

Scire: the indirect discourse depends on the idea of "saying," which is implied in obsecrare. The direct form is given at the end of the text.

3. nec quemquam, *and that no one.* eo: i.e., Dumnorix.

capere, *felt.*

4. ipse: i.e., Diviciacus. It is the subject of posset, to be supplied from the next clause.

domi: case? App. 151, a: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, a: H. 484, 2.

5. minimum posset, *had very little influence.* Supply cum from the preceding clause.

per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paenē ad perniciem suā ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum
 10 locum amīcitiāe apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat finem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit
 15 utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātre adhibet;

6. crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, *intr.*, grow or increase. 1

ops, opis, *f.*, help, aid; *pl.*, wealth, resources. 3

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew; *pl.*, strength, power. 1

7. minuō, minuire, minui, minūtum, *tr. and intr.* [minus, less], lessen, impair, diminish. 3

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.*, ruin, destruction. 2

8. amor, -ōris, *m.* [amō, love], love, affection. 1

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal. 2

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [exīstimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. 1

vulgus, -ī, *n.*, the common people, the public, the masses. 3

12. verbum, -ī, *n.*, word. 3

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *intr.*, weep, shed tears. 4

13. dextra, -ae, *f.* [dexter, right; *sc.* manus], the right hand. 1

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēsum, *tr.*, seize, grasp. 1

cōnsōlor, 1, *tr.*, cheer, comfort. 1

14. ōrō, 1, *tr.* [ōs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. 3

16. condōnō, 1, *tr.* [dōnō, give], give up; pardon, forgive. 2

adhibeō, 2, *tr.* [habeō, have], bring to, bring in, summon. 4

6. sē: i.e., Diviciacus. He said *per mē*, by my help.

opibus: ablative with *ūterētur*.

7. suam refers to Diviciacus.

8. Sēsē: i.e., Diviciacus.

9. Quod sī, lit. *as to which*, *if*: *quod* is strictly an adverbial accusative, but with *sī* it has become a mere connective, and is translated *and*, *but*, *now*, etc.

accidisset, *should happen*.

ipse: i.e., Diviciacus.

eum, *such*.

10. eum: i.e., Caesar.

11. suā refers to Diviciacus.

voluntāte: ablative of accordance.

futūrum (esse) utī . . . āverteren-

tur, lit. *it would be that . . . would be turned from him*. This construction is the regular substitute for the future passive infinitive, which is rare.

13. rogat (*ut*) faciat, *he asked him to make*. In what kind of clauses and after what verbs may *ut* be omitted? App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, *a*: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 565, 4.

14. tantī: case? App. 105: G.-L. 380, 1: A. 417: B. 203, 3: H.-B. 356, 1: H. 448, 1.

15. utī . . . condōnet, lit. *that he gave up the injury of the state to his wish* = *that he pardoned the wrong done to the state out of consideration for his wish*.

quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

(21.) Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsiūs castrīs octō, quālis

17. reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehensum, *tr.* [prehendō (= prēndō), seize], hold back; criticize, blame, censure. 1

18. moneō, 2, *tr.*, warn, advise, admonish. 3

19. vitō, 1, *tr.*, avoid, shun. 3

praetereō, -īre, -īi, -itum, *tr.* and *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by; praeteritus, *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *neut. pl. as noun*, the past. 1

20. custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. 2

21. loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *intr.*, speak, talk, converse. *

2. cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [sīdō, sit down], sit down; take a position, encamp. *

octō (VIII), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., eight. *

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind, or nature? 2

17. quae reprehendat: mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

20. Dumnorīgī: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

Caesar had his hands full with the Helvetii and could not afford to stir up a revolt of the Haedui in addition — a result which might easily have followed an attempt to punish their most popular noble. A few years later Caesar put Dumnorix to death for obstinate disobedience. See V, 7.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Use of the indefinite quis

Dative of reference

Construction with verbs of asking, etc.

Indirect question

Chap. 21-22. *The failure of a plan to attack the Helvetii.*

Chap. 21. *Caesar plans a double attack on the Helvetii.*

Chapters 16-20 interrupted the narrative of Caesar's pursuit of the Helvetii. The events of this chapter follow immediately after those narrated in Chapter 15.

1. hostēs . . . cōnsēdisse, *that the enemy had camped* at the foot of a hill. The exact location is unknown; it was only a few miles from the battlefield south of Bibracte. See map facing p. 67.

2. milia: accusative of extent of space.

quālis esset: indirect question, object of cognōscerent.

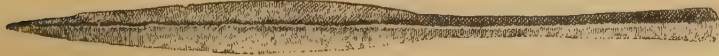


FIG. 66

GALLIC SPEAR HEAD

esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā
 5 vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iis ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsili sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei

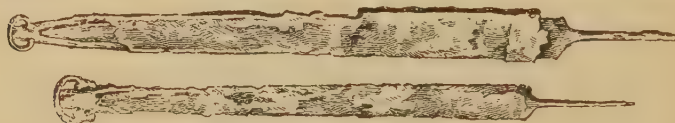


FIG. 67

GALLIC SWORDS IN THEIR SCABBARDS

3. circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [circumēō, go around], a going around. 4

ascēsus, -ūs, *m.* [ascendō, climb up], ascent, approach. 2

5. praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor, a Roman magistrate. 1

6. dux, ducis, *m.* [dūcō, lead], leader, guide. *

7. ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [ad + scandō, climb], climb, ascend. 2

9. P., *abbr. for* Pūblius, a Roman praenomen. 2

Cōnsidius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Considius (pūb'li-ūs kōn-sid'i-ūs), an officer of unknown rank. 3



FIG. 68

Gallie method of suspending sword from belt

3. quālis . . . ascēsus, what sort of ascent there was in going around behind it.

quī cognōscerent mīsit, he sent (men) to learn.

4. facilem esse: supply ascēsum.

Dē tertiā vigiliā: see note on 12, 7.

5. lēgātum prō praetōre, legate with praetorian rank. He had either served as praetor in Rome or had been given equivalent rank. Apparently he had the highest rank among Caesar's legates. He was certainly the ablest of them.

cum iis ducibus, with those men as guides.

7. quid . . . sit, lit. what is of his

plan = what his plan was; namely, that Labienus should take a position on the top of the mountain, in the rear of the enemy, and that he and Caesar should attack them at the same moment. cōsili is a possessive genitive, used predicatively.

dē quārtā vigiliā: the fourth watch would begin at three A.M. when the nights were twelve hours long. As this was June, the nights were shorter, and the fourth watch began about two.

9. P. Cōnsidius . . . fuerat: Caesar states these facts about Considius to excuse his own ready acceptance of the latter's statements, as told in the next chapter.

rei militāris, in military matters: case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote: H. 451, 1.

militāris peritissimus habebātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et 10
postēā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

(22.) Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur,
ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīngentis passibus
abesset, neque, ut postēā ex captivīs comperit, aut ipsius
adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō
ad eum accurrit, dicit montē quem ā Labiēnō occupārī 5
voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armīs atque
insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem

10. militāris, -e, *adj.* [miles, soldier], of a soldier, military; *rēs militāris*, military matters, the science of warfare. *

peritus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tried, experienced, skilled. 2

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū'shyūs sūl'ā), the dictator. 1

11. postēā, *adv.* [post, after], after this, afterwards. *

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Licinius Crassus (mār'kūs lī-sīn'ī-ūs krās'-ūs), *triumvir* with Caesar and Pompey. 2

1. lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light; daylight; primā lūce, at daybreak. 3

3. captivus, -ī, *m.* [capiō, take], captive, prisoner. 4

comperiō, -perire, -perī, -pertum, *tr.* [pariō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. *

4. equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. *

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], admit; let go, put to full speed (of a horse). 3

5. accurrō, -currere, -currī or -cucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [ad + currō, run], run or hasten to. 2

6. Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Gallia, Gaul], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. *

7. collis, -is, *m.*, hill. *

10. Sullae: see Int. 6.

11. in M. Crassī, in (that) of Marcus Crassus. In such cases the word for "that" is never expressed in Latin.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Genitive with adjectives

Chap. 22. Caesar's plan is frustrated by a mistake of Considius.

1. summus mōns, the top of the mountain. For the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun followed by a genitive, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

2. ipse: i.e., Caesar.

passibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

3. ut, as.

4. Labiēnī, that of Labienus. See note on 21, 11.

cognitus esset: the force of cum still continues.

equō admissō, at full gallop.

7. insignibus: the decorations on their helmets, shields, etc. See Fig. 13, p. 33.

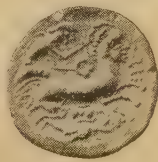
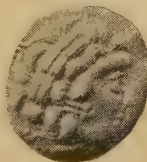


FIG. 69

A GALLIC COIN

A charioteer is driving a human-headed horse over a prostrate body. Note what becomes of this design in Fig. 47, p. 77.

subdūcit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā
 Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope
 10 hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs
 impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque
 abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit
 et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōn-
 sidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi
 15 renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur
 et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

8. subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-
 tum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], draw or lead up. 3

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, sharp point or edge
 of a weapon; a line, battle line. *

instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūc-
 tum, *tr.* [struō, build], build upon;
 form, draw up in battle array. *

praeciپی, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,
tr. [capiō, take], instruct, order. 1

9. nisi, *conj.* [ne-+sī, if], if not,
 except, unless. *

8. aciem instruit: Caesar concluded
 from the report of Considius that La-
 bienus had been defeated, and ex-
 pected that the victors would im-
 mediately attack him.

ut . . . praeceptum, *lit.* as it had
 been directed to him=as he had been
 directed. Intransitive verbs cannot
 be used in the passive except imper-
 sonally. English idiom generally
 requires the personal construction in
 translation. ei: case? App. 116, c:
 G.-L. 217: A. 365: B. 187, II, b:
 H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

9. nē committeret: a substantive
 clause of desire, subject of erat prae-
 ceptum.

nisi vīsae essent: mood? App. 273:
 G.-L. 662; 663, 2, b: A. 592, 1: B.
 323: H.-B. 536, a: H. 649, I. The
 past perfect stands for an original
 future perfect.

ipsius = Caesaris.

10. ut fieret: a purpose clause.

prope, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*,
 near, close to. *

11. impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, charge. *

12. abstinēō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
 tum, *intr.* [teneō, hold], keep aloof
 from, refrain. 1

dēnique, *adv.*, finally, at last. 3

14. timor, -ōris, *m.* [timeō, fear],
 fear, alarm, dread. *

15. intervāllum, -ī, *n.*, interval (of
 space or time); distance. *

11. proeliō: ablative of separation.

12. Multō diē, late in the day.

14. timōre perterritum, panic-
 stricken. This was probably due in
 part to the exaggerated notion of
 Gallic prowess that prevailed in the
 Roman army.

quod . . . renūntiāvisse, had re-
 ported to him what he had not seen as
 if seen. vīsō is a participle used as a
 noun.

15. quō . . . intervāllō = eō inter-
 vāllō quō sequi cōnsuērat. For case see
 App. 142, b: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B.
 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3. Accord-
 ing to 15, 14, the distance was five or
 six miles.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of comparison

Chap. 23-29. Caesar defeats the
 Helvetii in a great battle and forces the
 survivors to return home.



FIG. 70

SITE OF THE HELVETIAN CAMP

The rear guard of the Helvetii camped around this pond on the night before the battle.

23. *Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīdūum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum*

1. *postrīdiē, adv.* [posterus, following + *diēs*, day], on the day following, the next day; *postrīdiē eius diēi*, on the next or following day. *

bīdūum, -i, n. [*bis*, twice + *diēs*, day], space or period of two days, two days. 2

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be over; be left, remain. *

2. *Bibracte, -is, n.* (Cef), Bibracte (*bī-brāk'tē*). 2

3. *cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj.* [*cōpia*, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. 1

4. *duodēvigintī (XVIII), card. num. adj.* [*duo*, two + *dē*, from + *vigintī*, twenty], eighteen. 4

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-tum, intr. [*-spiciō*, look], look forward; see to, provide for. 1

Chap. 23. *Caesar marches toward Bibracte to secure grain, and is followed by the Helvetii.*

2. *cum . . . oportēret*, (before the time) when he would have to distribute grain to the army. See note on 16, 10. The peculiar *cum* clause is best explained by H.-B. 509.

Bibracte: built on Mont Beuvray, twelve miles west of Autun. This is

a wooded mountain top about 1200 feet high, on which the ruins of the city have been found.

4. *reī . . . prōspiciendum*, that he must look out for supplies. Evidently his vigorous talk to Dumnorix and the rest of the chiefs, two days before, had as yet produced no results. *prōspiciendum*: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237.

5 existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētīi, seu quod timōre H.B. perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis 53 quod prīdiē superiōribus locis occupātis proelium nōn com- 10 misissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

6. fugitivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fugiō, flee], fleeing; *m. as noun*, deserter. 1

Aemilius, -li, *m.*, Aemilius (ē-mīl'i-ŭs). 1

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. 1

9. prīdiē, *adv.* [diēs, day], on the day before. -3

10. interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī,

-clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut or cut off. *

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fisis sum, *intr.* [fidō, trust. App. 74], trust completely, feel confident, hope. *

11. commūtō, 1, *tr.* [mūtō, change], change. 2

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [vertō, turn], turn completely; turn, change. *

5. itaque . . . contendit: he was south and a little east of Bibracte. The plan on p. 131 shows that the Helvetii were marching northwest, and that the more northerly route taken by Caesar was almost parallel, for some distance, with the route of the Helvetii. This explains the fact that the Helvetii were able to overtake Caesar's army.

Bibracte: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2; B. 182, 1, a; H.-B. 450: H. 418.

8. existimārent, commīsissent, cōnfiderent: mood? App. 244; 273: G.-L. 662; 663, 2, b; A. 592, 3; B. 286, 1; 323: H.-B. 535, 2, a; H. 588, II; 649, I.

eō magis quod, *all the more because.*

eō is an ablative of cause.

9. quod . . . commīsissent: the Helvetii did not understand the reason for the failure of Caesar and Labienus to attack them on the previous day.

10. sive eō, *or for this reason.*

interclūdī posse, *that (the Romans)*

could be cut off; i.e., by being prevented from reaching Bibracte.

11. commūtātō cōnsiliō: if the Helvetii had held to their plan of march, they might have foiled Caesar. Their safety lay in avoiding battle, which they could do as long as they were in advance of him, on account of the rugged nature of the country. Their fatal mistake lay in thinking that they were strong enough to throw away this advantage.

ā novissimō agmine, *on the rear.* See note on 1, 15.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Accusative of place to which

Implied indirect discourse

Passive periphrastic conjugation

Chap. 24. Caesar prepares for battle, and the Helvetii advance.

1. animadvertit: mood and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

2. quī . . . sustinēret: i.e., to check the skirmishers of the enemy and give Caesar time to form his

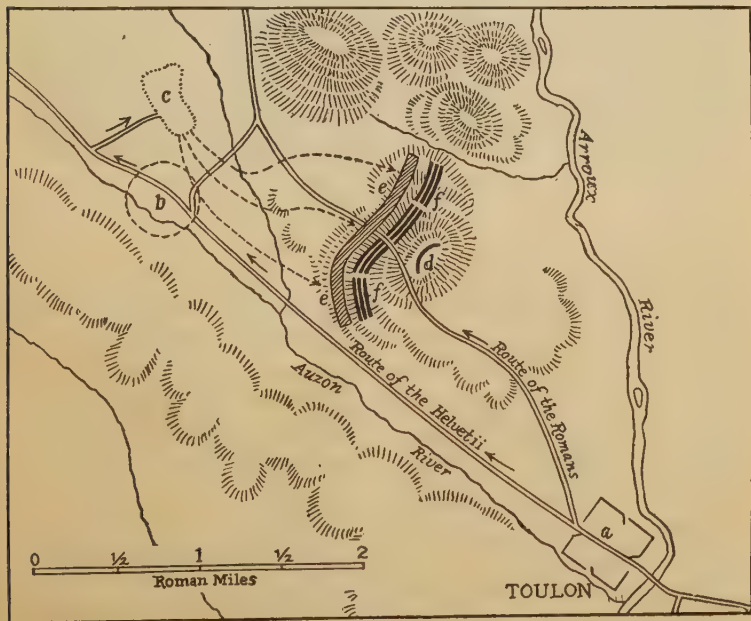
24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem

1. *postquam*, *conj.* [post, afterwards + *quam*, than], after, as soon as. 4

2. *sustineō*, -*tinēre*, -*tinui*, -*tentum*, *tr.* and *intr.* [su(b)s + *teneō*, hold], hold up, sustain; check. *

3. *medius*, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, the middle of. *

triplex, -*icis*, *adj.* [trēs, three + *plicō*, fold], threefold, triple; *triplex acies*, triple line of battle. 4



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII

First stage, Chap. 24-25, 10.

- a*, Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
b, Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
c, Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).

- d*, Roman fortification (24, 8).
e, The Helvetii.
f, The Romans.

lines. The cavalry was not expected to meet the main attack.

3. *in colle mediō*, halfway up the hill. For the meaning of the adjec-

tive see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

triplicem aciem: on the battle formation of the Romans see Int. 55, 56.

instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō
 5 duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat
 et omnia auxilia collocāvit, ita ut suprā sē tōtum montem
 hominibus compleret; impedimenta sarcināsque in ūnum locum
 cōferri et eum ab iīs quī in superiōre aciē cōstitērant mūniri
 10 iussit. Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī impedimenta
 in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, reiectō
 nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem
 successērunt.

4. **veterānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus, old], old, veteran. 1

5. **proximē**, *adv.* [proximus, last], last; lately. 4

6. **suprā**, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, above. *

7. **compleō**, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* [pleō, fill], fill up or completely; cover. *

impedimentum, -ī, *n.* [impediō, hinder], hindrance, impediment; *pl.*, baggage (of an army), baggage-train. *

sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack, luggage (carried by each soldier). 3

8. **mūniō**, 4, *tr.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; **mūnitus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, fortified, defended, protected. *

10. **cōfertus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, dense, thick, compact. 4

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or drive back, repel. 4

11. **phalanx**, -ngis, *f.*, a compact body of troops, phalanx. 4

12. **succēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cesum, *intr.* [sub + cēdō, go], go or come under; come up to, come up. *

4. **legiōnum quattuor veterānārum**: case? App. 102: G.-L. 368, R.: A. 344: B. 197: H.-B. 349. These legions were the one which Caesar found in Transalpine Gaul (see 7, 5) and the three which he brought from their quarters near Aquileia (see 10, 9).

5. **quās . . . cōscripserat**: see 10, 8. Caesar dared not put these untrained and untried troops in the fighting lines.

6. **auxilia**: Caesar never expected much of his Gallic infantry. See Int. 47.

7. **sarcinās**: see Int. 37, and especially Fig. 20, p. 38.

8. **eum**: supply *locum*.

iīs . . . cōstitērant: i.e., the two new legions and the auxiliaries.

mūniri: the location of the battlefield was long uncertain, but in

1886 excavations were made in one of the proposed locations, and evidences of a semicircular wall and ditch were found on the top of a hill, as indicated in the plan, p. 131. Three years later nine trenches were found in which the dead had been buried.

10. **in ūnum locum**: marked *c* on the plan. Bits of Gallic pottery have been found there.

11. **phalange**: in the phalanx formation the soldiers overlapped their shields, shingle fashion, so as to make an impenetrable covering. The front rank held the shields in front of themselves, the other ranks, over their heads. If the phalanx remained unbroken, it could break the opposing line by sheer weight; but if it broke, the men were too closely packed to use their weapons effectively.



FIG. 71

VIEW ACROSS THE BATTLEFIELD

This is looking east from the hill on which the Helvetii parked their wagons.

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pīlis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā

1. primum, *adv.* [prīmus, first], first, at first, in the first place. *

deinde, *adv.* [dē + inde, thence], thereupon, then, next. *

2. aequō, 1, *tr.* [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. 1

3. cohortor, 1, *tr.* [co + hortor, encourage], encourage, cheer, animate. *

4. pīlum, -ī, *n.*, heavy javelin, pike. *

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [frangō, break], break through, break up. 1

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, break up, break. 2

Chap. 25. *The Helvetii fight bravely, but are forced to retreat.*

1. suō: supply equō remōtō; having sent away his own horse.

omnium: i.e., of the higher officers, not of the cavalry. Caesar wished in part to encourage his men by showing that the officers shared their danger, and in part to prevent some timid

tribune from setting an example of flight. See Int. 41.

2. aequātō periculō, by making the danger equal.

3. cohortātus suōs: Caesar was a skillful orator (see Int. 22), and usually encouraged his men before battle by a short speech.

ē locō superiōre: see Int. 55.

4. pīlis: see Int. 36, a.

5 gladiis dēstrictis in, eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallis magnō ad
 pugnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis unō
 ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset,
 neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre
 poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracciō praeoptārent scūtum
 10 manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre.] Tandem vulneribus

5. gladius, -dī, *m.*, sword. *
 dēstringō, -stringere, -strinxī,
 -strictum, *tr.* [stringō, bind tight],
 unbind, unsheathe, draw (gladium). 1
 6. pugna, -ae, *f.* [pugnō, fight],
 fight, battle, contest. *
 scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield. See Int. 35, c. *
 7. ictus, -ūs, *m.*, stroke, blow. 1
 trānsfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.*
 [figō, fix], pierce through, transfix. 1
 colligō, 1, *tr.* [con + ligō, bind], bind
 or fasten together. 1
 ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron. 1
 inflectō, -flectere, -flexi, -flexum,
tr. [flectō, bend], bend down; with
reflex., become bent. 2
 8. ēvellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum,
tr. [vellō, pluck], pluck out, pull out. 1
 sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left; *f.*

sing. as noun (sc. manus), the left
 hand. 4

comodē, *adv.* [commodus, conven-
 ient], conveniently; satis comodē, to
 much advantage, very easily. *

pugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight. *

9. braccium, -chī, *n.*, the arm,
 forearm. 1

praeoptō, 1, *tr.* [optō, wish], wish
 before; prefer. 1

10. manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand. *
 ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum,
tr. [mittō, send], send out or forth,
 release; drop. 2

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked; ex-
 posed, unprotected. 1

corpus, -oris, *n.*, body. *

tandem, *adj.*, at last, at length. 3
 vulnus, -eris, *n.*, a wound. *

5. gladiis: see Int. 36, b.

Gallis impedimentō: for the two da-
 tives see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3; A. 382,
 1; B. 191, 2, b; H.-B. 360, b; H. 433, 2.

6. quod . . . poterant is the subject
 of erat. For mood see App. 248: G.-L.
 524; 525, 1; A. 572; B. 299, 1, a;
 H.-B. 552, 1; H. 588, II, 3.

plūribus . . . colligātis: remember
 that the shields overlapped. Fig. 74,
 p. 136, shows that the Gallic shields
 were very large.

7. cum inflexisset: mood? App.
 242, b; G.-L. 567, n.; A. 542; 518, c;
 B. 288, 3, a; H.-B. 540; H. 601, 4.

8. ēvellere: supply *pila* as object.
 sinistrā: the shield was held with
 the left hand.

9. multi is put before *ut* for em-
 phasis.

iactātō bracciō, after throwing their
 arms about, in the effort to shake out
 the javelins, and so tear the shields
 apart.



Fig. 72

A GALLIC SPEAR POINT



Fig. 73

ONE-HALF MOLD FOR SPEAR POINT

Two such blocks were fastened to-
 gether, and the melted bronze poured
 in.

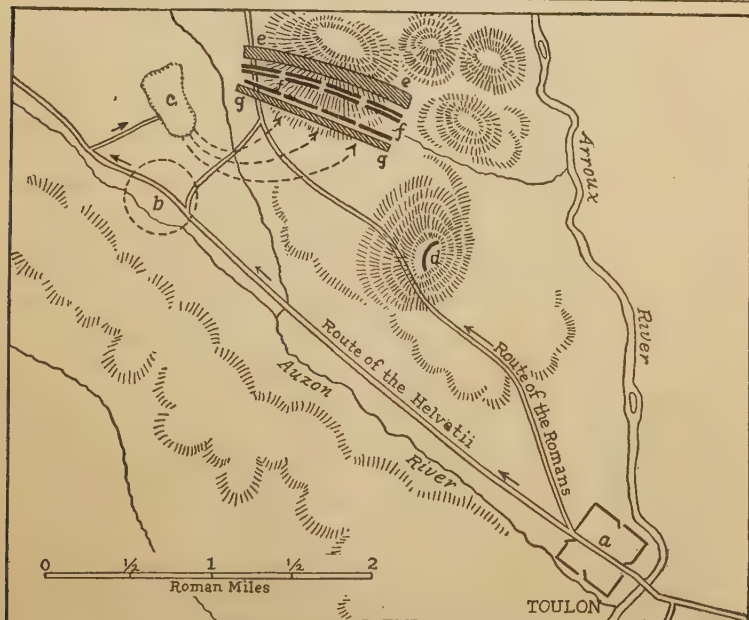
dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et

11. dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wearied, exhausted, faint. 3

referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], carry or bring back; pedem referre, go back, retreat. *

subsum, -esse, -fui, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be under; be near or close at hand. 2

12. eō, *adv.* [old dative of is], thither, to that place, there (*in sense of thither*). *



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII

Second stage, Chap. 25, 10, through Chap. 26.

a, Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.

b, Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.

c, Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).

d, Roman fortification (24, 8).

e, The Helvetii.

f, The Romans.

g, The Boi and Tulingi.

10. corpore: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

11. mōns . . . spatiō, *lit.* a mountain was near at hand (separated) by a distance of about a mile=there was a mountain about a mile away. pas-

suum: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. spatiō: ablative of degree of difference.

12. Captō monte, when they had reached the mountain. But this mōns is a hill rather than a mountain.

succēdentibus nostris, Boi et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiis
 15 erant, ex itinere nostris ab latere apertō aggressi circumvenire, et id cōspicātī Helvētīi, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rursus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī [conversa] signa bipertitō intulērunt: prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac submōtis resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

14. claudō, claudere, clausi, clausum, *tr.*, shut, close; agmen claudere, close the line, bring up the rear. 4

15. latus, -eris, *n.*, side; wing or flank of an army. *

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* aperiō], open, exposed; ab latere apertō, on the unprotected (*right*) flank. *

circumveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [veniō, come], come or get around. *

16. cōspicor, 1, *tr.*, observe, descry, perceive. 3

17. rursus, *adv.* [for reversus, from

revertō, turn back], again, back, anew. *

redintegrō, 1, *tr.* [integer, whole], make whole again, renew. *

18. signum, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal; standard, ensign. *

bipertitō, *adv.* [bis, twice + partior, divide], in two parts, in two ways. 1

19. vincō, vincere, vicī, victum, *tr.*, conquer, vanquish. *

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move away, dislodge. 2

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], resist, oppose. *



FIG. 74

GALLIC SHIELD

The size explains the overlapping of the shields when the men stood in phalanx formation.

13. qui . . . claudēbant: they had formed the front of the line of march, and became the rear when it was reversed. They had probably been separated from the Helvetii by a wagon train, which they had been obliged to pass on the road. This accounts for their coming up so much later in the battle.

15. ex itinere: i.e., they went straight from their march into the battle, without a halt.

ab latere apertō: i.e., the right flank; for their shields

protected the soldiers' left sides. The plan shows that the left flank was the nearer to the Boi and Tulingi, but they came up in the rear, trying to work their way around (*circumvenire*) to the more advantageous position. *circumvenire* depends on *coepērunt*, l. 17. The whole means, *attacking immediately, they began to work around to the right of our men.*

18. conversa . . . intulērunt, lit. *carried forward in two directions their turned standards* = *faced about and advanced in two directions.* In reality only the third line faced about. *signa*: see Int. 44.

prima et secunda aciēs; tertia (*aciēs*): in apposition with *Rōmānī*.

19. victis ac submōtis = *Helvētīis. venientēs* = *Boiōs et Tulingōs.*

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitive

Abative of manner

Substantive quod clause

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem 5 vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nullī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedī- 10 mentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia

1. **anceps, ancipitis, adj.** [ambō, both +caput, head], with two sides or fronts, double. 1

ācriter, adv. [ācer, sharp], sharply, fiercely, vigorously. *

5. **hōra, -ae, f., hour.** The twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varying according to the season. *

vesper, -erī, m., evening. 3

6. **nox, noctis, f., night; ad multam noctem,** till late at night. *

7. **vāllum, -ī, n. [vāllus, palisade],** wall or rampart of earth set with palisades. *

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw in the way; place in front. 2

8. **coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7],** hurl, throw, cast. *

9. **raeda, -ae, f., wagon with four wheels.** 2

matarā, -ae, f., Gallic javelin. 1

trāgula, -ae, f., a dart used by the Gauls. 1

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw from beneath. 3

10. **vulnerō, 1, tr. [vulnus, a wound],** wound. *

Chap. 26. *The Helvetii are routed and flee northward. Caesar follows.*

1. **ancipitī:** i.e., against the Helvetii on one side and the Boi and Tulingi on the other.

pugnātum est, they fought. For translation see note on 22, 8.

2. **alterī . . . alterī, the one body [the Helvetii] . . . the other [the Boi and Tulingi].**

3. **ut coeperant:** see 25, 12.

4. **Nam:** this sentence gives the reason for Caesar's statement that the enemy withdrew, instead of fleeing in disorder.

cum pugnātum sit: an adversative clause. Note that this perfect subjunctive is an exception to the rule of sequence of tenses.

ab hōrā septimā, from about noon. The seventh hour began at noon, and in such expressions the Romans probably reckoned from the beginning of the hour.

7. **prō vāllō, as a rampart.**

ē locō superiōre: i.e., from the bodies of the wagons.

8. **coniciēbant, kept throwing.** The imperfect here denotes repeated action.

cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērun[t]; [nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō] in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō
 15 pervēnērunt, cum et propter vūlnera militum et propter sepul-
 tūram occīsōrum nostri [trīduum morātī] eōs sequī nōn potuis-
 sent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs
 frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem
 locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum
 omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

20

13. trīgintā (XXX), *card. num. adj.*,
indecl. [trēs, three], thirty. *

14. intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī,
 -missum, *tr. and intr.* [mittō, send],
 send between; cease, discontinue. *



FIG. 75

A COIN OF THE LINGONES

12. captus est agrees with the nearer subject.

mīlia CXXX superfuērunt: according to Chap. 29 the original number was 368,000. If both statements are correct the slaughter in this battle was terrible, though we must remember that the original number had been reduced by the destruction of the Tigurini, and of course by natural deaths on the journey, especially among the children and the aged.

13. nocte: case? App. 152, a: G.-L. 393, R. 2: A. 424, b: B. 231, 1: H.-B. 440: H. 417, 2.

nūllam . . . pervēnērunt: the map facing p. 67 shows the direction of this flight. Of course no individual traveled every day and every night. There was only a panic-stricken mob, under no leadership, every member of which rested or moved on at his own pleasure, so that as a whole it was in ceaseless

Lingonēs, -um, *m.* (Bf), the Lingones (līng'gō-nēz). 4

15. sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial. 1

16. trīduum, -ī, *n.* [trēs, three + diēs, day], three days. *

moror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [mora, a delay], delay. *

17. littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet; *pl.*, letter, epistle. *

nūntius, -ti, *m.*, messenger; message, news, report. *

18. nēve (neu) (App. 188, b), *conj.* [nē + ve, or], and not, nor. 3

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, *tr.*, aid, assist, help. 3

motion. Tonnerre is about a hundred miles from the battlefield, and only the strongest could have traveled so far.

14. partem: accusative of duration of time.

diē quārtō: by the Roman method of reckoning the day of the battle counted as the first day. We should say "in three days."

15. cum: causal.

17. nē iuvārent: (*ordering them*) not to assist. The subjunctive stands for an imperative of the direct discourse, though it may also be called a substantive clause of desire: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

18. quī . . . habitūrum, *lit. if they should help them, he should hold them in the same place in which he held the Helvetii*; i.e., he should treat them as enemies.

27. *Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum expectāre iussisset, pārūerunt. Eō postquam* 5 *Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum milia vi eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive* (timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentūr, sive spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitudīne 10 *dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī*

1. *inopia*, -ae, *f.* [inops, needy], need, want, lack. *

2. *dēditīō*, -ōnis, *f.* [dēdō, surrender], surrender, capitulation. *

3. *prōiciō*, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw forward; throw, cast. 4

suppliciter, *adv.* [supplex, suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. 1

5. *pāreō*, 2, *intr.*, be obedient to, obey. 1

6. *servus*, -ī, *m.*, slave. 1

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *intr.* [fugiō, flee], flee for refuge; desert. 1

7. *poscō*, *poscere*, *poposcī*, —, *tr.*, ask, demand, request, require. 3

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsivī, -quīsī-

tum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. 2

8. *sex* (VI), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., six. *

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.* (Cgh), *Verbigenus* (vē-bij'ē-nūs). 1

9. *trādō*, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [trāns + dō, give], give over, give up, surrender. *

10. *salūs*, *salūtis*, *f.*, safety. *

11. *dēditicius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; *m. as noun*, one who has surrendered, prisoner. 4

occultō, 1, *tr.* [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. 1

ignōrō, 1, *tr.* [ignārus, not know- ing], not know; fail to observe, overlook. 1

THIRD REFERENCE:

Commands in indirect discourse

Chap. 27. *Surrender of the Helvetii. Six thousand escape.*

2. *Quī cum*, *when they*.

4. *essent*: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *quō nunc estis*, *where you now are*.

5. *iussisset*: supply *Caesar*.

postquam pervēnit: mood and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

6. *servōs*: fugitive slaves from the Roman army.

perfūgissent: implied indirect dis-

course. Caesar said *quā ad vōs perfūgērunt*, *who have fled to you*.

7. *Dum ea conquīruntur*, *while these were being sought out*. For mood and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, 1: H.-B. 571: H. 533, 4.

9. *timōre nē suppliciō afficerentur*, *by the fear that they would be punished*; lit. *be treated with punishment*. For the meaning of *nē*, see App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

perterritī agrees with *mīlia*, but is masculine because the idea of men is prominent.

posse existimarent, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs uti conquīrent et reducerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditis in dēditionem accēpit.
 5 Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, reverti iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domī nihil erat quō famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iis frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque quōs incen-

12. *ēgredior*, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart. *

1. *resciscō*, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.*, find out, learn. 1

2. *redūcō*, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or bring back. *

pūrgo, 1, *tr.* [pūrus, clean + agō, do, make], clear, excuse, exonerate; *pūrgātus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. 2

4. *perfuga*, -ae, *m.* [perfugiō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. 3

5. *unde*, *adv.*, from which place, whence. *

6. *frūx*, -gis, *f.* [fruor, enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops. 1

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send away; lose. *

7. *famēs*, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. 1

tolerō, 1, *tr.*, bear, endure; appease. 1

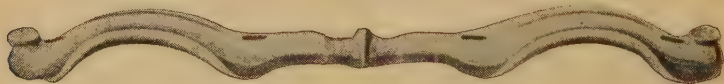


FIG. 76

HELVETIAN YOKE

Found at Neuchâtel, Switzerland

12. *primā*: for translation, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Adjectives with partitive meaning
Clauses introduced by postquam,
etc.

Chap. 28. *The six thousand are retaken. The others are sent back to their homes.*

1. *rescit* = *rescivit*.

hīs is the antecedent of *quōrum* and the indirect object of *imperāvit*.

2. *sī vellent*: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *sī vultis*, *if you wish*.

sibi: dative of reference. It refers to Caesar.

3. *in . . . habuit*: i.e., he had them put to death, or perhaps sold into slavery. They had broken a military agreement.

6. *domī*: case? App. 151, *a*: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, *a*: H. 484, 2.

7. *quō tolerarent*: mood? App. 230, *c*: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2.

ut iis facerent, *to provide them with*.

8. *ipsōs restituere* is the object of *iussit*. The object of *iubeō* is regularly an accusative and infinitive, while



FIG. 77

ANCIENT CART AND WAGON

derant restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētīi discesserant vacāre, nē propter 10 bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in finibus suis collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōsque postea 15 in parem iūris libertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

9. ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, account; plan; method, way; cause, reason. *

10. vacō, 1, *intr.*, be empty or unoccupied; lie waste. 4

11. bonitās, -tātis, *f.* [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. 1

16. pār, paris, *adj.*, equal, like; pār atque, the same as. *

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, state. *

the object of *imperō* is regularly a substantive clause of desire, as in 1. 2. ipsōs: i.e., the Helvetii and their allies.

9. eā maximē ratiōne, chiefly for this reason, is explained by the quod clause.

13. prōvinciae Allobrogibusque, the Province and (especially) the Allobroges; for the Allobroges were a part of the Province.

Boiōs is the object of collocārent. It is put first for the sake of the emphatic contrast with Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs, in 1. 5.

Haeduīs: indirect object of concessit.

14. ēgregiā virtūte, (men) of very great courage: a descriptive ablative.

ut collocārent is the object of concessit. The Boi had had no fixed home, as is shown by 5, 11, 12. The map facing p. 67 shows where they were settled by the Haedui. The Haedui wished to strengthen their frontier against invasions by neighboring states, just as Rome wished the Helvetii to guard her frontier.

15. quibus, quōs: the antecedent is Boiōs.

16. parem . . . atque ipsī erant, lit. equal . . . as they themselves were (in) = the same . . . as they themselves enjoyed.

29. In castris Helvëtiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nōminatim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparatim quot puerī, senēs, 5 mulierēsque. Summa erat capitum Helvëtiōrum mīlium ^{263,000} CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium ^{55,000} XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia ^{350,000} CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, 10 ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

1. *tabula*, -ae, *f.*, board; tablet; list. 2

2. *Graecus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek. 1

3. *nōminatim*, *adv.* [*nōminō*, name], by name; in detail. 3

4. *quot*, *adj.*, *indecl.*: (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as. 2

puer, -erī, *m.*, boy; *pl.*, children (of both sexes). *

senex, *senis*, *adj.*, old; *m. as noun*, old man. 1

5. *mulier*, -eris, *f.*, woman. *
summa, -ae, *f.* [*summus*, highest], the main thing or point; sum total. *
caput, *capitis*, *n.*, the head; person, individual. *

6. *quattuordecim* (XIV), *card. num.* *adj.*, *indecl.*, fourteen. 2

8. *nōnāgintā*, *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, ninety. 1

9. *redeō*, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [*eō*, go. App. 84], go back, return. *

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, enumeration. 1

THIRD REFERENCE:

The locative

Chap. 29. Enumeration of the Helvetii and their allies.

1. *tabulae*, lists, written on wax tablets.

litteris Graecis: Gallic words were written in Greek characters, the Gauls having no alphabet of their own. The Greek alphabet was known to the Gauls through their intercourse with the Greek colony Massilia, and was used by the Druid priests.

2. *quibus in tabulis*, in which.

3. *ratiō*, an account.

quī exisset: indirect question.

4. *quī possent*: mood? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 569.

puerī, *senēs*, *mulierēsque* are subjects of *exisset*, to be supplied from *exisset*.

5. *Summa* . . . CCLXIII, lit. the total was [i.e., consisted] of 263,000 of heads of the Helvetii = the total was 263,000 Helvetii.

6. CCLXIII = *ducentōrum sexāgintā trium*.

XXXVI = *trigintā sex*.

7. XXIII = *vigintī trium*.

XXXII = *trigintā duōrum*.

quī possent: see note on l. 4. Supply *fuērunt*; there were . . . who could, etc.

8. *ad*, about, is an adverb in both instances.

fuērunt agrees in number with the predicate noun *mīlia*.

9. CCCLXVIII = *trecenta sexāgintā octō*.

THE STORY OF BOOK I, CHAPTERS 30 TO 54

WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

This part of Book I contains more indirect discourse than any other part of Caesar, almost as much as all the rest of the first four books put together. Unless the teacher wishes the class to make a more thorough study of the construction than has been called for by the notes on 1-29, this part of the book may be omitted, as recommended in the Preface, or may be postponed until later books have been read. This will not interfere with the use of the page vocabularies, since all words given in the vocabularies of 30-54 are repeated in the vocabularies of Books II-IV if they occur there.

The complete success of Caesar's campaign against the Helvetii at once established his prestige in Gaul. Representatives from most of the states came to beg his aid against their common enemy, Ariovistus, a German king who had established himself in Gaul. It was still early in July, and there was time for another campaign that summer. Caesar willingly accepted the task, for if ever he was to become master of Gaul he must first put out of his way this rival conqueror; and in any case it was most important that the Germans should be kept to the east of the Rhine. Yet the Germans were no mean antagonists, and Caesar was ready to make some concessions rather than fight them. He first proposed to Ariovistus that they settle their differences in friendly conference, but he met a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the king to terms before he should be joined by other German tribes, Caesar marched against him with all speed.

During a few days' halt at Vesontio the soldiers heard such fearful tales of the Germans that they were on the point of mutiny. By a masterly speech Caesar quieted their fears and aroused their enthusiasm to the highest pitch; and at once he led them on toward the enemy. Never again during the Gallic campaigns did his soldiers give him trouble.

Impressed by Caesar's activity, Ariovistus in his turn now proposed a conference; but when they met he replied boastfully to Caesar's demands, and the interview was broken off by an attack of the German guard.

Caesar refused to meet Ariovistus a second time, but sent two representatives in his place. These Ariovistus threw into chains. The negotiations were thus finally broken off.

At once Ariovistus marched past Caesar's camp, keeping up on the slopes of a mountain where he was safe from attack, and boldly established his camp in such a way as to command the road by which Caesar had come, and by which his provisions were to follow. Caesar immediately offered battle, but the Germans were not ready to fight. Five days later Caesar marched back past the German camp and fortified and garrisoned a small camp to protect the way for his provisions. The Germans were unsuccessful in an assault on this small camp.

At last Caesar determined to force a battle, and he marched straight at the German camp. As this was not fortified, Ariovistus was obliged to lead out his army and draw it up against the Romans. Caesar in person led his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. The reserves, hurrying to this spot, decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the Rhine, or to a river which Caesar mistook for the Rhine, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In the two campaigns of this one year important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the Roman possessions; the tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of the Gauls and the Germans was dispelled.



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR BOOK I, 30-54

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

The coloring shows the part of Transalpine Gaul which had come under Roman control at the end of this campaign. The meaning of the colors is as follows:

Brown indicates the part which belonged to Rome before Caesar came to Gaul.

Red indicates the states which Caesar conquered in battle. In this map the only change in the red area from the map facing p. 67 is the addition of the territory controlled by Ariovistus.

Blue indicates the states which came under Caesar's control without fighting. In this map there is no change in the blue area from the map facing p. 67. But of course Caesar's victory over Ariovistus increased his hold on the states which had asked for his protection.

The battlefield is marked by x. It is a few miles northwest of Colmar and just east of Zellenberg, and was selected by Stoffel (*Guerre de César et d'Arioviste*). Napoleon and several others locate it farther south, near Cernay or Thann, just east of the southern end of the Vosges Mountains. But the latter location is too near Vesontio; and there is no hill twelve miles north of it on which Caesar and Ariovistus could have held their interview.

BOOK I, CHAPTERS 30-54

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitatū, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab his poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem
5 nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās

2. grātulor, 1, *intr.* [grātus, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. 1

3. tametsī, *conj.*, although, though. 1

4. repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petitum, *tr.* [petō, seek], seek or ask again,

demand back; with poenās, exact, inflict. 2

5. ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [ūtor, use], use; service, advantage; ex ūsū esse, be of advantage or service. *

6. flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [flōreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous. 2

Chap. 30-36. *At the request of the Gallic states Caesar warns Ariovistus to cease encroaching on Gallic territory, but he receives a defiant reply.*

Chap. 30. *Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask permission to hold a council.*

1. tōtius ferē Galliae: Gallia Celtica is meant. The blue color on the map facing p. 67 shows the part of Gaul from which envoys may have come.

2. grātulātum: construction? App. 295: G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, 1, b: H.-B. 618: H. 632; 633, 1.

Since there is a large amount of indirect discourse in 30-54, it is necessary to make a more detailed study of the construction than has been called for by the notes on 1-29. It is assumed that the following points are clearly understood by the student: the accusative and infinitive in principal declarative clauses; the subjunctive in

principal imperative clauses; the subjunctive in subordinate clauses. The direct form of all long passages of indirect discourse is given at the end of the text.

3. sēsē: the envoys said *we*. The reflexive pronoun *suī* or the corresponding possessive *suus* is regularly used in indirect discourse wherever a pronoun of the first person is changed to one of the third: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

Helvētiōrum . . . Rōmānī, for the wrongs inflicted by the Helvetii upon the Roman people, refers to the defeat of Cassius, 12, 13. Since the phrase implies "the Helvetii wronged the Roman people," *Helvētiōrum* is a subjective genitive, *populī Rōmānī* an objective genitive: App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 199; 200: H.-B. 344; 354: H. 400, 1, 2.

6. flōrentissimis rēbus, although they were in a very prosperous condi-



Fig. 78

THE GENERAL ADDRESSES HIS TROOPS AND CONFERS WITH ENVOYS

At the left is a Roman camp, the walls not very distinct. Through its gate we see the general (really the Emperor Trajan) standing on the speakers' platform (tribūnal) and addressing his men, who are represented by seven legionaries, two of them standard-bearers. Outside the camp, envoys from the enemy ride up, preceded and followed by a guard of Roman auxiliaries.

At the right the Roman general has come out of his camp, attended by officers, and is conferring with the envoys, who have now dismounted.

The figures at the extreme right belong to a different scene.

Helvētiī reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuōsis-simum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitatēs stīpendiāriās habērent. 10 Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam

8. domicilium, -lī, *n.* [domus, house], home, domicile. 3

9. opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, advantageous, favorable. 3

fructuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fructus, fruit], fruitful, productive. 1

10. stīpendiārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [stīpendium, tribute], paying tribute, tributary. 2

tion. The ablative absolute is here equivalent to an adversative clause.

suās: this is a direct reflexive, since it refers to *Helvētiī*, the subject of the clause in which it stands: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

7. utī īferrent, potirentur, dēligerent, habērent: substantive clauses of desire, in apposition with *eō cōnsiliō*.

8. domiciliō: dative of purpose.

10. iūdicāssent, *they should decide, lit. they should have decided.*

11. Petiērunt utī sibi liceret, *they requested permission, lit. that it be permitted to them.*

concilium: the envoys mentioned in l. 1 did not constitute this council. They issued a call for representatives from each state. The blue color on the map facing p. 145 indicates the part of Gaul from which envoys probably came to the council.

indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret: Sēsē habere quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsensū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrāndō
15 nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem principēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere liceret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt:
5 Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs

12. indicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.* [dicō, say], say publicly, appoint. 1

13. quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, *indef. pron.* (App. 62 and b), certain, some. *

commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general. *

cōnsensus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsentiō, agree], agreement, consent. 3

14. permittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *tr.* [mittō, send], give up or over; permit, allow. *

16. sancio, sancire, sanci, sanctum, *tr.*, make sacred, sanction; bind. 2

5. labōrō, 1, *intr.* [labor, toil], toil, work hard; be anxious. 3

7. cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [crucio, torture; crux, cross], torture. *

12. Caesaris voluntāte, *with Caesar's consent.* They did not wish Caesar to suspect that the council was for the purpose of making war on him.

15. nē ēnūntiāret inter sē sānxērunt, *they bound one another not to disclose the matter.*

nisi (*vis*) quibus mandātum esset, *except to those to whom they should be directed (to disclose it).* mandātum esset is impersonal. The past perfect subjunctive stands for a future perfect indicative by implied indirect discourse (App. 273), for the agreement was in effect "we will tell no one except those whom we shall have agreed upon."

Chap. 31. *They implore him to aid them against the German king, Ariovistus.*

1. idem principēs: when they had come to Caesar before (30, 2) they

had had no authority to act for their states. Now the council had authorized them to ask for Caesar's help.

3. dē . . . salūte, *for their own safety and (that) of all.*

4. Caesarī ad pedēs, *at Caesar's feet.* But Caesarī does not depend on pedēs, nor is it a dative of possessor: App. 120: G.-L. 350, 1: A. 377: B. 188, 1, n.: H.-B. 368: H. 425, 4, n.

5. Nōn minus, etc., (*saying*) *that they were no less urgent and anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that, etc.*

sē: see note on sēsē, 30, 3.
quae dixissent, *which they should say.*

7. sī ēnūntiātum esset, *if reports should get out.* The verb is used impersonally. All the conditional clauses in this chapter employed the indicative in the direct form. ēnūntiātum

vidērent). Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius principātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū 10 inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī 15 mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel

9. factiō, -ōnis, *f.* [faciō, make], party, faction. 1

10. Arvernus, -ī, *m.* (CDe), an Arvernian; *pl.*, the Arverni (ār-vēr'nī). 3



Fig. 79

A COIN OF THE ARVERNI

This is a coin of Vercingetorix, the hero of Book VII and the only Gaul who ever united the Gauls against Caesar. The head is probably that of the Greek god Apollo.

tantopere, *adv.* [tantus, so great + opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. 1
potentātus, -ūs, *m.* [potēns, powerful], chief power, supremacy. 1

12. mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, hire. 1
arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, summon, send for, invite. *

primō, *adv.* [primus, first], at first. *
13. posteaquam, *conj.* [postea, afterwards + quam, than], after. 4

14. ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. *

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous. *

adamō, 1, *tr.* [amō, love], love strongly, covet. 1

15. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. 3

16. semel, *adv.*, once, a single time. 2

esset stands for a future perfect and is a vivid future condition: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, *a*, *c*: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, *a*: H. 574, 1.

9. factiōnēs: see Int. 29.

10. cum contenderent, *when they had fought*. We might expect the past perfect, but the imperfect is used on the principle laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, *b*: G.-L. 234: A. 471, *b*: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

11. factum esse utī, *it had come to pass that*. The perfect infinitive, *factum esse*, stands for *factum est* of the direct form, as *contendere* (l. 5)

stands for a present indicative, and as *ventūrōs* (l. 7) stands for a future indicative. For the uses of the infinitive tenses in indirect discourse, see App. 205: G.-L. 530; 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, *a*, *b*, *c*: H.-B. 472, *a*: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

12. mercēde: the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. This was fourteen years before Caesar came to Gaul.

14. adamāssent = *adamāvissent*. It stands for the perfect indicative of the direct form.

15. esse, etc., *they were in Gaul to the number of*, etc.

atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, 20 quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitio atque amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrando cīvitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmanō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quōminus 25 perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnissee auxilium

17. *iterum*, *adv.*, again, a second time; *semel atque iterum*, again and again. *

19. *frangō*, *frangere*, *frēgī*, *frāctum*, *tr.*, break; crush, discouragement. 2

20. *hospitium*, *-ti*, *n.* [*hospes*, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. 2

24. *implōrō*, 1, *tr.* [*in* + *plōrō*, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. 3

recūsō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse. *

quōminus, *conj.* [*quō*, by which + *minus*, not], that not; from; to. 2

25. *perpetuō*, *adv.* [*perpetuus*, continuous], continuously; forever. 1

diciō, *-ōnis*, *f.*, dominion, rule. 3

27. *iūrō*, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*iūs*, right], take oath; swear. 1

28. *profugiō*, *-fugere*, *-fūgī*, *-fugitum*, *intr.* [*fugiō*, flee], flee, run away, escape. 4

Rōma, *-ae*, *f.*, Rome. 1



Fig. 80

A COIN OF THE AULERCI

A charioteer is driving a human-headed horse over a prostrate figure. Compare Fig. 69.

17. *pulsōs accēpisse*, as they were beaten, they had suffered.

18. *omnem . . . amīsisse*: this was an exaggeration, for the nobles and the cavalry of the Haedui were prominent in some of the campaigns of the Gallic War. However, many boys

had grown to military age in the meantime.

20. *quī et suā virtūte . . . plūrimum . . . potuissent*, although both by their own valor . . . they had been the most powerful.

24. *recūsātūrōs quōminus essent*: would refuse to be: App. 228, c: G.-L. 549: A. 558, b: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 568, 8.

25. *Ūnum sē esse*, that he was the only one. *sē* is Diviciacus. See note on *sēsē*, 30, 3.

28. *quī potuerit*: mood? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535, b: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, a, b: H. 591, 5. So far in this chapter all the subjunctives have been imperfects and past perfects in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses; for the indirect discourse depends on an historical tense, *locūtus est*, 1. 8. But in *potuerit* we

postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrاندō neque obsidibus tenērētur.) Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs 30 accidisse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnissent, 35 quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum

29. postulō, 1, *tr.*, ask, demand. *

30. malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, evil, bad, (injurious; *comp.*, peior, peius; *neut.* as *noun*, a worse thing. 1

victor, -ōris, *m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; as *adj.*, victorious. *

31. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus (ā'rī-ō-vīs'tūs), a king of the Germans. *

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king. *

34. dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-

sum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, withdraw. 3

35. Harūdēs, -um, *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (hā-rōō'dēz), a German tribe. 3

36. sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedeō, sit], seat; residence, abode. 4

39. cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [cōnsuēs-cō, become accustomed], custom; mode. *

victus, -ūs, *m.* [vīvō, live], living, (mode of) life. 1

have an instance of *repraesentātiō*; i.e., the tense of the direct form is retained in the indirect: App. 270, a: G.-L. 654, n.: A. 585, b, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

29. postulātum: the supine. His request for assistance was made three years before this time, and was unsuccessful. Cicero met him in Rome and speaks of him with admiration.

30. peius accidisse, a worse fate had befallen.

32. tertiam partem: this was probably an exaggeration. The part taken by Ariovistus corresponds pretty well with upper Alsace, on the Rhine, and is colored red on the map facing p. 145. Germany took this same land from France in 1871; France has it again as a result of the World War. Soon after we entered the war American troops occupied the line in Alsace and held it till the end of the war. See Int. 70.

33. alterā, a second.

34. paucīs mēnsibus ante, lit. before by a few months = a few months before. mēnsibus is an ablative of degree of difference.

36. Futūrum esse utī omnēs pellerentur, lit. it would be that all would be expelled = all would be expelled. The direct form was omnēs pellentur. As the future indicative must be rendered by the future infinitive, one might expect *pulsum iri*; but this form of the future passive infinitive is very rare and *futūrum esse ut* with the subjunctive is the usual method of expressing the future passive infinitive: App. 205, b: G.-L. 531: A. 569, 3, a: B. 270, 3, a: H.-B. 472, c: H. 619, 2.

37. omnēs [ex]: i.e., all the Gauls.

38. Gallicum: supply *agrum*.

39. hanc = *Gallicam*.

victūs: note the quantity of *ī*, and compare *victus*, the perfect participle of *vincō*.

40 illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum
cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Mageto-
brigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī
cuiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exemplā cruciātūsque
ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta
45 sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn
posse eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare
populōque Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse
faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrant, aliud
domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortū-
50 namque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur.) Haec sī ēnūntiātā
Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī
apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel

40. comparō, 1, *tr.* [pār, equal], compare. 1

41. Magetobriga, -ae, *f.* (Cf), Magetobriga (măj'ē-tōb'ri-gā), a town. 1

42. superbē, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. 1

crūdēliter, *adv.* [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly. 1

44. ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give out; inflict. 1

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nūtum, at one's nod or command. 2

45. irācundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ira, anger], irritable, passionate, bad-tempered. 1

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [temerē, rashly], rash, reckless. 1

48. ēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [migrō, migrate], depart, migrate. 1

50. quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef.* (or generalizing) *rel.* pron., whoever; whatever. *

experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, *tr.*, try, test, experience. *

40. *semel*, once, or once for all. In l. 16 we are told that Ariovistus fought with the Haedui several times. This sentence seems to mean that the Sequani at last joined with the Haedui, and that the combined forces were defeated in one decisive battle.

41. *vicerit*: from this point on to the end of the chapter *repraesentatiō* is employed. See note on *potuerit*, l. 26.

proelium: this final battle was fought two years before Caesar came to Gaul.

42. *nōbilissimī cuiusque*, of all the greatest nobles. The singular forms of *quisque*, each, with superlatives have the force of *every* or *all*.

43. *exempla*, punishments.

44. *sī facta sit*: this condition stands for an original *sī facta est*. See note on l. 7, and App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, b: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

46. *quid auxiliī*, some help.

47. *Gallis*: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

48. *ut domō ēmigrant*, etc., (namely) leave home, etc., explains *idem*.

51. *nōn (sē) dubitāre quīn sūmat*, he did not doubt that Ariovistus would inflict. *sūmat*: mood? App. 229, d: G.-L. 555, 2: A. 558, a: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, b: H. 595, 1.

auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā 55 posse dēfendere.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare peterē coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō terram intuerī. Eius rei quae causa esset mirātus ex ipsis quaeiit. Nihil 5 Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem tristitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Diviciācus Haeduus respondit: Hōc esse miserīorem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam

2. flētus, -ūs, *m.* [fleō, weep], weeping, lamentation. 1

4. cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, the rest of; as *noun*, the rest. 4

tristis, -e, *adj.*, sad, dejected. 1

dēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send or let down; sink; bow. 1

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, ground. 3

intueor, 2, *tr.* [tueor, look], look at. 1

5. miror, 1, *tr. and intr.*, wonder. 1

6. tristitia, -ae, *f.* [tristis, sad], sadness. 1

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay through or to the end; continue. 3

7. vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, tone; word. *

8. exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit. 1

9. miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable, pitiable. 2

53. auctōritāte . . . exercitūs, by his own prestige and (that) of his army.

54. dēterrēre posse nē . . . trādūcātur, could prevent a greater number from being brought across.

Chap. 32. The desperate condition of the Sequani.

2. magnō flētū: Caesar often mentions the demonstrative manners of the Gauls.

auxilium petere: the Gauls failed to see that they were simply changing masters in appealing to Caesar against Ariovistus.

5. quae causa esset: an indirect question depending on mirātus.



Fig. 81

A COIN OF THE CORIOSOLITES

The design on the right was suggested by some such coin as is shown in Fig. 69; but the charioteer has become a mere scroll, and the prostrate figure is meaningless.

6. respondēre, permanēre: historical infinitives: App. 281.

8. Hōc: ablative of cause.

- 10 reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlītātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanis vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte
15 eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: Magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā
5 concilium dimisit. Secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in

10. occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hidden, secret. 2

11. absēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of absum*, be absent], absent. 2
crūdēlītās, -tātis, *f.* [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelty, harshness. 1

velut, *adv.*, as, just as. 1

12. cōram, *adv.*, face to face, in person. 1

horreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr.*, shudder at, dread. 1

13. vērō, *adv.* [vērus, true], in truth; but. *

intrā, *prep. with acc.* [inter, between], within, inside; into. 4

2. cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, attention. 2

5. secundum, *prep. with acc.* [sequor, follow], following, in accordance with. 3

6. cōgitō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [co + agitō, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully. 3



Fig. 82

A COIN OF THE SEQUANI

11. absēntis: even when absent.
velut sī adesset: mood and tense?
App. 261: G.-L. 602: A. 524: B. 307,
1, 2: H.-B. 504, 3, a: H. 584, 2.

12. tamen, at any rate; i.e., though they could not resist Ariovistus.

13. Sēquanis: dative of agent.

Chap. 33. Caesar decides to undertake their defense. His reasons for doing so.

2. sibi . . . futūram, that the matter should receive his attention. For the two datives, see App. 119, a: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, a: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

3. beneficiō suō: in Caesar's consulship, only the year before, the senate had conferred upon Ariovistus the titles *rēx* and *amicus*. This had been done to keep Ariovistus from interfering with Roman interests in Gaul until Caesar should be ready to take charge of his province.

5. Secundum ea: i.e., in accordance with the request of the Gauls and his promise to attend to the matter.

6. quārē putāret: to think, lit. why he should think.

sibi: dative of the agent, with the passive periphrastic.

primis, quod Haeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepe numero
 a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque ditione videbat Ger-
 manorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac
 Sequanos intellegebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani 10
 turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim
 autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam
 magnam eorum multitudinem venire populo Romano peri-
 culosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros tempera-
 turos existimabat quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, 15
 ut ante Cimbrum Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent
 atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sequanos
 a provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret; quibus rebus quam

11. turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly; disgraceful, dishonorable. 2

Paulatim, *adv.* [paulus, little], little by little, gradually. *

13. periculosus, -a, -um, *adj.* [peri-

culum, danger], dangerous, perilous. 1

16. Cimbrum, -orum, *m.*, the Cimbri (sim'brum). 4

Teutonum, -orum, *m.*, the Teutoni (tu'toni). 4

7. Haeduos teneri is the object of videbat.

fratres appellatos, who had been called brothers.

10. quod, and this; i.e., the condition of the Haedui, as set forth in the preceding infinitive clauses.

11. sibi refers to Caesar, the subject of arbitrabatur, not to the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the indirect reflexive: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

Paulatim, etc., he saw that for the Germans to get gradually in the habit of crossing and . . . to come . . . (was) dangerous, etc.

13. periculosum: see Int. 3.

14. sibi: indirect object of temperaturos. It refers to homines, the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the direct reflexive: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

sibi temperaturos quin exirent, would refrain from coming out: App.

228, c: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 595, 2.

16. ut, as; for fecissent stands for fecerunt of the direct form.

Cimbrum Teutonique: see Int. 27.

17. praesertim cum: see App. 245.

18. Rhodanus divideret, only the Rhone separated. Caesar's statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and lover of his country. Gaul certainly had to yield to the barbarism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No halfway ground was possible.

quibus rebus occurrendum, that he must face this danger. Since occurrere is an intransitive verb it cannot be used in the passive except impersonally: App. 115, d: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, b: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus
20 tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferendus
nōn vidērētur.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs
mitteret quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium
utriusque colloquiō dēligeret: Velle sēsē dē rē publicā et
summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus
5 respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum
ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre
oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs

19. mātūrē, *adv.* [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. *Comp.*, mātū-
rius; *sup.*, mātūrrimē. 3

occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob + currō, run], run in the way of, meet; oppose, counteract. *

20. spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; *pl.*, haughtiness, pride. 2

arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [arrogāns, arro-
gant], arrogance, insolence. 2

1. placeō, 2, *intr.*, please; often

impers., it seems good to one, hence, he decides. 2

3. uterque, utraque, utrumque, *adj.* [uter, which of two], each of two. *
colloquium, -quī, *n.* [colloquor, talk together], a talking together; conference. *

5. opus, *indecl. noun, n.* [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est, there is need. *

7. praetereā, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides. *

Chap. 34. *Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesar's proposal to confer with him.*

1. ad Ariovistum: he was somewhere in the country he had taken from the Sequani. See note on 31, 32.

3. colloquiō: dative of purpose.

Velle sēsē agere, (*saying*) that he wished to confer. Caesar was anxious to secure his end without a war and probably thought that the diplomatic relations which had been maintained with Ariovistus could be kept up (see note on 33, 3).

4. summīs . . . rēbus, matters of the greatest importance to both.

5. Sī quid ipsī opus esset, *if he needed anything*, lit. *if anything were a necessity to himself*: App. 146, a.

Sī esset, sēsē ventūrum fuisse: the direct form was *sī esset, vēnīsem*, *if I wanted anything, I should have*

gone, a contrary to fact condition: App. 254: G.-L. 597, R. 1: A. 517, a: B. 304, 1, 2: H.-B. 581: H. 579, 1. When such a condition is turned into indirect discourse, the conclusion always takes the infinitive form -ūrus fuisse: App. 272, II: G.-L. 597, R. 4: A. 589, b, 1, 2: B. 321, A., 2: H.-B. 581, b, 1: H. 647.

ipsī: dative of reference. The indirect reflexive, *sibi*, would be more usual, but *ipsī* is more emphatic.

6. sī . . . velit, *if Caesar wanted anything of him*, lit. *if Caesar wanted him (for) anything*. Volō sometimes, as here, governs two accusatives, like verbs of asking or demanding: App. 125, b: G.-L. 341, n. 2: A. 390, d: H.-B. 397, 1: H. 412. sī velit stands for an original *sī vis*: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, 10 quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

35. His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in colloquium venīre invitātus 5 gravārētūr neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum

8. possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sesum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], occupy, possess. 3

9. commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip; supplies, provisions. *

mōlimentum, -ī, *n.* [mōlior, exert oneself], effort. 1

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trac-tum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect. 1

10. mirus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mīror, wonder at], strange; astonishing. 2

12. negōtium, -tī, *n.* [neg- + ōtium, leisure], business. *

2. mandātum, -ī, *n.* [mandō, command], command; message. *

quoniam, *conj.* [quom = cum, since + iam, now], since now, since. 4

3. cōsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōsul, consul], consulship. 1

5. invitō, 1, *tr.*, invite, summon. 2

6. gravor, 1, *intr.* [gravis, heavy], be unwilling. 1

8. quās . . . possidēret: i.e., the land of the Haedui and the Lingones, which Ariovistus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

10. mirum: predicate adjective with vidērī; it seemed strange=he wondered.

quid Caesarī negōtī esset, lit. what of business there was to Caesar=what business Caesar had; an indirect question, subject of vidērī. Caesarī is a dative of possession.

11. omnīnō, in general.

Chap. 35. Caesar demands that Ariovistus cease his oppression of the Gauls.

3. beneficiō affectus, after receiving such a favor from himself, lit. having been treated with his own favor. See note on 33, 3.

4. Quoniam (l. 2) hanc grātiā re-



Fig. 83

A GALLIC COIN

This design, like that of Fig. 81, was suggested by some such coin as that shown in Fig. 69.

ferret, ut, since he made this requital, that.

6. neque dicendum . . . putāret, and did not think it necessary to discuss and learn. sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

- putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: primum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet
- 10 Sēquanīsque permetteret ut quōs ipsī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illis liceret; nēve Haeduōs iniuriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum inferret.) Sī ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M.
- 15 Pisōne cōsulibus senātus cēnsuisset utī quicumque Galliam prōvinciā obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblīcae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum.

8. amplē, *adv.* [amplus, large], largely; *comp.*, amplius, more. *

9. reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give back, return, restore. *

13. perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, lasting, permanent, unbroken. 3

15. cēseō, cēnsēre, cēnsui, cēnsū, *tr.*, think, decide; vote. 1

16. commodum, -ī, *n.* [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. 2

18. neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.* [neg- + legō, choose], disregard, neglect. *

7. haec esse quae, *these were (the things) which.*

nē trādūceret: in the direct form this was a prohibition, nōlī trādūcere, do not bring: App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, c: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2: H. 561, 1.

9. redderet, permetteret: in the direct form these were commands in the imperative, redde, permitte, give back, permit: App. 267.

10. Sēquanisque . . . liceret, and grant permission to the Sequani to return with his [Ariovistus's] approval those [hostages] whom they [the Sequani had [from the Haedui], lit. permit that it be allowed. illis = Sēquanīs.

12. fēcisset stands for a future perfect indicative: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, a, c: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574, 1.

sibi: i.e., Caesar; a dative of possession.

14. sī nōn impetrāret, if he [Caesar] should not obtain (such assurances).

sēsē: the direct form would be ego, if expressed at all. It is the subject of neglētūrum, l. 18; but, because the sentence is so long, the subject is repeated in sē, l. 17.

M. Messālā . . . cōsulibus: in 61 B. C. See note on 2, 2.

15. senātus cēnsuisset: this decree of the Senate was the only result of the entreaties of Diviciacus (31, 28), and no governor had paid any attention to it, as Ariovistus very well knew.

16. quod . . . posset, so far as he could do it in accordance with the interests of the state: a common formula in decrees of the Senate.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent iīs quōs vīcissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, 5 nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. (Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortunam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiārīōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, 10

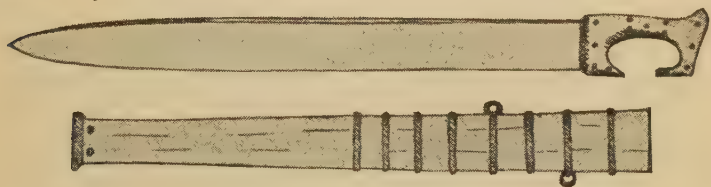


Fig. 84

RECONSTRUCTION OF A GERMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD

3. praescriptum, -ī, *n.* [praescribō, order], order, dictation, command. 1

4. arbitrium, -rī, *n.* [arbitrator, umpire], judgment, discretion, pleasure. 1

5. praescribō, -scribere, -scripsī,

-scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3

8. congredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], meet, encounter. *

10. dēterior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), worse, less. 1

18. neglēctūrum: tense? App. 205: G.-L. 530; 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, *a*, *b*, *c*: H.-B. 472, *a*: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

Chap. 36. Ariovistus responds defiantly.

1. ut . . . imperārent, *that those who had conquered should rule, etc.*

2. iīs: indirect object of imperārent.

3. ad alterius praescriptum, *in accordance with the dictates of anyone else.* For alterius instead of alius, see App. 32.

5. quem . . . ūterētur, *how they should exercise their rights.*

6. nōn oportēre sē impediri, *he [Ariovistus] ought not to be hampered.*

7. sibi: dative with the adjective stīpendiārīōs.

9. quī faceret may be translated by a causal clause, *since he, etc.*, but the indicative was probably used in the direct form. Apparently the presence of Caesar had given hope to the Haedui and had made them less careful in paying their tribute to Ariovistus.

neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniuriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset stipendiumque quotannis penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē
 15 Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congregērētur: intel-
 lētūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēveris veniēbant: Haeduī

12. maneō, manēre, mānsī, mān-
 sum, *intr.*, remain, abide, stay. 2
 stipendium, -dī, *n.*, tax, tribute. *
 quotannis, *adv.* [quot, as many as +
 annus, year], every year, yearly. 2

13. pendō, pendere, pependī, pēn-
 sum, *tr.*, weigh; weigh out money,
 pay. 2

14. dēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, an-
 nounce], announce, threaten. 1

17. quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? with
 posse, how? App. 128, b. *
 invictus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + victus,
 conquered], unconquerable, invin-
 cible. 1

exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [exerceō,
 train], well trained, skilled. 2

2. Trēvir, -erī, *m.*, one of the Trev-
 eri; *pl.* Trēverī (Bfgh), the Treveri
 (trēv'ē-rī). *

11. neque . . . neque, but . . . not
 . . . or.

iniuriā, *unjustly*: an ablative of ac-
 cordance: App. 142, a.

illātūrum, sī manērent: a vivid
 future condition.

12. in . . . convēnisset, *lit.* should
 remain in that which had been agreed
 upon=adhered to the terms which had
 been agreed upon.

13. fēcissent stands for a future
 perfect indicative.

longē . . . āfutūrum, the name of
 brothers of the Roman people would be
 of little value to them.

14. Quod, as to the fact that: App.
 248, a: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, a: B. 299,
 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

15. sēcum, suā: sēcum is the in-
 direct reflexive, referring to Ariovis-
 tus, suā is the direct reflexive, refer-
 ring to nēminem: App. 164, 165.

16. Cum vellet, congregērētur, let
 him come on when he liked. congre-
 derētur was imperative in the direct
 form.

17. quid possent, how strong the
 Germans were. quid is an adverbial
 accusative: App. 128, b.

18. inter, during.

Chap. 37-41. Caesar marches into
 the country of Ariovistus, checking a
 panic on the way.

Chap. 37. Because of this reply and
 further complaints of the Gauls, Caesar
 marches toward Ariovistus.

1. eōdem tempore: the reply of
 Ariovistus and the complaints of the
 Gauls reached Caesar at the same
 time. It was now about the beginning
 of August.

2. questum: the supine.

questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datis pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, 5 pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimerium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus 10 facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerimē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

3. trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry across, bring over, transport, convey. *

6. Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun*, Suēbī (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bi), a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes. *

7. Nasua, -ae, *m.*, Nasua (nāsh'-ū-ā). 1

Cimerius, -rī, *m.*, Cimerius (sīm-bē'rī-ūs). 1

8. vehementer, *adv.* [vehemēns, violent], violently; very much. 4

10. coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join with or together, unite. *

3. Harūdēs: see 31, 35.

4. eōrum: the indirect reflexive, *suōs*, would have been more usual, since the Haedui said *our*.

obsidibus datis, *by giving hostages*.



Fig. 85

A COIN OF THE TREVERI

5. Trēverī: supply *veniēbant questum*, followed by indirect discourse.

7. trānsīre: somewhere north of where Ariovistus was, probably near

modern Mainz. The Treveri were a strong people, and it is probable that Ariovistus was marching north to help the Suebi cross when he was interrupted by the news of Caesar's approach.

9. sī coniūnxisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

10. minus . . . posset, *lit. it could be less easily resisted (to them)*.

12. magnīs itineribus: see Int. 54. Caesar intended to strike Ariovistus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnerre pending the result of his negotiations with Ariovistus. See the map facing page 145.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret magnopere
 5 sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat.) Namque omnium rerum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sic mūniēbātur ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen Dūbis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit;
 10 reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita

1. prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go forward, proceed, advance. *

2. Vesontio, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf), Vesontio (vē-sōn'shyō), the chief town of the Sequani, modern Besançon. 2

5. praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *intr.* [caveō, guard against], guard against beforehand, take precautions. 1

namque, *conj.* [nam, for], for. 3

7. sic, *adv.*, so, thus. *

9. Dūbis, -is, *m.* (Cf), the river Dubis (dū'bīs), now the Doubs. 1
 circinus, -ī, *m.* [circus, circle], a pair of compasses. 1

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or draw around. 2

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cinctum, *tr.*, encircle, surround. 1

10. sescentī, -ae, -a (DC) [sex, six +centum, hundred], six hundred. *

Chap. 38. Caesar occupies Vesontio.

1. trīduī: descriptive genitive. The descriptive genitive must ordinarily be modified by an adjective; but *trīduī* = *trium dierum*.

viam: case? App. 128: G.-L. 333, 2: A. 390: B. 176, 4: H.-B. 396, 1: H. 409.

The three days' march was east from Tonnerre (see the map facing p. 145), and brought Caesar to the point where his route turns to the southeast.

nūntiātum est: this report that Ariovistus was marching toward Vesontio proved false. Probably it grew out of the fact that Ariovistus had got his army together for the purpose of marching north to help the Suebi. See note on 37, 7.

3. quod agrees in gender with *oppidum*, although its antecedent is masculine; App. 173, b.

4. Id: i.e., the capture of Vesontio.

6. summa facultās, a very great supply.

9. ut, as if.

paene cingit: i.e., the river makes a loop, the two sides of which are at one point about 1600 feet apart. At that point there is a high hill with steep sides running down to the river. The top, about 600 feet across, was defended by a wall. The town was within the loop. See the plan on p. 163.

10. spatium: object of *continet*.

nōn . . . sescentōrum, of not more than six hundred feet. *pedum* is a descriptive genitive: why is not the ablative used after the comparative? App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

11. quā flūmen intermittit, where the river does not flow.

ut radicēs eius montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnisque itineribus contendit occupatōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

15

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae commeātusque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum

12. *rādix*, -icis, *f.*, root; *pl.* with *montis* or *collis*, foot, base. 1

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* and *intr.* [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to. 2

13. *circumdō*, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [dō, put], put around, surround. 3

arx, *arcis*, *f.*, citadel, fortress. 1

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ex

+ faciō, make], make or do completely; make, cause. *

14. *hūc*, *adv.* [hic, this], to this place, hither, here. *

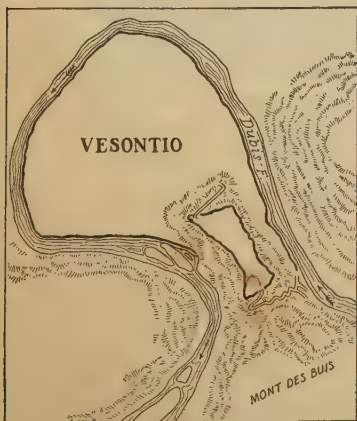
nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox, night], at night, night. 1

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diēs, day], of the day, by day, day. 1

2. *percontatiō*, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiry, questioning. 1

magnā altitudīne: descriptive ablative.

12. *radicēs* is the object of *contingant*, *ripae* its subject.



VESONTIO (BESANÇON)

The wall described by Caesar ran across the top of the hill. The sides of the hill are so steep that no attack could be made along them. Fig. 86 shows one side of the hill. On the top of the hill there is now a fort.

ex utrāque parte, on each side.

13. *Hunc (montem)* is the object of *efficit*, *arcem* is a predicate accusative: App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, a: H. 410, 1.

14. *Hūc contendit*: he turned from his eastward march to the southeast.

nocturnis: Caesar very rarely marched at night, but if the report about Ariovistus had been true, Ariovistus would have been much nearer Vesontio than Caesar was, and only the most extraordinary effort could have enabled Caesar to arrive first.

Chap. 39. *Fear of the Germans causes a panic in the Roman army.*

1. *Dum morātur*: mood and tense? App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4.

rei . . . causā: Caesar was always careful about his supplies. In this case he had no doubt arranged for supplies along his intended line of march, but he had suddenly changed the direction of his march, and therefore failed to meet his convoys. Consequently he now had to make new arrangements.

2. *ex*, in consequence of.

vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī magnitūdine
 corporum Germānōs, incredibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in
 5 armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs
 nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre
 potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut
 non mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret.) Hic
 primum ortus est ā tribūnīs militum, praefectīs, reliquīsque
 10 quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in
 rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā,
 quam sibi ad proficiēscendum necessariam esse dīceret, petēbat
 ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōn nūlli pudōre adductī,
 ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum

3. ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast. 2

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [magnus, great], greatness, size; stature (corporum). *

4. exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [exerceō, train], exercise, training, practice. *

5. praedicō, 1, *tr.* [dicō, proclaim], proclaim before others; declare, report. 3

6. vultus, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, looks. 2

7. subitō, *adv.* [subitus, sudden], suddenly. *

8. mediocriter, *adv.* [mediocris, moderate], moderately; nōn mediocriter, in no small degree. 1

mēns, mentis, *f.*, the thinking fac-

ulty, mind, intellect; mentēs animōsque, minds and hearts. 4

perturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly; alarm, terrify. *

9. tribūnus, -ī, *m.*, tribune; tribūnus militum, a military tribune. Int. 41. *

praefectus, -ī, *m.* [praeficiō, place over], prefect, commander, officer, captain (usually of cavalry). 4

13. pudor, -ōris, *m.* [pudet, it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. 2

14. remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay behind, remain. *

3. vōcibus, *replies*.

magnitūdine, virtūte, exercitātiōne: descriptive ablatives.

5. saepe numerō, etc., lit. *that they having frequently met . . . had not been able = that they had . . . met . . . and had not been able.*

10. amicitiae causā, *from motives of friendship*. This is Caesar's polite way of mentioning the sons and friends of politicians for whom he had

made places on his staff. They had gone with him for money and experience and adventure, and were now getting too much of the latter.

11. quōrum . . . illātā, *one of them alleging one reason, another, another.*

12. dīceret, *they said, agrees in number with alius*. Mood? App. 236: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1, a: H. 591, 1.

14. vultum fingere, *control their features, so as to look unconcerned.*

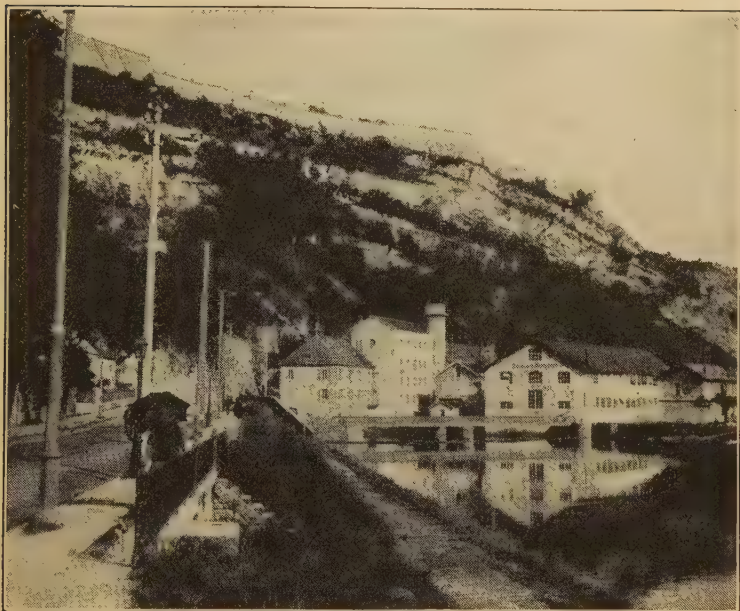


Fig. 86

THE HILL AT VESONTIO

This is the west side of the hill which guarded Vesontio. See the plan on p. 163.

ingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in 15
tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus
suīs commūne periculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs
testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim

15. *figō, fingere, finxī, fictum, tr.*, form, fashion. 2

16. *tabernāculum, -ī, n.*, tent. 1
fātum, -ī, n. [fāri, to speak], fate, lot. 1

17. *miseror, 1, tr. [miser, wretch-*ed], bewail, lament over, deplore. 1

*vulgō, adv. [vulgus, the crowd], com-*monly; everywhere. 2

18. *testāmentum, -ī, n. [testor, be*a witness], will. 1

obsignō, 1, tr. [signō, mark], seal, sign and seal. 1

17. *tōtīs castrīs*: why is there no preposition? App. 151, b: G.-L. 388:

A. 429, 2: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436, a: H. 485, 2.

etiam iī quī magnum in castris ūsum habēbant, militēs cen-
 20 turiōnēsq̄ quīque equitātūī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī
 sē ex his minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem
 verērī, sed angustīās itineris et magnitudinem silvārum quae
 inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum intercēderent, (aut rem frūmen-
 tāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant.
 25 Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac
 signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque
 propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omni-
 umque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus,
 vehementer eōs incūsāvit: Primum, quod aut quam in partem

19. centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of a century, 100 men. Int. 42. *

21. timidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [timeō, fear], fearful, timid, afraid. 1

24. supportō, 1, *tr.* [sub + portō, carry], carry or bring up; supply. 4

26. dictum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* dicō, say], word; command; dictō audiēns, obedient. 3

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, listen to. *

2. ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row; order; rank.*

3. incūsō, 1, *tr.* [causa, cause or case], bring a case against; censure. 2

19. centuriōnēs: who were appointed especially for their bravery.

20. Quī ex his, (those) of them who.

21. sē verērī: depends on dicēbant, l. 24.

22. angustīās itineris: the valley of the Dubis is narrow and very rough, and if Ariovistus had really been marching toward the Romans it would have given opportunity for ambuscades. See Fig. 87.

23. rem frūmentāriam, ut posset, timēre, *lit. feared the supplies, that they could not = feared that the supplies could not.* ut: translation? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

25. cum iussisset: indirect discourse for cum iusseris, when you shall have ordered = when you order. The clause depends on what follows, not on nūntiābant.

26. fore = futūrōs esse.

neque signa lātūrōs, and would not advance. See Int. 44.

Chap. 40. Caesar encourages his officers.

1. omnium ōrdinum centuriōnibus: to the ordinary council of war only the centurions of the first rank were admitted (Int. 42). This, however, was a special gathering of all the officers to listen to Caesar's speech.

3. incūsāvit: this implies a verb of saying, and what follows is in indirect discourse. The tactful and self-reliant combination of rebuke and encouragement makes the speech very effective. Military discipline demands severe punishment for mutiny, but this speech prevented open mutiny and served Caesar's purpose better than punishment. There was never again any sign of mutiny in the Gallic War.

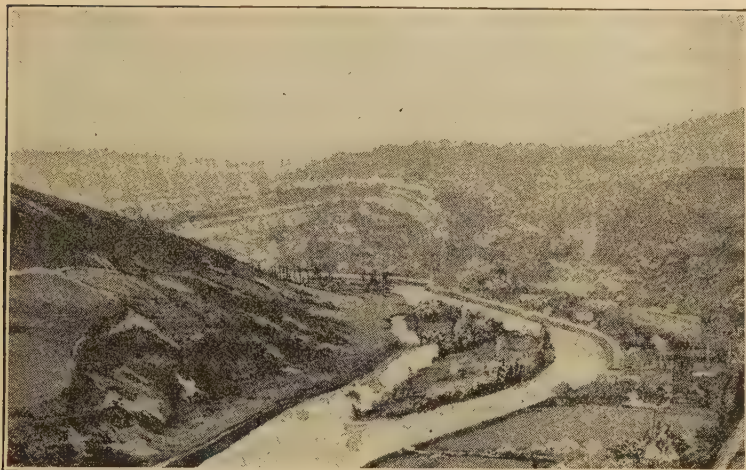


Fig. 87

THE COUNTRY ABOUT VESONTIO

This is looking upstream from a point just below Vesontio. Where the river turns to the left is the hill of Vesontio. Beyond that hill are the other hills which made the soldiers fear the roads (39, 22), and which Caesar avoided by a circuit (41, 11).

aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī 5 amīcitiam appetisse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō

6. appetō, -petere, -petivī (-petiī), -petitum, *tr. and intr.* (ad +petō, seek), seek for, aim at. 3

cūr, *interrog. and rel. adj.*, why, for what reason. 4

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, without good reason. 2

officiū, -ci, *n.*, service, duty; allegiance. *

4. dūcerentur: subjunctive in an indirect question.

sibi . . . cōgitandum, *that they ought to inquire or consider.* The grammatical subject is the clause aut . . . dūcerentur.

5. sē cōsule, *in his consulship;* i.e., in the preceding year. sē and the other reflexives through l. 9 are indirect reflexives, referring to Cae-

sar: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

6. cūr iūdicāret: the direct form was cūr iūdicet, *why should anyone suppose?* App. 210, a: 268, III: G.-L. 265; 651, R. 2: A. 444; 587: B. 277; 315, 3: H.-B. 513, 1: H. 559, 4; 642, 3. Contrast with this subjunctive question the infinitive in 14, 11.

discessūrum iudicāret? Sibi quidem persuādēri, cognitīs suīs
 postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eūm neque
 suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī
 10 furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem
 verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā
 dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis pericūlum patrum nostrōrum
 memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō¹³ pulsīs nōn
 minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidē-
 15 bātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā servilī tumultū, quōs
 tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs accēpissent

8. postulātum, -ī, *n.* [postulō, demand], demand, request. 4

aequitās, -tātis, *f.* [aequus, equal], equality; fairness, equity. 1

perspicīō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look or see through, examine; perceive, realize. *

9. repudiō, 1, *tr.*, reject. 1

10. furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, madness. 2
 āmentia, -ae, *f.* [mēns, mind], lack of mind, folly, insanity. 1

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [in + pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, impel. 3

11. diligētia, -ae, *f.* [diligēns, careful], carefulness, care. 4

13. C., *abbr. for praenomen Gāius* (gā'yūs). *

Marius, -rī, *m.*, Gaius Marius (gā'yūs mā'ri-ūs). 1

14. laus, laudis, *f.*, praise; renown, glory. 3

imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [imperō, command], commander in chief, general. *

15. servilis, -e, *adj.* [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile. 1

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], confusion, tumult; insurrection. 2

16. disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction. 2

ego, meī (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, I; *pl. nōs*, we, us, etc. *

7. Sibi . . . persuādēri, *in fact he was convinced*: App. 115, *d*: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, *b*: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

9. Quod sī intulisset, *but if he should make*: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, *a*: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, *a*: H. 574.

11. verērentur, dēspērārent: see note on l. 6.

suā: the direct reflexive, referring to the officers: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

ipsius: i.e., Caesar's; suā could have been used here as the indirect reflexive, but it would be confusing because it has just been used as the direct reflexive. The use is something like that of *ipse* in 36, 4.

12. periculum, *a test*.

13. Cimbris et Teutonīs: see Int. 27. Mariō: see Int. 5.

14. vidēbātur: no satisfactory explanation can be given for this indicative in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse. Very likely Caesar did not write it.

15. factum: supply *esse periculum*.

servilī tumultū: the insurrection of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73-71 B. C. Many of the gladiators and slaves who joined the uprising were Germans.

quōs: the antecedent is implied in the adjective *servilī*, which is equivalent to *servōrum*.

16. aliquid sublevārent, *aided somewhat*.

sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.) Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe numero 20 Helvētīi congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatigātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs 25 mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērāntēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē

18. cōstantia, -ae, *f.* [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. 1
aliquamdiū, *adv.* [aliquis, some + diū, long], for some time. 1

inermis, -e, *adj.* [in- + arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3

19. armō, 1, *tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; armātus, *pf. part., as adj.*, armed. *

22. plērumque, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally. *

17. quantum bonī, *how great an advantage.*

18. quōs: the antecedent is hōs, which may be translated first.

inermēs: a part of Spartacus's band was at first armed only with stakes: yet they won victories and thus secured arms.

20. quibuscum Helvētīi congressī superārint, *lit. with whom the Helvetii having met had conquered = whom the Helvetii had met and conquered.* superārint: tense? App. 270, a: G.-L. 654, n.: A. 585, b, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

22. quī: the antecedent is Helvētīi. The argument is that since the Helvetii have beaten the Germans and the Romans have beaten the Helvetii, the Romans can beat the Germans.

25. diūturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [diūturnus, long], long duration. 2

dēfatigō, 1, *tr.* [fatigō, weary], completely weary, tire out, exhaust. 1

26. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp, morass. *

27. dispergō, -speregere, -persi, -spersum, *tr.* [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3

29. imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + perītus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4

23. quōs, *any*: App. 174.

proelium: the battle at Magetobriga: see 31, 41.

24. commovēret: the direct form was *commovel*: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

26. suī potestātem, *a chance at him.*

27. dēspērāntēs dispersōs adortum: *adortum* agrees with *Ariovistum*; *attacking them* [the Gauls] *when they had lost hope . . . and had scattered.*

28. ratiōnī: translate with *hāc* in next line, and omit here.

29. hāc . . . posse, *not even (Ariovistus) himself hoped that our armies could be caught by this stratagem.*

- 30 ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulatiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperatōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur.) Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque
 35 esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam;
 40 suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō

31. simulatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense. 2

32. arroganter, *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. 1



Fig. 88

A COIN OF THE LEUCI

34. Leucī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Leuci (lū'sī). 1

subministrō, 1, *tr.* [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply. 3

35. brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief. *

38. male, *adv.* [malus, bad], badly. 1

39. dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfūtūrus, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. *

facinus, -noris, *n.* [faciō, do], deed; misdeed. 2

avāritia, -ae, *f.* [avārus, greedy], greed, covetousness. 1

convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum, *tr.* [vincō, conquer], prove. 1

40. innocentia, -ae, *f.* [innocēns, innocent], integrity. 1

fēlicitās, -tātis, *f.* [fēlix, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. 1

30. Quī cōferrent, *those who ascribed.*

31. rei . . . simulatiōnem, *a pretense about the supplies.* rei is an objective genitive.

32. dē . . . dēspērāre, *to lack confidence in the general's attention to his duties.*

35. mātūra: it was now August.

36. Quod . . . dicantur, *as to the statement that they would not obey his orders or advance.* Quod: translation? App. 248, a: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, a: B. 299, 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

37. quibuscumque . . . convictam, *lit. that to whomsoever an army had not been obedient (to them) either fortune had failed or avarice had been proved.* This must be turned into English.

40. innocentiam, *fair dealing, not "innocence"; opposed to avāritiam.* What the soldiers would object to would be the general's keeping too large a share of the booty for himself.

perpetuā vitā, *throughout his life.*

41. quod . . . repraesentātūrum,

esse perspectam. Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne 45 itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitet, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtutem cōfidēbat maximē.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī illāta est, princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde 5 reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum

41. longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, distant. *

42. repraesentō, 1, *tr.* [praesēns, present], make present; do at once. 1

43. utrum, *conj.* [uter, which of two], whether. 3

44. an, *conj.*, used in the second half of double questions, or, or rather. *

45. decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [decem, ten], tenth. *

46. praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. 2

cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort. Int. 33. *

47. indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, —, *intr.*, be indulgent to, favor. 1

praecipuē, *adv.* [praecipuus, especial], especially, particularly. 1

1. modus, -ī, *m.*, measure; manner. *

2. alacritās, -tātis, *f.* [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. 3

8. umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; neque . . . umquam, and never, never. 2

he would do at once what he had intended to put off, etc.

42. dē quārtā vigiliā, at the beginning of the fourth watch; between two and three in the morning.

43. utrum . . . valēret: an indirect double question: App. 214; 264, c: G.-L. 458; 460, 2: A. 334; 335: B. 162, 4; 300, 4: H.-B. 234: H. 380; 650.

46. praetōriam cohortem, his body-guard, which would naturally be composed of the bravest troops.

Chap. 41. The panic is checked and the army advances.

1. mīrum in modum, wonderfully.

4. grātiās ēgit, expressed its thanks.

6. cum tribūnīs ēgērunt utī, arranged with the tribunes that or begged the tribunes to.

8. neque dē . . . existimāvisse, and that they had not thought that the decision regarding the conduct of the war was theirs, but (knew that it was) the commander's.



Fig. 89

THE BOUNDARY OF ALSACE

About here Caesar entered the land from which Ariovistus had driven the Sequani. The mountain is a part of the Vosges.

iudicium, sed imperatōris esse existimāvisse.) Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisītō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallis eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut, milium amplius quinquāgintā circuitū, locis apertis exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā

9. satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.* [satisfaciō, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. 1

10. exquirō, -quirere, -quisivī,

-quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. 2

11. quinquāgintā (L), *adj.*, fifty. 3

10. itinere . . . Diviciācum ut . . . dūceret, *having sought a route, with the help of Diviciacus . . . in order that he might march his army through open country, (though) by a circuit of more than fifty miles.*

ex Gallis, *of (all) the Gauls.*

11. eī: case? App. 115, *a*: G.-L. 346, *n.* 5: A. 367, *a*, *n.* 2: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *b.*

milium quinquāgintā is a descriptive

genitive. Why not an ablative after the comparative? App. 139, *b*: G.-L. 296, *R.* 4: A. 407, *c*: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471, 4.

12. circuitū: he passed around to the north of the broken country in the valley of the Dubis near Vesontio (see map facing p. 145), and then marched straight on. The distance marched around the bend was fifty miles. Soon after completing the bend he passed the site of Belfort and entered

vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explorātōribus certior factus est Ariovisti cōpiās ā nostrīs milia passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse. 15

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: Quod antea dē colloquiō postulāset, id per sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse exīstimāret. Nōn respuit condiціōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod 5 antea petentī dēnegāset ultrō pollicērētur, magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantīs populique Rōmānī in eum beneficiis, cognitīs suis postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim cum lēgātī saepe ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus 10 postulāvit nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret:

3. propius, *adv., and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, b) [*comp. of prope, near*], nearer. *

4. respuō, -spuere, -spuī, —, *tr.*, reject, spurn. 1

5. sānitās, -tātis, *f.* [sānus, sound], soundness of mind, sanity. 1

6. dēnegō, 1, *tr.* [negō, deny], refuse. 1

ultrō, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord. *

8. pertinācia, -ae, *f.* [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. 1

10. citrō, *adv.*, hither; ultrō citrōque, back and forth. 1

11. pedes, peditis, *m.* [pēs, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. 3

what is now Alsace. See Int. 68 and 70.

13. ut dixerat: see 40, 42.

Septimō diē: the seven days' march brought him to the battlefield indicated on the map facing p. 145. Ariovistus, who had probably been marching northward (see note on 37, 7), had learned that Caesar was marching toward him, and had turned back to meet Caesar. At this time he was not far from Strassburg, north of the land which he had taken from the Sequani.

cum . . . intermitteret: i.e., he did not allow the day of rest which was usually given about every fifth day. See Int. 54.

Chap. 42-47. Negotiations with Ariovistus are fruitless.

Chap. 42. Ariovistus asks for a conference, under conditions which Caesar grants.

2. postulāset: supply Caesar.

id . . . licēre, that . . . might be done as far as he was concerned. id is the antecedent of quod.

3. accessisset: Ariovistus's reason for refusing a conference (see 34, 7) no longer existed. Caesar's prompt advance had impressed him, and he was more inclined to confer.

6. petentī, when he [Caesar] asked it. magnam . . . veniēbat, and he was beginning to have great hopes.

8. fore utī dēsisteret, lit. that it would be that he would give up = that he would give up.

11. nē quem, that . . . no.

Verērī sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque
 15 salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātūi committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētractīs, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae, cui maximē cōnfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn
 20 irrīdiculē quīdam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

14. *interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place between, interpose. 4*

15. *commodus, -a, -um, adj. [modus, measure], convenient, satisfactory. 3*

17. *dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw off or away, take away. 4*

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [legiō,

legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4

18. *impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, tr. [in + pōnō, place], place upon, put on; mount. 4*

20. *irrīdiculē, adv. [in + ridiculus, witty], without wit, unwittily. 1*

23. *rescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write again; enroll; transfer. 1*

13. *venīret: the subjunctive of command in indirect discourse.*

aliā ratiōne, on any other terms.

14. *interpositā causā tollī, to be canceled on a pretext, lit. an excuse having been put in the way.*

15. *salūtem . . . audēbat: Caesar could not be sure of the trustworthiness of the Gallic cavalry, and he knew that in any case they were no match for German cavalry. Six years later Caesar himself employed German cavalry.*

16. *Gallis equitibus: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, d: H.-B. 371: H. 427.*

17. *eō, the adverb = in eōs.*

19. *sī . . . esset, lit. if there should at all be need of something done = if there should be any need of their services.*

quid: case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334: A. 390, c: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2. factō: construction? App. 146, b: G.-L. 406: A. 411, a: B. 218, 2, c: H.-B. 430, 2: H. 477, III. esset: implied indirect discourse, for in making his plans Caesar thought sī erit, if there shall be.

nōn irrīdiculē, wittily.

21. *pollicitum . . . rescribere: the soldier said, in substance, "After promising only to make us his body-guard, Caesar is actually making us cavaliers." The pun is based on the double meaning of ad equum rescribere, namely, (1) to transfer to the cavalry, a part of the army looked down upon by the legionary soldiers, and (2) to knight, i.e., raise to a high rank in Roman society. "Cavalier" means either "cavalryman" or "knight."*



PLATE III—THE MEETING OF CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS

This is the meeting described in Chap. 43. The German cavalry are shown in the distance. The German arms and dress are taken from ancient sources.

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequum ferē spatium ā castrīs utrīusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs dēvexerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. 5 Ariovistus ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad colloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs 10 hominum officiīs cōsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitate suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsīs

1. plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.* [plānus, level], level ground, plain. 4

tumulus, -ī, *m.* [tumeō, swell], swelling; mound, hill. 1

terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [terra, earth], of earth. 1

2. grandis, -e, *adj.*, great, large. 1

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, equal. 3

4. dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry away; bring. 1

6. dēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [decem, ten], ten each. 1

9. mūnus, -eris, *n.*, present. 1

11. doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. *

12. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [adeō, go to], approach, right of approach. *

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, just. 4

13. praemium, -mī, *n.*, distinction, prize, reward. *

14. necessitūdō, -inis, *f.* [necesse, cf. necessārius, friend], friendship, alliance. 1

Chap. 43. At the conference Caesar repeats his previous demands.

1. erat, there was. The hill was about twelve miles north of the battlefield, and has been identified.

terrēnus, therefore suitable for horsemen.

2. spatium: accusative of extent of space.

3. ut erat dictum, as had been agreed.

4. equīs, on horseback.

passibus, intervāllō: ablatives of degree of difference with ab, away from.

5. cōstitērunt: distinguish carefully between cōsistō and cōstituō.

6. ex equīs, on horseback. Compare 1. 4: in that line the horses are the

means by which the soldiers are brought to the hill; in this they are the places from which the conversation goes on.

9. quod amīcus: supply appellātus esset. See note on 33, 3.

10. missa: supply essent. The three quod clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with beneficia, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

12. aditum: i.e., to the Senate.

14. ipsīs . . . intercēderent, existed between them [the Romans] and the Haedui. intercēderent: subjunctive in an indirect question.

15 cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quotiēns
 quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius
 Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam
 nostram amīcitiam appetissent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse
 cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil
 20 dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitatē, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse;
 quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī
 quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātis in
 mandātis dederat: Nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum
 inferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum

15. cōnsultum, -ī, *n.* [cōsulō, take counsel], *result of deliberation*; decree, enactment. 1

quotiēns, *adv.* [quot, how many], how many times? how often? 1

16. honōrificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs, honor + faciō, make], conferring honor, honorable. 1

20. dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī,

-perditum, *tr.* [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2

dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, position. 3

auctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* augeō, increase], increased, advanced. 1

21. afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, *tr.* [ad + ferō, carry. App. 81], bring, take, or carry to. 3

16. in eōs, *in their behalf*, referring to the Haeduī.

ut, *how*, introducing an indirect question.

17. Galliae: i.e., Celtic Gaul; but we have learned in 31, 8-10 that even there their supremacy had always been disputed.

prius . . . quam = *priusquam*. The subjunctive which it introduces is due to the indirect discourse.

19. ut vellet, *to wish*: a substantive clause of result, in apposition with *hanc cōnsuētūdinem*.

sui, *of their own*: the neuter of *suus*, used as a noun.

20. sed auctiōrēs esse, *but rather to be advanced*.

grātiā, etc.: *ablatives of specification*.

21. iīs: for case, see App. 116, I.

22. quis posset: the direct form was *quis possit*, *who would be able?* and the subjunctive is retained in the indirect discourse.

23. dederat: as stated in Chap. 35.

24. inferret, etc.: subjunctives of command in indirect discourse. What was the direct form of *nē inferret*? App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, c: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2: H. 561, 1.



Fig. 90

A COIN OF THE MEDIOMATRICI

Left: Head of Janus, the Roman god of beginnings, whose name appears in "January."

Right: The figure above the horse was doubtless a charioteer in the design from which this was taken.

domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre 25
paterētur.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē
suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn
suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn sine
magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque
reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs 5
ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī quod
victōrēs victis impōnere cōsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed
Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs ad sē
oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs
cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum 10
experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūti
velint, inīquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte
ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam populī Rōmānī sibi
ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque
sē hāc spē petisse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stipendium 15
remittātur et dēditiciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē

25. remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-
sum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send or dispatch
back, return; give up. *

at, *conj.*, but, at least. *

11. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [certō, con-
tend], fight to the end, fight it out. *

12. iniquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- +
aequus, even, just], uneven, unjust,
unfair. *

14. ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* [ōrnō,
adorn], ornament; mark of honor. 1
dētrimentum, -ī, *n.* [dē + terō, rub,
wear out], harm, loss, injury. 1

16. subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī,
-tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or
carry off; take away, withdraw. 1

libenter, *adv.* [libēns, willing], will-
ingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2

Chap. 44. Ariovistus justifies his
own course and makes counter demands
and proposals.

3. rogātum et arcessitum: the par-
ticiples may be translated by a
causal clause.

ā Gallis: see 31, 11.

5. ab ipsīs: supply Gallis.

6. iūre: ablative of accordance.

7. cōsuērint: the tenses in the
early part of this chapter are due to
repraesentātiō.

9. oppugnandum: gerund or ge-
rundive? App. 289: G.-L. 427: A. 506,

n. 2: B. 339, 2: H.-B. 613, 1: H. 628,
footnote 2.

castra habuisse, *had encamped.*

10. ūnō proeliō: the battle at
Magetobriga: see 31, 41.

13. Amicitiam sibi ōrnāmentō esse
oportēre, *lit. that it was right for the
friendship to be to him for an honor.*
Make English of this.

15. petisse: supply eam, referring
to amicitiam, as the object. The king
admits that he had asked for the honor.

Sī remittātur, *if his taxes should be
stopped; a vivid future condition.*

recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetierit. Quod
 multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē sui
 mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; eius rei
 20 testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum
 nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit.) Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse
 quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exer-
 citum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum.
 Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam
 25 suā hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī
 nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item
 nōs esse iniquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod
 frātres ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam
 barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque
 30 bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse

19. *impugnō*, 1, *tr.* [in + *pugnō*, fight], fight against, attack. 2

20. *testimōnium*, -nī, *n.* [testor, be a witness], testimony, proof. 1

25. *sicut* or *sicutī*, *adv.* [sic, so + ut(i), as], so as; just as, as. 1

27. *interpellō*, 1, *tr.*, interrupt, hinder. 1

17. *quam*, *than*.

Quod, *as to the fact that*.

20. *quod . . . vēnerit*, *that he had not come except on invitation*: a substantive clause.

21. *prius quam populum Rōmānum*: *prius quam* = *priusquam*, a conjunction, and the more accurate expression would be *priusquam populus Rōmānus vēnerit*. The truth of the statement is denied by Caesar in the next chapter.

24. *Quid sibi vellet*, *lit. what did he wish for himself?* an idiomatic expression for *what did he mean?* For mood, see App. 268, I: G.-L. 651: A. 586: B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

suās refers to Ariovistus.

25. *hanc Galliam*, *this (part of) Gaul*. He claims that his right of possession in the land near the Rhine is as clear as that of the Romans in the Roman Province.

Ut . . . oportēret, *just as there ought*

to be no yielding to him. The direct form of the conditional sentence was probably *oporteat, sī faciam*, *lit. it would be right if I should make*. This is a less vivid future condition: App. 257: G.-L. 596: A. 516, 2, b: B. 303: H.-B. 580: H. 576. Such a condition has the same form in indirect discourse as a vivid future condition, and can be distinguished only by the sense of the passage.

27. *Quod diceret*, *as to the fact that he said, or as to his statement*.

29. *imperitum rērum*, *ignorant of political matters*.

30. *bellō Allobrogum*: see note on 6, 7.

Haeduōs . . . ūsōs esse: Ariovistus here lays his finger on the weak point in Caesar's argument; for in fact the alliance of the Haedui and the Romans had been mere words until now when it suited Caesar's purpose to consider it binding.

neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Qūī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiā atque amīcitiā eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcēssisset et liberā possēsiōnem 40 Galliae sibi trādīdisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō eius labōre et periculō cōnfectūrum.

31. contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contendō, strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. 1

33. suspicor, 1, *tr.*, suspect, distrust; surmise. *

simulō, 1, *tr.* [similis, like], make like; pretend. 2

34. opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [ob + premō, press], press down, oppress; overpower, destroy. 4

35. dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-

tum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw. *

regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [regō, keep straight], line, direction; region, place. *

37. grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. 1

40. liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free; unrestrained, undisputed. 1

41. remūneror, 1, *tr.*, repay, reward. 1

42. labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, effort; labor, hardship. *

31. ipsōs = *Haeduōs*.

32. Dēbēre sē suspicārī, *he had a right to suspect*.

33. simulātā amīcitiā, *although he made a pretense of friendship toward Ariovistus*.

quem . . . habēre, *lit. had what army he had in Gaul for the purpose of crushing him*.

35. sēsē . . . amīcō habitūrum, *he would regard him [Caesar] not as a friend*.

37. multis . . . factūrum: *as the head of the democratic party, Caesar had made many bitter enemies in the aristocratic party, especially during his consulship. It is entirely possible that some of them had indicated to*

Ariovistus their desire to have him put out of the way.

38. id compertum habēre differs very slightly from *id comperisse*, *had found this out*. This means *he possessed this as a thing fully ascertained*: App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.



Fig. 91

A COIN OF THE REDONES

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperiū; sī iūdicium 5 senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbere esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus utī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum

1. *sententia*, -ae, *f.* [sentīō, think], way of thinking, opinion; purpose, purport. *

3. *bene*, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, *melius*; *sup.*, *optimē*. 2

dēsērō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* [serō, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake. 3

4. *potius*, *adv.*, rather. 2

5. *Rutēni*, -ōrum, *m.* (DEde), the Ruteni (rōō-tē'nī). *

Q., *abbr. for* Quintus, Quintus (kwīn'tūs), *a Roman praenomen*. *

Fabius, -bī, *m.*, Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwīn'tūs fā'bī-ūs māk'sī-mūs), *victor over the Gauls, 121 B.C.* 1

6. *ignōscō*, *ignōscere*, *ignōvī*, *ignōtum*, *intr.*, forgive, pardon. 3

7. *redigō*, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. *

10. *observō*, 1, *tr.* [servō, give heed], observe; regard, obey. 1

Chap. 45. *Caesar insists on Roman rights in Gaul.*

1. *in eam sententiam*, quārē, *lit.* *to this purpose, why = to show why.* quārē posset is an indirect question.

3. *patī utī dēsereret*, *allowed him to abandon.* *patior* is usually followed by an infinitive instead of an *ut* clause.

4. *Ariovisti*, *populī Rōmānī*: predicative genitives of possession.

5. *superātōs esse*: in the year 121, at the time when the Allobroges were conquered. As this was fifty years before Ariovistus had entered Gaul, it disposed of the claim (44, 21) that Ariovistus had come into the country before the Roman people.

6. *neque . . . redēgisset*: the intransitive *ignōvisset* governs the dative,

quibus; but *redēgisset* is transitive and we must supply *quōs*; *quibus* is needed again with *imposuisset*. The Arverni and Ruteni lived on the other side of the Cevennes Mountains, which formed a natural frontier for the Roman Province; this was the real reason for the forbearance of the Romans.

8. *antiquissimum quodque tempus*, *lit.* *each most ancient time = priority of time.*

11. *lēgibus*: ablative with *utī*.

voluisset: supply *senātus*.

Chap. 46. *An attack by the German cavalry breaks up the conference.*

1. *geruntur*: mood and tense? App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4.

est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumultum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō 5 periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs.) Postēa-
quam in vulgus militum ēlātum est quā arrogantīā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdixisset, impetumque 10 ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs colloquium dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercituī iniectum est.

3. adequitō, 1, *intr.* [equitō, ride; equus, horse], ride to, toward, or against; ride up. 1

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone. *

5. etsī, *conj.* [et + sī, if], even if, although. *

10. interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dic-

tum, *intr.* [dīcō, say], exclude, forbid, interdict. 1

11. dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmp-
tum, *tr.* [emō, take], take apart; inter-
rupt, break off. 1

13. iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.*
[iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into;
inspire, infuse. 3

2. tumultum: case? App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 420, 5.

5. quod: the adjective form of the indefinite pronoun.

6. legiōnis dēlēctae, to his picked legion; the genitive cannot always be translated by "of."

7. committendum ut dīcī posset, lit. that it ought to be permitted that it could be said = that he ought to permit it to be said.

pulsīs hostibus, after the defeat of the enemy.

8. per fidem, because of their confidence [in Caesar's honor]. This is equivalent to saying treacherously.

9. quā arrogantīā ūsus, using what arrogance = with what arrogance. It is often well to translate ūsus in this way.

10. omnī . . . interdixisset, had forbidden the Romans all Gaul. Galliā is an ablative of separation. Rōmānīs is the indirect object.

11. ut, how, introduces both fēcissent and dirēmisset. It would more naturally precede impetum.



Fig. 92

ANCIENT GALLIC BIT

The disk is an ornate cheek-piece

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: Velle sē dē iīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.
- 5 Colloquendi Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēi Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum misūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commo-
- 10 dissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscētem, cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem

9. Procillus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Procillus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs prō-sīl'ūs), a Gaul. 2

Cabūrus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs kā-bū-rūs). 1

10. adulēscēns; -entis, m. [pres.

part. of *adolēscō*, grow up], youth, young man. 4

11. Flaccus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Flaccus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-us flāk'ūs), governor of Gaul, 83 B.C. 1

dōnō, 1, tr. [dōnum, gift], give, present. 1

Chap. 47. Ariovistus requests a second conference, but seizes the envoys sent by Caesar.

1. Bīduō post, on the following day. The literal meaning is afterwards by two days, but the Latin writer counts the day of the interview as one, the next day as the second. In this case the meaning is proved by l. 5.

2. quae agī coeptae essent, which had begun to be discussed, or better, which they had begun to discuss. The passive forms of *coepī* are used when the dependent infinitive is in the passive voice: App. 86, a.

3. utī cōstitueret: a substantive clause, the object of an implied verb of asking.

4. lēgātīs, legates, not envoys. Ariovistus wished to confer with an officer of the highest rank, if Caesar should refuse a second personal interview.

5. Colloquendi . . . est, Caesar saw no occasion for a conference.

prīdiē eius diēi is only a fuller expression for *prīdiē*, and has the same meaning.

6. retinērī quīn conicerent, be kept from casting. For construction see App. 228, c: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 595, 2.

8. Commodissimum vīsum est, it seemed best. The subject is *mittere*, l. 15, of which *Procillum* is the object.

11. cīvitāte dōnātus erat, had been granted citizenship. For case, see App. 114, a.

et . . . et (l. 12) . . . et (l. 13), both . . . and . . . and.



Fig. 93

A GALLIC COIN

et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuetūdine ūtēbātur, (et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium, quī hospitio Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae diceret 15 Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē eius diēi praeter

12. scientia, -ae, *f.* [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. 4

13. longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [longus, long], far off; long, long continued. 2

peccō, 1, *intr.*, sin, do wrong. 1

14. Mētius, -tī, *m.*, Marcus Metius (mār'kūs mē'shyūs). 2

17. cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi,

-spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look at, observe, perceive, see. *

conclāmō, 1, *intr.* [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2

18. speculor, 1, *intr.*, spy. 1

19. catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain, fetter. 3

1. prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move forward. 2

12. quā multā ūtēbātur, *which Ariovistus spoke fluently.*

13. in eō, *in his case.*

14. Germānīs: dative of possession. esset: implied indirect discourse, for Caesar is quoting the reason which influenced him at the time of his action: *because (as he thought) the Germans had.*

ūnā, *with him.*

15. hospitio, *guest-friendship.* This is an awkward rendering, but as we no longer recognize such a relationship we have no name for it. In its simplest form it bound two men, residing in different states, to give hospitality or render other services to each other whenever occasion arose. Such an arrangement was more needed then, because there were no good hotels.

17. conclāmāvit, *etc.*: Ariovistus was angry at his failure to secure an interview with either Caesar or one of Caesar's legates.

18. an is not to be translated.

Since *an* belongs in the second part of a double question, the full thought is something like "is it for anything else, or, etc."

Cōnantēs, *while they were attempting.*

Chap. 48-54. *After some maneuvering Caesar forces Ariovistus to give battle, and destroys the German host.*

Chap. 48. *Ariovistus marches past Caesar's camp. The German cavalry tactics.*

1. milibus: ablative of degree of difference. Ariovistus had been twenty-four miles north of Caesar's camp.

2. sub monte: at the foot of the Vosges Mountains.

Postrīdiē eius diēi = *postrīdiē*: see note on 47, 5.

praeter castra: see the plan, p. 187. Ariovistus marched on high ground along the foothills of the mountains, so that Caesar could not safely attack him as he passed the Roman camp.

castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus
 ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque
 5 quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur Caesarem inter-
 clūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs
 suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī
 vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset.
 Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit,
 10 equestri proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae
 quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex,
 totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omni
 cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs
 in proeliis versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī

4. *ultrā*, *prep. with acc.*, beyond. 2

6. *continuus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*continēō*, hold together], uninterrupted; consecutive. 2

7. *prōdūcō*, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, *tr.* [*dūcō*, lead], lead out or forth. *

10. *genus*, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin; kind, nature. *

11. *exerceō*, 2, *tr.*, practice, train, exercise. 1

12. *totidem*, *indecl. adj.* [*tot*, so many], just as many. 3

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, speedy. 1

14. *versō*, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as deponent*, turn oneself; engage in. *

5. *supportārētur*: mood? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

interclūderet: Ariovistus did not encamp on the road which the convoys of provisions would have to take, for he preferred a safer position on the hills; but he was near enough to the road to cut off the supplies if they tried to pass.

6. *prō castris*: this was the favorite position for a battle, since the camp formed a place of refuge if the Romans should be defeated (Int. 49). Although Caesar could not tempt the Germans to fight him in this position, he at least encouraged his men by making it clear that the Germans were not anxious to fight them.

7. *aciem . . . habuit*, kept his line drawn up.

ut deesset: a purpose clause, al-

though *nē* is regularly used in negative purpose clauses instead of *ut nōn*. Here *nōn* belongs closely with the verb, *nōn deesset*, lit. *might not be lacking* = *might be offered him*.

8. *vellet*: implied indirect discourse: for the thought in Caesar's mind was *sī vult*, if he wishes.

9. *castris*, in camp. Why not in *castris*? App. 151, c: G.-L. 389: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476. Ariovistus had a superstitious reason for refusing to fight, as appears later.

10. *proeliō*: see references on *castris*, l. 9.

Genus . . . exercuerant, the kind . . . was as follows.

12. *numerō*: ablative of specification, with *totidem*. It need not be translated.

13. *singulī singulōs dēlēgerant*, lit.

quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum; tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit.

15. dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, rough, difficult, dangerous. 1

concurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run or rush together; run to the rescue. 2

16. dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall from or off. 1

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, —, *tr.* [sistō, stand], stand or rally around, surround. *

quō, *adv.*: (1) *interrog.*, whither? (2) *rel.*, to which; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. *

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [prō + eō, go. App. 84], go or come forth, go forward, advance. 2

18. celeritās, -tātis, *f.* [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *

iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane. 1

cursor, -ūs, *m.* [currō, run] running, speed. *

19. adaequō, 1, *tr.* [aequō, make equal], make equal to, equal; keep up with, 3

3. idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. *

individuals had chosen individuals = had chosen, each for himself.

14. hī . . . concurrēbant, if there was anything too hard (for the cavalry to accomplish), the infantry ran to their aid.

15. quī: the substantive indefinite pronoun, instead of the more usual quis.

16. quō: this adverb, like the pronoun quis, is used as an indefinite after sī, nisi, nē, and num.

Chap. 49. Caesar constructs a smaller camp, beyond the camp of Ariovistus.

1. eum = Ariovistum.

nē . . . prohibērētur: the plan shows that the second camp commanded the road and protected it from the Germans.

4. aciē triplici: see Int. 56. Usually the army marched in column; but on this occasion it had to expect an attack at any moment, and therefore it marched in battle formation.

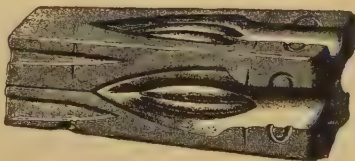


Fig. 94

AN ANCIENT MOLD FOR SPEAR HEADS

Compare with this Fig. 73, and also Figs. 44, 66, and 72



Fig. 95

THE GENERAL DIRECTS WORK ON FORTIFICATIONS

Soldiers are at work in the foreground, cutting down trees and apparently laying out the ground for a fortification. They are unarmed and wear only tunics. At the right, soldiers stand on guard. The camp is seen in the upper right hand corner. In the background the general, followed by an escort of auxiliary cavalry, gallops off to direct another part of the work.

5 Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre
iussit. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedita cum
omnī equitātū Ariovistus misit, quae cōpiae nostrōs perter-
rērent et mūnitiōne prohibērēt.) Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut
ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus
10 perficere iussit. Mūnītis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et

8. sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise;
nihilō sētius, none the less, neverthe-
less. 2

9. prōpulsō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of prō-*
pellō, drive forward], drive back,
repel. 1

5. in armīs: to repel the expected
attack.

6. hominum . . . expedita, *lit. six-*

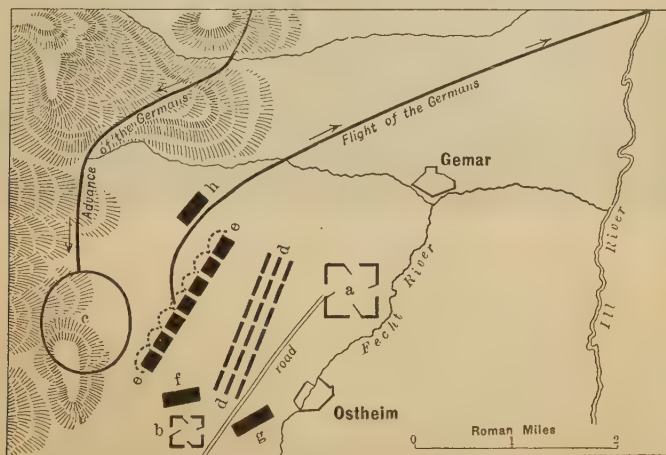
teen light-armed thousands of men =
sixteen thousand light-armed infan-
try.

partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ex castris utrisque cōpiās suās edūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castris prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi

2. paulum, *adv.* [*acc. of paulus*, 'little'], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [*gradior*, step], step or go forward, advance. *



BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS

a, Large Roman camp
b, Small Roman camp
c, Camp of the Germans
d, The Roman legions

e, The German infantry
f, The Roman auxiliaries
g, The Roman cavalry
h, The German cavalry

11. reliquās: supply *legiōnēs*.

redūxit: although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

Chap. 50. *Ariovistus unsuccessfully attacks the smaller camp. Caesar learns*

that he wishes to postpone the decisive battle.

1. institūtō: ablative of accordance.

2. paulum . . . prōgressus: Caesar had failed to secure a battle in the position most favorable to himself (see 48, 6, and note); therefore he now offered battle in a position equally favorable to both armies.



Fig. 96

THE SITE OF CAESAR'S SMALL CAMP

This is looking southeast from the site of Ariovistus's camp, which is marked *c* on the plan, p. 187.

nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum
 5 in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum
 cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret mīsīt. Ācriter
 utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās
 cōpiās Ariovistus multis et illātis et acceptis vulneribus in
 castra redūxit. Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar quam ob
 10 rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam,

4. merīdiēs, -ēi, *m.* [diēs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon.

1

7. utrimque, *adv.* [uterque, each of

two], on each side, on both sides. 2

usque, *adv.*: (1) *of place*, all the way to; (2) *of time*, up to, till; *with ad*, until. 3

7. utrimque pugnātum est, *both sides fought.*

9. quam ob rem, *why*, is here interrogative and introduces an indirect question.

10. proeliō: see note on *castris*, 48, 9.

dēcertāret: i.e., fight a general and decisive battle. So far Ariovistus had risked only small battles.

quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātērēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dicere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

51. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est reliquit; ālāriōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplici īnstrūctā aciē usque 5 ad castra hostium accessit.) Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī

12. sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, chance; casting or drawing of lots. 3

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, divination, prophecy. 1

dēclārō, 1, *tr.* [clārus, clear], make plain, declare. 1

13. necne, *conj.*, or not. 1

-ne, *interrog. enclitic: in direct questions, not translated; in indirect ques-*

tions, whether; utrum . . . -ne, whether . . . or. 2

fās, *n.*, *indecl.*, right, will of Heaven. 1

14. lūna, -ae, *f.*, the moon. 2

2. ālārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [āla, wing], on the wing; *m. pl. as noun*, auxiliaries. 2

5. speciēs, -ēi, *f.* [-spiciō, see], look, appearance, show. 4

11. quod ea cōnsuētūdō esset, *that there was this custom*, is a substantive quod clause in apposition with *hanc causam*. The subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

ut dēclārārent: a substantive clause of result explaining *ea cōnsuētūdō*.

mātērēs familiae: Tacitus tells us that the Germans ascribed prophetic powers to their women. He describes the lots (*sortibus*, l. 12) as twigs, cut into small pieces, marked, and scattered on a white cloth. Three of them were picked up at random, and an examination of the marks (runes) disclosed the will of the gods.

12. utrum . . . necne: construction? App. 214; 264, c: G.-L. 458; 459: A. 334; 335, n.: B. 162, 4; 300, 4, a: H.-B. 234, a: H. 380; 650, 1.

14. sī contendissent, *if they should fight*. *contendissent* stands for a future perfect of the direct form.

novam lūnam: this fell on Sept. 18.

Chap. 51. Caesar compels Ariovistus to prepare for battle.

2. quod . . . vīsum est, (*a garrison which seemed to be sufficient*).

ālāriōs: the word got the meaning *auxiliaries* from the fact that in earlier times the Romans posted the auxiliaries on the wings of the battle-line. For Caesar's use of such troops see Int. 47.

3. multitūdine: ablative of specification.

4. prō, *in comparison with*.

6. necessāriō: the Germans did not entrench their camps. As Caesar was evidently about to attack them, and as there was no room for a battle line in their camp, they had to come out. Caesar probably had to make the attack uphill, but there was a great advantage in forcing the enemy to fight at a time when they believed they could not conquer.



Fig. 97

THE SITE OF CAESAR'S LARGE CAMP

This is looking east from the site of Ariovistus's camp. It looks down the slope up which the Romans charged.

suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs

7. *generātim*, *adv.* [genus, tribe], by tribes. 1

8. *Marcomannī*, -ōrum, *m.* (Bi), the Marcomanni (mār'kō-mān'ī). 1

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'ō-sī). 2

Vangionēs, -um, *m.* (Bgh), the Vangiones (vān-jī'ō-nēz). 1

9. *Nemetēs*, -um, *m.* (Bh), the Nemetes (nēm'ē-tēz). 1

Sedusii, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Sedusii (sē-dū'shyī). 1

7. *generātim*, etc.: about 150 years later, Tacitus speaks thus of the Germans: "And what most stimulates their courage is that their squadrons or battalions, instead of being formed by chance or by a fortuitous gathering, are composed of families and clans. Close by them, too, are those dearest to them, so that they hear the shrieks of women, the cries of infants. *They* are to every man the most

sacred witnesses of his bravery—they are his most generous applauders. The soldier brings his wounds to mother and wife, who shrink not from counting or even demanding them, and who administer both food and encouragement to the combatants." (Church and Brodribb's translation of the *Germania*).

8. *intervāllis*: ablative of attendant circumstance.

et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. 10
Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscētēs
militēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem
Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem
praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā
dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse
animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostrī ācritē in hostēs
signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque 5
prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniiciendī nōn darētur.
Reiectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī,
celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum
excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem
īnsilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. 10

12. **pandō, pandere, pandī, passum**, *tr.*, spread or stretch out, extend. 2

1. **quaestor, -ōris, m.** [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), a treasury officer in charge of the finances of the army. 3

3. **dexter, -tra, -trum, adj.**, on the right, right. 4

cornū, -ūs, n., horn; (of an army) flank, wing; ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing. *

5. **repente, adv.** [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2

6. **prōcurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr.** [currō, run], run or rush forward, charge. 1

7. **comminus, adv.** [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. 1

9. **excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. and intr.** [capiō, take], take up, receive; meet, withstand. *

10. **īnsilīō, -silire, -silui, -sultum, tr.** [saliō, leap], leap upon. 1

revellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, tr. [vellō, pluck], pull or tear up. 1

dēsuper, adv. [super, above], from above. 1

10. **circumdedērunt**: i.e., on the rear and both flanks.

11. **Eō**, on them, is the adverb.

Chap. 52. A fierce battle is fought.

1. **singulīs . . . praefēcit**: i.e., each of the six legions was put under the command of either the quaestor or one of the five legates. See Int. 38, 39.

3. **eam partem**: i.e., the enemy's left wing.

5. **signō datō**: by trumpeters.

itaque = *et ita*.

6. **pīla . . . coniiciendī**: on this and other details of the battle see Int. 55.

7. **Reiectīs, throwing aside**. The pīla were intended only for casting, and were useless in a hand-to-hand encounter.

8. **phalange**: on this formation see note on 24, 11.

9. **in phalangem īnsilirent**: i.e., the soldiers leaped on the roof of shields. If the Romans had been able to begin the battle with the customary volley of javelins, this solid array of shields would have been broken up as it was in the battle with the Helvetii, 25, 3-10. **īnsilirent**: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātūī praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam
 15 ii quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

✓ 53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōfisi trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus

13. premō, premere, pressī, pressum, *tr.*, press, press hard. *

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, Publius Licinius Crassus (pūb'li-ūs lī-sin'ī-ūs krās'ūs), a son of the triumvir. *

16. subsidium, -dī, *n.* [subsideō, sit near or in reserve], reserve force; help, aid. *

1. tergum, -ī, *n.*, the back; terga vertere, to flee. *

2. vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *tr.*, turn, turn around. *

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *tr.* and *intr.* [fuga, flight], flee, run away. 4

4. trānō, 1, *intr.* [trāns + nō, swim], swim across. 1

11. Cum, though.

ā sinistrō cornū, on the left wing, which was the weakest part of the German line.

14. expeditior, freer to act. Crassus and the cavalry were posted behind the Roman left wing (see plan on p. 187), out of the way of the German cavalry, for whom they were no match. They were taking no part in the battle, but were waiting to pursue the enemy when the legions should win the victory.

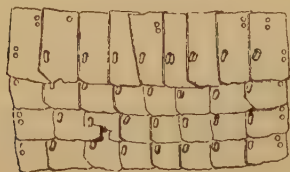


FIG. 98

A BIT OF PLATE MAIL

Overlapping plates were riveted on leather. The cuirass in Fig. 17, p. 37, is made in the same way.

15. ii . . . versābantur: i.e., Caesar and the legates, who alone had the authority to give such a command. Crassus was too young to be a legate, but he was an able man and the son of Caesar's political partner: see Int. 11.

tertiā aciem: as usual, this was being held in reserve for just such an emergency.

labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō, to the assistance of our hard-pressed men.

Chap. 53. The Germans are routed. Caesar's envoys are rescued.

1. terga vertērunt: the line of wagons (51, 9) might hinder their flight, but could not entirely prevent it. It is possible, too, that during the battle the Germans had advanced so far that there was space enough for flight between the wagons and the German line.

2. flūmen Rhēnum: as the Rhine is much more than five miles from the battlefield, it is probable that the Ill River is meant, and that Caesar mistook it for the Rhine.

inventis sibi salutem reppererunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui 5
 naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit; reliquos
 omnes consecuti equites nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt
 Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum
 duxerat, altera Norica, regis Voccionis soror, quam in Gallia
 duxerat, a fratre missam; utraque in ea fuga periit. Fuerunt 10
 duae filiae: harum altera occisa, altera capta est. C. Valerius
 Proculus, cum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus
 traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostes equitatu insequentem
 incidit. Quae quidem res Caesar non minorem quam ipsa
 victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum 15
 provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum ex
 manibus hostium sibi restitutum videbat, (neque eius calamitate
 de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna deminuerat.)

5. *inveniō, -venīre, -venī, -ventum, tr.* [veniō, come], come upon, find. 2

6. *navicula, -ae, f.* [dim. of *nāvis*, ship], small boat, skiff. 1

deligō, 1, tr. [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. 2

nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus sum, tr., get possession of; meet with, find. *

8. *natiō, -ōnis, f.* [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. *

9. *Vocciō, -ōnis, m.*, Voccio (vōk'-shyō), a king of Noricum. 1

10. *pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be killed, perish. 2

12. *trīnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. 1

vinciō, vincire, vīxī, vinctum, tr., bind. 1

13. *trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum, tr.*, drag, drag along. 1

14. *incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, intr.* [cadō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet. 2

15. *voluptās, -tātis, f.*, pleasure, delight, enjoyment. 2

honestus, -a, -um, adj. [honōs, honor], honorable, distinguished. 1

16. *hospes, -itis, m.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend. 1

18. *grātulatiō, -ōnis, f.* [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 1

4. *viribus*: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

5. *Ariovistus*: four years later we hear that the Germans desired to avenge his death. Possibly he died of wounds received in this battle.

6. *ea*, in this, is an ablative of means.

reliquos omnes: it is stated by Plutarch that 80,000 were killed in the battle and retreat.

7. *Duae uxores*: among the Ger-

mans polygamy was permitted in the case of the nobles.

8. *natione*: ablative of specification.

10. *duxerat*: had married; while *duxerat* in l. 9 means had brought.

12. *Proculus*: see 47, 9.

13. *insequentem*, who was following.

17. *neque . . . deminuerat*, nor had fortune, by injury to Proculus, lessened in any degree Caesar's great satisfaction and rejoicing; lit. lessened anything from; quicquam being the direct object.

Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dicēbat utrum
 20 ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium
 beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad
 eum reductus est.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī quī ad
 rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubīi,
 quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī magnum ex
 iīs numerum occidērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs
 5 bellis cōfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat,
 in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnum
 praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs
 profectus est.

19. *ter*, *num. adv.* [cf. *trēs*, three], three times. 1

cōsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr. and intr.*, take counsel, consult, consider. 1

20. *statim*, *adv.*, forthwith, immediately, at once. *

necō, 1, *tr.* [nēx, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2

reservō, 1, *tr.* [servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2

21. *incolumis*, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured. 4

2. *Ubīi*, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū'bī-i), a German tribe. *

4. *aestās*, -tātis, *f.*, summer. *

5. *paulō*, *adv.* [abl. of paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

7. *praepōnō*, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before or over, put in command of. 1

19. *sē praesente*, in his presence.

sortibus cōsultum, lit. that it had been consulted by lots =that the lots had been consulted.

20. *necārētur*: this is an indirect question, but the subjunctive is not due to that fact: App. 210; 263: G.-L. 265; 467: A. 444; 575, b: B. 277; 300, 2: H.-B. 503; H. 559, 4.

Chap. 54. *The fate of the Suebi. Arrangements for the winter.*

1. *quī . . . vēnerant*: see 37, 5.

3. *Rhēnum*: case? App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 435, 2.

5. *mātūrius paulō*: in the latter half of September. The army needed rest after such arduous labors.

6. *in Sēquanōs*: probably in Vesontio. The quartering of the army on Gallic soil signified Caesar's intention to assume a protectorate over Gaul, and thus brought about the Belgic uprising of the following year.

7. *ad conventūs agendōs*, to hold the provincial courts. This was a part of his duty as governor of the Province. Moreover he wished to be as near Rome as possible in order to keep in touch with affairs there. So long as he was governor he could not go to Rome.

THE STORY OF BOOK II

WAR WITH THE BELGAE

Caesar's first year of fighting had brought central Gaul under Roman control (see map facing p. 145), and this fact was made clear to the Gauls when Caesar kept his army through the winter in Vesontio; for no Roman army had ever before been stationed north of the Province. The Belgae, fearing that they would be attacked next, formed during the winter a league of defense, and prepared to raise a force of nearly three hundred thousand men. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgium as the Haedui had in central Gaul, came to terms with him and furnished him valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. Word soon came that the Belgian army had concentrated and was marching toward him. At first he did not venture to attack with his much smaller army an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae. Therefore he chose a strong position on the Axona (Aisne) River, and sent a force of the Haedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci, hoping by this means to break up the army of the enemy. The Belgae made an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, a town of the Remi, and then encamped before Caesar's position on the Axona. A little skirmishing discouraged the badly organized and poorly fed Belgian army. The men of each state went off to defend their own territory, all promising to come to the rescue of whichever state Caesar should first attack. Caesar was thus left free to deal with the states one at a time.

Sweeping through western Belgium so rapidly that the states could not send the promised help to one another, he received the submission of the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani. No doubt the neighboring states, too, sent envoys of peace, though they are not mentioned. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, the Viromandui, and the Atrebates assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (Sambre) River, and planned to surprise and destroy the legions while separated on the march. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to fortify a camp, the enemy suddenly burst out of the coverts near by and fell upon it; Caesar was taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so great the danger that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline pre-

ailed. The enemy lost heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand, and were slain almost to a man.

The Battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Atuatucaii dared to offer a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery. The conquest of Belgium was complete, with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii, who were not attacked and who sent no envoys. With his customary moderation Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were raised to supreme power in Belgium, and were thus firmly attached to the Roman interest.

Later in the year the states of northwestern Gaul submitted to Publius Crassus, Caesar's legate, apparently without fighting.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy, and courage are seen at their best. Yet the surprise at the Sabis was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed chiefly to the excellence of his soldiers.



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR BOOK II

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

The coloring shows the part of Transalpine Gaul which had come under Roman control at the end of this campaign. The meaning of the colors is as follows:

Brown indicates the part which belonged to Rome before Caesar came to Gaul.

Red indicates the states which Caesar conquered in battle. It might be argued that all of Belgium should be colored red, because all the states were represented in the great army that melted away before Caesar at the Axona. But the only real fighting was against the Nervii, the Atrebatas, the Viromandui, and the Atuatuca; therefore the territory of these states is the only addition to the red on the map facing p. 145.

Blue indicates the states which came under Caesar's control without fighting. We may assume that all the Belgian states except the Morini and the Menapii sent embassies of submission during this campaign; for in III, **28** we are told that, by the end of the next summer, these two states were the only ones which had never sent envoys. The northwestern states, too, are now colored blue. Crassus evidently secured their submission without fighting (**34**). His one legion would have been helpless if they had fought; for Caesar and most of his army had difficulty in conquering them when they rebelled in the next year.

Battlefields are marked by x. The one on the Axona was certainly at Berry-au-Bac, although Mr. Holmes expresses doubt. The one on the Sabis is certain. The site of the town of the Atuatuca is not certain; but Mt. Falhize, the one indicated on the map, is open to fewer objections than any other.

COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsq̄ue intēr sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum, quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant,

2. crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close; numerous, frequent. 4

rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, report, rumor. 2

afferō, afferre, attuli, allātum, *tr.* [ad + ferō, carry. App. 81], bring, take, or carry to. 3

4. coniūrō, 1, *intr.* [iūrō, swear],

swear together, league together, conspire. *

7. sollicitō, 1, *tr.*, stir up; incite, instigate. 2

8. partim, *adv.* [pars, part], partly, in part. 4

versō, 1, *tr.*, turn; *pass. as deponent*, turn oneself; be, remain. *

Chap. 1. *The Belgae form a league against Caesar.*

1. citeriōre Galliā: Caesar's province south of the Alps; now northern Italy.

dēmōnstrāvimus: in I, 54. Caesar uses the rhetorical *we*. Caesar the writer speaks in the first person, Caesar the general is spoken of in the third.

3. Labiēnī: as commander of the winter quarters, he of course sent regular reports to Caesar on all matters of importance.

certior fiēbat, *was informed from time to time*: the imperfect of repeated action.

Belgās: see Int. 28.

quam . . . dixerāmus, *who, as I said, are a third part of Gaul*. *quam* refers to Belgās, but agrees in gender and number with the predicate noun *partem*. The perfect would seem more natural than the past perfect, *dixerā-*

mus. The meaning is "as I had said before I reached this part of my story."

4. coniūrāre, *were forming a league*, not "conspiring." The Belgae were not rebelling, for they had never been subject to Rome. Caesar had no scruples about conquering them, but he did not treat them as rebels.

6. quod verērentur, *that they feared*: a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causās*. The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

omnī . . . Galliā, *now that all Gaul had been brought under control*. Galliā here refers only to Celtic Gaul. See Int. 28.

7. sollicitārentur: the indirect discourse still continues, but stops at this point. Apparently Labienus reported the two reasons for the action of the Belgae, but Caesar himself supplies the three reasons why Celtic Gauls instigated a rising of the Belgae.

8. partim quī, *lit. partly (by those)*

ita populū Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī 10 novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

9. inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, -veterātum, *intr.*, grow old; become established. 1

10. molestē, *adv.*, with annoyance; molestē ferre, be annoyed. 1

mōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [mōbilis, mova-

ble], movableness; changeableness, fickleness. 2

levitās, -tātis, *f.* [levis, light], lightness; fickleness; restlessness. 1

13. vulgō, *adv.* [vulgus, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2

who = some of whom; i.e., the opponents of all foreigners, those whose motto might have been "Gaul for the Gauls."

10. partim quī, *others of whom*.

mōbilitāte et levitāte: Caesar often speaks of these qualities as characteristic of the Gauls.

11. ab nōn nūllīs (*sollicitārentur*): a third class, such men as Orgetorix

(I, 2), Casticus (I, 3), and Dumnorix (I, 18). See Int. 29.

quod . . . occupābantur, *because royal power was commonly seized by, etc.*

12. ad . . . hominēs, *for employing mercenaries*.

14. imperiō nostrō: case? App. 142, b: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3.

†1. esset: mood? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 579, II, a; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

2. litterīs: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

3. Labiēni: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1.

certior: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

Belgās: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

4. coniūrāre: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

obsidēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

6. verērentur: mood? App. 269:

G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I: H. 643.

Galliā: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 2: B. 227, 2, d: H.-B. 421, 4: H. 489, 1.

7. addūcerētur: mood? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

Gallis: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

9. populū: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

10. mōbilitāte: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

11. imperiīs: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (b): H. 426, 1.

13. occupābantur: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 539: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

†The grammar references given at the end of each chapter of this book are as far as possible duplicates of those given in the notes of I, 1-29. They are given for the convenience of teachers who begin the study of Caesar with Book II. Their plan and purpose is stated on p. 68, paragraph 5.

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat
5 negōtium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis quī finitimī Belgis erant utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum

2. ineō, -īre, -lī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin. *

aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. *

3. dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead down or away; bring, conduct, lead. *

Q., *abbr.* for Quīntus, Quintus (kwīn'tūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Pedius, -dī, *m.*, Quintus Pedius (kwīn'tūs pē'dī-ūs). 2

4. incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], undertake; begin. 1

5. negōtium, -tī, *n.* [neg- + ōtium, leisure], business, undertaking; negōtium dare, employ, direct. *

Senonēs, -um, *m.* (Bef), the Senones (sēn'ō-nēz). 1

7. cōstanter, *adv.* [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently. 2

8. vērō, *adv.* [vērus, true], in truth; but, however. *

Chap. 2-4. Caesar marches to Belgium and gets information from the Remi.

Chap. 2. Caesar makes preparations and moves against the Belgae.

1. duās legiōnēs: Caesar now had eight legions, numbered consecutively from VII to XIV, approximately 32,000 legionary soldiers. In addition he had auxiliary cavalry and infantry, on whom, however, he placed little reliance. See Int. 32-33.



FIG. 99

A ROMAN SHIELD

2. initā aestāte, after the beginning of warm weather. Aestās included more than our summer, and the time here meant is spring.

in ulteriōrem Galliam: i.e., to join the other legions in Vesontio. See map facing p. 197.

3. quī (eās) dēdūceret, to take them.

cum primum: in June. Food could be carried for the men, but not for the pack animals. Cum primum usually takes the indicative.

4. Dat negōtium utī cognōscant, *lit.* he gave the duty to the Senones that they find out = he employed the Senones to find out.

6. gerantur: Caesar said ea quae geruntur cognōscite, find out what is being done. gerantur is the subjunctive of implied indirect discourse: App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, note: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, a: H. 649, 1.

7. manūs cōgī, that armed bands were gathering.

8. dubitandum (sibi esse) quīn proficiscerētur, *lit.* that it ought to be hesitated by him that he should set out = that he should hesitate to set out.

nōn exīstimāvit quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā prōvisā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs 10 Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne

10. prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsum, tr. [videō, see], see beforehand; care for, provide. *

1. imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj. [in- +

prōvisus, foreseen], unforeseen; dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly. 1

opīniō, -ōnis, f. [opīnor, think], way of thinking, opinion; expectation. *

When *dubitō* means *hesitate* it is usually followed by the infinitive. See App. 229, d: G.-L. 555, 2, R. 3: A. 558, a, n. 2: B. 298, b: H.-B. 521, 3, b; 586: H. 595, 1; 607, 1.

10. ad finēs: it was about 145 miles to the boundary of the Remi; but Caesar probably passed the boundary and nearly reached Durocortorum, their capital, in the fifteen days. See the map facing p. 197, and Int. 54.

Durocortorum Rēmōrum is the modern Rheims, a name derived from *Rēmōrum*. Many names of French

cities are similarly derived from tribe names; e.g., Paris from *Lutecia Parīsiōrum*.

During most of the World War the German line ran a few miles east of Rheims, and from that line the Germans bombarded the city and its magnificent cathedral. See Int. 72.

Chap. 3. *The Remi submit to Caesar.*

1. Eō: the adverb.

omnium opīniōne, lit. *than the opinion of all* = *than anyone had expected*.

1. legiōnēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

2. aestāte: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

3. dēducēret: mood? App. 225, a, 1: G.-L. 630: A. 531, 2: B. 282, 2: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 590.

lēgātum: case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

4. pābuli: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

inciperet: mood? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 579, II, a; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

5. Senonibus: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, a: H. 424.

Belgīs: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (a): H. 434, 2.

6. cognōscant: mood? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565.

7. certiōrem: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

manūs: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

8. cōgī: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

10. diēbus: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

11. Belgārum: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum
lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī
dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī
5 Rōmānī permittere. Neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōn-
sēnsisse, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse,
parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs
recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquōs omnēs
Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum incolant
10 sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium furō-
rem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī



Fig. 100

A COIN OF THE REMI

2. Rēmūs, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the Remi; *m. pl. as noun*, Rēmī, (Bef), the Remi (rē'mī). *

3. Iccius, -cī, *m.*, Iccius (ik'shyūs). 3 Andebrogius, -gī, *m.*, Andebrogius (än'dē-brō'jyūs). 1

5. permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-

sum, *tr.* [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender. *

cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *intr.* [sentiō, feel] think together; agree, combine. 2

7. imperātum, -ī, *n.* [imperō, command], command, order. 2

8. cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, the rest of, the other. 4

9. cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. 2

10. coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join with, unite, bind. *

furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, madness. 2

11. Suessiōnēs, -um, *m.* (Be), the Suessiones (swēs'ī-ō'nēs). *

2. Rēmī: a Belgian state, of apparently only moderate strength, which saw an opportunity to increase its power by treacherously deserting its fellow states. In reward for its services Caesar made it the leader of a confederation, and it remained constantly faithful to him.

proximī . . . Belgīs, the nearest of the Belgae to Gaul, i.e., at the point where Caesar entered the Belgian frontier.

ex Belgīs: the ablative with *dē* or *ex* is often used instead of the partitive genitive.

3. quī dicerent: purpose. The rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse.

The direct form is given at the end of the text.

4. sē is the object of *permittere*. Another *sē* must be supplied as its subject: *that they intrusted themselves and all their possessions to the good faith (or protection), etc.*

5. Neque . . . neque . . . -que, not . . . and not . . . and.

7. esse: infinitive in indirect discourse. dare, facere, recipere, and iuvāre depend on parātōs.

9. cis: the Gallic side.

10. sēsē: do not translate.

11. ut . . . dēterrēre potuerint quīn, that they had not been able to prevent even the Suessiones . . . from, etc.

eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrere potuerint quā cum hīs cōsentiērent.

4. Cum ab iīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaēque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs proptēr locī fertilitātem ibi cōsēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī

2. *quid*, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with posse*, how? App. 128, *b.* *

sic, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner; as follows. *

plērīque, *-aeque*, *-aque*, *adj.*, very many, the most of. 2

3. *antīquitus*, *adv.* [*antīquus*, ancient], long ago, anciently. 2

4. *fertilitās*, *-tātis*, *f.* [*fertilis*, fertile], fertility. 1

5. *expellō*, *-pellere*, *-pulī*, *-pulsum*, *tr.* [*pellō*, drive], drive out, expel. 4

Chap. 4. *The Remi inform Caesar of the numbers in the Belgian army.*

1. *iīs*: i.e., the envoys of the Remi.

2. *quid*: case? App. 128, *b*: G.-L. 334, R. 1: A. 390, *c*: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2.

sic, as follows.

Plērōsque Belgās: the remainder of the chapter is in indirect discourse.

The direct form is given at the end of the text.

The tradition that most of the Belgae were descended from Germans was not strictly true, but the Belgae prided themselves on the supposed fact because of the Germans' renown in war.

3. *Rhēnum*: object of the passive participle *trāductōs*: App. 127, *a*.

4. *Gallōs*: the object.

1. *opiniōne*: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406, *a*: B. 217, 1, 4: H.-B. 416, *e*: H. 471, 8.

2. *vēnisset*: mood? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

proximī: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

Galliae: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (*a*): H. 434, 2.

3. *lēgātōs*: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

5. *Belgis*: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. *coniūrāsse*: form? App. 72: G.-

L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

7. *oppidīs*: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423; 446, 1: H. 476, 3.

9. *incolant*: mood? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2: H. 643.

11. *frātrēs*: case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

12. *iūre*: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, 1.

13. *potuerint*: mood? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

14. *cōsentiērent*: mood? App. 228, *c*: G.-L. 555, 1: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, *b*: H. 563, 1; 566.

Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī dicebant,
 10 proptereā quod propinquitātibus affinitātibusque coniūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōficere armāta milia centum; pollicitōs ex eō nu-
 15 merō ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam

6. Teutonī, -ōrum, or Teutonēs, -um, *m.*, the Teutoni (tū'tō-nī) or Teutones (tū'tō-nēz). 4

Cimbri, -ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (sīm'brī). 4

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within; into. 4
 ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, go], go into, enter. 1

8. spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; *pl.*, haughtiness, pride. 2

9. explorō, 1, *tr.*, search or find out, investigate, spy out. 2

10. propinquitās, -tātis, *f.* [propinquus, neighboring, near], nearness; relationship. 3

11. commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general. *

13. Bellovaci, -ōrum, *m.* (Bde), the Bellovaci (bē-lōv'ā-sī). *

14. armō, 1, *tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; armātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, armed; armātī, *pl. as noun*, armed men. *

15. ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], pick out; ēlēctus, *pf. part. as adj.*, picked (men, etc.). 1

sexāgintā (LX), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [sex, six], sixty. 1

postulō, 1, *tr.*, ask, demand. *

16. ferāx, -ācis, *adj.* [ferō, bear], productive, fertile. 1

17. possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sesum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], possess. 3

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king. *

6. Teutonōs Cimbrōsque: on this invasion see Int. 27.

ingredi prohibuerint, *prevented from entering*. Caesar always uses the infinitive after *prohibeō*, instead of the subjunctive with *nē* or *quōminus*.

7. prohibuerint was subjunctive in the direct form. See App. 230, b: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535, b: B. 283, 2: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 591, 1.

9. Dē numerō: i.e., the numerical strength of the Belgian army.

omnia . . . explorāta, *that they had ascertained everything*.

11. quisque: i.e., each delegate.

12. pollicitus sit: an indirect question, and therefore subjunctive in the direct form.

Plūrimum: see note on *quid*, l. 2.

14. armāta milia centum, *lit. one hundred armed thousands = one hundred thousand armed men*.

pollicitōs: supply *esse*. The subject is *Bellovacōs*.

16. suōs: i.e., of the Remi; see map.

17. possidēre: supply *eōs* as the subject.

memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam 20 prūdentiāque summam tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII; pollicērī milia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nervios, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem milia, Morinōs XXV milia, Menapiōs VII milia, Caletōs X milia, 25

18. Diviciācus, -ī, *m.*, Diviciacus, (div'i-shī-ā'kūs), a chief of the Suessiones. 1

19. regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [regō, keep straight], line, direction; region, place. *



FIG. 101

A BRITISH COIN

Com(mi) F(ilius) = son of Commius.

This is the Commius of Fig. 114, p. 238.

Britannia, -ae, *f.* (Aabcd), Britannia (brī-tān'ī-ā), better Britain; never Britany. *

20. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present. 3

Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba (gāl'bā). 2

21. prūdentiā, -ae, *f.* [prūdēns, foreseeing], foresight, prudence. 1

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], bring from or down; bestow, confer. *

22. quīnquāgintā (L), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., fifty. 3

23. totidem, *indecl. adj.* [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun*, the Nervii (nēr'vī-ī). *

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, fierce, savage. *

24. Atrebās, -bātis, *m.* (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (āt'rē-bā'tēz). *

Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABde), the Ambiani (ām'bi-ā'nī). 2

25. Morinī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ae), the Morini (mōr'ī-nī). *

Menapii, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā'pī-ī). *

septem (VII), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., seven. 2

Caletī, -ōrum (or -ēs, -um), *m.* (Bd), the Caleti (kāl'ē-tī). 1

18. Diviciācum: of course not the Haeduan mentioned in Book I.

cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also.

19. partis and Britanniae: both depend on imperium.

Britanniae: not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite the Belgian coast. This is the first mention of Britain in Latin literature.

21. summam: the noun, not the superlative adjective.

23. Nervios: with this and the following proper nouns supply pollicērī.

maximē ferī: the superlative.

longissimē absint: i.e., from the southern frontier. But the map shows that they were no more distant than the Morini and the Menapii.

Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuaticōs xix mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī sē posse armāre xl mīlia.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberaliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principumque liberōs

26. Veliocassēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Velioasses (vē'lī-ō-kās'ēz). 1

Viromandui, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Viromandui (vīr'ō-mān'dū-i). 3

Atuatici, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Atuatici (āt'ū-āt'ū-sī). 4

27. Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Condrusi (kōn-drōō'sī). 2

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.* (Afg), the Eburones (ēb'ū-rō'nēz). 2

Caerōsī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Caerosi (sē-rō'sī). 1

Caemānī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Caemani (sē-mā'nī). 1

1. liberaliter, *adv.* [liber, free], graciously, generously, kindly. 3

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow, accompany; with ōrātiōne, address. 3

28. Germānī: these tribes were very likely really Germans who had settled in Gaul just as Ariovistus tried to do.

appellantur: the indicative shows that this is an explanation by Caesar, not a quotation from the Remi.

The total of these promises is

296,000; but we cannot be sure that all promises were fully kept.

Chap. 5-8. *The armies approach each other.*

Chap. 5. *Caesar sends the Haedui to ravage one state, and himself marches to meet the whole Belgian army.*

2. essent: mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, *a*: H.-B. 537, *b*: H. 649, II.

3. Germānis: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395, *n.* 1: A. 403, *a*, *n.* 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, *b*: H. 469, 1.

Rhēnum: case? App. 127, *a*: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, *n.* 1, 2: B. 179, 1, 3: H.-B. 386, *a*: H. 413.

5. patrum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, *n.* 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1, *n.* 1.

7. quā: use? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

rērum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, *n.*: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

memoriā: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

8. sibi: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, *a*: H. 424.

sūmerent: mood? App. 229, *b*: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

9. explōrāta: use? App. 286, *b*: G.-L. 238: A. 497, *b*: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, *a*: H. 640, 2.

13. virtūte: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397, 2: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

18. memoriā: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

19. regiōnum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, *a*, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

21. voluntāte: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L. 399, *n.* 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.



FIG. 102

ROMAN SOLDIERS AT WORK

In the lower left corner two soldiers are taking off a captive. Aside from this group, three groups are at work. In the middle, one group is building a bridge, though the structure is so small as to be merely a symbol. One pile has been driven and is being fitted with braces; another is being driven; a timber is being fastened across two piles by a man who has one foot in the water; another pile is being set in place. At the lower right, a group seems to be constructing a pit, some think a reservoir.

At the extreme lower right, two of the workers' shields rest against their *pila*, on top of which hang their helmets. At the upper right is a nearly completed fortress, from one corner of which the general surveys operations.

obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantopere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit 5 manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tem-

3. *diligenter*, *adv.* [*diligēns*, careful], carefully; with exactness or care. 4

5. *doceō*, *docēre*, *docuī*, *doctum*, *tr.*, teach, instruct; inform. * *quantopere*, *interrog. adv.* [*quantus*,

how much + *opus*, work], how greatly? how much? 1

6. *distineō*, *-tinēre*, *-tinuī*, *-tentum*, *tr.* [*teneō*, hold], hold or keep apart. 3

5. *quantopere intersit*, *how much it concerned*: an indirect question.

commūnis salūtis: i.e., of both Haedui and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallic as well as Roman interests. For case see App. 110.

intersit . . . distinērī, lit. *the bands of the enemy to be kept apart concerned*

= *it concerned . . . that the bands of the enemy be kept apart*.

6. *nē cōnfigendum sit*, lit. *that it might not have to be fought* = *that they might not have to fight*. The verb is used impersonally, but English idiom will not allow an impersonal translation.

pore cōnfligendum sit.) Id fieri posse, si suās cōpiās Haedui in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His datīs mandātis eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam
 10 omnēs Belgārū cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venire neque iam longē abesse ab iis quōs miserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis
 15 mūniēbat, et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquisque cīvitatibus ut sine periculō

7. cōnfligō, -figere, -fixī, -flictum, *intr.* [fligō, strike], strike against; contend, fight. 1

8. intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, *tr.* [intrō, within + dūcō, lead], lead or bring into. 3

9. mandātum, -ī, *n.* [mandō, command], order, command. *

12. Axona, -ae, *m.* (Bf), the Axona

(āk'sō-nā), a river, now the Aisne. 2

15. tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. *

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give back; make or cause to be, render. *

16. commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip; supplies, provisions. *

7. Id: i.e., keeping the bands of the enemy apart. The sentence *id* . . . *coeperint* is in indirect discourse, depending on *docet*, l. 5.

8. in finēs Bellovacōrum: the Bellovacī were no doubt angry because they had not obtained leadership of the league (see 4, 15 and 20), and the ravaging of their territory would probably draw them home.

intrōdūxerint, coeperint: perfect subjunctives in indirect discourse, for future perfect indicatives of the direct form.

10. in ūnum locum: somewhere to the north of the Axona River.

coāctās venire, lit. *having been gathered were coming* = *had gathered and were coming*.

venire, abesse: indirect discourse, depending on *cognōvit*.

11. ab iis explōrātōribus cognōvit, *learned from the scouts*.

14. castra: the excavations made by the engineers of Napoleon III have fixed beyond question the site of this camp. It is a hill situated on the

north bank of the Aisne, between that stream and a little marshy tributary, the Miette, which formed an excellent defense in front. See plan, p. 214. The hill is eighty feet high.

Caesar crossed the Aisne at what is now Berry-au-Bac. During most of the World War the German line crossed the river at the same point. See Int. 72. The Argonne, where American troops did their hardest fighting, is about fifty miles east of this point.

Quae rēs et, *this position both*.

latus ūnum: the left side, for the camp faced west.

15. post . . . reddēbat, *rendered safe from the enemy all that was behind him*; i.e., that part of the Remi from whom he had just marched, and the road by which supplies were coming.

16. commeātūs ut portārī possent efficiēbat, lit. *made that provisions could be brought up* = *made it possible for*. *ut* . . . *possent* is a substantive clause of result, the object of *efficiēbat*.

ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūminē pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūnīrī 20 iubet.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem

17. efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ex + faciō, make], make, cause, render. *

18. Sabinus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwīn'tūs tī-tū'rī-ūs sā-bī'nūs). *

19. cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort. *

1. Bibrax, -ctis, *f.* (Be), Bibrax (bī'brāks). 1

3. sustentō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [freq. of sustineō, hold up], hold up, sustain; hold out, endure. 2

17. In, *over.*

18. praesidium: a small fortified camp, to defend the northern end of the bridge.

in alterā parte, *on the other side;* i.e., at the southern end of the bridge. This guard was posted to protect the bridge in case some of the enemy should cross the river by a ford.

19. sex cohortibus: how many men? See Int. 33.

Castra: the main camp on the hill. For a plan of this camp and for details of camp fortification, see Int. 49-52, and especially Fig. 30, p. 46.

20. duodēvigintī pedum: i.e., in width. When Caesar mentions only

one dimension of a trench he always means the width. The depth was about ten feet.

Chap. 6. *The Belgae assault a town of the Remi.*

1. nōmine: ablative of specification.

Bibrax: see map facing p. 197.

2. ex itinere: i.e., without stopping to make camp.

3. sustentātum est, lit. *it was held out;* but translate personally.

eadem atque Belgārum, (*which is the same as (that) of the Belgae.* See *atque* in the Vocabulary. In such expressions Latin never uses a word for "that.")

3. Quae: use? App. 173, *a:* G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, *f:* B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

his: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

5. docet: tense? App. 190, *a:* G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

rei publicae: case? App. 110: G.-L. 381: A. 355: B. 210; 211, 1: H.-B. 345: H. 449, 1.

6. multitūdine: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413, *b:* B. 222: H.-B. 419, 4: H. 473, 1.

7. cōnfligendum sit: mood? App. 225, *b:* G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

12. cognōvit: mood and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

flūmen, exercitum: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, *n:* 1: B. 179, 1: H.-B. 386: H. 413.

20. pedum: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, R. 2: A. 345, *b:* B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multītū-
 5 dine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrū lapidēs iaci
 coepti sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā
 portās succendunt mūrūque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat.
 Nam cum tanta multītūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō
 10 fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs,
 quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad
 Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi
 submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre non posse.

4. oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [oppugnō, storm], a storming, assault; plan or method of storming. 2

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw, set, or place around. 1

5. moenia, -ium, *n.*, defensive walls, city walls. 2

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone. *

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl. *

6. dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.* [dēfendō, defend], defender, protector. *

nūdō, 1, *tr.* [nūdus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare. 3

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise; a testudo, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. 1

7. porta, -ae, *f.*, gate. *

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum, *tr.*, set on fire below, kindle, burn. 1

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [ruō, fall], cause to fall from beneath; dig under, undermine. 1

12. subsidium, -dī, *n.* [subsideō, sit near or in reserve], reserve force; help, assistance. *

13. submittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. *

4. haec, as follows.

circumiectā: this ablative absolute is best translated by a clause: *when a great number has been thrown around . . . and stones have begun*, etc.

6. coepti sunt: why not *coepērunt*? App. 86, a: G.-L. 175, 5, a: A. 205, a: B. 133, 1: H.-B. 199, 2: H. 299, 1.

testūdine: see Plate I, 3, facing p. 47.

8. conicerent agrees with the mean-

ing, not the grammatical form, of the collective noun *multītūdō*.

10. summā, (a man) of the highest.

11. ūnus ex iīs: App. 101, b: G.-L. 372, R. 2: A. 346, c: B. 201, 1, a: H.-B. 346, e: H. 444. ūnus is here used as a noun in apposition with *Iccius*.

13. submittātur: the subjunctive here stands for a future indicative of the direct form. *nūntiōs mittit* implies "saying."

2. mīlia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

impetū: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. diē: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

5. moenibus: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

6. coepti sunt: mood and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Iccīō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētēs sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque 5

2. Numidae, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidae (nū'mī-dē), *better*, the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algeria. *

Crētēs, -um, *m.*, the Cretes (krē'tēz), *better*, the Cretans, natives of the island of Crête. 1

sagittārius, -rī, *m.* [sagitta, an arrow], Bowman, archer. 3

3. funditor, -ōris, *m.* [funda, sling], slinger. 4

Baliāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic (bāl'ē-ā'-rīk), *coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca.* 1

oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; *m. pl.* as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. 2

4. dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfendō, defend], a defending, defense. 1

prōpugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight for, defend. 1

Chap. 7. *Failing to take the town, the Belgae march against Caesar.*

1. Eō: to Bibrax.

isdem ducibus ūsus, *employing the same persons as guides.*

3. mittit: the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

quōrum adventū, *at their arrival:*

an ablative of time, but with a suggestion of cause as well.

4. et . . . et, *not only . . . but also.*
cum spē dēfēnsiōnis, *along with the hope of (making a successful) defense.*

5. hostibus discessit, *lit. went away for the enemy = left the enemy.*

potiundī: the older form of the gerundive, for *potiendī*. How can *potior*, an intransitive verb, have a gerundive? App. 289, I, a: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2: B. 339, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, b, n.: H. 623, 1.

dēfēnsōribus: case? App. 134, b: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 1, b: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 462.

8. conicerent: mood? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 579, II, a; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

9. nūllī: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

10. nōbilitāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

12. mittit: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 529: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 232, 3.

13. sēsē: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.
posse: construction? App. 266: G.-

L. 650: A. 580, a: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642, 1.

As previously explained, each of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on Book II. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so at once.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Subject of infinitive

Ablative of time

Subjunctive cum clause

Infinitive in indirect discourse

paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque quō adire potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus. castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō
 10 atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

6. paulisper, *adv.* [paulus, little], for a short time, for a little while. 3

7. adeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *tr.* and *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go to, approach. *

9. fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke. 1

10. significō, 1, *tr.* [signum, sign + faciō, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. 4

6. morātī, dēpopulātī: as *moror* and *dēpopulor* are deponent verbs, their perfect participles have active meanings; therefore they agree with the subject of *contendērunt*. But as *incēnsus* is passive in meaning, the idea "having burned their villages" must be expressed by the ablative absolute.

7. quō: the adverb.

8. ā . . . duōbus, *less than two miles away*, i. e., from Caesar's camp.

ab is here used adverbially; *milibus* is the ablative of degree of difference, the comparative *minus* not affecting the construction. See App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

The camp of the Belgae extended along the hills north of the Aisne, where the German line ran during most of the World War.

9. ut, *as*.

10. milibus: ablative after the com-

1. mediā: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

isdem: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, 1.

2. sagittariōs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

3. subsidiō, oppidānis: case? App. 119, a: G.-L. 356, n. 1: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

4. dēfēnsiōnis: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

prōpugnandī: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 502; 504: B. 338, 1, a: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

5. potiundī: construction? App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503, a;

504: B. 339, 1: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, 1: H. 623; 626.

7. vicis: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

8. Caesaris: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

cōpiis: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

milibus duōbus: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

10. milibus octō: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Possessive genitive

Direct object

Ablative absolute

8. Caesar *prīmō* et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīnōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam 5 nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis ubi castra posita

* 1. *prīmō*, *adv.* [*prīmus*, first], at first, in the first place. *

2. *eximius*, -a, -um, *adj.*, choice, eminent. 1

supersedēō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [*sedeō*, sit], refrain from. 1

4. *perīclitor*, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*perīculum*, trial, danger], try, test. 1

6. *opportūnus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, suitable. 3

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. *

parative *amplius*. The references on l. 8 say only that *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are not necessarily followed by the ablative.

Chap. 8. Caesar fortifies his position and prepares for battle.

1. *multitudinem*: if the states sent the quotas promised in Chap. 4, the total was 296,000 men.

2. *opiniōnem virtūtis*, reputation for valor.

proeliō: ablative of separation.

4. *nostrī*: especially the Gallic cavalry. The Belgae were thought to be better fighters than the Celtic Gauls.

5. Caesar's description of his camp cannot be understood without constant reference to the plan. The camp and trenches were discovered in the course of excavations made at the order of Emperor Napoleon III. The ridge on which the camp lay is about two miles in length, extending nearly east and west. The camp was near the east end, facing west, and had two gates on that side (see Int. 52). The Roman army was drawn up along the ridge, facing north. Therefore the front of the camp was the west side, looking toward the battle line; but the front of the hill was the north side, looking toward the enemy.



FIG. 103
A SLINGER

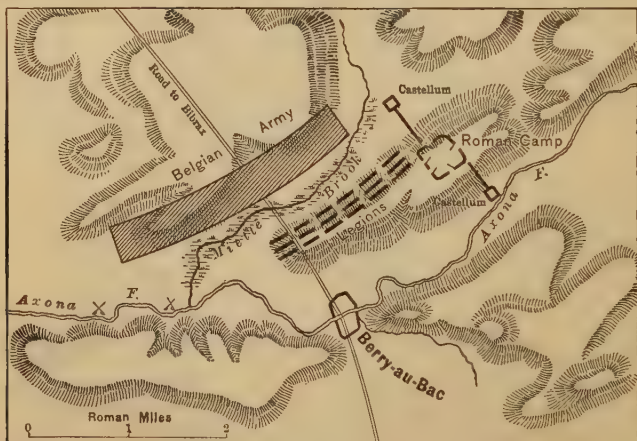
Caesar calls the north and the south slopes of the hill its *latera*.

locō opportūnō, since the place was suitable. The ablative absolute here has a causal meaning.

prō castris: i.e., to the west of the camp.

6. *collis* is the subject of *patēbat*, *habēbat*, and *redibat*.

erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudi-
nem patēbat quantum loci aciēs instrūctā occupāre poterat, atque
ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter
10 fastigātus paulātim ad plānitiei redībat, ab utrōque latere



BATTLE ON THE AXONA (AISNE)

7. *paululum*, *adv.* [*acc.* of *paululus*, very little], a very little. 1

plānitiēs, *-ēi*, *f.* [*plānus*, level], level ground, plain. 4

ēditus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of *ēdō*, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. 2

9. *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*, *adj.* [*uter*, which of two], each of two. *

dēiectus, *-ūs*, *m.* [*dēiciō*, cast down], slope, descent. *

frōns, *frontis*, *f.*, forehead; front. 3

lēniter, *adv.* [*lēnis*, gentle], smoothly, gently, gradually. 2

10. *fastigātus*, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*, sloping. 1

paulātim, *adv.* [*paulus*, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. *

7. *tantum* . . . *poterat*, lit. *extended so much opposite (to the enemy) as of space a line drawn up could fill* = *was as wide on the side facing the enemy as a battle line could extend*.

in lātitudinem: i.e., from the camp to the west end of the hill. Perhaps we should call this the length of the hill.

8. *loci*: we should expect this parti-

tive genitive to limit *tantum* rather than *quantum*.

9. *ex* . . . *lateris*, lit. *at each end of the side* = *at each end*; i.e., the east and west ends of the hill. *utrāque parte* alone might mean either the ends or the sides. As *latus* means one of the long sides of the hill, *utrāque parte lateris* must mean the ends.

in fronte: i.e., the northern slope.

eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in 15 castris relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium

11. trānsversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [trānsvertō, turn across], turned across, cross. 1

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], extend, dig. 1

12. tormentum, -ī, *n.* [torqueō, twist], an engine for hurling missiles, artillery. 3

16. quō, *adv.*: (1) *interrog.*, to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. *

opus, *indecl. noun, neut.* [*cf.* opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need. *

1. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp. *

10. ab utrōque latere, *on each side*; i.e., on the northern and southern slopes.

11. trānsversam, *at right angles* to the ridge. The plan shows that one trench ran from the camp to the Miette, the other from the camp to the Axona.

12. ad extrēmās fossās, *near the outer ends of the trenches.* See App. 160. tormenta: see Int. 63.

13. instrūxisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect, for Caesar's thought was "that I may not be surrounded when I shall have drawn up my line."

14. ab lateribus, *on the flanks.* The trenches protected not only the flanks but the rear; for if the enemy once got between the hill and the Axona they could attack where they pleased.

15. quās . . . cōscripserat: see 2, 1. These legions were not sufficiently disciplined to be brought into the battle unless it were necessary.

16. quō: the adverb; supply dūcī; *if there should be need of their being led anywhere.*

subsidiō: dative of purpose.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of means

Chap. 9-11. *The Belgae return home without risking a decisive battle.*

Chap. 9. *Not venturing to attack Caesar, the Belgae attempt to pass him by fords.*

1. Palūs erat, *there was a marsh*; i.e., the marshy ground along the Miette.

3. proeliis: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

posset: mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 537, b: H. 649, II.

6. nātūrā: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

8. patēbat: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent, hostēs expectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut impeditōs aggrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestri
 5 inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī
 10 sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

5. neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* -trius. App. 32), *adj.* [*ne-* + *uter*, which of two], neither; *pl.*, neither side. 1

7. prōtinus, *adv.*, forthwith, immediately. 1

11. interscindō, -scindere, -scidi,

-scissum, *tr.* [*scindō*, cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. 1

13. ego, mei (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, I; *pl.* nōs, we. *

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [ūtor, use], use, service, advantage; ūsuī esse or ex ūsū esse, be of advantage or service. *



FIG. 104
A SLING

2. sī trānsirent: construction? App. 264, b: G.-L. 460, b: A. 576, a: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, a: H. 649, II, 3.

3. sī . . . fieret, if they should begin to cross. The clause depends on *ut aggrederentur*, and the sub-

junctive is due to implied indirect discourse; for Caesar's thought was, "I will have my men ready to attack if they shall begin."

ut . . . *erant*, were ready under arms to attack them at a disadvantage.

6. faciunt: historical present, for the more usual perfect after *ubi*.

secundiōre proeliō: ablative absolute.

8. contendērunt: Caesar did not see this movement, probably because of an intervening forest.

9. vadīs: the probable location of these fords is shown in the plan by crossed sabers.

10. eō cōnsiliō, *ut*, etc., with this design, to storm, if they could, etc.

possent: implied indirect discourse for the future indicative; for they thought "we will storm if we shall be able." But *praeerat* is indicative, because it is an explanation added by Caesar, not a part of their thought.

12. minus, *not*, as is usual after *sī*. potuissent stands for a future perfect indicative of the direct form.

populārentur, prohibērent: in the same construction as *expugnārent*.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditorēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acrīter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudine tēlōrum reppulērunt, primōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs (ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt) neque nostrōs in locum inīqui-

2. levis, -e, *adj.*, light (*in weight*).

2

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levis armātūrae, light-armed. 2

9. fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, disappoint. 2

iniquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + aequus, even, just], uneven; unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. *

Chap. 10. *The Belgae are repulsed at the fords. They decide to return home, and gather again to defend whatever state Caesar attacks.*

1. equitātum: the cavalry and light-armed troops were not equal to the legions in fighting power, but they could get to the fords more quickly.

3. in eō locō: i.e., at the fords.

4. nostrī is the subject of *occidērunt*, *reppulērunt*, and *interfēcērunt*.

3. trānseundi: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 502; 504: B. 338, 1, *a*: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

4. aggredierentur: mood? App. 225, *a*, 3: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

6. nostris: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *a*: H. 434, 2.

10. cōsiliō: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475.

cui: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

11. lēgātus: case? App. 95, *b*: G.-L.

8. ubi introduces *intellēxērunt*, *vīdērunt*, and *coepit*.

ubi . . . intellēxērunt, *lit.* when they saw that their hope about the town to be taken . . . had disappointed them = when they saw that they were disappointed in their hope of taking the town.

9. neque = *et nōn*.

nostrōs . . . prōgredi: i.e., the legions would not descend the hill to the Miette.

320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

13. nobis ūsuī: case? App. 119: G.-L. 356: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, *b*: H.-B. 360, *b*: H. 433, 2.

gerendum: construction? App. 288; 289; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503, *a*; 506, *n*. 2: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628, footnote 2.

commeātū: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 462.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition

Dative with adjectives

Ablative of cause

Purpose clauses

10 ōrem prōgredi pugnandī causā vīdērunt atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīre, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnīs
15 finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

10. prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go forward, advance, go. *

11. dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [faciō, make], fail, be deficient. *

14. potius, *adv.*, rather. 2

15. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [certō, contend], fight to the end, fight. *

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [domus, house], belonging to the home, domestic; in or of one's own land. 1

16. sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentīō, think], way of thinking, opinion; decision. *

18. appropinquō, 1, *intr.* [ad + propinquus, near], come near or close, approach. *

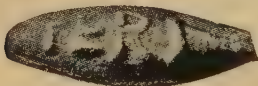


FIG. 105

A LEADEN SLUG

Ancient slingers used such slugs when they could get them.

Feri = hit.

10. ipsōs: the enemy. It requires thorough organization to supply so large an army. Caesar's superiority to the Gallic leaders is always evident in this matter no less than on the battlefield. He sometimes marched into the heart of a hostile country, where it is hard to see how he secured

supplies; but we hear only once of a failure to keep his army well fed.

11. cōstituērunt optimum esse . . . reverti et . . . convenīre, *decided that it was best to return . . . and to assemble.*

13. intrōdūxissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "let us assemble to protect those into whose territory the Romans shall have led."

16. cum, *in addition to.*

17. Dīviciācum . . . appropinquāre: in accordance with Caesar's directions. See 5, 4-9.

finibus: indirect object of the compound verb *appropinquāre*.

18. Hīs persuādērī nōn poterat, *lit. it could not be persuaded to these.* Turn into English.

19. neque = et nōn.

1. certior: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

ab Titūriō: case? App. 137: G.-L.

401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

equitātum, pontem: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1: B. 179, 1: H.-B. 386: H. 413.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā 5 insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum per-

1. strepitus, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. 2

2. tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder. 2

ōrdō, -inīs, *m.*, row; arrangement, order. *

4. properō, 1, *intr.*, hasten, hurry. 2
cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], very like, similar. 1

5. statim, *adv.* [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, immediately, at once. *

speculātor, -ōris, *m.* [speculor, spy], spy, scout. 1

6. perspicīō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-tum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look or see through; learn, find out, ascertain. *

Chap. 11. *The Belgae are pursued with great slaughter.*

1. secundā vigiliā: i.e., during the second quarter of the night. As the nights were short, this would be between ten and twelve.

2. armātūrae: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365: A. 345: B. 203: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

5. eōrum (numerus): case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

8. expugnandō: construction? App. 288; 289; 294: G.-L. 427; 433: A. 503, a; 507: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, IV; 613, 1: H. 623; 629.

9. intellēxērunt: mood and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

10. pugnandi: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428, R. 2: A. 501; 502; 504, b: B. 338, 1, c: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 626.

12. domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, b: H.-B. 450, b: H. 419, 1.

13. intrōdūxissent: mood? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I: H. 643.

2. castris: ablative of separation.

4. fēcērunt ut profectiō vidērētur, *they made their departure seem.*

fugae: dative.

6. quod perspexerat: a causal clause.

18. cognōverant: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 523, n. 1; 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

His: case? App. 115, d: G.-L. 346, R. 1, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a, b: H.-B. 362; 364, 2: H. 426, 2, 3.

19. morārentur: mood? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565.

suīs: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, a: H. 424.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate adjective

Partitive genitive

Gerund

Two objects with compound verbs

Substantive clauses of desire

Clauses with ubi, postquam, etc.

Dependent clauses in ind. discourse

Indirect object

Ablative of agent

Gerundive



FIG. 106

THE BEGINNING OF A BATTLE

In the central background stands the general, talking with an officer. On the right the cavalry are charging and auxiliary infantry are fighting. Two auxiliaries are bringing in trophy heads, a form of barbarity of which we do not hear in Caesar. On the left the Roman legionaries, the real fighting strength of the army, are forming and waiting.

spexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Primā
lūce cōfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitatum, quī
novissimum agmen morārētur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium et
10 L. Aurunculeium Cottam. lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum
lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hī novissimōs
adortī et multa milia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multītū-
dinem eōrum fugientium concēderunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine

10. Aurunculeius, -i, *m.*, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū'shyūs aw-rūng'kū-lē'yūs cōt'ā). 3

11. subsequor, -sequi, -secutus

sum, *tr. and intr.* [sequor, follow], follow closely, follow. *

13. fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitūrus, *tr. and intr.* [fuga, flight], flee, run away. 4

7. castris, *in camp*: but the absence of *in* shows that the construction is means, not place.

8. quī morārētur, *to delay*: a purpose clause.

13. fugientium, *in their flight*.

ad quōs ventum erat cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitatē neque imperiō cōtinērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt (quantum fuit diēi spatium) sub occāsum sōlis sequi dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

14. fortiter, *adv.* [fortis, brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. *

15. prius, *adj.*, *comp.* (App. 43), former; *m. pl.* as *noun*, those in front. 2

16. necessitās, -tātis, *f.* [necesse, necessary], necessity, need. 2

17. exaudiō, 4, *tr.* [audiō, hear], hear (from a distance). 1

clāmōr, -ōris, *m.* [clāmō, cry out], outcry, noise, clamor. *

perturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly; alarm, terrify. *

cum . . . cōsisterent, *since* (those) in the rear, whom (our men) had overtaken, would stop. sustinērent and pōnerent also depend on cum.

14. ventum erat is impersonal, but, as usual, the translation must be personal.

15. priōrēs, (but) those [of the enemy] in advance.

quod vidērentur neque continērentur: a causal clause; mood? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

16. neque . . . neque, and . . . not . . . nor.

19. quantum . . . spatium, *lit.* as was the length of the day = as the length of the day permitted.

1. strepitū, tumultū, ordine, imperiō: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. peteret: mood? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 527, 2: B. 182, 1, b: H.-B. 450, b: H. 419, 1.

5. vidērētur: mood? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

6. discēderent: mood? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 537, b: H. 649, II.

11. legiōnibus: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

12. milia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

15. militum: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1.

periculō: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 1: A. 400; 401: B. 214, 3: H.-B. 408, 2, a: H. 461.

17. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Subjective genitive

Ablative of separation

Ablative of accompaniment

Ablative of manner

Indirect question



FIG. 107

GALLIC WALL

This is a partial restoration of a wall actually found. The timbers had rotted away, but the holes were left; and, where the timbers had crossed, iron spikes were found. In this wall the timbers were farther apart than in those described by Caesar. See Int. 58.

12. *Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod*

2. *terror, -ōris, m.* [terreō, fright-en], fright, alarm, panic, terror. 2

4. *Noviodūnum, -ī, n.* (Be) Noviodunum (nō'vī-ō-dū'nūm). 1

Chap. 12-15. *The Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani surrender to Caesar.*

Chap. 12. *Caesar takes the chief town of the Suessiones.*

1. *priusquam reciperent:* mood? App. 236, b: G.-L. 577: A. 551, b: B. 292, 1, b: H.-B. 507, 4, b: H. 605, 2. Now that Caesar had broken up the combination of states, it only remained for him to subdue them one by one.

3. *magnō itinere:* about 28 miles. See map facing p. 197.

4. *Noviodūnum:* this town was long supposed to be the modern Soissons, but its ruins have been found on the hill of Pommiers a little northwest of that city.

In marching to this town Caesar must have paralleled closely the German line of the World War. From this part of the line the Germans made their last great drive at Paris. See Int. 72. American troops took part in repulsing this drive and in recovering Soissons and Pommiers.

ex itinere: i.e., before making camp

vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem 5 fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucīs dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vineās agere quaeque ad oppug-
nandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque 10 cōstitūtīs, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant,) et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs primīs civitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs armisque omnibus ex oppidō trādītis,

5. *vacuus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [vacō, be empty], empty, unoccupied. 2

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of. *

7. *vinea*, -ae, *f.*, vinea, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. *Int.* 62, *d.* 4

10. *agger*, *aggeris*, *m.*, material for earthworks, earth; causeway, agger. *Int.* 61. *

turris, -is, *f.*, tower. *

11. *magnitūdō*, -inis, *f.* [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size. *

12. *celeritās*, -tātis, *f.* [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. *

14. *cōservō*, 1, *tr.* [servō, save], save, spare, protect. *

and without letting the soldiers rest, although they were tired after their unusually long march (*Int.* 54). Caesar wanted to take the town before its garrison could be reinforced. On this method of taking towns see *Int.* 60.

6. *paucīs dēfendentibus*, although there were but few defenders: ablative absolute with adversative meaning.

7. *vineās agere*, to move up the vineae.

quaeque, and (those things) which.

8. *ūsui*: dative of purpose.

10. *aggere turribusque*: see *Int.* 61.

13. *petentibus Rēmīs*: on the relations between the Remi and the Suesiones see 3, 11.

14. *impetrant*, they [the Suessiones] obtained their request. The verb is used absolutely.

Chap. 13. Caesar marches against the Bellovacī, who sue for peace.

1. *obsidibus*, as hostages: in apposition with *primīs*, which is used as a noun, and with *filiīs*.

2. *Galbae*: who had been head of the league; see 4, 20.

14. *cōservārentur*: tense? App. 202; 203; 204, *b*: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, *a*; 510: A. 482; 483; 485, *e*: B. 267; 268, 3: H.-B. 476; 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

impetrant: tense? App. 190, *a*: G.-L. 229: A. 469; B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Historical present

in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantiū
 5 contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum
 10 accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Diviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissis Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātis Haeduae

4. Bratuspantium, -tī, *n.* (Be), Bratuspantium (brāt'ūs-pān'shyūm). 1

6. nātus, -ūs, *m.* [nāscor, be born], birth; maiōrēs nātū, greater by birth, elders. 3

7. tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentum, *tr.*, stretch, stretch out. 1

vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice. *

11. pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, *tr.*, spread or stretch out, extend. 2

1. discessus, -ūs, *m.* [discēdō, depart], departure, withdrawal. 3



FIG. 108

A COIN OF THE SUESSIONES

Left: A Janus head.

Right: A lion.

3. Bellovacōs: the strongest Belgian state. For the direction of his march see map facing p. 197.

6. ex oppidō: is *ex* needed with this verb? See 11, 2.

4. Quī: use? App. 173, *a*: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, *f*: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

6. nātū: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226, 1: H.-B. 441: H. 480, 1.

11. mōre: case? App. 142, *a*: G.-L.

7. vōce significāre, to indicate by words. The Romans did not understand the language, but did understand their meaning. sēsē . . . contendere depends on this expression.

10. puerī, children, both boys and girls.

ex mūrō, on the wall. The Romans thought of the entreaties as coming "from the wall."

Chap. 14. Diviciacus pleads for the Bellovacī.

1. discessum: i.e., the breaking up of the great army at the Axona.

3. omnī tempore fuisse, had always been. Diviciacus claims the Bellovacī as members of the league which was headed by the Haedui. See Int. 29.

399, *n.* 1: A. 418, *a*: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, *a*: H. 475, 3.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of specification

Relative instead of demonstrative

fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, quī dicerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redactōs omnēs indignitatēs contumeli- 5
āsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs defēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsiliī principēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantam calamitatem civitatī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs sed etiam
prō his Haeduōs ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs 10
ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritatem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērint.

4. **impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulum, tr.** [in + pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, impel. 3

5. **redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr.** [agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; reduce. *

indignitās, -tātis, f. [indignus, unworthy], outrage, indignity. 1

9. **profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, intr.** [fugiō, flee], flee, escape. 4

10. **clēmētia, -ae, f.** [clēmēns, gentle], gentleness, kindness, clemency. 2

mānsuētūdō, -inis, f. [mānsuētus, tame], gentleness, mercy, compassion. 2

12. **amplificō, 1, tr.** [amplus, large + faciō, make], enlarge, increase. 1

13. **incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, intr.** [cadō, fall], fall upon; happen, occur. 2

4. **impulsōs . . . et defēcisse et intulisse, that they** [the Bellovacī] *instigated . . . had both revolted and made.*

5. **redactōs perferre, had been reduced . . . and were enduring.**

6. **et . . . et, both . . . and.**

7. **Quī, those who.** The unexpressed antecedent is the subject of *profūgisse*.

8. **quantam intulissent:** indirect question.

9. **Britanniam:** the relations be-

tween the Belgae and the Britons appear to have been rather close. See 4, 19.

10. **suā, his usual.**

11. **Quod sī fēcerit, if he should do this.** The direct form meant "if you shall have done this."

12. **amplificātūrum (sē esse), he would increase.**

quōrum: the antecedent is *Belgās*.

13. **qua:** the usual form of the neuter plural, nominative and accusative, when *quis* is used as an indefinite.

6. **populō:** case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, a: H. 429, 1.

10. **clēmētiā:** case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

11. **ūtātur:** tense? App. 202; 203; 270, a: G.-L. 509, 1; 510; 654, n.: A. 482; 483; 585, b: B. 267; 318: H. 543; 544; 644, 1.

13. **qua:** use? App. 174: G.-L. 107, R.: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

cōsuērint: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Dative with compound verbs
Ablative with ūtor, etc.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit, et, quod erat cīvitas magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitudine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs
 5 omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus, nihil patī vinī reliquārumque
 10 rērum ad lūxuriā pertinentium inferī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtutem existimārent. Esse hominēs ferōs magnaēque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque

4. sescentī, -ae, -a (DC), *card. num.*
adj. [sex, six + centum, hundred], six hundred. *

6. mora, -ae, *f.*, delay. 3
 dēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give up, yield, surrender; sē dēdere, submit, surrender. *

9. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *

vinum, -i, *n.*, wine. 2

10. lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury, high living. 1

11. relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, —, *intr.*, become weak or enfeebled. 1

remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send back, return; relax. *

12. increpitō, 1, *tr.*, chide, blame, taunt. 2

incūsō, 1, *tr.* [causa, cause or case], bring a case against; censure, blame. 2

13. patrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater, father], fatherly; ancestral. 1



FIG. 109

A COIN OF THE AMBIANI

Chap. 15. Caesar accepts the surrender of the Bellovaci and the Ambiani. The character of the Nervii.

1. honōris causā, *lit.* for the sake of the honor of = in deference to.

2. eōs, *i.e.*, the Bellovaci, is the ob-

ject of *receptūrum et cōservātūrum* (*esse*).

3. auctōritāte: descriptive ablative.
 multitūdine: ablative of specification.

6. Ambiānōrum: see map facing p. 197.

7. quōrum, *their*.

8. Nūllum . . . mercātōribus, *that traders had no access to them*.

9. patī, *that (they) allowed*.

vinī, rērum: partitive genitives with *nihil*.

10. quod existimārent: causal clause in indirect discourse.

13. dēdidissent, prōiēcissent may have been subjunctive in the direct

virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

15

16. Cum per eōrum finēs triduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis nōn amplius milia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs suis (nam hīs utrisque persuāserant uti eandem bellī fortūnam experirentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Atuaticōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque

1. invenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, tr. [veniō, come], come upon, find, find out. 2

2. Sabis, -is, m. (Af), the river Sabis (sā'bīs), now the Sambre. 2

amplē, adv. [amplus, large], largely; comp., amplius, more, farther. *

6. experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, tr., try, test, experience. *

form. See App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, e: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

14. cōfirmāre sēsē neque missūrōs, they declared that they would neither send.

Chap. 16-28. Caesar narrowly escapes defeat by the Nervii, but secures their submission after almost entirely destroying their army.

Chap. 16. The Nervii encamp at the Sabis, prepared for battle.

2. Sabim: note the accusative in -im. For the course of the river see the map facing p. 197.

mīlia: accusative of extent of space. Why not the ablative after the comparative? App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

2. erat: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

3. auctōritāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

9. mercātōribus: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.



FIG. 110

A COIN OF THE NERVII

3. trāns flūmen: i.e., on the southern bank. For the exact location see the plan on p. 231.

5. finitimīs: in apposition with Atrebātibus and Viromanduis. See the map facing p. 197.

6. ab iīs: i.e., by the Nervii.

7. quīque, and (the men) who.

12. virtūtis: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365: A. 345: B. 203: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

13. reliquōs: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitive

Causal clauses with quod, etc.

per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

17. His rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque prae-mittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs (Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex captivīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs) perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc 10 sub sarcinīs adoriri; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptis,

8. aetās, aetātis, *f.*, period of life, age. 2

inūtilis, -e, *adj.* [in- + ūtilis, useful], useless, worthless. 2

1. centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of a century. Int. 42. *

4. quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, *indef. pron.* (App. 62 and b), a certain, some. *

5. cōsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [cōsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom. *

10. diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], tear asunder; plunder, pillage. 1

8. eum locum quō, *a place to which.*

9. coniēcisse: as subject supply eōs, referring to the Nervii.

esset: mood? App. 230, a: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 591, 2.

Chap. 17. The Nervii plan to surprise Caesar.

2. ex . . . Gallis: equivalent to a partitive genitive.

3. Caesarem . . . facerent, *had joined Caesar and were marching along with him.*

5. eōrum . . . exercitūs, *our army's usual order of march during those days.*

Both diērum and exercitūs depend on itineris. On the order of march see Int. 53.

6. inter singulās legiōnēs, *between every two legions.*

7. impedimentōrum: see Int. 46. numerum, *amount.* Caesar is thinking of the number of pack animals.

8. neque . . . negōtī, *and that it would be [lit. was] no trouble.*

castra, *camping-ground.*

9. vēnisset, abessent: indirect discourse for the future perfect and the future, respectively. The direct form meant "when . . . shall have come and . . . shall be distant."

1. trīduum: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

5. hīs: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, b: H. 426, 2.

9. exercituī: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Indirect object with intransitive verbs
Dative of possession

futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiis), quō facilius finitimōrum equitatū, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incīsīs atque

11. adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *tr.* [iuvō, aid], aid, help. 1

14. quisquis, quicquid, *indef.* (or *generalizing*) *rel. pron.* (App. 60, a), whoever, whatever. 1

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [pēs, foot], on foot, pedestrian; pedestrēs cōpiae, infantry. *

15. praedor, 1, *tr.* [praeda, booty], make booty, plunder. *

16. tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender, young. 1

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. 2

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut into. 1

spatium: accusative of extent of space.

10. sarcinis: see Int. 37.

11. futūrum (esse) ut, the result would be that. This clause is connected with the preceding by a relative, so that it appears to be a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Why is the infinitive used instead of the subjunctive? App. 269, a: G.-L. 635: A. 583, b: B. 314, 4: H.-B. 535, 1, b: H. 643, 1.

Adiuvābat: the subject is the clause quod . . . effēcerant, the fact that the Nervii had made . . . assisted.

13. nihil: case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334, R. 1: A. 390, c: B. 176, 2, b: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2.

14. eī rei: i.e., cavalry.

quicquid . . . cōpiis, whatever strength they have consists in infantry.

15. quō impedirent: a purpose clause. Why is not ut used? App. 225, a, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, a: B. 282, a: H.-B. 502, 2, b: H. 568, 7.

16. vēnissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "that we may check the cavalry if they shall have come."

teneris . . . interiectis: a row of young trees was planted around a field; their trunks were partly cut



Fig. 111

REFUGEES

The old men and the women and children, with their cattle, are leaving their homes to find a place of refuge from the Romans.

through (*incīsīs*) and their tops bent over (*inflexīs*). The tops would then continue growing slowly, and many branches would spring out from the sides of the trunk below the cut (*crēbris* . . . *ēnātīs*). Wherever there was room, branches were allowed to grow (*rubīs* . . . *interiectīs*).

inflexis, crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs senti-
busque interiectīs, effēcerant ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnī-
menta praeberent quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē per-
20 spicī quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī
impedirētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsiliū Nervī existimā-
vērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs
dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclīvis ad flūmen

17. rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, limb,
bough. 1

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.*
[nāscor, be born], be born from; grow
out. 1

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. 1

sentis, -is, *m.*, brier. 1

18. intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum,
tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw be-
tween; put between. 4

instar, *n.*, *indecl.*, likeness; *with gen.*,
like. 1

saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge. 2

18. effēcerant ut praeberent, *they*
had made these hedges furnish.

19. quō . . . posset: a clause of
characteristic. Translate personally,
*into which one not only could not pene-
trate but could not even see.*

Chap. 18. *Description of the battle-
field.*

To reach this point Caesar had
marched along the route taken by the
main advance of the Germans at the

mūnimentum, -ī, *n.* [mūniō, fortify],
defense, fortification. 1

19. praebeō, 2, *tr.* [prae + habeō,
hold], hold out; furnish, present. 3
intrō, 1, *tr.*, go or walk into, enter,
penetrate. 1

21. omittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-
sum, *tr.* [ob + mittō, send], neglect,
disregard. 1

2. aequālīter, *adv.* [aequālis, equal;
aequus, equal], equally, evenly. 1

dēclīvis, -e, *adj.* [clivis, a slope],
sloping downward. 2

beginning of the World War. The
first battle in which French and Brit-
ish troops met the Germans was
fought just east of this battlefield of
Caesar's. See Int. 71.

1. haec, *as follows.*

locum: omit in translation.

nostrī: i.e., the scouts and cen-
turiations who had been sent on ahead;
17, 1.

2. Collis: north of the river. See
the plan on p. 231.

2. dēligant: tense? App. 202; 203;
204, *b*: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, *a*; 510: A.
482; 483; 485, *e*: B. 267; 268, 3: H.-B.
476; 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

6. dēmōnstrāunt: form? App. 72:
G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, *a*: B. 116, 1: H.-
B. 163, 1: H. 238.

11. audērent: mood? App. 229, *b*:
G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-
B. 521, 3, *a*: H. 571, 1.

12. quod effēcerant: construction?
App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 3: A. 572:

B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588,
I, 3.

21. omittendum (*esse*): construc-
tion? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1:
A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 162;
600, 3: H. 237.

sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A.
374, *a*: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Contracted verb forms

Sequence of tenses

Substantive clauses of result or fact

Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitatē collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs ab infimō apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secun-

3. nōminō, 1, *tr.* [nōmen, name], call by name, name, mention. 1

4. acclivitās, -tātis, *f.* [acclivis, ascending], ascent, slope. 1

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *intr.*, be born; rise. 3

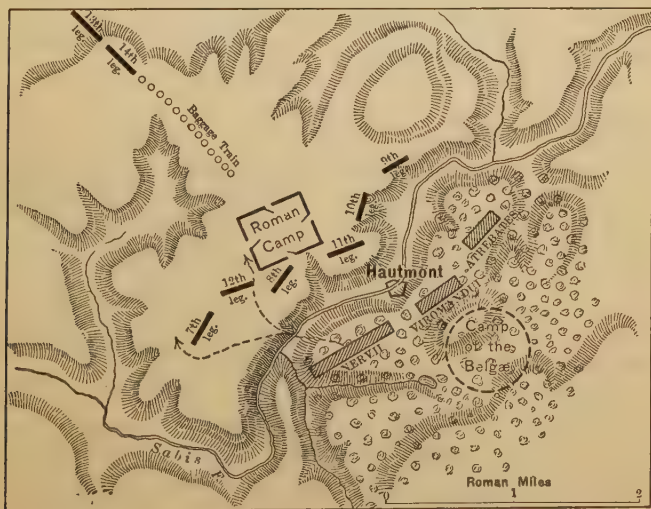
contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [contrā, against], lying over against, opposite, facing. 3

6. silvestris, -e, *adj.* [silva, forest], of a wood, wooded. 1

intrōrsus, *adv.* [intrō, within + ver-sus, *pf. part. of* vertō, turn], within, on the inside. 1

7. occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hidden; *neut. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. 2

secundum, *prep. with acc.* [sequor, follow], along. 3



BATTLE ON THE SABIS (SAMBRE)

summō, the top: the ablative singular of *summus*, used as a noun.

4. collis: south of the river.

5. passūs . . . apertus, at the bot-

tom bare of trees for two hundred paces.

8. vidēbantur, were seen, not seemed.

9. pedum trium: descriptive genitive, in the predicate.

dum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post
5 eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittariisque flūmen trāsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs
10 reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta perti-

8. statiō, -ōnis, *f.* [stō, stand], a military post or station; pickets, outposts. 4

2. aliter, *adv.* [alius, other], otherwise; aliter . . . ac, otherwise . . . than. 2

8. trāsgredior, -gredi, -gressus

sum, *tr.* [gradior, step], step over, cross. 1

9. identidem, *adv.* [idem, the same], repeatedly. 1

11. porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēc-tum, *tr.* [regō, keep straight], extend. 1

Chap. 19. *The Romans are attacked while fortifying their camp.*

1. omnibus cōpiīs: why is *cum* not used? App. 140, *a*; G.-L. 392, R. 1; A. 413, *a*; B. 222, 1; H.-B. 420; H. 474, 2, n. 1.

Caesar is now picking up the thread of the story which he dropped in 17, 11.

2. aliter . . . ac, *lit.* *had itself otherwise than* = *was different from what*.

habēbat is singular because *ratiō ōrdōque* is thought of as a single idea, almost *method of arrangement*.

4. expeditās, *without baggage*, whereas the Nervii had been told that each legion would be separated from the next by a long train of baggage.

5. legiōnēs . . . cōscriptae erant: as the enemy was known to be in front, Caesar did not expect these legions to be attacked. The same legions were left in camp at the Axona; 8, 15.

10. reciperent, *facerent*, *kept retiring, kept making*.

11. longius . . . finem, *than the limit to which*. Our idiom would lead us to expect *ad finem, ad quem*, but

2. ad flūmen: construction? App. 131; G.-L. 337; A. 426, 2; B. 182, 2; H.-B. 385; H. 418.

4. acclivitāte: case? App. 141; G.-L. 400; A. 415; B. 224; H.-B. 443; H. 473, 2.

6. posset: mood? App. 226; G.-L. 552; A. 537, 1; B. 284, 1; H.-B. 521, 2; H. 570.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Place to which
Descriptive ablative

nēbant cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeli 15 convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritātē ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs 20 vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritātē adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

12. cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, go; give way, yield, retreat. 2

13. dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum, *tr.* [mētior, measure], measure out or off. 2

15. lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, escape notice, lie concealed or hidden, be hidden. 2

17. subitō, *adv.* [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. *

prōvolō, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], rush forth, dash out. 1

19. prōturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. 1

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run down. 4

the antecedent is attracted into the relative clause.

porrēcta pertinēbant, *lit. extended stretched out = extended.* The whole clause *quem . . . pertinēbant* means "to the edge of the woods."

12. cēdentēs: supply *eōs*; i.e., the enemy.

13. dīmēnsō: this is one of a few deponent verbs whose perfect participles have a passive meaning.

14. prima impedimenta, *the head of the baggage train.*

15. quod tempus, *the time which.*

16. convēnerat, *had been agreed upon.*

ut . . . ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant,

as . . . they had pledged one another (to do).

17. omnibus cōpiīs: see note on l. 1.

20. ut vidērentur: a result clause.

21. adversō colle, *lit. by way of the hill facing them = up the hill.* For the case of *colle*, see App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, a: H. 476.

22. opere: i.e., of fortifying the camp.

The attack was a complete surprise. The Roman scouts had not done their work properly, and Caesar himself appears to have been careless in not keeping a part of his men under arms while the enemy were so near.

4. cōnsuetūdine: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

6. praesidiō, impedimentis: construction? App. 119, a: G.-L. 356, n. 1:

A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Double dative

Ablative of accordance

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, militēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevītās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō: scientia atque ūsus militum, quod, superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere



FIG. 112
VEXILLUM

1. vexillum, -ī, *n.*, banner, flag. 1
2. concurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run] run or rush together; hurry, run. 2
3. tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. 1
- revocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call back, recall. 2

Chap. 20. *The critical position of the Romans, and the value of their discipline.*

1. Caesarī omnia erant agenda, *lit.* all things had to be done by Caesar = Caesar had to do everything.

vexillum: a red banner which was displayed in front of the general's headquarters.

2. prōpōnendum: supply erat. Similarly supply erat or erant with each of the future passive participles which follow.

3. signum: to form ranks.

quī, (*those soldiers*) who.

4. paulō longius, a little too far.

4. paulō, *adv.* [*abl.* of paulus, little. App. 148], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed. *

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -itum, *tr.*, summon, send for. *

6. brevītās, -tātis, *f.* [brevis, short], shortness, brevity. 2

incursus, -ūs, *m.* [incurrō, rush into or upon], attack. 1

7. difficultās, -tātis, *f.* [difficilis, difficult], difficulty, trouble. *

scientia, -ae, *f.* [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. 4

8. exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [exerceō, train], well trained. 2

9. praescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct. 3

aggeris: here the materials for building the rampart, especially timber; for the sod and earth were taken from the trench on the spot. See Fig. 113, p. 236.

arcessendī: by messengers.

5. signum: here the signal for the attack.

7. duae rēs: explained by two appositives: first, scientia atque ūsus, the theoretical and practical knowledge of the soldiers; second, quod . . . vetuerat (l. 10), the fact that Caesar had forbidden, etc.

8. quod poterant: a causal clause.

9. quid fierī oportēret, what ought

quam ab aliis docēri poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque 10
legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castris
vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium
nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē quae
vidēbantur administrābant.

21. Caesar necessariis rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs
militēs quam partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem
decimam dēvenit. Militēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus
quam uti suae pristināe virtūtis memoriā retinērent neu
perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, 5
quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset;

12. vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, forbid. 1

14. administrō, 1, *tr.*, manage, take charge of, administer. *

2. fors, fortis, *f.*, chance. 3
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *tr.*
[ob + ferō, bear], bring before, present. 3

3. decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*
[decem, ten], tenth. *

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,
intr. [veniō, come], come down, go, come. 2

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long. *

6. adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.*
[agō, move], drive; hurl. *

to be done: an indirect question, object of *praescribere*.

10. ab singulis . . . discēdere, each legate to leave a particular legion. It is not quite correct to translate *leave his legion*, because the legates did not have permanent commands. See Int. 38.

11. nisi mūnītis castris, *lit.* unless the camp having been fortified = until the camp had been fortified.

13. nihil: an emphatic nōn.
quae vidēbantur, whatever seemed best.

Chap. 21. Caesar encourages his men.

1. ad . . . militēs: with dēcucurrit.

1. Caesari: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374, *a*: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

erant agenda: construction? App. 285, II, *a*: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, *b*, 1: H.-B. 162: 600, 3: H. 237.

4. paulō: case? App. 148: G.-L.

2. quam . . . dēcucurrit, hurried down (to that part) which chance presented, or put in his way.

legiōnem decimam: Caesar's favorite legion; see I, 40, 44-48. Note its position on the plan, p. 231.

3. nōn longiōre ōrātiōne quam uti, with a speech no longer than (this:) that they should, etc.

4. neu: the regular expression for and not in substantive clauses of desire.

6. quod aberant: a causal clause, explaining *signum dedit*.

quam . . . posset, *lit.* than to which a javelin could be thrown. Omit quō in translating. For the mood of *posset* see App. 230: G.-L. 631, 3: A. 535, *c*: B. 283, 1, 2, *a*: H.-B. 521, 2, *c*: H. 570, 1.

403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

10. quod vetuerat: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Substantive quod clause

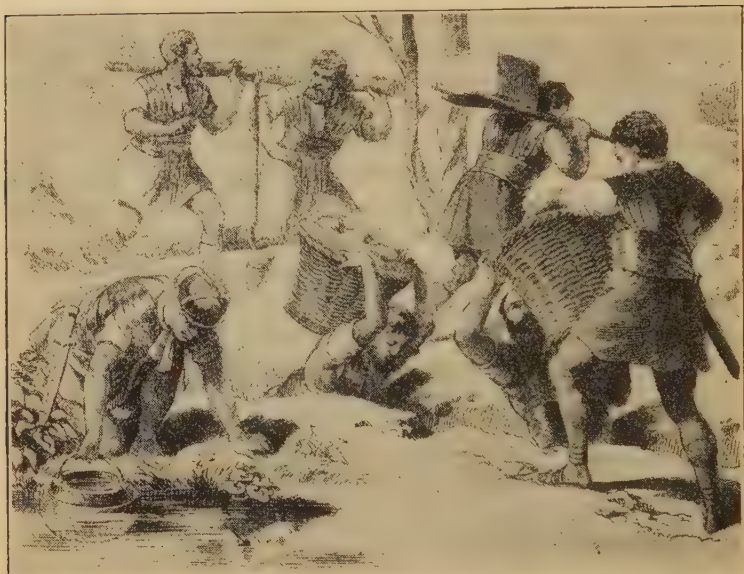


FIG. 113

SOLDIERS AT WORK

Caesar's men were engaged in such work as this when the Gauls began their charge.

proeli committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem
item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Tem-
poris tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmican-
10 dum animus ut nōn modo ad īnsignia accommodanda, sed etiam

8. *occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, intr.* [ob + *currō*, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon, find. *

9. *exiguitās, -tātis, f.* [exiguus, scant], scantiness, shortness. *

dīmicō, 1, intr. [micō, brandish], fight. 3

7. *in alteram partem*: to the other end; i.e., the right wing. See plan.

8. *pugnantibus occurrit*, he found (them already) fighting.

10. *ad . . . accommodanda*, for

10. *accommodō, 1, tr.*, adjust, fit or put on. 1

11. *galea, -ae, f.*, a leather helmet. 1
induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, tr., put on. 1

tegimentum, -ī, n. [tegō, cover], a covering, cover. 1

fitting on their decorations; especially on the helmets. These *īnsignia* probably distinguished the legions. The shields also carried devices.

11. *galeās*: these would be laid aside

ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda, tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma signa cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quarendīs suis pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

22. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut loci nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectis prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque quid in quaque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trac-tum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw off or away, take off, remove. 4

12. dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfūtūrus, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be lacking. *

13. cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī,

-spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look at, perceive, see. *

3. diversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse; separate. 3

4. dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, closely set, thick, dense. 3

5. prōspectus, -ūs, *m.* [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. 1

while the soldiers were working on the fortifications. See Fig. 102, p. 207.

scūtis: dative of separation.

tegimenta: leather coverings for the protection of the metal work of the shields.

12. dēfuerit: note the exception to sequence: App. 204, a: G.-L. 513: A. 485, c (incorrectly stated. The imperfect is much more common): B. 268, 6: H.-B. 478: H. 550.

Quam in partem, to whatever place.

13. quaeque . . . cōspexit, and whatever standards he saw first. On the importance of the standards see Int. 44.

14. suis: i.e., signis.

Chap. 22. Caesar cannot plan the battle as a whole.

1. ut, as.

2. rei . . . ōrdō, lit. the theory and

arrangement of military matters = the theory of military tactics. When he could, Caesar drew up his army in three unbroken lines, the third of which acted as a reserve force to meet emergencies.

3. cum . . . resisterent . . . impedirētur gives the reason for the main clause, neque . . . poterant.

diversae, lit. separated = separately. aliae . . . parte, some in one place, others in another.

4. ante: see 17, 11-20.

5. interiectis, which intervened.

neque: the principal clause begins here.

certa, definitely posted.

6. quid . . . esset: an indirect question, subject of prōvidērī (poterat).

quid: construction? App. 146. a: G.-L. 406: A. 411, b: B. 218, 2, a: H.-B. 430, 2, a: H. 477, III, n.

4. virtūtis: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

12. dēfuerit: mood? App. 226: G.-

L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Objective genitive	Clause of
Result clause	characteristic

ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae milītēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciēi cōstitērant, pīlis ēmissis cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō

8. inīquitās, -tātis, *f.* [inīquus, unequal], inequality. 2

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [ēveniō, turn out], outcome, issue, result. 3

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, various. 1

1. nōnus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, ninth. 2

2. cursus, -ūs, *m.* [currō, run], running. *

lassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [lassus, weary], weariness, exhaustion. 2

exanimō, 1, *tr.* [anima, breath], render breathless, exhaust. 2

3. obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come to, happen upon, meet. 1

4. compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive together; force, compel. 1

7. in . . . inīquitāte, in such a diversity of circumstances.

8. fortūnae: genitive limiting ēventūs.



FIG. 114

A COIN OF THE ATREBATES

The name **Commios** shows that this is a coin of the man whom Caesar made king of the Atrebates after this battle, and whom he sent to Britain two years later. See IV, 21, 13.

Chap. 23. *The left wing repulses the Atrebates, the center repulses the Viromandui, and the Nervii attack the right wing.*

1. nōnae et decimae: these legions were commanded by Labienus.

2. pīlis: see Int. 36, a.

cursū: the Atrebates had run a mile, much of it uphill.

cursū . . . cōfectōs: translate after *Atrebātēs*.

3. ea pars: the left wing of the Romans.

5. cōnantēs, as they [the Atrebates] were trying.

gladiīs: see Int. 36, b.

impeditam, while thus at a disadvantage; i.e., in crossing the river.

6. Ipsī: the Romans of the left wing.

7. locum inīquum: up the hill south of the river. This gave the enemy the advantage of position.

resistentēs hostēs: object of *conīēcērunt*.

8. aliā in parte: the center.

4. resisterent: mood? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Cum causal

proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōfligātis Viromanduīs, quibus cum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātis, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervallō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs 15 circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae

9. ūndecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num.* *adj.* [ūndecim, eleven], eleventh. 1

octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eighth. 1

prōfligō, 1, *tr.* [fligō, strike], strike down; put to flight. 1

10. congregior, -gredi, -gressus *sum*, *intr.* [gradior, step], meet, encounter, meet in battle. *

11. proelior, 1, *intr.* [proelium, battle], engage in battle, fight. 3

at, *conj.*, but. *

12. dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. 4

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (*of an army*) flank, wing. *

duodecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [duodecim, twelve], twelfth. 2

14. Boduognātus, -ī, *m.*, Boduognatus (bōd'ū-ōg-nā'tūs), a chief of the Nervii. 1.

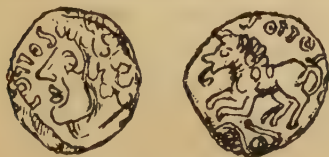


Fig. 115

A COIN OF THE VIROMANDUI

diversae: i.e., separated from the other legions.

10. *ex locō superiōre*, (*having come down*) from their higher position.

12. *nūdātis*: by the advance of the four legions already mentioned. See the plan.

nōn magnō intervallō, at no very great distance. Case? App. 142, b: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3.

13. *omnēs Nervii*: 60,000 in number.

14. *duce Boduognātō*, under the

leadership of Boduognatus: ablative absolute.

summam: the noun.

15. *ab apertō latere*: the right flank, because the shields were carried on the left arm. The part which pushed on for the camp passed the Roman left flank. Others, of course, attacked in front.

16. *summum . . . locum*, lit. *the highest place belonging to the camp = the height on which the camp stood*.

Chap. 24. *The panic of the auxiliaries and the camp servants*.

1. We expect Caesar to tell us at once of the fortunes of the seventh and twelfth legions, but he pauses to give a vivid picture of the panic elsewhere, a panic which seemed to foretell the complete destruction of the Romans.

levis armātūrae: a descriptive genitive. The reference is to the slingers' and archers of 19, 7-8.



FIG. 116

A ROMAN AND A GALLIC CAVALRYMAN

From models in the Museum of Saint-Germain

peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū
 pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus
 occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et
 5 cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs
 victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā

2. *pedes, peditis, m.* [pēs, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry. 3

5. *cālō, -ōnis, m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. 3
decumānus, -a, -um, adj. [decimus,

tenth], belonging to the tenth; *decuman*; *decumāna porta*, the rear gate (of the camp). 1

6. *victor, -ōris, m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; as *adj.*, victorious.

2. *iīs*: the cavalry.

fuerant: before their repulse.

quōs pulsōs dixeram, lit. *whom I had said to have been routed* = *who, as I said, had been routed*. *quōs* refers to both *equitēs* and *peditēs*.

3. *adversis, face to face*. Evidently they had made a circuit to the east, to avoid being caught between the two armies, and were entering the camp by the east gate just as the Belgae were entering by the west.

4. *occurrēbant*: note how the imperfects in the first part of the chapter describe a number of events, all going on at about the same time.

5. *ab decumānā portā*: the camp was on the slope, so that the rear was higher than the front and gave a better view of the battle. But perhaps the fierce charge of the Belgae had something to do with their choice of position.

6. *victōrēs, as victors*.

ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdis-
sent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum
impedimentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliq̄ue
aliā in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus 10
permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō
est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā cīvitatē missī ad Caesarem
vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs
premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, fundi-
tōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere 15
vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt;
Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum
hostēs potītōs cīvitatī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum

7. respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-
tum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look back. 1

8. praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [caput,
head], headforemost, headlong. 2

9. fremitus, -ūs, *m.*, a confused
noise, uproar, din. 2

11. Trēvir, -erī, *m.*, one of the
Treviri; *pl.* Trēveri (Bfgh), the Trev-
eri (trēv'ē-ri). *

12. singulāris, -e, *adj.* [singuli, one
each], single; singular, extraordinary.
2

14. premō, premere, pressī, pres-
sum, *tr.* press, press hard. *

15. dissipō, 1, *tr.*, scatter, dis-
perse. 1

1. cohortātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cohortor, en-
courage], encouragement, cheering. 1

8. eōrum: the muleteers, not the
rear guard of two legions.

9. aliī . . . partem: for translation
see note on 22, 3.

11. virtūtis opīniō, reputation for
courage: an objective genitive.

13. cum: with vidissent.

16. dēspērātīs, despairing of.

17. castris: what deponent verbs
govern the ablative?

Chap. 25. Caesar finds the seventh
and twelfth legions in desperate straits,
and reanimates them by his valor.

1. Caesar: subject of *processit* (l.
15) and *iussit* (l. 16). This is an excel-
lent Latin "period," with the subject
first, the subordinate clauses in the
middle, and the principal verbs toward
the end. The sentence is not hard to
understand in its Latin order, and is

very effective; for the mass of sub-
ordinate clauses represents the im-
pression made on Caesar when he
saw all at once the many details of
the fearful struggle. But it is hard
to translate effectively, because such
a sentence is intolerable in English.
After the pupil thoroughly under-
stands the sentence he should trans-
late it very freely, breaking it up into
a number of short sentences. Each of
the following groups of words may
be turned into a sentence, or two or
more may be combined: *Caesar . . .
profectus; ubi . . . urgērī; signīs . . .
vidit; quārtae . . . āmissō; reliquārum
. . . occisīs; in his . . . posset; reliquōs
. . . vitāre; hostēs . . . instāre; et . . .
posset; scūtō . . . processit; centuriōni-
bus . . . possent.*

cohortātiōne: see 21, 2-3.

cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in ūnum locum collātis duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, quārtae cohortis omnibus 5 centuriōnibus occīsīs, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occīsīs, in hīs primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab novissimis

2. urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —, *tr.*, press, press hard. 2

5. signifer, -eri, *m.* [signum, standard + ferō, bear], standard-bearer. 1

7. primipilus, -i, *m.* [primus, first + pilus, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. 1

Sextius, -ti, *m.*, Publius Sextius Baculus (pūb'li-ūs sēks'ti-ūs bāk'ū-lūs). 2

vir, viri, *m.*, man. *

9. tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish. 1



Fig. 117

A CENTURION

This figure is from a monument. See Int. 42 and Fig. 20, p. 40.

Notice that this man is wearing greaves to protect his legs.

2. ubi, when; with vidit, l. 4, which is repeated in l. 12.

urgērī: this and most of the other infinitives before the end of l. 12 depend on vidit. Other dependent ideas are expressed by the ablative absolute.

signis collātis: the position of the standards regulated the position of the cohorts. As the standards were now huddled together, the soldiers naturally crowded together.

3. sibi . . . impedimentō, lit. were themselves for a hin-

drance to themselves for fighting = hindered one another in fighting.

4. quārtae cohortis: this cohort had suffered especially, because it was stationed at the left end of the front line.

5. signō āmissō: regarded as a great disgrace.

7. primipilō: see Int. 42. The first cohort stood at the right of the first line, the primipilus at the right of the front rank. This was the post of honor and danger, since the shields were carried on the left arm. For the arrangement of the battle line and the position of the cohorts, see Fig. 31, p. 48.

Baculō: the most conspicuous hero among Caesar's centurions. See III, 5, 5; and especially VI, 38, where he saves a camp.

8. multis gravibusque, many severe. When multi and another adjective modify the same noun, the two adjectives are usually connected by et or -que.

sē sustinēre, stand on his feet.

9. ab novissimis, in the rear.

10. dēsertō locō, deserting their posts.

dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā 10
 fronte ex infēriōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque
 latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vidit neque ūllum esse
 subsidium quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimis militī
 dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem
 prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs co- 15
 hortātus militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō
 facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus
 ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū impe-
 rātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet,
 paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. 20

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat,
 item urgērī ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut

10. dēsērō, -serere, -seruī, -ser-
 tum, *tr.* [serō, entwine, join], abandon,
 desert, forsake. 3

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,
intr. [cēdō, go], go out or away, with-
 draw, retire. *

16. manipulus, -ī, *m.*, a company
 (of two centuries, the third of a cohort),
 maniple. 1

laxō, 1, *tr.*, extend, open out. 1

18. imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [imperō,
 command], commander in chief, gen-
 eral. *

19. opera, -ae, *f.* [opus, work],
 work, exertion; service. 1

nāvō, 1, *tr.*, do zealously or well. 1

20. paulum, *adv.* [acc. of paulus,
 little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

tardō, 1, *tr.* [tardus, slow], make
 slow; hinder, check. 1

1. iūxtā, *adv.*, next, near, near
 by. 1

2. tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [tribus, tribe],
 tribune; tribūnus militum or mili-
 tāris, a military tribune. *

tēla vitāre, were getting out of the
 range of missiles.

neque . . . et, not . . . and.

hostēs neque subeuntēs intermit-
 tere, *lit.* that the enemy coming up
 were not ceasing = were continually
 coming up.

12. rem . . . angustō, and affairs
 were in a critical condition.

vidit simply repeats the vidit of l. 4.

13. quod . . . posset: a clause of
 characteristic.

scūtō dētractō, snatching a shield.

Here begins Caesar's action.

ab novissimis, in the rear; just as
 ā fronte means in front.

militī: dative of separation.

14. eō: the adverb.

16. signa . . . laxāre, to advance
 and to open out the ranks.

quō possent: a purpose clause.

18. prō sē, *lit.* in proportion to
 himself = to the best of his ability.

19. etiam . . . rēbus, even in his
 own extreme danger.

Chap. 26. The seventh and twelfth
 legions fight more successfully, and
 three other legions come to their rescue.

1. iūxtā: i.e., near the twelfth
 legion, in whose ranks Caesar was
 fighting.

cōstiterat, had taken its position.
 Distinguish carefully between cōsistō
 and cōstituō.

2. tribūnōs: see Int. 41.

paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs alii subsidium ferrent neque
 5 timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castris hostium
 10 potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur cōspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent; cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōn-

2. prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, —, *intr.* [-cumbō, lie down], fall down, lie down. 2

3. innitor, -niti, -nixus sum, *intr.* [nitor, rest on], lean upon, support oneself by. 1

3. sēsē coniungerent: i.e., to close up the gap between them.

conversa signa inferrent, to face about and attack. Of course only a part of the Romans were to face about. Probably the rear line faced about, and the cohorts at the ends of the line wheeled half around. Thus an oblong would be formed, facing the enemy on every side.

4. cum . . . ferrent, since they protected one another.

5. timērent: agreeing with militēs, which is implied in aliīs alii.

āversī, in the rear.

7. quae . . . fuerant: see 19, 5.

8. proeliō . . . incitātō, quickening their step on hearing of the battle.

colle: at the rear of the Roman camp.

9. Labiēnus: see note on 23, 1.

11. Quī cum, when they; i.e., the soldiers of the tenth legion.

12. quō in locō, in what condition.

14. nihil . . . fēcērunt, lit. made nothing of a remainder as regards speed = made all possible speed. This legion fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

Chap. 27. The Nervii are slain, fighting desperately.

2. quī, those who. The clause is determinative, not characteristic: App. 231: H.-B. 550. The subjunctive is due to attraction: App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

scūtīs: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

5. circumvenīrentur: construction? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

14. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.



FIG. 118

A HAND-TO-HAND FIGHT

spicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandī studiō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla inter- 10

4. inermis, -e, *adj.* [in- + arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3

turpitūdō, -inis, *f.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. 1

5. dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *tr.*, wipe out, destroy. 1

6. legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [legiō, legion], of a legion, legionary. 4

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before; praeferre sē alicui, surpass. 1

8. iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —, *intr.*, lie; lie slain. 1

īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *tr. and intr.* [sistō, stand], stand upon. 4

9. coacervō, 1, *tr.* [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. 1

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. 1

10. tumulus, -ī, *m.*, mound, hill. 4
intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], intercept. 1

4. inermēs . . . occurrerent, (though) unarmed, attacked the armed (enemy).

5. fugae, see 24, 4.

6. etiam . . . salūtis, even at the end of their hope of safety; i.e., even in their extreme danger.

8. proximī . . . īnsisterent, the

next stood upon them as they lay prostrate.

9. hīs: i.e., proximī.

quī superessent: see note on quī, 1. 2.

10. ut ex tumulō, as if from a mound.

conicerent: result. The force of ut (1. 7) still continues.

cepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redactō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, 5 victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte, ex sescentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redactōs esse dixērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in 10 miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligētissimē

11. nēquiquam, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose. 1

1. gēns, gentis, *f.*, race; clan, tribe, people. 3

3. aestuārium, -rī, *n.* [aestus, tide], low marshland, estuary, marsh. 2

5. cōnsensus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsentiō, agree], agreement, consent. 3

8. senātor, -ōris, *m.* [senex, old], senator. 1

10. miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable, unfortunate. 2

supplex, -icis, *m., f.*, suppliant. 1

misericordia, -ae, *f.* [misereō, pity + cor, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. 1

11. ut . . . dēbēret, *so that it must be believed that not without prospects of success had men, etc.*; i.e., they were so brave that they had a right to expect success.

13. altissimās: at the point where the Nervii crossed, the bank of the river is higher and steeper than elsewhere.

quae, *deeds which.*

14. ex difficillimīs, *instead of most difficult.*

Chap. 28. *The survivors submit to Caesar.*

2. quōs coniectōs dixerāmus, *who, as I have said, had been, etc.*

4. victōribus . . . tūtum, *that nothing was difficult for the victors and nothing safe for the conquered.*

5. quī supererant: compare quī superessent, 27, 9. This clause has

precisely the same meaning, but does not depend on a subjunctive.

8. vix ad quīngentōs: this has been considered an exaggeration, because the Nervii revolted again three years later, and put 5000 men in the field two years after that. But in so large a state there must have been thousands of boys too young to fight in the present battle, but old enough to fight a few years later.

quī possent: a clause of characteristic, and therefore subjunctive in the direct discourse.

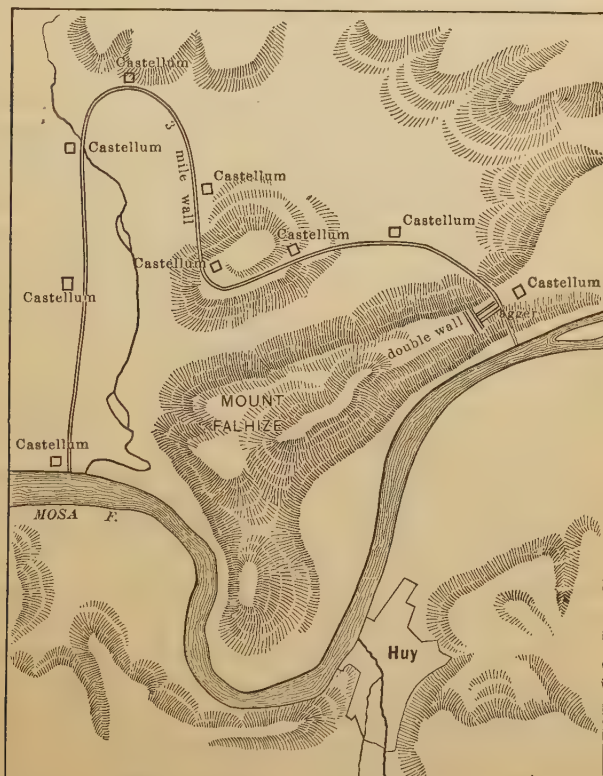
9. ut . . . vidērētur, *that he might be seen to have shown mercy.*

11. iussit, imperāvit: the sentence illustrates well the contrasting constructions with these verbs. iubeō regularly governs an accusative and infinitive; imperō, the dative with ut and the subjunctive.

cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidis ūti iussit, et finitimis imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suosque prohibērent.

29. Atuatucl, dē quibus suprà scripsimus, cum omnibus

1. scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, *tr.*, write. 1



THE TOWN OF THE ATUATUCI

Chap. 29-33. *Caesar subdues the Atuatucl.*

Chap. 29. *The Atuatucl take refuge in a stronghold. Their origin.*

1. suprà: in 16, 7.

cum venirent, while they were coming.

omnibus cōpiis: see App. 140, a.

cōpiis auxiliō Nerviis venirent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctis oppidis castellisque dēsertiis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt.

5 Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbatur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsi

10 erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis, custōdiae ac praesidiō sex mīlia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimis

15 exagitātī, cum aliās bellum inferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent,

3. cūctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [for con-iūctus, joined together], all together, all. 1

4. ēgregiē, *adv.* [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. 1

5. rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. 1

6. acclivis, -e, *adj.* [ad + clivus, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. 2

8. duplex, -plicis, *adj.* [duo, two + plicō, fold], twofold, double. 2

9. pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight. 1

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, large stone. 2
praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [acūtus, sharpened], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened. 3

trabs, trabis, *f.*, beam, timber. 3

10. prōgnātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nāscor, be born], born, descended. 1

13. custōdia, -ae, *f.* [custōs, guard], custody, guard. 2

14. obitus, -ūs, *m.* [obeō, go to death], destruction. 1

15. exagitō, 1, *tr.* [agitō, freq. of agō, drive], drive out; harass. 2

4. oppidum: This was probably Mt. Falhize, about halfway between Namur and Liège, although some think it was Namur. The main advance of the Germans passed Mt. Falhize and took Namur within a few days of the opening of the World War. See Int. 71.

5. Quod cum, although this town. ex . . . partibus, at all (other) points in its circumference, or simply on all (other) sides.

7. ducentōrum pedum: descriptive genitive, modifying aditus. The comparative minus has no effect on the construction: App. 139, b.

8. duplici mūrō: see plan on p. 247. tum: at the time of Caesar's approach.

10. Cimbris Teutonisque: see Int. 27.

12. agere ac portāre, to drive and to carry; for impedimentis here means possessions rather than baggage, and includes cattle.

citrā: the west side.

13. custōdiae . . . reliquerant, lit. had left along (with their possessions), as a guard, six thousand men.

14. eōrum: the main bodies of the Cimbri and Teutoni.

15. cum . . . dēfenderent: some

cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostrīs contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrisque castellis circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrīm procul cōstituī vidērunt, 5

aliās, *adv.* [alius, another], at another place; at another time; aliās . . . aliās, at one time . . . at another. 4

16. domiciliū, -li, *n.* [domus, house], home, domicile. 3

2. excursiō, -ōnis, *f.* [excurrō, run forth], a running out, sortie. 1

cum clauses are best translated by participles; so here, *sometimes making war, sometimes defending themselves against war made on them.*

16. cōnsēnsū . . . factā, *peace was made by common consent, and.* eōrum refers to both the Atuatucae and their neighbors.

hunc locum: the whole tract of country occupied by the Atuatucae at this time.

Chap. 30. The Atuatucae scorn the Roman preparations for attack.

2. faciēbant, *kept making*: imperfect of repeated action.

3. pedum XII: in height.

XV mīlium: supply *pedum* as a partitive genitive; of 15,000 feet in circumference; i.e., three miles. The plan shows that the wall did not cross the river, which itself forms a sufficient obstacle.

4. oppidō: ablative of means, but to be translated as if an ablative of place.

5. vīneīs, aggere, turrīm: see Int. 61; 62, *d.* The vineae afforded shelter to the soldiers who made the agger.

10. ex Cimbris: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395, n. 1: A. 403, *a*, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, *b*: H. 469, 1.

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim.* of parvus, little], small. 1

4. circummūniō, 4, *tr.* [mūniō, fortify], wall around, inclose. 1

5. exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [struō, build], build or pile up, rear, construct, build. 2

procul, *adv.*, afar off, at a distance. 2

In this case, as is shown by 32, 9, the agger was made about as high as the wall.

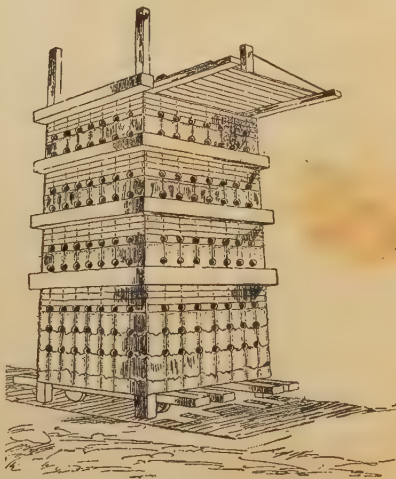


FIG. 119
A TOWER

14. annōs: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

primum irridere ex mūrō atque increpitare vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō institueretur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus, praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suōrum 10 brevitās nostra contemptuī est), tantī oneris turrin in mūrō sēsē posse collocāre cōfiderent?

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mūrīs vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis

6. irridēō, -ridēre, -risī, -rīsum, *intr.* [in +rideō, laugh], laugh, jeer. 1

7. māchinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, machine, engine. 3

quisnam, quidnam, and quīnam, quāenam, quodnam, *interrog. pron.* (App. 61 and a), who? which? what? 1

8. tantulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim.* of tantus, so great], so small or little. 2
statūra, -ae, *f.* [status; stō, stand], size of body, stature. 1

9. plērumque, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, generally. *

prae, *prep. with abl.*, before; in comparison with. 1

10. contemptus, -ūs, *m.* [contemnō, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. 1

onus, -eris, *n.*, load; weight. 4

2. inūsītātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + ūsītātus, usual], unusual, uncommon. 3
speciēs, -ēī, *f.* [-spiciō, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance. 4

3. modus, -ī, *m.*, measure; manner, method. *

4. dīvīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [dīvus, divine], of the gods, divine. 1

6. irridere: on this use of the infinitive see App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

7. ā tantō spatiō, so far away; lit. away by so great a distance, ā being used as an adverb. See note on 7, 8.

institueretur: mood? App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2; 592, 3: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, a: H. 588, II.

Quibusnam manibus . . . cōfiderent, (asking) by what hands, pray, did they hope?: indirect discourse for cōnfiditis, do you hope? For mood see App. 268, I: G.-L. 651: A. 586: B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

8. hominēs: in apposition with the subject of cōnfiderent; especially (as they were) men, etc.

10. contemptuī est, is an object of contempt.

in mūrō collocāre: the Gauls ignorantly supposed that the Romans would try to set the tower on the wall, for the only towers they knew of were built on walls.

Chap. 31. The Atuatuī propose a conditional surrender.

1. movērī, that it [the tower] was being moved.

3. locūtī: the rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse. nōn sē . . . possent depends on locūtī; everything else, on dixerunt (l. 6), speaking as follows . . . said. But it makes smoother English to translate locūtī as

7. spatiō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

Ablative of degree of difference



FIG. 120

THE ENEMY MAKES SUBMISSION

In the background is part of a long wall of circumvallation, such as Caesar describes in 30, 3. At its right is part of an agger, built up of timber, on top of which we see the ends of *vineae*.

The general sits on the tribunal. At his left are officers; behind them standard bearers; still farther back the army is drawn up. Most of the suppliants kneel before the general.

māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque 5 omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dixērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Atuatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs 10

5. *prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move forward, push forward. 2*

7. *dēprecor, 1, tr. and intr. [precor, pray], implore, plead for. 2*

9. *dēspoliō, 1, tr. [spoliō, strip], deprive. 1*

10. *invidēō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsum, intr. [videō, see], look askance at, envy. 1*

locūtī sunt and *omit dixērunt*, spoke as follows.

4. *quī possent, since they could*, may have been subjunctive in the direct form: App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, e: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

6. *Ūnum, one favor; i.e., nē . . . dēspoliāret.*

7. *sī statuisset, if he should decide.* The direct form used the future perfect indicative; lit. *if you shall have decided.*

prō, in accordance with.

quam audīrent, of which they kept hearing.

9. *nē dēspoliāret*: the original form was probably *nōlī dēspoliāre*: App. 219; 267: G.-L. 271, 2; 652: A. 450; 588: B. 276, c; 316: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2; 534, 2: H. 561, 1; 642.

Sibi: with the adjective *inimicōs*.

10. *virtūtī*: what verbs, transitive in English, govern the dative?

trāditīs armīs, if they should, etc.

armis nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab his per cruciātum interfici inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī priusquam mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditionis nūllam esse condiціōnem nisi armis trāditis. Sē id quod in Nerviiis
5 fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditionis populī Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dixerunt. Armōrum magnā multitudine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut

12. quivīs, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), [quī, who +vis, you wish], whom or what you wish; any whatever, any. 3

13. cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, tor-

ture; cruz, cross], torture, torment. * dominor, 1, *intr.* [dominus, master], be master, rule. 1

3. ariēs, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram. Int. 62, c. 2

11. Sibi praestāre, *lit. it was better for them = they preferred.*
cāsum, *extremity.*



FIG. 121

A COIN OF THE ATUATUCI

Chap. 32. The Atuatuaci surrender unconditionally, but treacherously retain a part of their arms.

1. cōnsuētūdine: ablative of accordance.

3. ariēs: apparently in this case

the battering-ram was hung in the lowest story of the tower.

attigisset, dēdidissent represent future perfect indicatives of the direct form.

4. nisi armis trāditis, *unless their arms should be surrendered.*

in, *in the case of.*

5. factūrum . . . -que imperātūrum, *he would do . . . and would command means he would do . . . ; namely, he would command.*

6. Rē, *answer.*

7. facere: we might expect a future infinitive; but the envoys return and say that the people are already executing his commands.

8. ante: i.e., on the side where the Romans were.

9. aggeris: the Roman agger, which had reached the trench.

8. esse cōservandōs: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 162; 600, 3: H. 237.

9. Sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350,

2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Passive periphrastic conjugation
Dative of reference

prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum iīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar im-

9. *acervus*, -ī, *m.*, a heap, mass, pile. 1

10. *adaequō*, 1, *tr.* [*aequō*, make equal], make equal to, equal. 3

11. *cēlō*, 1, *tr.*, keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal. 2

patefaciō, -*facere*, -*fēci*, -*factum*, *tr.* [*pateō*, be open + *faciō*, make], make or throw open, open. 2

5. *indiliger*, *adv.* [*indiligēns*, careless], carelessly. 1

servō, 1, *tr.*, save, preserve; guard, watch. 2

crēdō, -*dere*, -*didī*, -*ditum*, *tr.*, believe, suppose. 2

6. *cortex*, -*icis*, *m.*, bark. 1

7. *vīmen*, -*inis*, *n.*, a pliant twig, osier. 1

intexō, -*texere*, -*texuī*, -*textum*, *tr.* [*texō*, weave], weave in or together. 1

8. *pellis*, -*is*, *f.*, a hide, a skin. 4

arduus, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, steep. 1

9. *repente*, *adv.* [*repēns*, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2

10. *ēruptiō*, -*ōnis*, *f.* [*ērumpō*, break forth], a breaking out, sortie. *

11. *portīs patefactīs*, they opened the gates and.

12. *pāce sunt ūsī*, kept the peace.

Chap. 33. *The Atuatuēi make a night attack and are repulsed. They are sold as slaves.*

2. *nē quam*: see references on 32, 5. This care for the safety of the townspeople shows Caesar's intention of acting humanely.

4. *praesidia*, the outposts, in the *castella* (30, 4).

5. *cum*: with both *iīs armīs* and *scūtīs*.

6. *ex . . . intextīs*, made of bark or of osiers woven together.

8. *quā*: the adverb.

minimē arduus: evidently the Roman wall was on rising ground. The desire to keep the wall on high ground accounts for its irregular course as shown on the plan.

10. *imperāverat*: therefore Caesar had foreseen the possibility of treachery.

5. *quam*: use? App. 174: G.-L. 107,

R.: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

perāverat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō
 concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā
 virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquō locō, contrā eōs
 quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum
 (13) in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōsisteret.) Occīsīs ad hominum
 milibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Post-
 rīdiē eius diēi refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō,
 atque intrōmissīs militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūni-
 versam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iīs quī ēmerant capitum numerus
 20 ad eum relātus est milium quīnquāgintā trium.

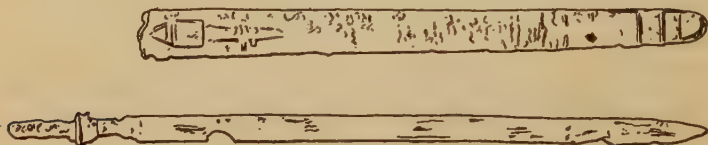


Fig. 122

A GALLIC SCABBARD AND SWORD

11. significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal. 1

17. refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāc-
 tum, *tr.* [frangō, break], break in or
 open. 1

18. intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī,
 -missum, *tr.* [intrō, within + mittō,
 send], send or let in. 1

sectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, booty. 1

ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus, one
 + versus, from vertō, turn], turned
 into one; all together, whole. *

19. vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*
 [vēnum, sale + dō, give], put to sale,
 sell, sell at auction. 3

12. concursum est, pugnātum est:
 translate personally.

ut pugnārī dēbuit, *lit.* as it ought
 to have been fought = as brave men
 ought to have fought.

13. eōs quī iacerent, *men who*
 threw: a clause of characteristic.

15. in ūnā virtūte cōsisteret, *de-*
 pended on valor alone.

ad, about, used adverbially.

18. sectiōnem: including the inhab-
 itants as well as their possessions.
 The action was perfectly justifiable,

according to ancient ideas, as a
 punishment for their treachery. Such
 methods were probably the only
 means by which Caesar could have
 secured the respect of the Gauls. He
 used them seldom.

19. iīs quī ēmerant: slave dealers
 who were with Caesar constantly and
 who supplied the slave market at
 Rome.

numerus . . . trium, *lit.* the num-
 ber was reported (to be) of 53,000 = was
 reported as 53,000.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitēs, Esumiōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

5

35. His rēbus gestis, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius belli ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est utī ab iīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgatiōnēs ad Caesarem mitterentur quae sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgatiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Īllyricumque properābat, initā

5

1. Crassus, -ī, *m.*, Publius Licinius Crassus (pūb'li-ūs li-sin'i-ūs krās'-ūs). *

2. Venetī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cb), the Veneti (vēn'ē-tī). *

Venelli, -ōrum, *m.* (Bc), the Venelli (vē-nēl'i). *

Osismi, -ōrum, *m.* (Bb), the Osismi (ō-sīs'mī). 2

Coriosolitēs, -um, *m.* (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō'rī-ō-sōl'i-tēz). 3

Esumi, -ōrum, *m.* (Bcd), the Esumi (ē-sū'vī-i). 2

3. Aulerci, -ōrum, *m.* (Bed), the Aulerci (aw-lēr'sī). 3

Redonēs, -um, *m.* (BCc), the Redones (rēd'ō-nēz). 1

maritimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mare, sea], of the sea, maritime, on the sea. *

4. diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, rule. 3

2. barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (to Greeks and Romans); *m. pl.* as noun, barbarians. *

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. *

5. Īllyricum, -ī, *n.*, Illyricum (ī-līr'ī-kūm), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province. 2

Chap. 34. The northwestern states submit to Crassus, whom Caesar had sent against them.

1. legiōne ūnā: this was the seventh, one of the two which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervii. Caesar must have sent Crassus immediately after that battle.

3. quae: agrees in gender with the predicate noun, cīvitātēs.

5. esse redāctās: they gave hostages without fighting. One legion could not have conquered these states, for we learn in the next book that it took Caesar himself and most of his army to do it.

Chap. 35. German envoys offer submission. Arrangements for the winter. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

1. omnī Galliā: the map facing p. 197 shows that Caesar now controlled everything but Aquitania and two Belgic states.

2. opiniō, impression.

quae incolerent: for mood see note on quī, 27, 2.

3. quae pollicērentur: a purpose clause.

5. initā proximā aestāte, at the beginning of the next summer. At that time they had so far changed their minds that only the Ubii sent hostages.

proximā aestātē ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae iis locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs, in Ītaliā profectus est. Ob easque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīn-
 10 cim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

6. Carnutēs, -um, *m.* (BCde), the Carnutes (kär'nū-tēz). 1

Andēs, -ium, *m.* (Cc), the Andes (än'dēz). 2

7. Turonī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cd), the Turonī (tū'rō-nī). 1

10. supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [supplex, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence thanksgiving. 2

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.* [cernō, separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. 3

6. in Carnutēs: with *dēductīs*.

7. quaeque cīvitātēs = *et eas cīvitātēs quae*.

8. in Ītaliā: i.e., Cisalpine Gaul. He could not legally go outside of his province, which included Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum.

9. *ex*, in consequence of.

10. supplicātiō: a public thanks-

giving, voted by the senate in honor of a victory. The number of days was supposed to be in proportion to the importance of the victory. Before this time no more than twelve days had ever been voted.

quod, (*an honor*) which. The relative is neuter; the antecedent is the preceding clause.

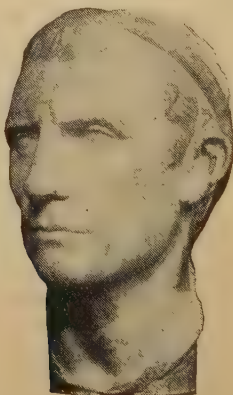


Fig. 123

CAESAR

Bust in the Louvre, Paris.

THE STORY OF BOOK III

OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS, IN THE NORTHWEST, AND IN AQUITANIA

Since Rome was to possess Gaul, she needed to control the shortest route across the Alps—that which leads over the Great St. Bernard Pass. Caesar accordingly sent Galba with one legion, in the autumn of 57, to subdue the mountain tribes which controlled that route. Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position. The tribes were not thoroughly conquered, but as we hear of no further operations against them it is evident that they stopped molesting travelers.

In 57 the northwestern states had submitted to Crassus and had sent him hostages; but when he established winter quarters among them and began sending out officers to levy tribute of supplies, they grew weary of the yoke. Ignorant of the Roman resources and power, three states took the fatal step of arresting the officers sent to them. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of the coast tribes between the Loire and the Seine. The Britons, the Morini, and the Menapii sent men and ships to their aid.

As early as possible in 56 Caesar hastened to Gaul and gave orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective coöperation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent toward the Rhine to check a possible uprising among the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing. Quintus Titurius Sabinus went to the country of the Venelli to cut off communications between the eastern and the western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus marched into Aquitania to prevent the Aquitani from sending help to the insurgents. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus, undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful seaboard state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skillfully utilized the advantages of their position. Their country was wild and barren and their strongholds were built on the

ends of promontories which the tides cut off from the mainland. Hence supplies for the Roman army were obtained with difficulty, and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or if necessary could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The Roman fleet would have prevented this, but it was kept away by stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the much superior fleet of the Veneti confidently sailed out to meet it; but Roman valor and ingenuity won the day. The destruction of their fleet forced the Veneti to submit. Their prominence in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment, as a warning to other Gallic states. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves.

The legates of Caesar were as successful as himself. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the confederacy. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. In all Gaul only the Morini and the Menapii had made no submission. Therefore Caesar marched against them; but after he had made strenuous efforts to reach the foe, in almost impenetrable forests and swamps, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quarters his legions upon the conquered tribes, as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

The coloring shows the part of Transalpine Gaul which had come under Roman control at the end of this campaign. The meaning of the colors is as follows:

Brown indicates the part which belonged to Rome before Caesar came to Gaul.

Red indicates the states which Caesar conquered in battle. There are three additions to the red area of the map facing p. 197. First, a narrow strip is shown leading into the Alps. Although Galba defeated the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni, we may suppose that the Romans were satisfied to control the pass across the Alps, and did not attempt to control the whole mountainous district occupied by these tribes. Second, the territory of the revolting northwestern states is colored red. Third, the territory of the three Aquitanian states in which fighting occurred is colored red. Perhaps the rest of Aquitania should be red, since all the states were represented in the army which Crassus defeated. But probably their fighting strength was not destroyed, and they submitted rather from discouragement than because they were actually subjugated.

Blue indicates the states which came under Caesar's control without fighting. The only addition to the blue area of the map facing p. 197 is the part of Aquitania not colored red. As Caesar says in **28, 2**, the only states which had not made submission by the end of this third summer were the Morini and the Menapii.

Battles are marked by x. The town of the Sotiates which Crassus took is certain. The location of all the other battles of this book is more or less uncertain.

Most of Caesar's army had probably been quartered along the Liger (Loire). Therefore the routes on this map begin at the point of the probable winter quarters farthest east, where Orleans now stands. Marching westward, he picked up another part of his army, and then probably collected the whole of it at the point on the map from which four lines diverge, which is now the site of Angers. From that point he sent out Labienus, Crassus, and Sabinus, and himself marched against the Veneti. From the Veneti Caesar marched against the Morini and the Menapii, and was probably joined on the route by Sabinus and Crassus.

COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS

1. Cum in Ītaliā proficīscerētur, Caesar Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. ■ Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum

1. **Servius, -vī, m.,** Servius (sēr'vī-ūs), a Roman praenomen. 1

Galba, -ae, m., Servius Sulpicius Galba (sēr'vī-ūs sŭl-pīsh'yŭs gāl'-bā). *

2. **Nantuātēs, -um, m. (CDg),** the Nantuates (năn'tū-ā'tēz). 4

Veragrī, -ōrum, m. (CDg), the Veragri (vēr'ā-grī). 3

3. **Sedūnī, -ōrum, m. (Cgh),** the Seduni (sē-dū'nī). 3

Chap. 1-6. *Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. Although he defeats the mountaineers in battle, he dares not winter in the mountains.*

Chap. 1. *Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. He occupies Octodurus.*

The notes on the following chapters give especial attention to tense usage. If the pupil will read carefully App. 197 and 198 and will observe the tenses in these chapters, he will see that Caesar was very accurate in choosing between the perfect and imperfect. Notice that in Chap. 1 the verb in every principal clause is perfect, and that with one exception every perfect tells the next thing that happened in the story. That is what the perfect usually does; while the imperfect tells how things were at the time when the new event occurred.

1. **Cum . . . proficīscerētur:** as stated in II, 35. Therefore the narrative given in the first six chapters of Book III belongs chronologically with Book II.

2. **legiōne duodecimā:** this was one of the two legions which had suffered

most severely in the battle with the Nervii: see II, 25.

Nantuātēs, etc.: see the map facing p. 259.

3. **mīsit:** the first step in the story; i.e., the first thing done by the actors.

4. **pertinent:** several of the subordinate verbs in this chapter are in the present tense, because they state facts which are still true at the time when Caesar is writing.

5. **fuit:** this is not a new step in the story; but it is perfect because it repeats the idea of *mīsit*: *he sent him, because, etc.*

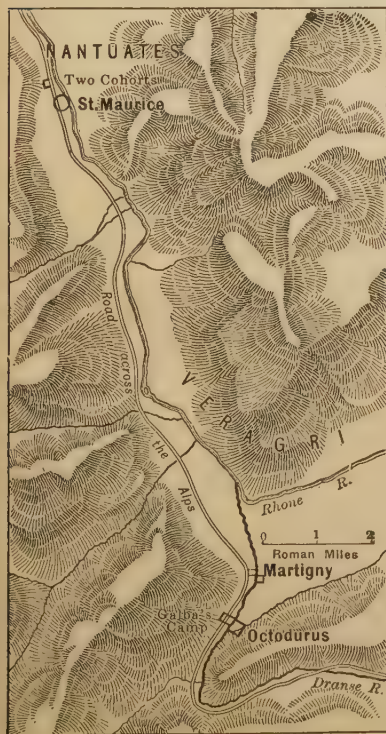
quod volēbat, that he wished: a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causa*. The imperfect does not narrate an event in the story, but describes something (here, Caesar's feelings) as going on at the time of a main act (Caesar's decision to send Galba). This is the most common use of the imperfect, and is called the *descriptive imperfect*.

iter per Alpēs: the route leading over the famous Great St. Bernard Pass.

quō: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercatōrēs ire cōsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permisit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis 10 et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hic in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, al-

teram partem eius vicī Gallis concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnivit.



GALBA'S CAMP

20

9. aliquot, indecl. num. adj. [quot, how many] some, a few, several. 3

13. Octodūrus, -ī, m. (Cg), Octodurus (ōk'tō-dū'rūs). 1

14. vāllēs, -is, f., valley. 2
adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw to; add. 1

18. attribuo, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribūtum, tr. [ad +tribuō, assign], assign, allot. 2

6. periculō: from the natives.
portōriis, tolls, levied by the natives on all merchandise carried through their country.

cōsuērant: meaning of tense? App. 194, a: G.-L. 241, R.: A. 476: B. 262, A.: H.-B. 487: H. 538, 4.

7. permisit: another step in the story.

arbitrārētur: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *arbitrāberis*.

11. cohortēs duās: for the location of these cohorts, see map.

14. nōn . . . plānitīē, with a little level ground adjacent.

17. vacuum relictam, left vacant.

19. Eum locum: the western half of the village.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmen-
tumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs cer-
tior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs
noctū discessisse montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multi-
tūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs
acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque oppri-
mendae cōsiliū caperent: primum, quod legiōnem, neque
eam plēnissimam, dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus
singillātīm, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, propter
10 paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem
locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla con-
icerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī
exīstimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs
obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum
15 causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occu-

6. **renovō**, 1, *tr.* [novus, new], renew. 2

opprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pres-
sum, *tr.* [ob + premō, press], press
down; overwhelm, destroy. 4

8. **plēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pleō, fill],
full, complete. 3

9. **singillātīm**, *adv.* [singulī, one
each], singly, individually. 1

10. **paucitās**, -tātis, *f.* [paucus,
few], fewness, small number. *

13. **abstrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi,
-tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], drag away,
carry away by force. 1

15. **perpetuus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, con-
tinuous, permanent. 3

culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. 1

Chap. 2. *The mountaineers revolt and occupy the neighboring heights.*

2. **eō**: i.e., into the winter quarters.

3. **quam . . . concesserat**: this is not a part of the quotation, but is an explanation added by the writer; therefore it is not subjunctive.

5. **aliquot dē causīs**: these reasons are (1) *quod dēspiciēbant*, l. 7; (2) *quod exīstimābant*, l. 10; (3) *Accēdēbat quod dolēbant*, l. 13; (4) *(accēdēbat quod) habēbant*. Note that the imperfect is used in these clauses because they all describe the condition of things existing at the time the Gauls revolted.

6. **ut caperent**: a substantive clause of fact (result), in apposition with *id*.

7. **neque eam plēnissimam**, and that not at its full strength; explained by the ablatives absolute which follow.

8. **complūribus singillātīm**, many men individually.

11. **cum dēcurrerent et conicerent**, when they should, etc., is a part of the indirect discourse. They thought "when we shall run down . . . they cannot withstand," etc.

13. **Accēdēbat quod**, lit. there was added that = a further reason was that, or besides.

liberōs abstractōs (esse), that their children, etc.

14. **obsidum nōmine**, lit. under the name of hostages = as hostages.

15. **perpetuae possessiōnis**: supply causā.

pāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter opiniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modī sententiae dicēbantur, ut impedimentis relictīs ēruptiōne factā isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. (Maiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

16. adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join to, attach, unite; add. 1

2. plēnē, *adv.* [plēnus, full], fully. 1

5. exquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. 2

9. supportō, 1, *tr.* [sub + portō, carry], carry or bring up, bring. 4

13. placeō, 2, *intr.*, please; often *impers.*, it seems good to one, hence, he decides. 2

reservō, 1, *tr.* [servō, save, keep], keep back, reserve. 2

16. finitimae: the province bounded them on the west. See map facing p. 259.

sibi persuāsum habēbant: the clause *Rōmānōs . . . adiungere* is the object of *habēbant*, and *persuāsum* is a predicate adjective in the neuter, agreeing with the clause; lit. *they had . . . persuaded to themselves = they were persuaded that.*

Chap. 3. *The Romans resolve to defend their camp.*

1. opus hibernōrum: especially the making of huts. Although they were occupying part of a village, it cannot have been large enough to house all the soldiers.

2. essent perfectae agrees with the nearer subject, mūnitiōnēs.

3. esset prōvisum: translate personally.

4. nihil timendum (*esse*), *that he need have no fear.*

5. cōnsiliō: a council of war, composed of the tribunes and the centurions of the first rank. See Int. 42.

8. neque . . . venīrī (*posset*), lit. *and it could not be come to their assistance.*

10. eius modī, *to this effect.*

dicēbantur: this narrates a new event in the story, so that the perfect might have been used; but the imperfect is used to express repeated action: App. 191, a: G.-L. 233: A. 470: B. 260, 2: H.-B. 484: H. 534, 3.

12. pervēnissent: implied indirect discourse.

Maiōrī partī placuit, *the majority determined.*

13. ad extrēmum cāsum, *for the last resort.*



FIG. 124

PROBABLE SITE OF GALBA'S CAMP

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus quās cōstituis-
sent collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs
ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in
vāllum conicere. Nostri primō integrīs vīribus fortiter prō-
5 pugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere,
et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī

1. brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief. *

3. gaesum, -i, *n.*, a heavy iron javelin (of the Gauls). 1

4. integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, unimpaired; fresh. 3

5. frūstrā, *adv.*, without effect, in vain. 3

6. quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef.* (or generalizing) *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever. *

Chap. 4. The mountaineers attack the camp in great numbers.

1. vix: placed before *ut* for emphasis.

rēbus . . . administrandīs: the dative of the gerundive is not common: App. 292.

quās cōstituissent: a determining clause: App. 231: H.-B. 550. Reason for the subjunctive? App. 274: G.-L.

663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. decurrere: an historical infinitive. In what case is its subject, *hostēs*? App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

4. integrīs vīribus: ablative absolute; while their strength was fresh.

5. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex 10 pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pugnārētur, ac nōn solum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārent, languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pilī centuriō, quem 5

8. diūturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [diūturnus, long], long duration, length (of time). 2

11. saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded. 1

3. languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak, faint, sluggish. 1

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy. 1

5. pilus, -i, *m.*, century of soldiers; primus pilus, first century of a legion; primī pilī centuriō, or primipilus, the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. 1

7. hōc superārī, quod, *they were overmatched in this, that.*

8. excēdēbant, succēdēbant, *kept withdrawing, etc.*: imperfects of repeated action.

9. integrīs vīribus: descriptive ablative. Contrast the construction of the same words in l. 4.

quārum . . . poterat, *while none of these things, etc.*

10. poterat and dabātur are descriptive imperfects, describing a condition of things that went on all through the battle.

nōn modo dēfessō facultās dabātur, *not only was an opportunity not given to an exhausted man.* H. 656, 3: "Nōn modo (or solum) nōn, sed nē . . . quidem means *not only not, but not even*, and nōn modo (solum), sed nē . . . quidem, has the same meaning when the verb standing in the second clause belongs also to the first."

11. excēdendī: gerund or gerundive?

locī relinquendī: gerund or gerundive?

12. suī recipiendī: construction? App. 291, a: G.-L. 428, R. 1: A. 504, c: B. 339, 5: H.-B. 614: H. 626, 3.

Chap. 5. As a last resort Galba decides on a sortie.

1. Cum pugnārētur, *when the battle had lasted.* The imperfect subjunctive is to be translated on the same principle as is laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234: A. 471, b: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

hōrīs: ablative after the comparative, *amplius*; see note on milibus, II, 7, 10.

3. languidiōribus nostrīs, *as our men grew weaker*: ablative absolute.

5. cāsum, *extremity.*

quem . . . diximus: see II, 25, 7.

- Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsilī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur.
- 10 Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.
- ⑥. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs

6. Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Nervius], of or with the Nervii. 1

7. C., *abbr. for praenomen* Gāius (gā'yūs). *

Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Volusenus Quadratus (gā'yūs vōl'ū-sē'nūs kwā-drā'tūs). 4

11. tantummodo, *adv.*, only. 1

12. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [capiō, take], take up, catch, receive. *

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, labor. *

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], remake, repair; with sē, refresh oneself, rest. 3

13. ērumpō, -rumpere, -rupī, -ruptum, *intr.* [rumpō, break], break forth, make a sortie. 1

2. colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [con+legō, gather], gather together, collect; sē colligere, rally. 3

8. accurrunt: the principal verbs in this chapter are all historical presents: App. 190, a. The historical present narrates a new event in a story just as the perfect does. It may be followed by either the primary or the secondary tenses of the subjunctive. In this chapter the dependent subjunctives are all secondary.

ūnam . . . sī experīrentur, *lit.* told him that there was one hope of safety, if they should try = that their only hope of safety was to try.

9. extrēmum auxilium, *their last resource.*

experīrentur: indirect discourse for the future indicative.

10. militēs certiōrēs facit, *he directed the soldiers.* This phrase is followed by indirect discourse, as usual; but all the verbs are in the subjunctive mood, because they represent imperatives of the direct form.

12. exciperent, *lit.* catch on their shields = shield themselves from.

post: the adverb.

Chap. 6. The Gauls are routed with great loss. Galba retires from the mountains.

1. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, *they did as they had been commanded.* iussī sunt is used instead of a past perfect, just as faciunt is used instead of a perfect. Notice how regularly the indicative tenses are used in this chapter: all the principal verbs are in the perfect or historical present; all the subordinate verbs except iussī sunt are in the imperfect or past perfect.

2. suī colligendī: see note on 4, 12.

3. commūtātā fortūnā: the dangerous plan succeeded, partly because all men fight with more spirit on the offensive than on the defensive, partly because the enemy were taken by

quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circum-
ventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem 5
numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertiā
parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē
in locīs quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus
hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armisque exūtīs sē intrā mūnitiōnēs
suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortunam 10
temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōsiliō vēnisse
meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vidēbat, maximē frūmentī
inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vicī aedificiīs
incēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac nūllō hoste pro-
hibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, 15
inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

6. cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, —, *intr.*
[stō, stand], stand firm; *impersonal*,
it is agreed or known. *

9. fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*,
pour, throw; rout, put to flight. 1

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, strip,
deprive. 1

12. meminī, -isse (App. 86), *tr.*, re-
member. 1

15. dēmoror, 1, *tr.* [moror, delay],
hinder, delay. 1

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, un-
harmed, safe. 4

surprise, and partly because the Gauls
always lacked persistence and ability
to rally from a reverse.

4. potiundōrum castrōrum: how
can the intransitive verb *potior* be used
in the gerundive construction? App.
289, I, a: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2:
B. 339, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, b, n.: H. 623, 1.

circumventōs: translate by a coördi-
nate clause.

5. ex milibus XXX depends on *ter-
tiā parte*. Galba probably exaggerated
the number in his report to Caesar, for
those tribes cannot have had 30,000
soldiers.

9. armīs: ablative of separation.
The Gauls threw away their arms in
their flight.

10. quod . . . nōlēbat: Galba felt
that it would be foolish to court
another attack by remaining in so
dangerous a position. The complete
victory which he had gained made it
possible for him to retire with honor.

Since Caesar never fought these tribes
again, we may suppose that they were
taught by this battle not to molest
Roman travelers.

11. aliō cōsiliō, *with one purpose*;
namely, to spend the winter there
quietly.

12. aliīs . . . rēbus, *that he had
met a different state of affairs*; namely,
a dangerous battle.

15. in Nantuātēs: there, of course,
he picked up the other two cohorts of
his legion.



FIG. 125
A COIN OF THE AULEROI DIABLINTES



FIG. 126

A BIT OF THE COAST OF BRITTANY

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cognōscere
5 volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Eius bellī

3. hiems, -mis, f., winter. *

5. subitus, -a, -um, adj., unexpected, sudden. 2

coorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, intr.
[co-+orior, rise], arise, break out.
2

Chap. 7-11. *The Aremorican states revolt, under the leadership of the Veneti. Caesar prepares a fleet for their subjugation, and takes measures to prevent a widespread uprising of Gaul.*

The events of the preceding six chapters occurred in the fall of 57. At this point the events of 56 begin.

Chap. 7. *The Aremorican states revolt because Crassus demands supplies from them.*

1. omnibus dē causīs, for every reason; explained by the ablatives absolute superātīs . . . Sedūnīs.

pācātam (esse) Galliam: this belief was premature, for it took Caesar seven more years to subdue Gaul thoroughly.

2. superātīs Belgīs: see II, 1-33.

expulsīs Germānīs: see I, 30-54.

victīs Sedūnīs: see 1-6. The Seduni were the most important of the tribes there mentioned.

4. quod . . . volēbat: under Augustus, Caesar's successor, the Romans were obliged to conquer the tribes between the Adriatic and the Danube. His visit to Illyricum probably shows that Caesar foresaw this necessity

haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās cīvitatēs frūmentī causā dīmīsīt; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius 10 Gallus in Coriosolitēs, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

8. Huius est cīvitatīs longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et sciētiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portibus inter- 5 iectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē quī eō marī ūtī cōsuērunt habent vectigālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī | Sili atque

6. adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*, youth, young man. 4

7. mare; -is, *n.*, sea; mare Ōceanum, the ocean. *

8. praefectus, -i, *m.* [praeficiō, place over], prefect, commander (usually of cavalry). 4

10. Terrasidius, -dī, *m.*, Titus Terrasidius (tī'tūs tēr'ā-sīd'ī-ūs). 2

Trebius, -bī, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē'bī-ūs gāl'ūs). 2

11. Velānius, -nī, *m.*, Quintus Velanīus (kwīn'tūs vē-lā'nī-ūs). 2

Silius, -lī, *m.*, Titus Silius (tī'tūs sīl'ī-ūs). 2

2. ōra, -ae, *f.*, border, margin; coast, shore. 4

3. nāvigō, 1, *intr.* [nāvis, ship], set sail, sail. *

4. nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nauta, sailor], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. 1

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [cēdō, go], go before, excel, surpass. 3

5. vāstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, waste; boundless, vast. 3

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, port. *

7. vectigālīs, -e, *adj.* [vehō, carry], paying revenue or tribute; tributary. 2

and hoped to do the work himself, but Gaul kept his hands full.

7. proximus . . . Ōceanum, *very near the ocean.* For case see App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 435, 2.

9. in finitimās cīvitatēs: especially the seaboard states of the northwest, called Aremorian states. These had all submitted to Crassus in the fall; see II, 34.

Chap. 8. Led by the Veneti, the Aremorian states arrest Roman envoys and form a league.

1. Huius cīvitatīs: the Veneti, who were last mentioned.

2. ōrae: partitive genitive, depending on *amplissima*.

regiōnum: depending on *ōrae*.

quod: belongs with *habent*, l. 2; *antecēdunt*, l. 4; and *habent*, l. 7.

4. in magnō . . . interiectis, *there being only a few harbors in that dangerous stretch [lit. great violence] of vast and open sea.*

7. habent vectigālēs, *they treat as tributaries; i.e., the ship owners paid a tax for the privilege of using the harbors.*

Ab . . . retinendī, *lit. a beginning was made by these of arresting = they began by arresting.*

Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs exīstimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī ad-
 10 ductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentinā cōsilia, eādē dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā ma-
 15 ioribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem lēgatiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: Sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui,

9. recuperō, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain. 1

13. exitus, -ūs, *m.* [exeō, go out], a going out; issue, result. 2

15. permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay, remain; continue. 3

16. mālō, mālle, mālui, — (App.

82), *tr. and intr.* [magis, more + volō, wish], wish more or rather, prefer. 1

2. aedificō, 1, *tr.* [aedēs, house + faciō, make], build, construct. 1

3. Liger, -eris, *m.* (Cce), the river Liger (lī'jēr), better the Loire. 1

rēmex, -igis, *m.* [rēmus, oar], oarsman, rower. 1

9. finitimī: the Esvii and the Coriosolites.

10. ut, *as*, almost *since*.

12. commūnī cōsiliō, *by common agreement*.

13. āctūrōs (*esse*), *that they would do*.

14. ut permanēre quam perferre mālint, *to prefer to remain (rather) than to endure*.

15. accēperint: implied indirect discourse.

18. Si velit, remittat: the direct form was *sī vīs, remitte*.

Chap. 9. Caesar equips a fleet. The Veneti make preparations to resist him.

2. aberat longius, *was too far off, to take command in person*.

nāvēs longās: see Int. 64.

in flūmine Ligerī: on the map facing p. 259, notice that there are three towns along the Liger, connected by a line of march. These were the winter quarters of the army, and no doubt ships were built at all of them.

3. ex provinciā: the Gauls were not competent oarsmen, for their ships were managed by sails, not oars; otherwise oarsmen might have been secured



FIG. 127
A COIN OF THE PICTONES

nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. His rēbus celeriter administrātis ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad 5 exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item civitatēs cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīsissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen apud omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitudine periculī bellum parāre 10 et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōfidēbant.) Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitatemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter inopiam frū- 15 menti diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant; ac iam ut

4. nauta, -ae, *m.* [*for* nāvita; nāvis, ship], sailor. 1

gubernātor, -ōris, *m.*, navigator, captain. 1

7. facinus, -noris, *n.* [*faciō*, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2

9. sancio, sancire, sanci, sānctum,

tr., make sacred; sānctus, *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred. 2

inviolātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in* + violātus, injured], uninjured, inviolate. 1

13. nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*nāvigō*, sail], sailing, navigation. 3

14. inscientia, -ae, *f.* [*insciēns*, ignorant], ignorance. 3

from the friendly maritime states, the Andes and the Pictones.

instituī, *to be procured.*

4. gubernātōrēs: though often translated *helmsmen*, these were officers in charge of all nautical operations, but of course under the orders of the military officers whom Caesar put in command.

5. cum primum . . . potuit: probably in May. For tense see App. 237: G.-L. 561: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 557, a.

ad exercitum contendit: probably he went first to the most eastern town indicated on the Liger (see map facing p. 259), and then marched west, thus concentrating his army at Angers, where Crassus had spent the winter.

7. quantum . . . admisissent, *how great a crime they had committed*: an indirect question.

8. lēgātōs retentōs (*esse*), (*namely*), *that envoys had been arrested*, explains facinus; syntactically it is indirect discourse after intellegēbant.

quod nōmen, *a name which*; i.e., lēgātōs.

10. prō, *in proportion to.*

12. hōc: ablative of cause, explained by quod . . . cōfidēbant.

nātūrā: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

13. Pedestria itinera, *land routes.*

14. impeditam (*esse*), *was difficult.*

15. neque posse cōfidēbant, *and they trusted that . . . would not be able.*

16. iam, *even.*

ut: translation? App. 247: G.-L. 608: A. 527, a: H.-B. 532, 2, b: H. 586, II.

omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, īnsulās
 20 nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebant. His initīs cōsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum

19. īnsula, -ae, f., island. *

20. nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, tr., learn; nōvī, pf., have learned, hence, know. 4

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsūm, tr. [claudō, close], shut up. 1

23. Venetia, -ae, f., Venetia (vē-nē'-shyá), the country of the Veneti. 1



OPERATIONS AGAINST THE VENETI

17. sē posse, supply sciēbant.

18. facultātem, supply.

19. locōrum depends on vada, etc.

20. aliam esse atque, was different from (what it was).

in conclūsō marī: i.e., the Mediterranean, where the tides are very small.

23. in Venetiam: probably in the Bay of Quiberon. See map above. primum: the adverb.

bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs asciscunt; auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprà ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellīō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūrātiō, in primīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem 5 licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et

25. Lexovii, -ōrum, *m.* (Bd), the Lexovii (lĕk-sō'vī-i). 4

Namnetēs, -um, *m.* (Cc), the Namnetes (nām'nē-tēz). 1



FIG. 128

A COIN OF THE NAMNETES

25. Ambiliatōs: their location is entirely unknown. The rest of the states should be looked up on the map.

27. quae . . . posita est: Caesar, like most geographers of his time, thought that the coast of Gaul, from Germany to Spain, was nearly straight and parallel with the southern coast of Britain. See map on p. 61.

Chap. 10. Caesar plans to prevent a spread of the uprising.

1. suprà: in Chap. 9.

2. multa, many considerations.

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Ambiliati (ām'bī-lī'ā-tī). 1

26. Diablintēs, -um, *m.* (Bc), the Diablintes (dī'ā-blīn'tēz). 1

3. rebellīō, -ōnis, *f.* [bellum, war], rebellion, revolt. 3

4. dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēficiō, fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. 1
tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many. 1

5. neglēgō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.* [neg-+legō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. *

7. mōbiliter, *adv.* [mōbilis, movable], readily, easily. 1

8. excitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse. 3

3. iniūria . . . equitum, *lit. the outrage of knights arrested = the outrage of arresting knights.*

5. nē, the fear that. This clause, like the nouns *iniūria*, etc., is in apposition with *multa*.

hāc parte neglēctā: translate by a conditional clause.

sibi idem licēre, that the same course was open to them.

6. cum: causal.

7. rēbus: what verbs, though transitive in English, govern the dative in Latin?

8. autem, moreover.

condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōn-
 10 spirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum
 putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī
 flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rē-
 mōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Ger-
 mānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessitī dicēbantur, sī per vim
 5 nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum
 cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquī-
 tāniam proficiscī iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam
 mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sa-
 binum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitēs,
 10 Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D.

9. cōspirō, 1, *intr.* [spīrō, breathe],
 combine, conspire. 1

10. partior, 4, *tr.* [pars, part], part,
 divide. 1

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribū-

tum, *tr.* [tribuō, assign], divide, dis-
 tribute. 3

3. officium, -ci, *n.*, service, allegi-
 ance, duty. *

10. D., *abbr. for praenomen De-*
 cimus, Decimus (dēs'ī-mūs). 1

9. cōspirārent: translate this
 clause after the principal clause. The
 subjunctive was probably used in the
 direct form: App. 236, b: G.-L. 577: A.
 551, b: B. 292, 1, b: H.-B. 507, 4, b:
 H. 605, 1.

10. partiendum (*esse*) sibi, *lit. must*
be divided by him = he must divide.
 Remember that the future passive
 participle of deponent verbs is passive
 in meaning.

lātius distribuendum: so as to over-
 awe several parts of Gaul at the same
 time.

Chap. 11. Accordingly he sends di-
 visions of his army into various parts
 of Gaul, and himself marches against
 the Veneti.

2. flūminī: what other case may
proximus govern? See note on 7,
 7.

mittit: probably the various expedi-
 tions mentioned in this chapter all

started from Angers. See map facing
 p. 259.

mandat adeat: note the primary
 sequence after the historical present:
 see note on *accurrunt*, 5, 8. Note also
 the lack of a conjunction: App. 228, a:
 G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, a: B. 295, 8:
 H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 565, 4.

Rēmōs: this state had earned the
 hatred of the other Belgae in the pre-
 ceding year, and it may have needed
 support.

4. arcessitī: supply *esse*.

5. cōnentur is a part of Caesar's in-
 structions to Labienus, and is there-
 fore implied indirect discourse. But
dicēbantur is not a part of the instruc-
 tions, and is therefore indicative.

6. cohortibus legiōnāriīs: Roman
 soldiers, in contrast to the cavalry,
 which was Gallic.

7. in Galliam: i.e., Celtic Gaul.

10. quī . . . cūret, *to see that that*
force be kept away. For the construc-

Brūtum adulēscēntem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquīsque pācātis regiōnibus convenire iusserat praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque neque pedibus aditum haberent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuenta aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflictārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum 5

11. Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Decimus Junius Brutus (dēs'i-mūs jū'nī-ūs brōō'tūs). 2 classis, -is, *f.*, fleet. *

Pictonēs, -um, *m.* (Ccd), the Pictones (pīk'tō-nēs). 1

1. situs, -ūs, *m.*, situation, site, position. 1

2. lingula, -ae, *f.* [lingua, tongue], a little tongue; a tongue of land. 1

prōmunturium, -rī, *n.* [prōmineō, project], promontory, headland. 1

3. aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling; tide. *

5. afflictō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of affigō, strike against, damage], damage greatly, shatter, injure. 2



FIG. 129

A COIN OF BRUTUS

Left: Head of Mars.

Right: Albinus Bruti F(ilius), with two Gallic war trumpets and two shields. Decimus Brutus received the name Albinus by adoption.

tion of *distinendam*, see App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.

11. classī, nāvibus: indirect objects of the compound verb *praeficit*. The fleet had probably assembled in the Liger, near its mouth.

14. eō: i.e., in Venetōs. He probably went to the eastern coast of the Morbihan and worked to the west along its southern coast. After the distribution of troops described in this chapter, three legions and eight cohorts were left to Caesar. One legion was probably assigned to the fleet, leaving Caesar two legions and eight cohorts with which to attack the Veneti.

cōpiīs: why may *cum* be omitted?

App. 140, a: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, a: B. 222, 1: H.-B. 420: H. 474, 2, n. 1.

Chap. 12-16. *Caesar crushes the Veneti.*

Chap. 12. *Situation of the towns of the Veneti.*

1. sitūs oppidōrum: see the plan on p. 276.

extrēmīs, the end of.

2. pedibus, on foot; i.e., by land. At high tide the low ground between the towns and the mainland was overflowed.

3. sē incitāvisset, had rushed in.

4. nāvibus: supply *aditum haberent*.

5. in vadīs afflictārentur, were stranded on the shallows. The subjunctive is due to attraction.

oppugnātiō impediēbātur. Ac sī quandō magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suīs fortūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habē-
 10 bant, sua omnia dēportābant sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nos-
 trae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllis porti-
 15 bus, difficultās nāvigandī.

6. *quandō*, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any time. 1

7. *extrūdō*, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *tr.* [trūdō, thrust], thrust or shut out. 1

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dike. 1

9. *appellō*, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [ad + pellō, drive], bring to land. 1

10. *dēportō*, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry off or away. 1

11. *opportunitās*, -tātis, *f.* [opportūnus, fit], fitness; advantage. 4

13. *tempestās*, -tātis, *f.* [tempus, time], time; weather, *usually* bad weather, storm, tempest. *

dētīneō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold off or back; hinder, detain. 1

14. *rārus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, far apart; few. 1



A TOWN OF THE VENETI
Compare Fig. 130.

6. *sī quandō . . . coeperant . . . dēportābant*, whenever they began . . . they would carry off, etc. *dēpor-*

tābant is an imperfect of repeated action, for they kept moving from town to town.

operis, of the works, explained by the following ablatives absolute.

7. *extrūsō . . . adaequātīs*, the sea having been shut out by earth and dikes [i.e., by dikes made of earth] and these (dikes) having been built as high as the wall of the town. Apparently the Romans ran two parallel dikes from the mainland to the town, completing them at low tide, when the ground was dry. Thus the sea was shut out (*extrūsō*) from the space between the dikes, and the soldiers could work there continuously.

8. *fortūnīs*, lit. for their fortunes: indirect object. The ablative with *dē* is more common.

9. *cuius rei*: i.e., ships.

13. *summa* agrees with *difficultās*. *vāstō . . . portibus*: ablatives absolute with causal meaning.



FIG. 130

THE TOWN OF BATZ

The coast of Brittany has sunk since Caesar's day, so that none of the towns which he took can be identified. This shows how they were located. The town, marked by the tower, is separated from the mainland by flat ground, much of which is used as salt marshes. Caesar's dikes were built across such flats.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs, ad magnitudinem

1. namque, *conj.* [nam, for], for. 3
 2. carīna, -ae, *f.*, keel. 1
 aliquantō, [*abl. of aliquantus*, some. App. 148, a], somewhat, a little. 1
 plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, flat, plain. 2
 3. dēcessus, -ūs, *m.* [dēcēdō, depart], departure; ebb, fall (of the tide). 1

4. prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow. 1
 admodum, *adv.*, very much, very 1
 ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [regō, direct], lift or raise; ērēctus, *pf. part. as adj.*, standing upright, high. 1
 puppis, -is, *f.*, stern of a ship. 2

Chap. 13. *Description of the ships of the Veneti.*

2. carinae . . . nāvium, the bottoms (were) flatter than (those) of, etc. In such cases Latin never inserts a word for "those."

3. quō: when is quō used in purpose clauses?

excipere, meet or encounter. They were less likely to strike bottom, and if stranded they would not heel over.

5 *fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae; navēs totae factae*
ex robore ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam; trans-
tra ex pedalibus in altitudinem trabibus, confixa clavīs ferreis
digitī pollicis crassitudine; ancoraē prō funibus ferreis catēnīs
revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter confectae, sive
 10 *propter inopiam linī atque eius ūsūs inscientiam, sive eō, quod*
est magis vēri simile, quod tantās tempestatēs Ōceanī tantōsque
impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs
nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus
nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritatē et

5. *fluctus, -ūs, m.* [fluō, flow], flood, billow, wave. 3

accommodātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of *accommodō*, adapt], fit, adapted, appropriate. 2

6. *rōbur, -oris, n., oak.* 1
trānstrum, -ī, n., crossbeam, thwart. 1

7. *pedālis, -e, adj.* [pēs, foot], of a foot in thickness or diameter. 1

cōfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], fasten. 1

clāvus, -ī, m., nail, spike. 1
ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. 2

8. *digitus, -ī, m., finger.* 1
pollex, -icis, m., the thumb. 1
crassitūdō, -inis, f. [crassus, thick], thickness. 1

ancora, -ae, f., anchor. *

fūnis, -is, m., rope, cable. 3

catēna, -ae, f., chain. 3

9. *revinciō, -vincire, -vinxi, -vinc-*
tum, tr. [vinciō, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. 2

vēlum, -ī, n., covering, veil; sail. 3

alūta, -ae, f., soft leather. 1

tenuiter, adv. [tenuis, thin], thinly. 1

10. *linum, -ī, n., flax; linen, canvas.* 1

11. *similis, -e, adj., like, similar.* 1

12. *ventus, -ī, m., wind.* *

regō, regere, rēxi, rēctum, tr., keep straight; guide, control. 1

14. *congressus, -ūs, m., [congre-*
dior, meet], meeting, engagement, conflict. 1

5. *totae, entirely.*

6. *ex robore:* construction? App. 136: G.-L. 396: A. 403, 2: H.-B. 406, 4: H. 470.

quamvis: accusative of *quīvis*.

trānstra, the cross-timbers (were made). These heavy timbers, set in across the inside of the ship, strengthened the sides and supported the deck. In Roman ships they were rowers' benches, but the Veneti had no rowers.

7. *in altitudinem, in thickness.*

8. *crassitudine:* this descriptive ablative is modified by a genitive instead of the usual adjective.

prō, instead of.

9. *pellēs . . . confectae, skins and thinly dressed leather (were used) instead of (canvas) sails.*

11. *quod:* explaining *eō*.

12. *tanta onera nāvium, such heavy ships.*

13. *nōn satis commodē, not very well.*

14. *nostrae classī, of our fleet:* dative of reference: App. 120.

ūnā celeritatē, only in speed.

15. *pulsū rēmōrum, in rowing; i.e., in having oars.* In the battle which followed, the fact that the Roman

pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tem- 15
pestātum illīs essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim
iīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in iīs erat firmitūdō),
neque propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem
dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat
ut, cum sē ventō dedissent, tempestātem ferrent facilius et 20
in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictāe nihil saxa
et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus
cāsus erat extimēscendus.

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit
frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs
oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam
classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus vīsa est,
circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere 5

15. pulsus, -ūs, *m.* [pellō, strike],
stroke. 1

rēmūs, -ī, *m.*, oar. 4

16. aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted,
suited, adapted. 1

17. rōstrum, -ī, *n.*, beak of a bird;
beak or ram of a ship. 2

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, *intr.*,
injure, hurt. 4

firmitūdō, -inis, *f.* [firmus, strong],
strength, firmness, solidity. 2

19. cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook. 1

21. tūtō, *adv.* [tūtus, safe], safely,
securely. 2

22. cautēs, -is, *f.*, reef. 1

23. extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī,
—, *tr.* [timeō, fear], dread. 1

3. reprimō, -primere, -pressī,
-pressum, *tr.* [premō, press], press
or keep back, check, restrain. 1

5. genus, -eris, *n.*, race, family;
kind, nature. *

ships had oars was an immense ad-
vantage.

reliqua, all other things.

prō, in view of.

16. illis: the ships of the enemy.

17. nostrae: supply nāvēs.

18. adigēbātur, could be thrown
(into them).

19. cōpulīs: see Int. 64.

Accēdēbat ut ferrent et cōsiste-
rent et timērent, there was the addi-
tional advantage that they weathered,
etc., or simply, besides, they weathered,
etc.

20. sē ventō dedissent, ran before
the wind.

21. cōsisterent, came to anchor.

relictāe, when left.

22. quārum rērum cāsus, the danger
of these things.

nāvibus: dative of the agent.

Chap. 14. The naval battle. The
Romans cut the rigging of the hostile
ships.

When the Roman fleet sailed out of
the Loire it passed the point where
the Americans built a great seaport
in the World War. See Int. 73.

1. expugnātīs: by the method de-
scribed in Chap. 12.

3. neque . . . posse, and that they
could not be injured. What is the
literal translation? App. 115, d: G.-L.
346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, b: H.-B.
364, 2: H. 426, 3.

armōrum ōrnātissimae ex portū profectae nostris adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnis mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtāe, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātis tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostris, falcēs praeacūtāe insertae affixae-
que longuriis nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrāliū falcium. His cum

6. ōrnō, 1, *tr.*, adorn; furnish, supply; ōrnātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. 1

14. praeparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. 1

falx, falcis, *f.*, sickle; hook. 2

inserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.*, insert, thrust in. 1

affigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [ad + figō, fix], fasten to. 1

15. longurius, -rī, *m.* [longus, long], a long pole. 2

absimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], unlike. 1

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape. 1

mūrālis, -e, *adj.* [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural. 1

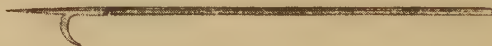


FIG. 131

FALX

6. armōrum, *equipment*, including everything necessary for the defense and management of the ships during the battle.

nostris: supply nāvibus.

cōstitērunt, *took their position*: from cōnsistō. See the map on p. 272.

7. Brūtō, tribūnis, centuriōnibus: indirect objects of cōnstābat, it was clear.

9. quid . . . insisterent, *what to do or what plan of fighting to adopt*. These are indirect questions, but the subjunctive would be used in corresponding direct questions: App. 210: G.-L. 265: A. 444: B. 277: H.-B. 503: H. 559, 4.

10. Rōstrō: ablative of means.

nocērī: supply nāvibus hostium: see references on neque . . . posse, I. 3.

turribus excitātis, *even when the towers were erected*. These towers were erected on the fore and after decks. See Figs. 132 and 133. The same pictures show the rōstrum as well, at about the water line.

11. ex, *on*.

12. neque . . . et = et (both) nōn . . . et. In translating, omit the first et.

13. missa, *those thrown*.

erat magnō ūsuī, *was very useful*. In fact this device saved the day.

14. praeacūtāe: sharpened on the inner edge.

15. longuriis: dative with insertae and affixae.

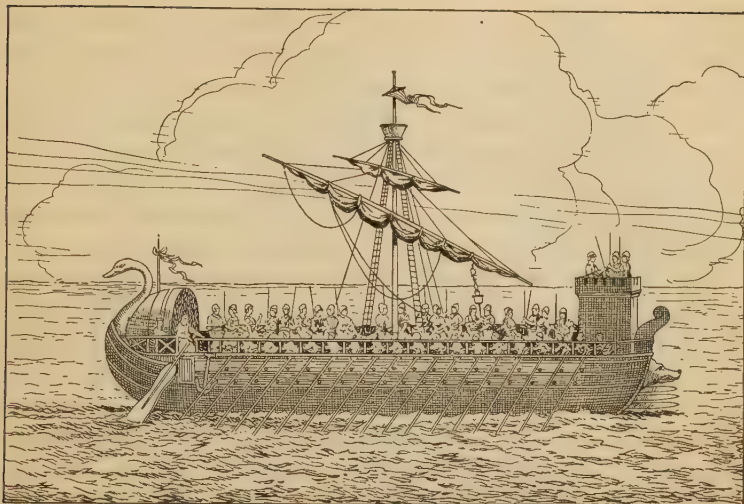


FIG. 132

A ROMAN GALLEY

Note the projecting *rōstrum*, near the water line, with which another ship could be rammed.

*fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adduc-
tīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō prærumpēbantur. Quibus*

16. *antemna*, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. 3

mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast. 1

dēstinō, 1, *tr.*, fasten, secure, make fast. 1

comprehendō, -prehendere, -pre-
hendī, -prehensum, *tr.* [prehendō

(prēndō), seize], grasp, lay hold of, catch. 2

17. *nāvigium*, -gī, *n.* [nāvīgō, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. 2

prærumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rup-
tum, *tr.* [rumpō, break], break off, tear away. 1

nōn . . . falcium, of a form not unlike (that) of mural hooks.

His . . . concidēbant: the ships of the Veneti had each a single square sail, supported by a sail-yard. The sail was hoisted and held up by means of a rope (halyard) which ran from this sail-yard through a pulley at the top of the mast down to one side

(gunwale) of the ship, where it was made fast. The Romans caught the halyard just above the gunwale and cut it, whereupon the sail fell.

His: i.e., hooks. Ablative of means.

cum . . . comprehēnsī erant: mood? App. 241, *b*: G.-L. 584: A. 542: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4.

17. *Quibus*: i.e., *fūnibus*.

abscīsis antennae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs
 20 ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī milītēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat
 25 propinquus dēspectus in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectīs, ut diximus, antennīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, milītēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātis complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei
 5 nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō mo-

18. abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut off, tear away. 1
 concidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.*
 [cadō, fall], fall down, fall. 1

19. armāmenta, -ōrum, *n.* [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. 2

21. certāmen, -inis, *n.* [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest. 1

23. factum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* faciō, do], act, exploit, deed. 1

25. dēspectus, -ūs, *m.* [dēspiciō, look down upon], view. 1

1. bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*

[bis, twice], two each, two apiece. 3

2. ternī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*
 [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. 1
 circumsistō, -sistere, -steti, —, *tr.*

[sistō, stand], surround, hem in. *
 trāscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [scandō, climb], climb across; board. 1

7. malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea. 1
 tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. 1

existō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.*
 [sistō, stand], stand forth, arise; ensue. 1

18. cum: causal.

19. nāvibus, of the ships: a dative of reference.

22. in cōspectū, etc.: Caesar and his army were on the heights of St. Gildas; see the map on p. 272.

23. paulō fortius, a little braver than usual.

Chap. 15. Almost all the ships of the Veneti are destroyed.

1. cum circumsteterant: for mood see note on cum comprehēnsi erant, 14, 15.

singulās . . . ternae, two or three . . . each. Only a few at a time werē thus surrounded, for probably there were more Gallic ships than Roman.

3. Quod, eī rei: both refer to the statement in the first sentence, cum . . . contendēbant.

6. in . . . ferēbat, in that direction toward which the wind was blowing.

9. singulās, one by one.

11. cum pugnārētur, when the battle

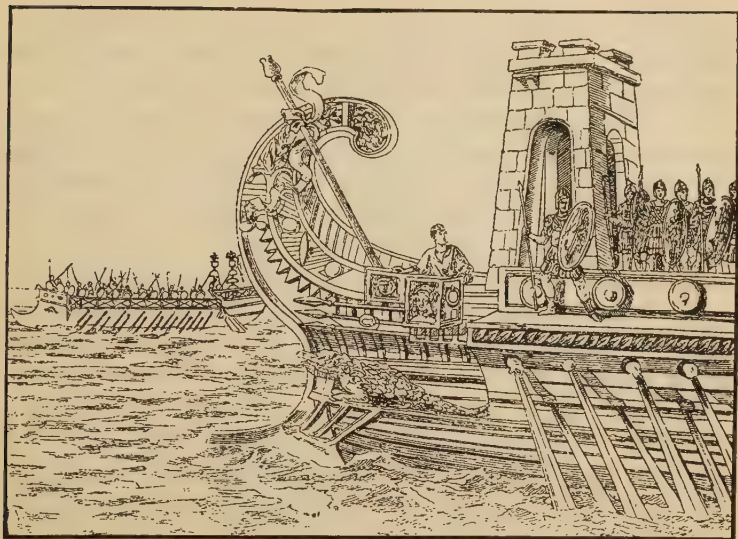


FIG. 133

PROW OF ROMAN GALLEY

vēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum maximae fuit opportūnitāti; nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū 10 ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam

9. cōsector, 1, tr. [sector, freq. of sequor, follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. 4

10. interventus, -ūs, m. [inter-veniō, come between], intervention, help. 1

11. terra, -ae, f., earth, land. 3
usque, adv., up to; with ad, until. 3

2. iuventūs, -ūtis, f. [iuvenis, young], period of youth; the youth, the young men. 1

had been going on. For this translation of the imperfect see note on Cum pugnārētur, 5, 1.

hōrā quārtā: between about 8:30 and 9:30 A.M., at that season.

Chap. 16. The Veneti surrender. Caesar slays their senate and sells the rest into slavery.

2. cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also.

graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat in ūnum locum
 5 coēgerant; quibus āmissis reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū
 10 necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus cum iīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitatū quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum

3. dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [dignus, worthy], worthiness; rank. 3

4. ubique, *adv.* [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. 1

8. vindicō, 1, *tr.*, assert authority; inflict punishment. 1

10. necō, 1, *tr.* [nex, death], put to death, kill. 2

corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath; sub corōnā vēndere, sell at auction. 1

3. Viridovīx, -īcis, *m.*, Viridovix (vī-rīd'ō-vīks). 4

3. in quibus . . . fuit, *who had any ability to advise or any rank.*

eō: to the seat of war.

4. nāvium . . . fuerat, *whatever[of] ships they had had anywhere.*

5. quibus refers to both men and ships.

neque . . . habēbant, *did not know where to take refuge, etc.* For construction see note on *quid . . . insisterent*, 14, 9.

7. eō gravius, quō, *lit. more severely on this account, in order that = the more severely, in order that.*

10. reliquōs: i.e., all who fell into his hands; certainly not all the state, since it remained in existence.

sub corōnā: the phrase came down from early times, when it was the custom to put chaplets of leaves on the heads of captives who were to be sold.

The punishment of the Veneti, like that of the Atuatuca (II, 33, 18), seems barbarous to us. It is nevertheless true that on the whole Caesar was

merciful to the Gauls, judging him by the standards of his own times, and that these severe punishments were necessary for the accomplishment of his purposes.

Chap. 17-19. Sabinus defeats the land forces of the allies.



FIG. 134

A COIN OF THE VENELLI

Chap. 17. Sabinus encamps among the Venelli and refuses battle.

1. Dum geruntur: for mood and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 571: H. 604, 1.

Sabinus: see 11, 8.

coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs 5
Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī
esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce con-
iūnxērunt; magnaue praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā
perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs prae-
dandī studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotidiānō labōre 10
revocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sē
tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōn-
sēdisset cotidiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret,
ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret,
sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; 15
tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuilt ut iam ad vāllum
castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat,
quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente
quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitāte
aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat. 20

5. Eburovīcēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Aulerci Eburovices (aw-lēr'sī ēb'ū-rō-vī'sēz). 1

6. auctor, -ōris, *m.* [augeō, increase], one who originates or vouches for; promoter, instigator. 1

8. praetereā, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

9. perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], ruin; perditus, *pf. part. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. 1

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, bandit, robber. 1

10. agricultūra, -ae, *f.* [ager, land + colō, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. 3

13. prōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead out. *

14. contemptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contem-nō, despise], disdain, contempt. 1

15. carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, *tr.*, pluck; censure, jeer at. 1

18. absēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of absum, be absent], absent. 2

19. aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, equal; favorable. 3

5. hīs paucīs diēbus, *a few days before*; i.e., before the arrival of Sabinus.

6. quod . . . nōlēbant, *because they [the senators] refused to be responsible for the war.*

8. undique ex Galliā, *from all parts of Gaul*; not simply from the Aremorian states.

11. idōneō . . . tenēbat, *shut himself up in camp in a place suitable in all respects.* Notice the three ablatives: rēbus is an ablative of specification; locō is an ablative of place, App. 151,

b; castrīs appears to be an ablative of place, but is an ablative of means, App. 151, *c*.

12. cum, *although.*

milium: *supply passuum.*

spatiō: *ablative of degree of difference; lit. opposite by a distance, etc.*

14. hostibus: *dative of reference.*

18. eō absente, *in the absence of the man; i.e., Caesar.*

20. lēgātō: *dative of the agent with dīmicandum (esse); that a legate ought to fight.*

18. Hāc cōfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēligit, Gallum, ex iis quōs auxili cāusā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī
 5 ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustīis ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet neque longius abesse quā proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēducāt et ad Caesarem auxili ferendī cāusā proficiscātur. Quod
 10 ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse: ad castra irī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hoc cōsiliū Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cūctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī,

2. *callidus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, shrewd, clever. 1

3. *praemium*, -mī, *n.*, reward. *
pollicitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [polliceor, promise], promise, offer. 2

4. *ēdoceō*, -docēre, -docuī, -doc-tum, *tr.* [doceō, teach], teach thoroughly, explain. 1

7. *clam*, *adv.*, secretly. 3

9. *conclāmō*, 1, *intr.* [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. 1

bene, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. 2

12. *cūctātiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [cūctor, delay], delay, hesitation. 2

cōfirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cōfirmō, assert], assurance. 1

13. *parum*, *adv.* [parvus, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. 1

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti, Venetan. 2

Chap. 18. *Sabinus tricks the enemy into attacking his camp.*

2. *Gallum*, a Gaul.

ex iis, (one) of those.

5. *prō perfugā*, pretending to be a deserter.

6. *docet* has as objects the two clauses *quibus . . . premātur* (indirect question) and *abesse*, etc. (indirect discourse).

neque . . . nocte, lit. and that it was not farther off but that on the next night = and that no later than the next night.

9. *negōtī . . . gerendī*, of winning a victory.

10. *irī oportēre*, they must go.

11. *superiōrum diērum*, during the preceding days.

13. *spēs . . . bellī*, the hope of (a fortunate outcome) of, etc. The genitive is objective. They had not yet learned the result of the war.



FIG. 135

A COIN OF THE LEXOVII

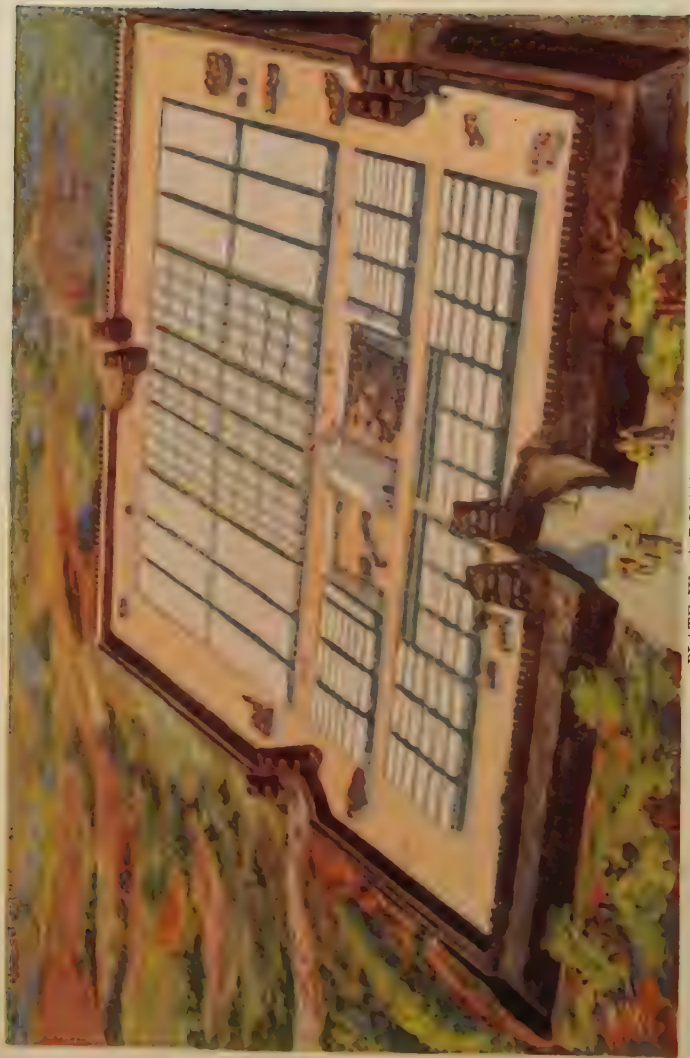


PLATE IV—A ROMAN CAMP

For a description of the Roman camp and of the means of defending the gates, see *Int.* 19-22.

et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex cōciliō dimitunt quam ab iīs sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, (ut explorātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collēctis quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātīm ab imō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, exanimātique pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis ēruptionem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnsentiā ac dēfatīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent.) Quōs integris vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōsecūtī mag-

14. libenter, *adv.* [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly. 2

17. laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful. 1
explōrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of explōrō, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. 1

18. sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, brushwood, small branches. 1

virgultum, -ī, *n.*, thicket, bushes, brushwood. 1

19. pergō, *pergere*, perrēxī, perrēctum, *intr.* [per + regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. 1

7. dēfatīgatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfatīgō, weary], fatigue, weariness. 1

8. exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [exerceō, train], exercise, training. *

9. tergum, -ī, *n.*, the back; terga *vertere*, flee. *

10. vertō, *vertere*, vertī, *versum*, *tr.*, turn, turn around. *

14. quod ferē . . . crēdunt: this substantive clause, like the preceding nominatives, is in apposition with rēs, l. 11.

15. prius quam . . . concessum, until they had granted them permission. The fate of the senate, 17, 6, no doubt helped the council to yield. Mood? App. 236, b: G.-L. 577, 2, n. 2: A. 551, b, n. 2: B. 292: H.-B. 507, 4, c: H. 605, I.

17. ut . . . victōriā, as if victory were assured.

18. quibus . . . compleant: a purpose clause.

Chap. 19. The enemy are routed and the states are forced to surrender.

1. ab imō, from the bottom.

3. quam . . . spatī, the least possible time.

5. cupientibus, lit. to them desiring = as they eagerly awaited it.

6. onera: the bundles of brush; 18, 18.

7. Factum est opportūnitāte, it resulted from the advantage, etc. The subject of factum est is ut . . . verterent.

8. mīlitum: the Romans.

9. ac, but.

num numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consecrati paucos qui ex fuga evaserant reliquerunt. Sic uno tempore et de navali pugna Sabinus et de Sabinii victoria Caesar certior factus est, civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dederunt.

15 Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates ferendas mens eorum est.

20. Eodem ferè tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, tertia pars Galliae est, cum intellegeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praeconinus legatus exercitum pulso interfectus

5 esset, atque unde L. Manlius proconsul impedimentis amissis

12. *evādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, intr. [vādō, go], escape. 1*

13. *nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis, ship], pertaining to ships, naval. 1*

15. *alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., lively, quick. 2*

prōptus, -a, -um, adj., ready, active. 1

16. *mollis, -e, adj., soft. 1*

17. *mēns, mentis, f., mind. 4*

4. *Praeconinus, -ī, m., Lucius Valerius Praeconinus (lū'shyūs vā-lē-rī-ūs prēk'ō-nī'nūs). 1*

5. *Manlius, -ī, m., Lucius Manlius (lū'shyūs măn'lī-ūs), proconsul in 78 B.C. 1*

prōcōsul, -is, m., a proconsul, one who, like Caesar, at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. 1



Fig. 136

A COIN OF CRASSUS

Left: Head of Venus. (In compliment to Caesar.)

Right: P. Crassus M(arci) F(ilius). He was the son of one of Caesar's partners in the Triumvirate.

11. *equitēs: nominative.*

13. *Sabinus: supply certior factus est.*

14. *Titurio: Titurius Sabinus.*

15. *ut . . . sic, while . . . yet.*

16. *animus, impulse.*

17. *mēns, will power.*

Chap. 20-27. Crassus forces the Aquitani to submit.

Chap. 20. Crassus is attacked on the march by the Sotiates.

1. *Crassus: read 11, 5-8, and see map facing p. 259.*

2. *ante: see I, 1, 2.*

3. *paucis annis: twenty-two years before, in 78 B.C. Our knowledge of these events is very vague. Manlius, governor of the Gallic Province, marched against Sertorius, who was in Spain, and was defeated by a lieutenant of Sertorius. The Aquitani seem to have stripped him of his baggage as he retreated. Nothing whatever is known of Praeconinus.*

profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. \Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātīm ēvocātīs, in Sotiātium finēs exercitum 10 intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sotiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in insidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt. 15 Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscētulō duce efficere possent perspicī

6. *mediocris*, -cre, *adj.* [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. 2

diligentia, -ae, *f.* [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, care. 4

8. *Tolōsa*, -ae, *f.* (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō'sā), now Toulouse. 1

Carcasō, -ōnis, *f.* (Ee), Carcaso (kār'ká-sō). 1

9. *Narbō*, -ōnis, *m.* (Ee), Narbo (nār'bō), now Narbonne. 1

10. *ēvocō*, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call forth or out, summon. 3

Sotiātēs, -ium, *m.* (DEcd), the Sotiates (sō'shī-ā'tēz). 4

15. *convallis*, -is, *f.* [vallis, valley], inclosed valley, defile. 1

2. *frētus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying upon. 1

4. *adulēscētulus*, -ī, *m.* [*dim.* of *adulēscēns*, youth], a very young man. 1

6. *nōn mediocrem*, *unusual*.

8. *virīs*: ablative absolute with *ēvocātīs*. These were retired veterans who were induced to serve again by high pay and special privileges.

Tolōsā: place from which, with *ēvocātīs*.

9. *civitātēs*, *cities*. *finitimae* agrees with it.

hīs regiōnibus: Aquitania. The dative depends on *finitimae*.

12. *quō*: ablative of specification.

13. *prīmum*: the adverb.

16. *disiectōs*, *while scattered*, in pursuit of the cavalry.

Chap. 21. *Crassus defeats the Sotiates and takes their town.*

1. *superiōribus victōriīs*: those mentioned in 20, 4-5. Case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431, a: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 432: H. 476, 1.

3. *quid . . . possent*: subject of *perspicī*.

imperātōre, *commander in chief*.

sine . . . legiōnibus: Crassus had only twelve cohorts of legionary soldiers.

4. *adulēscētulō duce*: ablative absolute.

5 cuperent; tandem cōfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistantibus vineās turrēsque ēgit. Illi aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs (cuius rei sunt longē
10 perītissimī Aquītānī, proptereā quod multis locis apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iussī faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum de dēvōtīs (quōs illi solduriōs appellant, quōrum haec est

9. cuniculus, -ī, *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. 1

11. aerāria, -ae, *f.* [aes, copper], copper mine. 1

sectūra, -ae, *f.* [secō, cut], cutting; shaft, mine. 1

12. prōficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [faciō, make], make progress, effect, gain. 2

1. intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -ten-

tum, *tr.* [tendō, stretch], stretch out; intentus, *pf. part. as adj.*, intent on, absorbed in. 3

2. Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.*, Adiatunnus (ā'dī-ā-tūn'ūs). 2

3. dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvi, -vōtum, *tr.* [voveō, vow], consecrate, devote; dēvōtus, *pf. part. as noun*, a sworn follower. 2

soldurius, -rī, *m.*, vassal. 1



FIG. 137

A COIN OF THE SOTIATES

Rex Adietuanus is supposed to be the Adiatunnus mentioned in 22, 2.

5. cuperent: like putārent, with cum, l. 1.

6. ex itinere: as in II, 12, 4.

8. aliās: the adverb.

9. cuniculis āctīs, having driven

tunnels. They probably tried to set fire to the agger from beneath, as it was made largely of wood.

cuius rei, an art in which. Case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 451, 1.

11. dīligentiā: ablative of cause. The Romans may have dug countermines, thus meeting the enemy before they got under the agger.

14. faciunt, they did so.

Chap. 22. The chief of the Sotiates vainly attempts to escape.

1. rem: the surrender of the arms.

3. quōrum . . . condiciō, ut fruantur, whose position is this, that they enjoy.

condiciō, ut omnibus in vītā commodis ūnā cum iis fruuntur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint, sī quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō cuius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret), cum his Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī eādē dēditiōnis condiōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucis diēbus

4. commodum, -i, n. [commodus, convenient], convenience, advantage. 2

fruo, frui, fructus sum, intr., enjoy. 1

7. adhūc, adv. [hūc, hither], hitherto, as yet. 1

8. recūsō, 1, tr. and intr., refuse. *

10. vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, violent], violently, fiercely. 4

1. Vocātēs, -ium, m. (Dcd), the Vocates (vō-kā'tēz). 2

2. Tarusātēs, -ium, m. (DEc), the Tarusates (tār'ū-sā'tēz). 2

4. ut . . . fruuntur . . . ferant . . . cōnsciscant: substantive clauses of fact (result).

commodis: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

ūnā: the adverb.

5. quōrum . . . dēdiderint: a determining clause, App. 231. Mood? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

sī . . . accidat: the mood is for the same reason as that of *dēdiderint*. Otherwise such a condition would be expressed by the indicative: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, b: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

7. memoriā: ablative of time within which.

quisquam: why is this the proper indefinite? App. 177: G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276, 7: H. 513.

8. dēvōvisset: see note on *quōrum* . . . *dēdiderint*, l. 5.

recūsāret: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

cum his: this simply repeats *cum DC dēvōtis*, l. 3, after the long parenthesis.

11. tamen, nevertheless; i.e., in spite of his attempt to escape after surrender. The offense was the same as that of the Atuatuca, II, 33, and might have been punished as severely.

12. eādē: i.e., the same as those who had not attempted to escape.

Chap. 23. *The Aquitani assemble a large force. Crassus decides to give battle.*

1. in finēs, etc.: see map facing p. 259.

3. oppidum: subject of *expugnātum* (esse).

paucis . . . erat, lit. *within the few days within which it had been come there* = *within a few days after his arrival*.

quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quō-
 5 queversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās
 parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitatēs lēgātī
 quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde
 auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum
 auctōritāte et magnā hominum multitūdine bellum gerere
 10 cōnantur. Ducēs vērō ii dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō
 omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris
 habēre existimābantur. Hī cōsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca
 capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īsti-
 tuunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās cōpiās propter
 15 exiguītatem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre
 et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus
 commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs
 hostium numerum augērī, nōn cūctandum existimāvit quīn
 pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem
 20 sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōstituit.

4. quōqueversus, *adv.*, in every di-
 rection, all around. 1

10. Sertōrius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Ser-
 torius (kwīn'tūs sēr-tō'rī-ūs) a partisan
 of Marius; after the death of the latter,
 he continued the war in Spain against
 the senatorial party, until murdered in
 72 B.C. 1

7. citeriōris Hispāniae: northern
 Spain, between the Pyrenees and the
 Ebro.

finitimae agrees with quae and gov-
 erns Aquitāniae.

10. Ducēs, as commanders.

Sertōriō: as Sertorius was a Roman
 general of great ability and had organ-
 ized his Spanish army after the Roman
 fashion, those who had served under
 him understood Roman tactics. But
 the result shows that it took more than
 Roman tactics to make a Roman gen-
 eral or army.

12. cōsuētūdine: ablative of ac-
 cordance.

15. dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-
 tum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or draw
 apart; separate, divide. 1

obsidēō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.*
 [sedeō, sit], sit in the way of, ob-
 struct. 2

18. cūctor, 1, *intr.*, delay, hesi-
 tate. 2

loca capere, to choose suitable posi-
 tions.

14. Quod, therefore: conjunction,
 not pronoun.

15. nōn facile dīdūcī, could not
 easily be divided. This and the follow-
 ing infinitives, through augērī, depend
 on animadvertit.

18. nōn . . . dēcertāret, he thought
 he must not delay to fight a decisive
 battle. On the quīn clause, see App.
 228, c: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 298: H.-B.
 502, 3, b: H. 595, 1.

19. cōnsilium, a council of war. For
 this meaning see Vocabulary.

20. pugnae: dative.

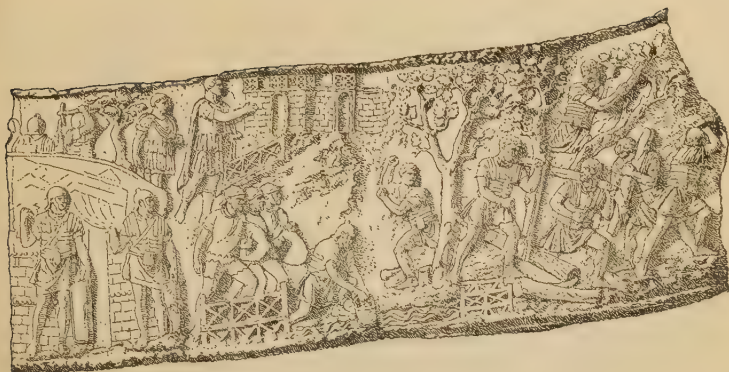


FIG. 138

THE VARIED OCCUPATIONS OF SOLDIERS

There are several groups. In the lower left corner is a camp with two sentries on guard, looking to the right as if the enemy were in sight. Toward this enemy three auxiliaries hurry across a bridge. Above them stands the general, directing their movement.

In the middle background is a fortress, from which a soldier has come down to the river to get a pail of water.

The right half shows a group of soldiers cutting and carrying timber, perhaps to make a bridge. In the upper left corner, too, a soldier is felling a tree.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē institūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsilī caperent expectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmīcātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessīs 5

3. etsī, conj. [et + sī, if], even if, although. *

Chap. 24. *Since the enemy refuses to meet him, Crassus attacks their camp.*

1. duplicī aciē: The Roman force was smaller than that of the enemy, and this arrangement made a longer front than the usual triple line; but it left no reserve line.

2. auxiliīs . . . coniectīs: the longer line of the enemy might be expected

to turn both Roman flanks; therefore it was important that the wings consist of reliable Roman legionaries. Caesar never trusted the auxiliaries anywhere in the line.

4. sē . . . dīmīcātūrōs, that it would be safe to fight.

5. tūtius esse, that it was still safer. obsessīs . . . interclūsō, by blocking . . . and cutting off.

viis, commeātū interclūsō, sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potīrī et, sī propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, 10 sēsē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cūctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur expectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quā ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis tēlis coniectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēque, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus 5 comportandis speciem atque opīniōnem pignantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs

8. cōgitō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [co + agitō, consider], consider thoroughly; purpose, plan. 3

2. dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive from or away. 1

auxiliāris, -e, *adj.* [auxilium, aid],

auxiliary; *m. pl. as noun*, auxiliary troops. 1

4. subministrō, 1, *tr.* [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. 3
caespes, -itis, *m.*, a sod, turf. 1

6. timidē, *adv.* [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. 1

7. coepissent: indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

8. impeditōs: both by their heavy baggage and by the difficulty of fighting in marching order.

10. suā refers to the subject, *hostēs*.

11. opīniōne, lit. *impression* which they gave = *appearance*.

13. expectārī . . . oportēre, *that they ought not to delay longer*.

quā . . . irētur: see note on 23, 18.

14. omnibus cupientibus, *to the delight of all*.

Chap. 25. *The camp is vigorously defended, but Crassus learns that the rear is weak.*

1. cum, *while*. Its force continues through *praebērent* (l. 5).

coniectis, *by throwing*.

3. quibus: the dative, since with *cōfidō* the dative (App. 115) is regularly used of persons, the ablative (App. 143, a) of things.

4. subministrandis: to the legionary soldiers.

ad aggerem, *for an agger*. The Romans were compelled to build a sloping embankment in order to surmount the high wall of the Gallic camp.

7. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse diligentīā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

10

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductīs iīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictāe intritāe ab labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōspici possent, 5 omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut quid rei gererētur cognōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in 10 spē victōriae accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōsectātus ex milium L numerō,

8. circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go around. 1

4. intritus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + tritus, worn], unwearied, not worn out. 1

5. circumducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead around. 2

7. prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.* [ruō, fall], overthrow. 1

8. plānē, *adv.* [plānus, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 1

11. impugnō, 1, *tr.* [in + pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2

14. campus, -ī, *m.*, plain, open space or country. 1

8. circumitīs castrīs, *having ridden around the camp.*

9. ab, *at.*

Chap. 26. *The Romans capture the camp and cut down the fleeing enemy.*

1. cohortātus ut excitārent, *urging . . . to stimulate.*

4. intritāe ab labōre, *not worn out by fighting.* ab labōre is strictly an ablative of separation, as if Caesar had said "free from"; hence the preposition.

longiōre, *roundabout.*

7. dīximus: in 25, 9.

8. prius . . . quam: for the division, see App. 236, c.

vidērī: supply *possent* from *posset*.

9. quid rei gererētur, *what was going on:* subject of *posset*.

10. nostrī: i.e., those who were attacking in front.

quod, *a thing which.* The antecedent is *redintegrātīs vīribus*.

12. per, *over.*

14. campīs: ablative of the way, not of place; therefore without a preposition.

ex . . . numerō depends on *quārtā parte*.

15 quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

27. Hāc audītā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō misit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumni, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapii-que supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīssissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōn-

15. Cantabrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Eab), the Cantabri (kăn'tā-brī). 1

2. ultrō, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily. *

Tarbelli, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (tār-běl'ī). 1

3. Bigerriōnēs, -um, *m.* (Ecd), the Bigerriones (bī-jēr'ī-ō'nēz). 1

Ptianiī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Ptianii (tī-ā'nī-ī). 1

Elusātēs, -ium, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ēl'ū-sā'tēz). 1

Gatēs, -ium, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (gā'tēz). 1

4. Auscī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Ausci (aw'sī). 1

Garumni, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumni (gā-rūm'nī). 1

Sibusātēs, -ium, *m.* (Ec), the Sibusates (sīb'ū-sā'tēz). 1

Cocosātēs, -ium, *m.* (Dc), the Cocosates (kōk'ō-sā'tēz). 1

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote. 2

1. exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, drive], finish, end. 1

3. umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; neque . . . umquam, and never. 2



FIG. 139

A COIN OF THE MORINI

15. quae (*mīlia*) convēnisse is the subject of the impersonal cōnstābat, who were known to have gathered.

16. multā nocte, late at night.

Chap. 27. Nearly the whole of Aquitania submits.

4. paucae ultimae nātiōnēs, only

a few tribes, the most remote; probably those living among the Pyrenees.

5. tempore: see note on quibus, 25, 3.

Chap. 28-29. Caesar makes an unsuccessful attempt to subdue the Morini and the Menapii.

Chap. 28. The Morini take refuge in forests and swamps.

1. exācta, *past*: the participle used as an adjective.

2. omnī Galliā: Gaul in general, including Aquitania and Belgium, though the same words in II, 1, 6, refer only to Celtic Gaul.

fici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī 5
Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant max-
imās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque
esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque
omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar
pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim 10
vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus parti-
bus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī
celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complū-
ribus interfectīs longius impeditiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs
ex suis dēperdidērunt./

15

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit
et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere
impetus fierī posset, omnem eam mātēriam quae erat caesa
conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque
latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs 5

8. *continēns, -entis, adj.* [*pres. part. of continēō, hold together*], continuous, unbroken. *

11. *dispērgō, -spērgere, -spērsī, -spersum, tr.* [*spargō, scatter*], scatter, disperse. 3

12. *ēvolō, 1, intr.* [*volō, fly*], fly or rush forth. 1

15. *dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī,*

-perditum, tr. [*perdō, destroy*], destroy utterly; lose. 2

1. *deinceps, adv.*, one after the other, in succession. 1

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum, tr., cut. 2

2. *imprūdēns, -entis, adj.* [*in- + prūdēns, prudent*], off one's guard. 1

3. *māteria, -ae, f.*, material; wood, timber. 4

3. *quī essent, misissent*: a clause of characteristic.

5. *eō, against them.*

exercitum: on his march from the Veneti he doubtless picked up Sabinus and his legions. See map facing p. 259.

quī, but they.

ac, than or from: see *aliā atque*, 9, 20.

7. *contendissent*: the mood is due only to indirect discourse.

9. *initium, edge.*

11. *dispersīs nostrīs*: just as they had been surprised at the Sabis, II, 19-20.

13. *complūribus*: of the enemy.

14. *longius, too far.*

impeditiōribus, very difficult.

Chap. 29. Caesar ravages the country and withdraws to winter quarters.

2. *nē quis impetus, that no attack.*
inermibus . . . militibus: ablative absolute.

4. *conversam ad hostem, with their tops turned toward the enemy.*

prō vāllō, to serve as a rampart.
Caesar cut a way through the forest, with this rampart on each side.



FIG. 140

ROAD BUILDING AND DEVASTATION

The soldiers on the left are building a road. They are cutting down a tree, carrying off timber, and emptying baskets of stones on spots that need them. Their shields stand on the ground, with helmets hanging on them, ready for quick use in case of an attack. Against the camp wall stand two Dacian heads on stakes. On the right, cavalry gallop off on a raid. In the upper right hand corner a soldier is burning an enemy's house.

diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostris tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modi sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae utī opus necessariō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus militēs continērī
 10 nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviisque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs collocāvit.

6. pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle. 2

9. continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [continu-

us, continuous], continuance, succession. 1

imber, -bris, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain. 1

6. cōfectō, lit. *finished* = *cleared*.

7. ipsī: the Morini themselves, in contrast with their animals and baggage.

9. sub pellibus: in winter the soldiers lived in huts.

12. reliquīs cīvitātibus: not in Aquitania, however.

THE STORY OF BOOK IV

WAR WITH THE GERMANS. FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

The campaign of 55 B.C. is memorable in history as the occasion when the Roman arms were first carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel. The map facing page 301 shows how completely Gaul had come under Caesar's control, either by conquest or by peaceful submission. But Caesar knew that his task was not yet finished. If the Rhine was to be the Roman frontier (Int. 3), the Germans must be taught to respect that frontier. And the unknown Britain, lying so near Gaul, tempted him. It might be worth conquering. If not, at any rate both Gauls and Britons must be shown that Britain could afford neither to send aid to Gaul nor to offer refuge to Gauls who wished to escape from Caesar. Only when Caesar had shown that neither the Rhine nor the Channel could stop a Roman army, might he expect Gaul to rest quietly under Roman government.

Two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been driven out of their homes, far in the interior of Germany, by the Suebi. After wandering homeless for three years, they crossed the Rhine into the Gallic possessions of the Menapii and there spent the early months of 55. Nothing shows more clearly the lack of unity among the states of Gaul than the indifference with which the neighbors of the Menapii regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some states even tried to repeat the mistake of the Sequani (I, 31), and invited the Germans to settle in their territory and make common cause with them against Caesar or the rest of Gaul. But Caesar interfered at once by marching against the Germans. Using as a pretext a treacherous attack by a small body of German cavalry, he made himself guilty of the most treacherous and indefensible act in his whole career. He arrested all their leaders, who had come to apologize for the attack, and then surprised and slew almost the whole German host, men, women, and children. If the deed has an excuse, it lies in the absolute necessity of teaching the other Germans never to invade Gaul.

Caesar decided to reënforce this terrible lesson by making the Germans fear for their own territory. The Sugambri, who had given refuge to the remnants of the Usipetes and the Tencteri, refused to give them

up at Caesar's command. Moreover the Ubii begged Caesar's aid against the Suebi. In the marvelously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge across the Rhine, over which he led his entire army. At the first news of his approach the Sugambri and the Suebi had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests. Since it was no part of Caesar's purpose to subjugate these peoples, he contented himself with ravaging the nearer possessions of the Sugambri. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and destroyed his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

Caesar had neither time nor ships enough to attempt a real invasion of Britain this summer, nor could he learn by inquiry anything about the country and the amount of force needed for accomplishing his purpose there. Therefore he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition which would at least show him what preparations he must make for the next year. Taking only two legions he sailed from Boulogne to Deal. A landing was effected only after a sharp struggle with the Britons. A few near-by tribes surrendered, but Caesar waited for the arrival of his cavalry before penetrating the interior. Just as the cavalry transports were approaching the island, a storm not only drove them back to Gaul but shattered the main fleet, which lay in an exposed roadstead. Caesar beat off an attack of the natives, repaired his ships, and sailed back to Gaul.

Before leaving for Britain, Caesar had received the submission of a part of the Morini. During his absence the remainder of his army harried the Menapii and the rest of the Morini. On the return voyage two ships were driven out of their course, and the men carried by them were attacked by the Morini. A vigorous raid at last caused the final submission of the Morini; but the Menapii still remained unconquered in their forests and swamps.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

The coloring shows the part of Transalpine Gaul which had come under Roman control at the end of this campaign. The meaning of the colors is as follows:

Brown indicates the part which belonged to Rome before Caesar came to Gaul.

Red indicates the states which Caesar conquered in battle. The only additions to the red area of the map facing p. 259 are the territory of the Morini and a part of that of the Menapii.

Blue indicates the states which came under Caesar's control without fighting. There is no change from the blue area of the map facing p. 259.

Battlefields are marked by x.

Every important geographical point in this year's campaign has been discussed at great length by many scholars, but the editor believes that the locations shown on this map should be regarded as certain. Mr. Holmes agrees with some other authorities in locating the battle with the Usipetes and the Tencteri near the junction of the Mosella and the Rhine, but his discussion is less fair than usual. His own arguments, carefully sifted, are decisive for the location near the junction of the Mosa and the Rhine. He locates the bridge near the mouth of the Mosella, but only because he puts the battle near that point. Since it was not fought there, there is no valid argument for putting the bridge at any other point than Bonn. Mr. Holmes has proved, in the second edition of his *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, that Boulogne was the sailing point for the first expedition to Britain, although in his first edition he championed Wissant. He has also proved decisively that the landing point of this expedition was just south of Deal, although many had argued that it was west of Dover.

COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tēncterī magnā multitudīne hominū flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundī fuit
5 quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula mīlia armātōrum

1. Cn., abbr. for Gnaeus (nē'ūs), a Roman praenomen. 1

Pompeius, -i, m., Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ūs pōm-pē'yūs), better, Pompey, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C. 1

2. Usipetēs, -um, m., the Usipetes (ū-sīp'ē-tēz). 4

Tēncterī, -ōrum, m., the Tencteri (tēngk'tē-rī). 4

5. Suēbus, -a, -um, adj., of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; pl. as noun, Suēbī (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bī), a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes. *

8. quotannis, adv. [quot, as many as + annus, year], every year, yearly. 2

Chap. 1-4. Two German tribes cross the Rhine. Description of the German tribes who are concerned in the following narrative.

Chap. 1. Two German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul. The warlike character and training of the Suebi.

1. quī agrees with annus, though its antecedent is hieme; see note on quod, I, 38, 3.

quī . . . cōsulibus, in the year when, etc.

Cn. Pompeiō, etc.: Pompey and Crassus were Caesar's associates in the First Triumvirate: Int. 11. Their

election as consuls for the year 55 had been planned at a meeting with Caesar in the preceding spring. Caesar had been given his province for only five years, and he needed more time. These consuls secured another five years for him, and an important province for each of themselves.

4. nōn longē ā mari; probably near Emmerich, a few miles above the point at which the Rhine divides to flow around the island of the Batavi. See map facing p. 301.

quō: the adverb.

8. singula: i.e., a thousand from each canton.

bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsē-
runt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in 10
armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agricultūra nec
ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privātī ac sēparātī
agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in
locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō sed maxi-
mam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in 15
vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne
et libertāte vitae, quod ā puerīs nullō officiō aut disciplinā assue-
factī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virēs alit et



FIG. 141

A GALLIC SWORD

This was found at Alesia.

9. maneō, manēre, mānsī, mān-
sum, *intr.*, remain, stay. 2

10. vicis, *gen.* (no *nom.*), change;
only in the phrase in vicem, alternately,
in turn. 1

11. remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī,
-mānsum, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay
or remain behind, remain. *

12. sēparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare],
separate; sēparātus, *pf. part. as adj.*,
separate. 1

14. colō, colere, coluī, cultum, *tr.*,
cultivate, dwell in. 1

15. lāc, lactis, *n.*, milk. 1
vīvō, vivere, vixī, victum, *intr.*,
live, subsist on. 2

16. vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [vēnor, hunt],
hunting, the chase. 1

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food. 1

17. disciplina, -ae, *f.* [discō, learn],
learning; discipline. 2

assuefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum,
tr., accustom, train. 2

10. illōs: i.e., those who are fight-
ing.

annō post, *lit. afterwards by a year*
= the following year.

12. ratiō atque ūsus, *the training*
and practice in.

privātī . . . est: i.e., all the land
belonged to the state, none to in-
dividuals. This is generally true of
barbarous peoples.

14. frūmentō, *on grain*: ablative of
means with *vivunt*.

maximam partem: case? App. 128,

b: G.-L. 334, R. 2: A. 397, a: B. 185,
1: H.-B. 388: H. 416, 2.

15. multumque . . . vēnātiōnibus,
engage much in hunting.

16. quae rēs, *a practice which*: sub-
ject of *alit* and *efficit*.

et cibī genere, *both because of the*
kind of food.

17. quod . . . faciunt explains
libertāte.

ā puerīs, *from boyhood*.

nullō officiō assuefacti, *trained by*
no service: ablative of means.

immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē
20 cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frigidissimīs neque vestītūs
praeter pellēs habeant quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem
magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint
quibus vëndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī
dēsiderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dē-
lectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs
5 nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dē-
fōrmia, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris effi-
ciunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus
proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō assuēfēcērunt,
ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum

19. *immānis*, -e, *adj.*, huge, im-
mense. 1

20. *frigidus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, cold. 1
vestītus, -ūs, *m.* [vestiō, clothe],
clothing. 1

22. *lavō*, *lavāre*, *lāvī*, *lautum*, *tr.*,
wash; *in pass.*, bathe. 1

3. *dēsiderō*, 1, *tr.*, desire, wish. 1
dēlectō, 1, *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight
in, take pleasure in. 1

4. *impēnsus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, expen-
sive; *with pretium*, great. 1

5. *dēfōrmis*, -e, *adj.* [*fōrma*, form],
misshapen, unsightly. 1

7. *dēsiliō*, -silire, -silui, -sultum,
intr. [*salīō*, leap], leap from or down,
alight, dismount. *

8. *vēstigiū*, -gī, *n.*, track, foot-
print; spot. 2

19. *hominēs*: predicate accusative;
makes (them) men of, etc.

in eam . . . addūxērunt, lit. *have
brought themselves into this custom =
have trained themselves to such hardness.*

20. *locīs frigidissimīs*, *though their
climate is extremely cold*: ablative ab-
solute.

vestītūs depends on *quicquam*. On
the choice of indefinites, see App. 177:
G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B.
276, 7: H. 513.

Chap. 2. *Their freedom from lux-
ury, and their cavalry tactics.*

1. *Mercātōribus*: dative of pos-
sessor.

eō, ut . . . habeant, *on this account,
that they may have persons to whom*

*they may sell what they have captured
in war.*

cēperint: subjunctive in implied
indirect discourse.

2. *quam quō dēsiderent*, *than be-
cause they desire.*

3. *iūmentīs importātīs nōn ūtun-
tur*: the important word is the partic-
iple *importātīs*, as if he had said *they
do not import the horses which they
need.*

4. *quaeque* = *et quae*.

6. *haec*: antecedent of *quae* (*iū-
menta*).

summī . . . efficiunt, lit. *make that
they be (capable) of the greatest labor.*
See App. 104.

7. *pedibus*, *on foot.*

9. *eōrum mōribus*, *according to
their standards.*

mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis 10
ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum
quamvīs paucī adire audent. Vinum omnīnō ad sē importārī
nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere
hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā
suīs finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī magnum numerum
cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte
ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum centum agrī vacāre dīcuntur.
Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla 5
atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam

10. turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly; shameful, dishonorable. 2

iners, -ertis, *adj.* [in- + ars, skill], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. 1

ephippium, -pī, *n.*, saddle. 1

11. ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ephippium, saddle], using a saddle. 1

12. quamvīs, *adv.*, however; although. 1

13. remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, *intr.*, become weak. 1

1. laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, commendation; glory. 3

5. Ubiī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubiī (ū'bī-i). *

6. flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [flōreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous. 2

captus, -ūs, *m.* [capiō, take], comprehension, ideas. 1

quamquam, *conj.*, although. 1

10. habētur, *is considered.*

ephippiis: the ancient saddles were of little real use, since they commonly had no stirrups.

12. quamvīs paucī, *however few (they may be).* Caesar does not exaggerate the strength of the German cavalry. In his seventh year in Gaul, when he had to face a revolt of the whole country, he hired a body of German cavalry. In three decisive battles they saved the day for him.

Vinum: but we know from Tacitus that they drank great quantities of a kind of beer.

Chap. 3. *Their treatment of the Ubiī.*

1. Pūblicē, *for the state.*

2. vacāre agrōs: subject of *esse.*

3. ūnā ex parte: i.e., on the east of the Suebi.

5. Ad alteram partem: i.e., the northwest. See map in front cover.

fuit, *was (once);* i.e., before their defeat by the Suebi.

6. ut . . . Germānōrum, *according to the ideas of the Germans.*

paulō: with *hūmāniōrēs.*



FIG. 142

*A BRITISH COIN

Left: Com(mi) F(ilius)

Right: Eppillus

Commus, mentioned first in IV, 21, afterwards revolted against Caesar and fled to Britain, where his three sons Eppillus, Tincommius, and Verica or Virica, became kings. Several of their coins are shown in this book.

sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus as-
 10 suēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitatīs finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmīōrēsque redēgērunt.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tēncterī, quōs suprà dīximus; quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs
 5 Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia, vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterritī ex iis aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere
 10 propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simu-

7. hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized. 1

8. ventitō, 1, *intr.* [freq. of veniō, come], keep coming, resort; with *ad*, visit. 2

11. amplitūdō, -inis, *f.* [amplus, large], wide extent, size. 1

gravitās, -tātis, *f.* [gravis, heavy], heaviness, weight; power. 1

12. humilis, -e, *adj.* [humus, the ground], on the ground; low, humble. 1

10. cum, *although*.

multis . . . experti, *in spite of many attempts in numerous wars*.

Chap. 4. *The stratagem by which the Germans crossed the Rhine.*

1. In eādē causā, *in the same condition*; i.e., of oppression by the Suebi. It is probable that the Usipetes and Tencteri lived in or near the kingdom of Saxony, to the north-east of the Suebi. Their location on

13. infirmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + firmus, strong], weak, feeble. 2

3. Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germania (jēr-mā'nī-ā), *better*, Germany. 1

4. triennium, -nī, *n.* [trēs, three + annus, year], three years. 1

7. dēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [migrō, move, migrate], move from or away. 2

11. sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedeō, sit], seat, chair; residence, settlement, home. 2

simulō, 1, *tr.* [similis, like], make like; pretend. 2

the map in the front of the book shows where the survivors settled after their defeat by Caesar, not their original home.

2. suprà: in 1, 2.

6. multitudinis: 430,000 persons, according to a later chapter.

7. trāns: on the German side.

9. vī contendere, *force a passage*.

10. inopiam nāvium: the Menapii had, of course, taken all the boats with them.

lāvērunt, et trīduī viam prōgressī rūsus revertērunt atque omni hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō īnsiōs īnopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs 15 vicōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt. 20

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritūs, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē 5 audierit aut cognōverit quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque auditiō-

13. īnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sciō, know], not knowing, not aware. 1

15. metus, -ūs, *m.* [metuō, fear], fear. 2

16. remigrō, 1, *intr.* [migrō, move], move back, return. 2

1. infirmitās, -tātis, *f.* [infirmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. 2

2. mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [moveō, move], changeable. 1

4. viātor, -ōris, *m.* [via, road], traveler. 1

8. prōnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, announce], announce, tell. 1

auditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, rumor. 1

13. equitātū: although cavalry are persons, they are thought of here as the means employed by the Germans.

19. eōrum cōpiis, *on their supplies*; those which the Menapii had stored up for their own use.

Chap. 5-6. Caesar, fearing that the Gauls and the Germans will unite against him, hastens his preparations for war.

Chap. 5. Caesar fears the fickleness of the Gauls.

3. nihil . . . committendum, *that no confidence should be placed in them.*

4. cōsuētūdinis: see App. 103.

uti: with cōgant, quaerant, circumsistat, and cōgat.

7. quāsque = *et quās*.

8. rēbus, *stories*.



FIG. 143

A BRITISH COIN

nibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum
 10 eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus
 serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respon-
 deant.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō
 occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exercitum proficīscitur.
 Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cognōvit:
 missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs civitatibus ad Germānōs, in-
 5 vitātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent: Omnia quae postulās-
 sent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam
 vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt
 Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocā-

10. **paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit**,
 —, *tr., impers.*, it causes regret; makes
 one repent; *when translated as pers.*
verb, repent (App. 109). 1

necesse, indecl. adj., necessary. 2
incertus, -a, -um, adj. [*in- + certus*,
 decided], undecided, uncertain, un-
 trustworthy. 2

11. **serviō, 4, intr.** [*servus*, slave],
 be a slave to; pay attention to. 1

figō, fingere, finxi, fictum, tr.,
 form, imagine, devise, invent. 2

2. **mātūrē, adv.** [*mātūrus*, ripe],
 early, speedily, soon. 3

3. **suspīcor, 1, tr.**, suspect, dis-
 trust; surmise. *

4. **invitō, 1, tr.**, invite. 2

9. **quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse**
est, *lit. of which it must repent them*:
 App. 109: G.-L. 377: A. 354, b: B.
 209, 1: H.-B. 352, 1: H. 457.

11. **plērique . . . respondeant**, *many*
persons give answers shaped to their
wishes; i.e., the wishes of the ques-
tioners.

Chap. 6. *Caesar joins his army and*
learns that some Gallic states are wel-
coming the Germans.

2. **ad exercitum**: where was it?
 See III, 29, 11, and the map facing
 p. 301. Caesar himself, as usual, had
 spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul.

3. **ea facta (esse)**, *that those things*
had happened; explained by the follow-
 ing clauses.

5. **ab Rhēnō discēderent**: i.e., to

advance farther into Gaul. The pur-
 pose of the Gauls was to get help
 against Caesar.

postulāssent: for the future perfect
 indicative of the direct form.

6. **fore parāta**, *lit. would be in a*
prepared condition. This is one of the
 ways of avoiding the rare future in-
 finitive given in the grammars,
parātum iri. The infinitive depends
 on a verb of saying implied in *in-*
vitātōs.

lātius vagābantur, etc.: this only
 means that small bodies were sent out
 in various directions to see where they
 could best settle, and that some of
 them had got as far as the Condrusi
 (see the map). The main body re-
 mained among the Menapii, between
 the Mosa and the Rhine.

7. **quī** refers only to *Condrūsōrum*.

tis Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōfirmātīs equitātūque impe- 10
rātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōstituit.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab iīs vērēbunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī laces- 5
santur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōsuētūdō

9. dissimulō, 1, tr. [simulō, make like], disguise, conceal. 1

10. permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, tr., soothe completely, appease. 1

10. permulsīs et cōfirmātīs: Caesar pretended to believe that they were loyal to him and afraid of the Germans.

equitātū: it appears later that he secured 5000.

Chap. 7-10. *Being met by envoys, Caesar proposes that the Germans settle among the Ubii; he then marches on into a locality whose geographical features he describes.*

Chap. 7. *Caesar is met on his march by German envoys, who demand land.*

1. dēlēctīs, having levied.

iter coepit: for his route see the map facing p. 301, and the one on this page. The envoys must have met him near the point where the route crosses the Mosa.

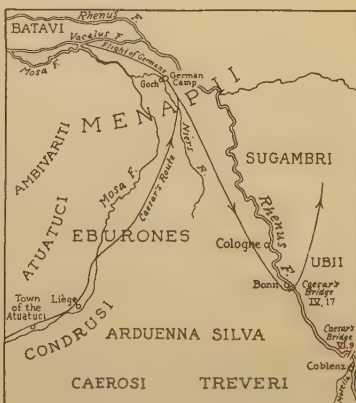
Caesar was now following for the second time the route which he followed as far as Mt. Falhize in Book II, and the one used by the main advance of the Germans at the beginning of the World War. See Int. 71. He probably crossed the Mosa (Meuse) a little north of Liège, the first town taken by the Germans in that war.

3. Ā quibus: the Germans.

4. haec, as follows. The haughty tone of the speech recalls the speeches of Divico, I, 13, and of Ariovistus, I, 36.

priōrēs, first; i.e., they were not the aggressors.

5. recūsāre quīn, refuse to: App. 228, c: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 595, 2.



MAP FOR IV, 7-19

sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dicere: vēnisse sē invitōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse iīs utilēs esse
 10 amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint. Sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum iīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre, neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs
 5 quī darī tantae praesertim multītūdīnī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrū.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixērunt et rē dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē

8. ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], cast or drive out, expel. 2

9. ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [ūtor, use], useful, serviceable. 1

3. tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum, *tr.*, watch, guard, protect. 1

7. quicumque = omnibus (dative with resistere) quī.

8. Haec tamen dicere, this, however, they would say.

10. attribuant: the subjunctive represents an imperative of the direct form.

11. ūnīs, alone.

12. reliquum nēminem, no one else.

13. quem possint: a clause of characteristic.

Chap. 8. Caesar refuses Gallic land, but offers to let them settle among the Ubiī.

1. quae vīsum est, what seemed best. quae is the object of respondere, to be supplied from respondit.

exitus, the conclusion.

3. vērū, right, or just.

quī: supply eōs as the antecedent.

7. Suēbōrum iniūriīs, the wrongs done them by the Suebi.

8. hoc: i.e., that they allow the Usipetes and Tencteri to settle among them. The arrangement would have been advantageous to both parties; for, as the Ubiī were nearly a match for the Suebi, the combined Ubiī, Usipetes, and Tencteri should have more than held their own.

Chap. 9. The envoys ask for time to consider, but Caesar marches on.

2. post diem tertium, on the third day; i.e., the next day but one, since the present day was counted in.

propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dixit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab iis aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandique 5 causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eiūs rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricōrum, Tribocī,

3. *propius*, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.* (App. 122, b) [*comp.* of *prope*, near], nearer. *

5. *frūmentor*, 1, *intr.* [*frūmentum*, grain], get grain, forage. 4

6. *Ambivaritī*, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Ambivariti (ām'bi-vār'i-tī). 1

Mosa, -ae, *m.* (ABf), the river Mosa (mō'sā), now the Meuse. *

7. *interpōnō*, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place between, interpose. 4

1. *prōfluō*, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow forth, rise. 1

Vosegus, -ī, *m.* (BCg), the Vosegus (vōs'ē-gūs), better, the Vosges Mountains. 1

3. *Vacalus*, -ī, *m.* (Af), the Vacalus (vāk'ā-lūs) river, now the Waal. 1

Batāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Batavi (bā-tā'vī). 1

5. *Lepontiī*, -ōrum, *m.* (Ch), the Lepontii (lē-pōn'shyī). 1

6. *Mediomatrici*, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Mediomatrici (mē'dī-ō-māt'rī-sī). 1

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'ō-sī). 2

3. *propius sē*: App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 420, 5.

5. *diēbus*: ablative of degree of difference.

6. *trāns*: to the west.

exspectārī equitēs: The German cavalry was far superior to Caesar's, and he could afford to take no risk. However, it is probable that the envoys were honest in asking time to consider, for they can have had no power to bind their people to accept Caesar's entirely unexpected proposition.

Chap. 10. *Description of the Rhine, the Mosa, and their confluence.*

1. *ex monte Vosegō*: more correctly

from the plateau lying between the Vosges and the Cevennes.

2. *parte quādam*, etc.: the Rhine divides at the eastern end of the island of the Batavi. The southern stream, called Vacalus, flows west till it joins the Mosa. The combined Mosa and Vacalus flow on into the sea, making the southern boundary of the island. The confluence of the Mosa and the Vacalus was probably eighty miles from the sea, as Caesar says; but it is now nearer the sea, owing to a change in the river beds.

3. *inde*: from the confluence.

5. *longō spatiō*, in a long course.

Nantuātium: either there is some mistake, or we know nothing of this tribe of Nantuates.

cōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarisque nātiōnibus
 10 incolitur, ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius milibus passuum xir abesset, ut erat cōstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs
 5 quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibi ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendi; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia

7. citātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* citō, put in motion], swift. 1

8. diffluō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *intr.* [*fluō*, flow], flow in different directions, divide. 1

ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast, large. 2

10. piscis, -is, *m.*, fish. 1

ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg. 1

avis, -is, *f.*, bird. 1

8. insulis effectīs, *making islands.*

10. sunt quī, *there are some who*, is usually followed by the subjunctive of characteristic: App. 230, b. Because of this and other peculiarities of language, and because of some geographical errors, many scholars believe that Caesar did not write this chapter.

Chap. 11-15. *Caesar slaughters the German host in revenge for a treacherous attack.*

Chap. 11. *Envoys beg for time to consult the Ubii. Caesar grants a short truce.*

2. ut erat cōstitūtum: *translate after ad . . . revertuntur. See 9, 2.*

5. antecessissent: *implied indirect discourse.*

6. quōrum sī, *and if their.*

7. fēcisset: *for the future perfect of the direct form.*

8. eā condiciōne sē ūsūrōs, *that*

they would accept the terms; i.e., the offer to let them settle among the Ubii.

9. trīduī spatium: *this seems a short time for the purpose, since the Ubii were some seventy miles away; but there are well authenticated instances of longer rides in less time. The envoys of the Ubii, who were with Caesar, could tell them where to find the authorities, so that no time would be lost in looking them up.*

daret: *for the imperative of the direct form.*



FIG. 144

A BRITISH COIN

Caesar eodem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā inter- 10
positā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sē
nōn longius milibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prō-
cessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī
convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōsceret. Interim ad
praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī 15
nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur,
sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

12. At hostēs ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt,
quōrum erat quīnque milium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius
octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī quī frūmentandī causā
erant trāns Mosam profectī nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus
nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant 5
atque is diēs indūtiis erat ab his petītus, impetū factō celeriter
(nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūsus his resistantibus cōsuētūdine

10. illō, *adv.* [ille, that], thither, to that place, there (=thither). 1

12. aquātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [aqua, water], getting water. 1

13. frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, in great numbers, in crowds. 2

14. postulātum, -ī, *n.* [postulō, demand], demand, claim, request. 4

17. quoad, *conj.* [quō, whither + ad, to], till, until. 2

3. octingentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eight hundred. 1

6. indūtia, -arum, *f.*, truce. 2

10. eodem illō pertinēre, *tended to that same object.* See 9, 6, and note. It is quite likely that Caesar was mistaken. At any rate their request for time to consult the Ubii was perfectly reasonable, for they could not know whether the Ubii would respect Caesar's command (8, 8).

13. hūc: i.e., to the camping ground.

14. convenirent: see *daret*, l. 9, note.

15. quī nūntiārent, *men to give orders.*

17. sustinērent: i.e., they were simply to defend themselves.

accessisset: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect.

Chap. 12. *The German cavalry treacherously attack and rout Caesar's cavalry.*

1. ubi primum, *as soon as.*

2. erat quīnque milium, *consisted of five thousand, or was five thousand:* a predicative genitive like that in I, 29, 5.

3. equitēs: why not the ablative after the comparative *amplius*? App. 139, b. For this attack of 800 cavalry on 5000, compare 2, 11.

quī erant profectī: see 9, 4.

6. impetū factō: this attack cannot have been authorized by the German leaders. They certainly wanted a truce, whatever their motives may have been, and the defeat of Caesar's cavalry was not important enough to tempt them to break it. Either the German cavalry had failed to receive orders, or it could not resist the delight of attacking a despised foe.

7. cōsuētūdine: see 2, 7.

suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossisque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita perter-
 10 ritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amicus ā senātū nostrō appellātus.
 15 Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus accep-
 tīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque
 20 interfectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiціōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs quī per dolum atque insidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque
 5 reverterētur summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gal-lōrum infirmitāte quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia capiēda nihil spatī dandum exīstimābat. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē

8. suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr. [sub + fodiō, dig], dig under; stab underneath. 1

12. septuāgintā (LXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [septem, seven], seventy. 1

5. dēmentia, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], madness, folly. 1

9. ita . . . ēgērunt, drove them back in such a panic.

10. prius quam vēnissent: the subjunctive is probably due to attraction, but may be explained by App. 236, b.

13. genere: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395: A. 403, a: B. 215: H.-B. 413: H. 469, 2.

15. interclūsō: translate by a relative clause.

9. quaestor, -ōris, m. [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), a treasury officer in charge of the finances of the army. 3

commūnicō, 1, tr. [commūnis, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. 1

Chap. 13. Caesar decides on vengeance, and detains the German leaders, who have come to apologize.

1. neque iam, no longer.

4. exspectāre: subject of esse.

dum augērentur: App. 235, b.

5. summae . . . esse, was (an act) of the utmost folly.

6. quantum auctōritātis, what prestige.



FIG. 145

THE ROMANS STRENGTHEN THEIR FORTIFICATIONS AND RECEIVE A
SUBMISSIVE DELEGATION

At the left is a Roman camp, its gate protected as described in Int. 52. Tents and standards are seen within. In the middle background is a circular fortified post, within which stand two carts holding barrels, which indicate that the post is provisioned. In front of this post, soldiers are building more fortifications.

At the right the general, with three officers behind him, is receiving a delegation which offers humble apologies.

quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, 10
quod postridiē eius diēi māne eādem et perfidiā et simulatiōne
ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque
nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dicēbā-
tur, suī pūrgandī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et
ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid 15

10. *praetermittō*, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send by; let pass. 1

11. *māne*, *adv.*, early in the morning. 1

perfidia, -ae, *f.* [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy. 2

simulatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit. 2

9. *quaestōre*: see Int. 39.
nē . . . praetermitteret, not to let any opportunity for battle go by. This depends on *cōnsiliō*.

11. *quod*, (namely) *that*.

13. *ad eum . . . vēnērunt*: this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy.

14. *suī pūrgandī causā*, to excuse themselves. Construction? App. 291, *a*: G.-L. 428, *R.* 1: *A.* 504, *c*: *B.* 339, 5: *H.-B.* 614: *H.* 626, 3.

contrā atque, contrary to *what*.

15. *ut . . . impetrārent*, to obtain whatever [lit. if anything] they could in the way of a truce by deceiving him.

possent, dē indūtiis fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinēri iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque,) quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

14. Aciē triplici īnstitūtā et celeriter viii mīlium itinere cōfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōsili
5 habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, militēs nostrī pristinī diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma

17. gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, rejoice. 1

6. -ne, *interrog. enclitic: in direct questions, not translated; in indirect questions, whether.* 2

adversus, *prep. with acc.* [adversus, turned against], against. 1

an, *conj.*, used to introduce the second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. *

9. irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [in +rumpō, break], break into, rush into. 1

16. Quōs oblātōs (esse), *that they had come into his power.*

17. retinēri: this, with what follows, was a shocking violation of the law of nations. Compare what Caesar says of the action of the Veneti, III, 9, 8. Cato, Caesar's enemy, proposed in the Roman Senate that Caesar be handed over to the Germans for punishment. Caesar's motives may be summed up as follows: (1) a determination to teach the Germans, once for all, never to invade Gaul; (2) a determination to counteract at once the bad effect which the cavalry defeat must have had on the already disaffected Gauls; (3) irritation at the treacherous attack, although everything shows that it was not authorized by the leaders; (4) a real doubt as to whether the Germans were not trying to gain time for the return of their formidable cavalry; (5) the cer-

tainty that a pitched battle with the entire force of Germans would cost him the lives of many soldiers.

Chap. 14. Caesar surprises the German camp.

This camp was at or near Goch. See the map on p. 309. On Goch in the World War see Int. 73.

1. Aciē . . . īnstitūtā: usually an army has to march in column along a road. Here the country was open and level, so that the army could march in battle formation.

2. prius quam possent: App. 236, b.

4. suōrum: i.e., their leaders, who had been detained by Caesar.

5. perturbantur -ne praestāret, *were in great confusion, (not knowing) whether it was better.* On the kind of question see App. 214; 264, c.

9. quī: supply *ii* as antecedent.

capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter 10
carrōs impedimentaue proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua
multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis
domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere
coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsīt.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs inter-
fici vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictīs sē ex
castrīs eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī per-
vēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā magnō numerō interfectō
reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitū- 5
dine, vī flūminis oppressi perierunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs
incolumēs perpaucis vulnerātis ex tantī bellī timōre, cum
hostium numerus capitum cccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra
recēpērunt. Caesar iīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī
potestātem fēcīt. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, 10
quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxē-
runt. Hīs Caesar libertātem concessit.

13. *passim*, *adv.*, in all directions, in disorder. 1

2. *abiciō*, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw away. 2

3. *cōnfluēns*, -entis, *f.* [cōnfluō,

flow together], a flowing together, confluence. 1

5. *praecipitō*, 1, *tr.* [praeceps, headlong], throw or hurl headlong. 1

6. *pereō*, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be killed, perish. 2

14. *cōnsectandōs*: the beginning of the next chapter shows that the object was massacre, not the taking of prisoners.

Chap. 15. *The Germans are routed and slaughtered.*

3. *Rhēnī*: i.e., the *Vacalus*; see note on 10, 2, and map on p. 309.

4. *reliquā*, *further*.

5. *reliquī perierunt*: some must have escaped. At any rate in later years there were *Usipetes* and *Tencteri* living east of the Rhine, not far from this battlefield. But they may be accounted for by the escape of the cavalry.

6. *oppressi*, *overwhelmed*.
ad ūnum, *to a man*.

7. *ex*, *after*.

8. *miliūm*: see note on 12, 2.

9. *discēdendī . . . fēcīt*: if Caesar had believed the leaders guilty of treachery, they above all others should have been punished.

12. *libertātem*, *permission* to remain.

However unjust and brutal Caesar's treatment of the Germans may have been, it served his purpose. More than a year later, when Caesar had lost a legion and a half and all Gaul seemed ripe for revolt, the *Treveri* tried to get German help. But the Germans replied (V, 55) that the thing had been tried twice, by *Ariovistus* and by the *Tencteri*; they would tempt fortune no more.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum
 5 intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tēncterōrum quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs
 10 Sugambriōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūnnerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam
 15 esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubiū autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant

1. Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Germānus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German. 1

2. iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, valid. 4

10. Sugambri, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-gām'brī). 4

13. finīō, 4, *tr.* [finis, limit], limit, bound. 1

14. cūr, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4

16. Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond or across the Rhine; *pl. as noun*, Trānsrhēnānī, the people across the Rhine. 1

Chap. 16-19. Caesar crosses the Rhine, as a warning to the Germans.

Chap. 16. Caesar's reasons for deciding to cross the Rhine.

3. quod . . . voluit: in apposition with *illa*.

4. suis . . . rēbus, for their own possessions, too.

cum intellegerent, (as they would) when they should see: implied indirect discourse for the future indicative.

6. Accessit etiam quod, *lit. there was added also the fact that* = moreover, or and besides.

7. suprā: see 9, 4.

12. (ut) dēderent: object of *postulārent*.

13. sē refers to the subject of *exīstimāret*, not to the speaker; so *suī*, l. 14.

14. cūr postulāret: mood? App. 268, III; 210, a.

suī . . . Rhēnum, that anything across the Rhine belong to (*lit. be of*) his authority or control.

17. obsidēs dederant: see note on II, 35, 5.

ōrābant, kept begging. The envoys had been with him for some time, having come before the battle with the Germans; see 8, 7.

ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs preme-
rentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblicae prohibē-
rētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad 20
auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum
esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et
hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum
nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne amīcitiae populī Rōmānī tūtī esse
possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exerci- 25
tum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvi Rhēnum
trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum
esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis
esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis
prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudīnem, rapiditātem, altitudīnemque 5
flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcen-

19. occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occupō, seize], seizing; occupation, business.

20. trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry across, bring over, transport. *

22. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus (ā'rī-ō-vīs'tūs), a king of the Germans. *

5. rapiditās, -tātis, *f.* [rapidus, swift], swift, swiftness. 1



FIG. 146

CASSIS

19. occupātiōnibus rei pūblīcae, *affairs of state.*

20. trānsportāret: in the same construction as ferret, l. 18.

21. reliquī temporis, *for the future.*

futūrum: this and the following infinitives depend on a verb of saying implied in orābant.

24. opīniōne . . . Rōmānī, *by the general knowledge of the friendship of the Romans (for them).*

Chap. 17. *Description of Caesar's bridge across the Rhine.*

2. tūtum: an enemy could more easily prevent a landing from boats, and in case of defeat boats would offer a dangerous means of retreat.

3. neque suae . . . statuēbat, *he considered it inconsistent with his own dignity, etc. dignitātis is a predicative possessive genitive. The construction of the bridge would impress the barbarians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.*

4. summa prōpōnēbātur, *presented itself as very great.*

5. lātitudīnem: the bridge was probably built near Bonn, where the river is a little more than a quarter of a mile wide.

6. id contendendum, *that he ought to make the effort.*

The cassis is mentioned in VII, 45, 5 as the distinctive helmet of Caesar's cavalry.

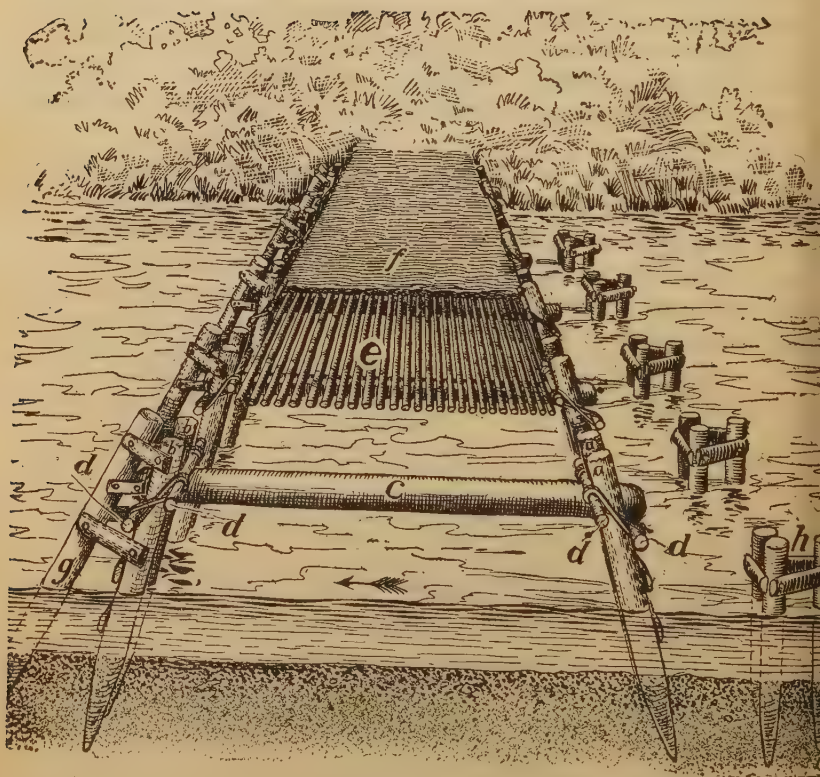


FIG. 147

CAESAR'S BRIDGE

a, a, *tigna bina*, l. 8b, b, *iis contraria duo (tigna)*, l. 13c, *bipedâlis trabs*, l. 16d, d, d, d, *fibulae*, l. 17e, *dērecta mātēria*, l. 21f, *longurii cratēsque*, l. 22g, *sublica obliquē acta*, l. 23h, *aliae (sublicae) suprā pontem*, l. 25

dum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab imō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen 10 dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram

8. tignum, -ī, *n.*, log, timber. 2
sēsquipedālis, -e, *adj.* [sēsqui-, one and a half + pēs, foot], a foot and a half thick. 1

10. immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [in + mittō, send], send or let into, insert. 2

11. dēfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix], fix or fasten down, drive in. 1

8. bīna, *two*. The distributive is used because there were many such timbers and they were handled two at a time. See plan, *a*, *a*.

dīmēnsa *ad*, measured according to; i.e., they were made shorter or longer according to the depth of the river where they were driven into its bed.

9. intervāllō . . . iungēbat, *he joined together* [by spiking wooden crosspieces on them] with a space of two feet between them. See plan and the diagram of the pile driver. intervāllō is an ablativus of attendant circumstance.

10. Haec . . . dēfixerat, *when he had let them down into the river by machines and had secured them there*. They were probably floated out to the raft on which the pile driver stood, and were then handled by a derrick or some such simple machine. dēfixerat: mood? App. 241, b: G.-L. 584: A. 548: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4.

fistūca, -ae, *f.*, pile driver. 1

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile. 2

dērēctē, *adv.* [dērēctus, straight], straight. 1

12. perpendiculum, -ī, *n.*, plummet, plumb line. 1

prōnē, *adv.* slanting downward. 1

fastīgātē, *adv.* [fastīgātus, sloping], sloping. 1

pendiculum, *not straight to the plumb line* [vertically], like a pile; i.e., as piles are usually driven.

12. ut . . . prōcumberent, *so that they inclined downstream*.

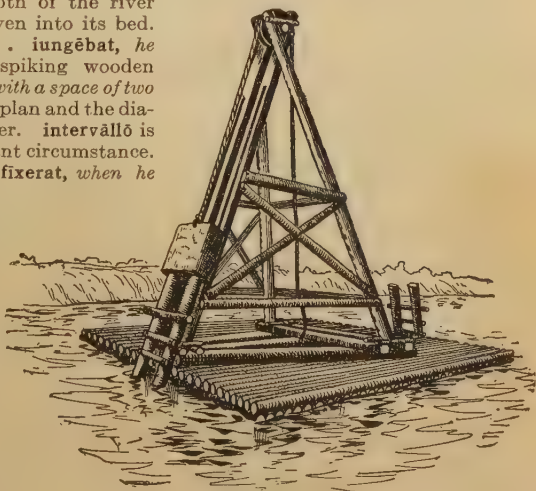


FIG. 148
PILE DRIVER

11. nōn . . . per-

flūminis prōcumberent, iīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūcta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre
 15 parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque, insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūctūra distābat, bīnīs utrīmque fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrā-

14. quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, *dist. num.*
adj. [quadrāgintā, forty], forty each.
 1

16. insuper, *adv.* [super, above], above, on the top, from above. 1

bipedālis, -e, *adj.* [bis, twice + pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. 1

17. iūctūra, -ae, *f.* [iungō, join], joining. 1

distō, -stāre, —, —, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand apart, be apart or separated. 1

utrīmque, *adv.* [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. 2

fibula, -ae, *f.*, clasp, fastening. 1

18. disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsūm, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut off; hold or keep apart, separate. 1

13. iīs . . . statuēbat: i.e., a similar pair of piles was driven into the river bed opposite to these, forty feet downstream (*ab inferiōre parte*), but sloping against the current. See plan, b, b.

14. quadrāgēnum: form? App. 16, e: G.-L. 33, 4: A. 49, d: B. 25, 6: H.-B. 71, 4: H. 84, 3.

The distance must have been measured on the surface of the water; the roadway was therefore a little less than forty feet.

16. Haec utraque, these two pairs, is the subject of *distinēbantur*.

A two-foot beam, exactly filling the space between the piles of each pair (*quantum . . . distābat*), was laid across from one pair of piles to the pair which faced it (plan, c). These pairs sloped toward each other, and although they were driven into the bottom they would sway with the current and would tend to fall together when the crossbeam had to carry a weight. Therefore they were held at the proper distance apart (*distinēbantur*) by a pair of fastenings (*fibulae*) at each end of the two-foot crossbeam.

quantum . . . distābat, lit. as much as the joining of the timbers stood apart. *quantum* is an accusative of

extent of space and has *bipedālibus* as its antecedent.

17. *fibulīs*: it is not certain what these "fastenings" were. Those shown in the plan (d, d) are simple and effective, and are occasionally used in modern engineering. The two-foot crossbeam rests on a crossbar, which is spiked firmly to the outer sides of the piles. Another crossbar is laid loosely in the opposite angle, and the outer ends of the two crossbars are lashed firmly together. These two crossbars are the *fibulae*. Any ingenious pupil can make a model which will show the effectiveness of this arrangement.

18. *quibus* refers to *fibulīs*. It is in the ablative absolute with *disclūsīs* and *revinctis*.

disclūsīs: by the crossbeam and the piles.

in . . . *revinctis*, bound together in



FIG. 149

A BRITISH COIN

riam partem revinctis tanta erat operis firmitudō atque ea rerum nātūra ut, quō maior vis aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius 20 illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā materiā iniectā contegēbantur ac longurijs crātibusque cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocri spa- 25 tiō, ut, sī arborum trunci sive nāvēs dēciendī operis causā essent ā barbaris missae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rerum vis minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.

20. aqua, -ae, f., water. 2
artē, adv. [artus, close], closely, firmly. 1

21. illigō, 1, tr. [ligō, bind], attach, hold or bind together. 1

dērēctus, -a, -um, adj. [dērigō, put in line], straight. 1

ini-ciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on. 3

contegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, tr. [tegō, cover], cover up, cover. 1

22. crātēs, -is, f., wickerwork; fascine (bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.). 1

cōsternō, -sternere, -strāvi, -strātum, tr. [sternō, strew], strew over, cover over. 2

sētius, adv., less, otherwise; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless. 2

23. obliquē, adv. [obliquus, slanting], obliquely, slantwise. 1

26. truncus, -i, m., trunk of a tree. 1

the opposite direction; i.e., opposite to the direction of their separation.

19. ea rerum nātūra, such was the nature of the structure.

20. quō . . . incitāvisset, lit. by what amount a greater force of water drove itself = the more the strength of the current increased. On hōc, quō, see App. 148, a. For mood of incitāvisset, see App. 274.

hōc . . . tenērentur, the more firmly the parts of the structure were bound together.

21. Haec refers to the part of the structure already described, for which Caesar has no name. In modern engineering it is called a "bent." There were probably between fifty and sixty such bents. They were connected by timbers laid from one crossbeam to the next, lengthwise of the bridge (dērēctā materiā). Plan, e.

22. nihilō sētius: i.e., although the bridge was already very strong.

23. et is correlative with et in l. 25; both . . . and.

obliquē: i.e., they were driven in with a greater slant than the double piles had. See plan, g.

24. quae prō ariete subiectae exciperent, which, set below as a buttress, were to withstand, etc.

25. aliae: supply sublicae agēbantur. There is nothing in the text to show the number of these piles, but the plan (h) suggests an effective defense.

spatiō: ablative of degree of difference with suprā.

27. essent missae is subjunctive by implied indirect discourse, for a future perfect indicative.

28. neu: why not neque? App. 188, b.

18. Diēbus decem quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. (Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī
5 veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns institui coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus iīs quōs ex Tēncteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in
10 sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs frūmentisque succīsīs, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam
5 per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsisse utī dē oppidīs dēmi-grārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum quās
10 Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque

9. exportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry out or away. 1

10. sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [sōlus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. 1

2. succidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum,

tr. [sub + caedō, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. 2

4. posteāquam, *conj.* [posteā, afterwards + quam, than], after. 4

10. hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place; (of a place just mentioned) there, in that place. 1

Chap. 18. *Caesar crosses the river and marches into the country of the Sugambrī.*

1. Diēbus decem quibus, *lit.* within ten days within which = within ten days after; compare paucis diēbus quibus, III, 23, 3.

coepta erat: why passive? App. 86, a.

5. quibus petentibus: translate by a clause, and when they, etc.

7. hortantibus iīs, *lit.* those urging = on the advice of those.

8. quōs . . . habēbant: i.e., the cavalry, 16, 6, and probably other survivors of the massacre, 15, 5, note.

Chap. 19. *Caesar ravages their country. As the Suebi have withdrawn, he returns to Gaul.*

3. sī premerentur: implied indirect discourse for the future.

6. nūntiōs dimīsisse utī, *had sent messengers (urging) that.*

9. hunc . . . ferē, *that this place had been chosen almost in the middle.*



FIG. 150

THE RHINE AT BONN

Caesar's bridge was at or near this point.

ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iis rēbus cōfectis quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō 15 xviii trāns Rhēnum cōsūptis, satis et ad laudem et ad 15 utilitatem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus

14. obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [obsideō, blockade], siege; oppression, 1
liberō, 1, *tr.* [liber, free], make or set free, release, deliver. 2

16. ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.* [ūtilis, useful], usefulness, advantage. 1

1. exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, short, small. 1

10. hic, ibi: both words refer to the same place.

12. iis rēbus: explained by the substantive (*ut*) clauses of desire which follow.

13. ut . . . iniceret: see note at the end of Chap. 15.

16. prōfectum: notice the *ō*; from *prōficiō*.

Chap. 20-22. Caesar makes preparations for an expedition to Britain.

Chap. 20. Caesar decides on the expedition. He can get no information from the Gauls.

1. Exiguā . . . reliquā: the ablative absolute is adversative: *although only a small part . . . , (and) in spite of the fact that the winters are early.*

ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia
 5 intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen
 magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo insulam adisset,
 genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset;
 quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē
 praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam

8. *incognitus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + *cognitus*, known; *cognōscō*, learn], unknown. ~2

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2



CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

4. *hostibus nostris*: indirect object of *subministrāta*.

subministrāta auxilia: for an instance see III, 9, 26. In II, 14, 8, we learn that Britain had afforded refuge to some of Caesar's enemies.

6. *magnō . . . fore*, it would be of great advantage to him.

sī adisset, etc.: for the future perfect of the direct form. These clauses give the real object of the expedition,

which was only preparatory to that of the following year.

8. *quae . . . incognita*: the Gauls may have deceived Caesar; at any rate there are indications that some Gauls knew a good deal about Britain: in II, 4, 19, we learn that a king of the Suessiones had been king of a part of Britain besides; and in VI, 13, we learn that Gallic Druids went to Britain to study.

praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā 10
Galliam nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōri-
bus neque quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut
quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent
aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrum
nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat. 15

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret,
idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā prae-
mittit. Huic mandat ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam
primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs
proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiec- 5
tus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus et quam
superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem iubet
convenīre. Interim, cōnsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs
perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae cīvitatibus ad eum
lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō 10
populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditis liberāliter polli-
citus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent eōs domum
remittit et cum iis ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus

5. trāiectus, -ūs, *m.* [trāiciō, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, pas-
sage. 1

9. Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Brit-
ain, British; *m. pl. as noun*, the Bri-

tanni (brī-tān'ī); *better*, the Britons.
1

11. obtemperō, 1, *intr.* [temperō,
control oneself], obey. 1

13. Commius, -mī, *m.*, Commius
(kōm'ī-ūs). 3

9. illō: the adverb.

his ipsis: the traders; dative with
nōtum.

11. vocātis mercātōribus, *although*
he summoned traders.

12. neque, etc.: a series of indirect
questions, depending on reperīre.

Chap. 21. Caesar sends men in ad-
vance to gain information, and to
advise submission.

2. Volusēnum: either the subject of
esse or the object of *praemittit*; supply
eum in one place or the other. See
what Caesar says of Volusenus in III,
5, 7; he is the only tribune whom
Caesar mentions with honor.

nāvī longā: see Int. 64.

6. Hūc: at a harbor among the Mo-
rini. This was the modern Boulogne:
see map on p. 326. Boulogne was the
harbor most used by the British in
the World War.

10. quī polliceantur: a purpose
clause, but best translated by a
present participle.

dare, obtemperāre: verbs of promis-
ing are more often followed by the fu-
ture infinitive with subject accusative:
App. 280, c.

13. Atrebātibus superātis: in the
battle with the Nervii, II, 23.

Commius: see Fig. 114, p. 238.

superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsiliū
 15 probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auc-
 tōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic
 imperat quās possit adeat civitatēs, hortēturque ut populī
 Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.
 Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus, (quantum eī facultātis darī
 20 potuit, quī nāvī ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet,
 quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quacque ibi perspexisset
 renūntiat.

22. Dum in hīs locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā
 morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt
 quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsārent, quod ho-
 minēs barbari et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī bellum populō
 5 Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāisset factūrōs pollicē-
 rentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus,
 quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque
 bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat ne-

15. *fidēlis*, -e, *adj.* [*fidēs*, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 1

3. *excūsō*, 1, *tr.* [*causa*, reason], give reason for; excuse; *with sē*, offer apologies. 1

4. *imperitus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in- + peritus*, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4

6. *opportūnē*, *adv.* [*opportūnus*, fit], opportunely, seasonably. 1

14. *ibi*: i.e., among the Atrebatēs.

15. *sibi fidēlem*: but Commius became a leader in the general revolt against him three years later. This is why Caesar says *arbitrābātur*.

16. *in hīs regiōnibus*: i.e., in Belgium.

magnī: genitive of value.

Huic . . . civitatēs, *he instructed him to go to whatever states he could*.

18. *fidem sequantur*, lit. *follow the protection (of) = surrender (to)*.

sē: i.e., Caesar.

19. *quantum . . . potuit*, lit. (*as much*) *as of opportunity could be given to a man = as much as a man could*.

20. *quī . . . auderet*: a clause of characteristic. Caesar cannot mean to blame Volusenus. Both the diffi-

culty which Caesar himself experienced in landing with his army and the imprisonment of Commius will show that Volusenus could not possibly have landed and returned.

Chap. 22. Caesar accepts the surrender of the Morini, and completes his preparations for sailing.

3. *cōsiliō*, behavior; see III, 28.

hominēs: in apposition with the omitted subject; *being barbarians*.

4. *cōsuētūdinis*: of sparing those who voluntarily surrendered.

5. *fēcissent, imperāisset*: implied indirect discourse for the perfect indicative and the future perfect, respectively.



FIG. 151

ENTRANCE OF HARBOR AT BOULOGNE

Of course the breakwaters were not there in Caesar's day. The harbor was a small river, from which the ships probably had to sail one at a time.

que hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs contractisque, quot satis esse ad duās trāsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs, praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur quōminus in eundem

9. antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before; prefer. 1

12. onerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; with nāvis, transport, freight ship. *

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect. 2

16. quōminus, *conj.* [quō, so that + minus, not], so that not, that not; from. 2

9. hās . . . antepōnendās, *engaging in such trivial matters should not interfere with his expedition to Britain; lit. be put ahead of Britain.*

12. coāctīs contractisque, *having levied and brought together.*

13. quod . . . habēbat, *lit. whatever of ships of war he had besides = the ships which he had.*

15. Hūc accēdēbant, *lit. there were added to this number = he had in addition.*

ā . . . octō, *eight miles away.* As the chief harbor was Boulogne, the smaller was Ambleteuse, north of Boulogne. See map on p. 326.

16. tenēbantur quōminus possent, *were kept from being able:* App. 228, c.

portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum
 20 lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

23. His cōstitūtis rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvīgandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi
 5 circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locis superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum

20. Sulpicius, -cī, *m.*, Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pūb'li'ūs sūl-pīsh'yūs rōō'fūs). 1

1. nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. *

2. solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *tr.*, loosen, untie; *with or without* nāvēs, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 3

3. cōscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum, *tr.* [scandō, climb], climb; go on board, embark. 1

4. tardē, *adv.* [tardus, slow], slowly. 1

6. expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], put *or* set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up. 2

7. angustē, *adv.* [angustus, narrow], narrowly, closely. 1

8. lītus, -oris, *n.*, seashore, beach, shore. 3

9. nēquāquam, *adv.*, in no way, not at all. 1

18. exercitum dūcendum dedit: construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.

Chap. 23-27. After a sharp contest Caesar effects a landing and accepts the surrender of the Britons.

Chap. 23. Caesar crosses to Britain and makes preparations for landing.

1. idōneam tempestātem: a gentle southerly wind and clear weather, with the moon nearly full.

2. tertiā vigiliā: just after midnight, the morning of August 26.

ulteriōrem portum: Ambleteuse. See 22, 15, and note.

4. tardius, *too late*. The wind changed and delayed them for four days.

hōrā quārtā: about 9 A.M. At this time of year the fourth hour began about 8:30 and ended after 9:30.

5. Britanniam attigit: at Dover. The hills spoken of are the famous chalk cliffs. See Fig. 152.

7. haec, *such*.

10. dum convenirent: mood? App.

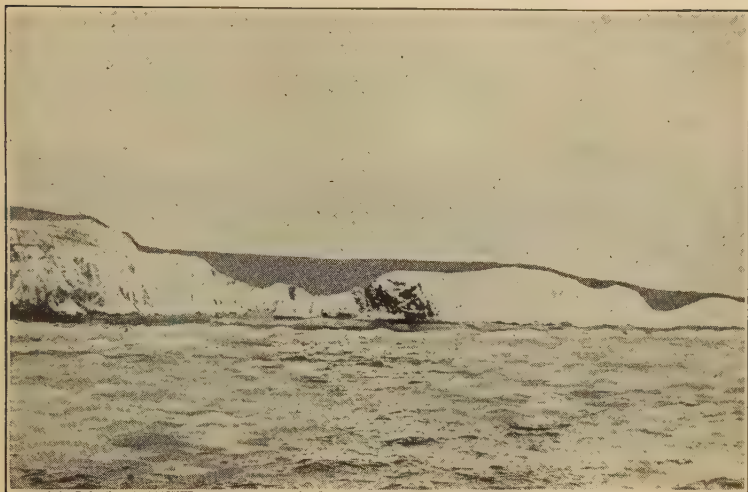


FIG. 152

CLIFFS AT DOVER

This is made from a photograph on which everything modern has been painted out. It shows the harbor about as Caesar saw it while lying at anchor.

locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram 10
nōnam in ancoris expectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnisque
militum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae
fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, maximēque
ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut, cum celerem atque instabilem
mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs ad- 15
ministrārentur. His dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō

14. *celer*, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick. 1

instabilis, -e, *adj.* [*in-* + *stabilis*, firm], not firm, unsteady, quickly changing. 1

15. *mōtus*, -ūs, *m.* [*moveō*, move], movement, motion. 3

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [*nuō*, nod], nod; sign, command; *ad nūtum*, at one's nod or command. 2

235, b. The clause depends on *expectāvit*.

reliquae nāvēs, i.e., the cavalry transports, which, however, did not arrive.

ad hōram nōnam: about 3 P.M.

11. *in ancoris*, at anchor.

13. *ut . . . postulārent*, as military science, and especially as seamanship requires; the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

14. *ut administrārentur*: the object of *monuit*; that all things be done.

15. *ad tempus*, on the instant.



FIG. 153

THE SHORE SOUTH OF DEAL

This is looking inland from the beach on which Caesar landed. A comparison of this with Fig. 152 makes it clear why Caesar chose this point.

tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter milia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

24. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod
5 nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn poterant, militibus autem ignōtīs locīs, impeditīs manibus, magnō

2. *essedārius*, -rī, *m.* [essedum, a war chariot], charioteer. 1

18. *apertō . . . litore*, on an open and evenly shelving shore. This was near Deal. See map, p. 326. The chalk cliffs run almost to Deal, but there the shore is as Caesar describes it.

Chap. 24. *The Britons try to prevent the landing.*

6. *ignōtus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + (g) nōtus, known], unknown, unfamiliar. 1

2. *quō genere*, a kind of troops which.

5. *nisi . . . poterant*, could be stationed only in deep water.

6. *militibus*: dative of the agent with *dēsiliendum*, etc., *erat*.

ignōtīs . . . manibus: ablatives absolute.

et gravī onere armōrum pressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsilien-
dum et in flūctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnan-
dum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī,
omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla con- 10
icerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī
perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperitī nōn
eādē alacritātē ac studiō quō in pedestribus utī proeliīs cōn-
suērāt utēbantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum
et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior,
paulum rēmōvērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad
latus apertum hostium cōstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs,
tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō 5
ūsui nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et
inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōstitērunt ac
paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs militibus
cūnetantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae
legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēli- 10

9. āridus, -a, -um, *adj.* [āreō, be dry], dry; *neut. as noun*, dry land. 3

10. membrum, -ī, *n.*, member of the body, limb. 1

11. insuēfactus, -a, -um, *adj.* [suēs-cō, become accustomed + faciō, make], accustomed, trained. 1

13. alacritās, -tātis, *f.* [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. 3

4. funda, -ae, *f.*, sling. 1

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow. 1

6. figūra, -ae, *f.* [fingō, form], form, shape, figure. 1

10. aquila, -ae, *f.*, an eagle; a standard (as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion). 3

obtestor, 1, *tr.* [testor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. 1

fēliciter, *adv.* [fēlix, happy], happily, fortunately. 1

7. pressīs, weighed down as they were: in agreement with militibus.

8. cōsistendum, keep their footing.

9. cum illī, while the enemy.

12. nōn utēbantur, did not display.

13. quō agrees with the nearer antecedent.

Chap. 25. Caesar brings his war-ships into action. A Roman standard bearer sets an example of bravery.

2. inūsitātior, less familiar than

that of the transports. The latter were more like the trading vessels, with which the Britons were acquainted.

mōtus . . . expeditior, lit. whose motion was freer for use = which were more easily managed.

4. latus apertum, the right flank, which was unprotected by shields.

9. quī, the man who.

10. aquilam: see Int. 43, and Fig. 154.

citer ēvenīret, "Dēsīlīte," inquit, "commīlītōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōīcēt atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum
 15 nostrī, cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsīluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs
 5 vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset, Caesar

11. ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], turn out, result. 1

inquam, -is, -it, *def. verb. tr., used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation, say.* 1

commīlītō, -ōnis, *m.* [mīles, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. 1

12. certē, *adv.* [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. 1

meus, -a, -um, *poss. adj. pron., my, mine, my own.* 1

15. dēdecus, -oris, *n.* [decus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. 1

2. firmiter, *adv.* [firmus, strong], firmly. 1

4. aggregō, 1, *tr.* [ad + grex, flock], unite in a flock; join, attach. -1

13. praestiterō: note the force of the tense; (whatever the result shall be) I at least shall have done my duty.

15. inter sē, one another.

16. ex proximīs nāvibus (the men) from the nearest ships.

Chap. 26. After a fierce contest the Britons are put to flight.

2. firmiter īnsistere, get a firm footing.

signa subsequī: i.e., keep their formation by cohorts.

3. alius . . . nāvī, men from different ships.

quibuscumque . . . aggregābat, gathered about whatever standards they

chanced upon; as in the battle with the Nervii, II, 21, 13.

5. ubi cōspexerant: the past perfect instead of the usual perfect with ubi, expressing repeated action, just as the following imperfects do.

7. plūrēs, several of the enemy.

in ūniversōs, upon the main body.

9. scaphās, speculātōria nāvigia: these boats could be rowed into shallow water.



FIG. 154

THE EAGLE

The standard of the legion.



PLATE V—CAESAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN

scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia 10 submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

15

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; sēsē obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāset factūrōs pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprà dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illī ē 5 nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum proeliō factō remisērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in conti- 10 nentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere sē imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinqui-

9. scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat. 1
speculātōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [speculātor, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. 1

10. labōrō, 1, *intr.* [labor, toil], toil, work hard; labor, suffer. 3

6. ōrātōr, -ōris, *m.* [ōrō, speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. 1

11. simul = *simul atque*.

13. neque, *but . . . not*.

longius, *very far*.

14. capere, *reach*. See note on *tardius*, 23, 4.

Hoc ūnum: the pursuit by the cavalry was an important part of every regular engagement.

Chap. 27. *The Britons sue for peace.*

2. sēsē datūrōs, factūrōs: the reg-

8. culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt. 1

9. imprudentia, -ae, *f.* [imprūdēns, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight, ignorance. 2

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *intr.*, forgive, pardon. 3

13. longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [longus, long], far off, distant. 2

ular construction after verbs of promising; see note on *dare*, 21, 10.

4. suprà: see 21, 13.

6. cum, *although*.

modō, *in the capacity of, or as*.

8. eius rei: the treatment of Commius.

9. ut ignōscerētur, *that they be pardoned*. In what case would "they" be, if expressed? App. 115, d.

10. cum lēgātīs missīs petissent, *after they had sent hostages and begged*; see 21, 10.

ōribus locīs arcessitam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt.
 15 Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique
 convenīre et sē civitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coe-
 pērunt.

* 28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam
 est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprà dēmōn-
 strātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēni
 ventō solvērunt.) Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex
 5 castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla
 eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant pro-
 fectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est
 propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur;
 quae tamen ancorīs iactīs, cum fluctibus complērentur, neces-
 10 sariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs mari-

16. *commendō*, 1, *tr.* [*mandō*, in-
 trust], intrust; surrender. 1

3. *lēnis*, -e, *adj.*, gentle, mild. 1

10. *prōvehō*, -vehere, -vexi, -vec-

tum, *tr.* [*vehō*, carry], carry forward;
pass., be carried forward, sail. 1

1. *lūna*, -ae, *f.*, the moon. 2

14. *arcessitam*, for whom they had
 sent.

15. *in agrōs*, to their farms.

Chap. 28-31. A storm turns back
 Caesar's cavalry and wrecks his fleet.
 Although he partially repairs the fleet,
 the Britons are encouraged to attack
 him.

Chap. 28. The cavalry transports
 are driven back by a storm.

1. *post . . . quam* = *diē quārtō post-*
quam. When *postquam* is divided,
post is usually an adverb, afterwards
 . . . than. Here it is a preposition.

As Caesar always sailed by night,
 we may suppose that these ships did
 so and that they arrived on the morn-
 ing of the fifth day after Caesar's
 arrival. The day of their arrival was
 August 30. The fifth day before that,
 by Roman reckoning, was August 26.

2. *suprà*: see 22, 15 and 23, 4.

6. *aliae, aliae*: the wind must
 have come from the north northeast.
 The ships that were farthest out at
 sea were driven back at once; the
 others got some shelter near Dover,
 but as the storm proved too severe
 they preferred to return to Gaul
 rather than land on the hostile shore
 of Britain, miles from Caesar's camp.

8. *occāsum*: for construction see
 note on *propius sē*, 9, 3.

9. *cum complērentur*, since they
 began to fill.

10. *adversā nocte*, in the face of
 the night.

Chap. 29. The storm and the tide
 wreck Caesar's fleet.

1. *lūna plēna*: there was a full
 moon on the night of August 30.
 This is what enables us to calculate
 the day of Caesar's arrival in Britain.

2. *aestūs maximōs*: the "spring"



FIG. 155

CLIFFS EAST OF DOVER

The cavalry transports, caught by the northerly gale, found some refuge by running south of these cliffs.

timōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit; nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nos- 5 trīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs, reliquisque armāmentīs āmissīs ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna,

5. dēligō, 1, *tr.* [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. 2

6. auxiliōr, 1, *intr.* [auxilium, aid], give aid, help, assist. 1

7. frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck. 2

tide. The average rise and fall of the tide at Deal is said to be 16 feet. This tide, helped by the wind, rose much higher.

nostrīs . . . incognitum: the Romans were best acquainted with the Mediterranean, where the tides rise only a few inches. Yet they had had

some experience with the tides in the war with the Veneti.

4. quae . . . dēligātae, which were riding at anchor. The transports were heavier than the warships, and Caesar had not thought it worth the effort to beach them.

6. administrandī, of managing them.

id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta
 10 est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent,
 et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod
 omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in
 hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

30. Quibus rēbus cognitis principēs Britanniae, quī post
 proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et
 equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellexerent
 et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent,
 5 quae hōc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentīs
 Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt
 rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et
 rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū inter-
 clūsīs nēminem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam
 10 trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque paulātim ex castrīs discēdere
 et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat,
 tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare
 intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspiciābatur. Itaque ad
 omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs

9. **perturbātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [perturbō, disturb], disturbance, alarm. 1

10. **reportō**, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry or convey back. 1

8. **reditus**, -ūs, *m.* [redeō, return], returning, return. 1

9. **id quod** or *quae rēs* is commonly used instead of *quod* when the antecedent is a clause.

10. **quibus possent**: a clause of characteristic.

11. **omnia quae erant ūsuī**, *all the things which were needed*; a determining clause: App. 231.

12. **hiemārī oportēre**, *that they must pass the winter*.

13. **in hiemem**, *for the winter*.

Chap. 30. *The Britons plan to re-new hostilities.*

1. **principēs**: subject of *dūxērunt*, 1. 6.

5. **etiam**, *still*.

6. **optimum**: predicate adjective

with *esse*, the subject being *prohibēre* and *prōdūcere*.

factū: App. 296. It is not needed in translation.

7. **factā**: translate as an infinitive, coördinate with *prohibēre*.

8. **rem**, *operations*.

hīs superātīs, *if these (troops) were overpowered*.

Chap. 31. *Caesar repairs his fleet.*

2. **ex . . . eō**, *from the disaster to his ships and from the fact*.

3. **quod accidit**, *which really did happen*.

ad omnēs cāsūs, *for all emergencies*; i.e., for both a return to Gaul and the defense of his camp if he should be attacked.

cotīdiē in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictae erant 5
nāvēs, eārum mātēriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbā-
tur et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubē-
bat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur,
duodecim nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset
effēcit. 10

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frū-
mentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id
tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs
remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs
castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāverunt pulverem 5
maiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in
partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, ali-
quid novī ā barbaris initum cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in statiōni-
bus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquīs duās in
statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī 10
iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hosti-

5. affligō, -fligere, -fixī, -flictum,
tr., strike against; damage, injure. 1
6. aes, aeris, n., copper. 1

5. pulvis, -eris, m., dust. 1
10. cōnfestim, adv., hastily, at
once, immediately. 1

5. quāe nāvēs, eārum, of those ships
which.

6. aere: iron was not much used in
the construction of ships, because it
rusts, and the Romans had no paint
which would protect it.

8. summō studiō: the soldiers were
as anxious to get away as Caesar was.

9. reliquīs . . . effēcit, lit. made
that it could be sailed by the rest =
made the others fit to sail in.

Chap. 32-36. After repelling the
Britons, who attack first one legion,
then the camp, Caesar returns to Gaul.

Chap. 32. The Britons attack one
legion while it is engaged in foraging.

1. frūmentātum: App. 295.

3. interpositā, having arisen.

in agrīs remanēret: ostensibly en-
gaged in labor on the farms near the
camp.

6. quam . . . ferret, than usual.

7. id quod erat, what was really the
case; explained by the clause *aliquid*
. . . *consilī*, that some new plan had
been entered upon.

8. cohortēs: probably two.

10. succēdere, to take their places.
armārī, to arm themselves.



Fig. 156

A BRITISH COIN

Right: Tinc(ommius) Commi F(ilius).
See Fig. 142, p. 335.

bus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī
 15 hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Primō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et
 5 pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulum ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hos-

14. dēmetō, -metere, -messui, -messum, *tr.* [metō, reap], mow, reap. 1

15. dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -litui, —, *intr.* [latēscō, *incept.* of lateō, lie hidden], hide oneself, lurk. 1

16. metō, metere, messui, messum, *tr.*, mow, reap. 1

18. essedum, -ī, *n.*, a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. 2

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [dō, put], put around, surround. 3

2. perequitō, 1, *intr.* [equitō, ride], ride about, ride through or around. 1

3. rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. 1

4. turma, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron of about thirty cavalrymen. 1

insinuō, 1, *tr.* [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. 1

5. aurīga, -ae, *m.*, chariot driver, charioteer. 1

6. currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. 2

14. ūna, only one.

17. incertīs ordinibus: owing to the surprise the usual line of battle could not be formed.

Chap. 33. How the Britons use their war chariots in battle.

2. equōrum, caused by the horses.

3. cum . . . insinuāvērunt: i.e., they drove into the intervals between the squadrons of their own cavalry; there the warriors dismounted and on foot supported the cavalry. Each chariot carried one driver (*aurīga*) and one warrior.

6. illi: the warriors, who had alighted.



FIG. 157

BRITISH WAR CHARIOT

tium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum ūsū et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in declivī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī 10 moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs tempore opportū-
nissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs
cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad
laccessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum
esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore 5
intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur,
nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī disces-
sērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs
quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā
prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisē- 10
runt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt et

7. receptus, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō, receive], retreat. 1

8. stabilitās, -tātis, *f.* [stabilis, firm], firmness, steadiness. 1

11. moderor, 1, *tr.* [modus, limit], manage, control. 1

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, *tr.*, bend, turn. 1

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (of a wagon). 1

percurrō, -currere, -curri, -cur-

sum, *intr.* [currō, run], run along or over. 1

12. citō, *adv.*, quickly, speedily. *Comp.*, citius; *sup.*, citissimē. 1

8. continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [con-
tineō, hold together], holding together,
unbroken, continuous. 2

11. praedicō, 1, *tr.* [dicō, proclaim],
proclaim publicly; report, tell of. 3

7. expeditum receptum, a ready
retreat.

8. praestant, display.

9. utī: with cōsuērint, l. 12.

10. ac, and even.

incitātōs, when at full speed.

sustinēre, to check; depending on
cōsuērint.

brevī, quickly.

11. per, along.

iugō: the crossbar attached to the
end of the pole and resting on the
horses' necks. See Fig. 157.

Chap. 34. Caesar rescues the im-
periled legion, and the Britons march
against his camp.

1. rēbus: ablative of means.

nostrīs: indirect object of tulit.
perturbātis agrees with it.

4. aliēnum, lit. belonging to another
= unfavorable. suō, his own, almost
illustrates the corresponding meaning,
favorable.

7. quī . . . reliquī: mentioned in
32, 3.

9. quae continērent: App. 230, a.

quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs
 15 equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērērunt.

35. Caesar etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritātē periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter trīgintā, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legi-
 5 ōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquō diē aequinoctī infirmis nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem
 5 subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem

12. praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder. 2

14. peditātus, -ūs, *m.* [pedes, foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. 1

3. effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *tr.*

and *intr.* [ex + fugiō, flee], flee from or away, escape. 1

3. duplicō, 1, *tr.* [duplex, double], double. 1

4. aequinoctium, -tī, *n.* [aequus, equal + nox, night], the equinox. 1

12. praedae faciendae: they would have been disappointed, for the Romans had left their heavy baggage in Gaul: 30, 5.

suī liberandī: see note on suī pūrgandī, 13, 14.

Chap. 35. The Britons are put to flight.

1. idem fore, ut, that the same thing would occur . . . namely, that.

4. ante: in 21, 13 and 27, 4.

5. diūtius, very long.

6. ac, but.

7. tantō spatiō quantum . . . potuērunt, over as great a distance as their speed and strength permitted.

spatiō is an ablative of the way (App. 144), where an accusative of extent of space would seem more natural.

Chap. 36. Caesar returns to Gaul.

2. His: dative of reference.

3. eōs . . . iussit: it is not surprising to learn later that most of the tribes failed to do this.

4. propinquō diē: ablative absolute. As Caesar reached Britain August 26, and the equinox then fell on September 24, he must have remained in Britain about three weeks.

hiemī . . . subiciendam, that his voyage should be exposed to wintry weather.

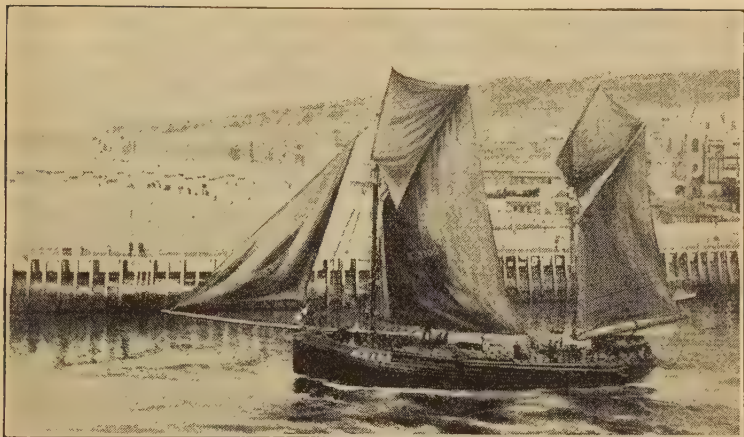


FIG. 158
LOOKING NORTH FROM THE ENTRANCE
OF BOULOGNE HARBOR

nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnerunt; sed ex iīs onerāriæ duae eōdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuerunt et paulō inf̄rā delātae sunt.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī milītēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, sp̄e praedae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī

9. inf̄rā, *adv.* [inferus, below], below. 1

2. trecentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.* [trēs, three +centum, hundred], three hundred. 1

8. quōs reliquae, *as the rest (did).*
capere, *reach.*
et, *but.*

9. inf̄rā: to the south. We do not know where they landed.

Chap. 37-38. *The Morini revolt and are conquered.*

Chap. 37. *The Morini attack the troops from the two transports, but are repulsed.*

1. Quibus ex nāvibus: i.e., the two transports.

2. in castra: at Boulogne.

3. pācātōs: see 22, 1-11.

4. primō: the adverb.

ita, *so very, or very.*

5. pōnere, *to lay down.*

orbe: a formation used when troops were attacked on all sides. It is now called a hollow square.

5 sē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illi orbe
factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter
mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex
castrīs equitātum suis auxiliō mīsīt. Interim nostrī militēs
impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor
10 fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs
ex iīs occidērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōn-
spectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnus-
que eōrum numerus est occīsus.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legi-
ōnibus quās ex Britannīā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebellīōnem
fēceraut, mīsīt. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē
reciperent nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant
5 ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī vērunt. At Q. Titū-
rius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūx-
erant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedi-
ficiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās
abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs om-
10 nium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omninō civitātēs
ex Britannīā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus
gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū
dēcrēta est.

5. orbis, -is, *m.*, orb, ring, circle. 1
3. siccitās, -tātis, *f.*, dryness. 1

4. perfugium, -gī, *n.* [perfugiō, flee
for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. 1

6. hominum: with *mīlia*.

Chap. 38. *Labienus conquers the Morini. The army is quartered for the winter among the Belgae. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.*

3. siccitātēs: translate by the singular.

quō . . . habērent, lit. *had not where they could retreat* = *had nowhere to retreat*: App. 230, c.

4. quō perfugiō erant ūsī, lit. *which refuge they had used* = *the refuge* [i.e.,

the swamps] *which they had used*. For the fact see III, 28, 8.

6. quī . . . dūxerant: see 22, 18.

9. in Belgīs: in readiness for the next year's expedition to Britain.

12. diērum vīgintī supplicātiō: see note on II, 35, 10, and notice the increased number of days. Caesar's two expeditions into lands where no Roman general had ever before set foot had made a wonderful impression at Rome.

THE DIRECT FORM OF THE LONGER PASSAGES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II

I, 13, 7-19. *Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētī ubi eōs tū cōstitueris atque esse volueris; sīn bellō persequi perseverābis, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtutis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum iī quī flūmen trānsierant suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōlī ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūtī tribuere aut nōs dēspicere; nōs ita ā patribus maiōribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut insidiis nītāmur. Quārē nōlī committere ut hic locus ubi cōstitimus ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat.*

I, 14, 1-20. *Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās vōs commemorāvistis memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō quō minus meritō populi Rōmāni accidērunt; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōsciū fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus est, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī velit, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāvistis, memoriam dēpōnere potest? Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriāminī, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrāminī, eōdem pertinent. Cōnsuevērunt enim dī immortalēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum haec ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, utī ea quae pollicēminī vōs factūrōs intellegam, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsis*

sociisque *intulistis*, item sī Allobrogibus *satisfaciētis*, *rōb̄scum* pācem *faciam*.

20-23. Ita *Helvētīi* ā maiōribus suis *īnstitūtī sunt* utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint; *huius* rei *populus Rōmānus est testis*.

I, 17, 2-13. *Sunt* nōn *nūllī* quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātīm plūs *possunt* quam ipsī magistrātūs. *Hī* sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem *dēterrent* nē frūmentum cōferant quod *dēbent*: [these men say] “Praestat, sī (Haeduī) iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn *possunt*, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque *dubitāmus* quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī.” Ab isdem *vestra* cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs *geruntur* hostibus *ēnūntiantur*. *Hī ā mē* coercērī nōn *possunt*. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus *tibi ēnūntiāvī*, *intellegō* quantō id cum periculō *fēcerim*, et ob eam causam quam diū *potuī tacuī*.

I, 18, 6-24. *Ipse est Dumnorīx*, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālītātem grātiā, *cupidus* rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta *habet*, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī *audet* nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem *auxit* et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās *comparāvit*; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper *alit* et circum sē *habet*; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitatēs largiter *potest*, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō *collocāvit*, *ipse* ex Helvētiīs uxōrem *habet*, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitatēs *collocāvit*. *Favet* et *cupit* Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, *ōdit* etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honoris *est* restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī *venit*; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam *habet* grātiā *dēspērat*.

I, 20, 2-12. *Sciō ista esse vĕra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit, proptereā quod, cum ego grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā possem, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervīs non solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur. Ego tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commoveor. Quod sī quid eī ā tē gravius acciderit, cum ego hunc locum amīcitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō exīstimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur.*

I, 30, 3-10. *Intellegimus, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetieris, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvētīi relīquērunt, utī . . . habērent.*

I, 31, 5-8. *Nōn minus id contendimus et labōrāmus, nē ea quae dīxerimus ēnūntientur, quam utī ea quae volumus impetrēmus, proptereā quod, sī ēnūntiātum erit, summum in cruciātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus.*

8-56. *Galliae tōtius factiōnēs sunt duae: hārum alterius principātum tenent Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum est utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāvērunt, trāductī sunt plūrēs. Nunc sunt in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērunt, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsērunt. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctī, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitīō atque amīcitīā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuerant, coāctī sunt Sēquanīs obsidēs dare . . . imperiō essent. Ūnus ego sum ex omnī civitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs obsidēs*

darem. Ob eam rem ex civitate *profūgī* et Rōmam ad senātum *vēnī* auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrando neque obsidibus *tenēbar*. Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs *accidit*, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus *cōnsēdit* tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī *est* optimus tōtīus Galliae, *occupāvit* et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere *iubet*, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiv ad eum *vēnērunt*, quibus locus ac sēdēs *parantur*. Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae finibus *pellentur* atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum *trānsībunt*; neque enim *cōnferendus est Gallicus* cum Germānōrum agrō, neque *haec cōnsuētūdō* victūs cum illā *comparanda*. Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō *vicit*, quod proelium factum *est* ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter *imperat*, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs *poscit* et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque *ēdit*, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta *est*. *Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius*; nōn *possunt* eius imperia diūtius *sustinērī*. Nisi quid in *tē* populōque Rōmānō *erit* auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem *est* faciendum quod Helvētiī *fēcērunt*, ut domō . . . experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō *erunt*, nōn *dubitō* quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum *sunt* gravissimum supplicium *sūmat*. *Tū* vel auctōritāte *tuā* atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrere *potes* nē maior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā *potes* dēfendere.

I, 32, 8-15. Hōc *est* *miserior* et *gravior fortūna* Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre *audent* absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlītātem, velut sī cōram *adsit*, *horrent*, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās *datur*, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum *recēpērunt*, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius *sunt*, omnēs cruciātūs *sunt* perferendī.

I, 34, 5-12. Sī quid *mihi ā tē* opus esset, *ego* ad *tē* *vēnissem*; sī quid *tū mē vīs*, *tē* ad *mē* venīre *oportet*. Praetereā neque sine

exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre *audeō* quās *tū possidēs*, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere *possum*. *Mihi* autem mīrum *vidētur* quid in *meā* Galliā, quam bellō *vīcī*, aut *tibi* aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī *sit*.

I, 35, 2-18. Quoniam tantō *meō* populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū *meō* rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus *es*, hanc *mihi* populōque Rōmānō grātiā *refers*, ut in colloquium venīre invitātus *gravēris* neque dē commūnī rē dicendum *tibi* et cognōscendum *putēs*, haec *sunt* quae ā *tē postulō*: prīmum, *nōlī ūllam* multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam *trādūcere*; deinde, obsidēs quōs *habēs* ab Haeduīs *redde* Sēquanīsque *permitte* ut quōs ipsī *habent* voluntāte *tuā* reddere illīs *liceat*; *nōlī* Haeduōs iniūriā *laccessere*, aut hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum *īnferre*. Sī ita *fēceris*, *mihi* populōque Rōmānō *perpetua grātia* atque *amīcitia tēcum* erit; sī nōn *impetrābō*, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōsulibus senātus *cēnsuit* utī . . . dēfenderet, Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglegam*.

I, 36. Iūs *est* bellī ut quī *vīcerint* iīs quōs *vīcerint* quem ad modum *velint imperent*; item *populus Rōmānus* victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre *cōnsuevit*. Sī *ego* populō Rōmānō nōn *praescribō* quem ad modum suō iūre *ūtātur*, nōn *oportet mē* ā populō Rōmānō in *meō* iūre impediri. *Haeduī mihi*, quoniam bellī fortunam *temptāverunt* et armīs congressī ac superātī *sunt*, *stīpendiārīi sunt factī*. Magnam *tū* iniūriam *facis*, quī *tuō* adventū vectigālia *mihi* dēteriōra *facis*. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn *reddam*, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum *īnferam*, sī in eō *manēbunt* quod *convēnit* stīpendiumque quotannis *pendent*; sī id nōn *fēcerint*, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī *aberit*. Quod *mihi* dēnūntiās *tē* Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglētūrum*, *nēmō mēcum* sine suā perniciē *contendit*. Cum *volēs*, *congredditor*: *intelligēs* quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn *subiērun*t, virtūte *possint*.

I, 40, 3-47. Primum (*vōs incūsō*) quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōsiliō *dūcāminī vōbīs* quaerendum aut cōgitandum *putātis*. Ariovistus *mē* cōsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam *appetiit*; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum *iūdicet*? Mihi quidem *persuādētur*, cognitīs *meīs* postulātīs atque aequitātē condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque *meam* neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum *intulerit*, quid tandem *vereāminī*? aut cūr dē *vestrā* virtūte aut dē *meā* diligentiā *dēspērētis*? Factum est huius hostis pericūlum patrum nostrōrum memoriā; . . . factum est etiam nūper in Italiā servili tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs *accēperant sublevābant*. Ex quō iūdicārī *potest* quantum habeat in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā *timuistis*, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs *superāvistis*. Dēnique *hī sunt idem Germānī* quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque *superāvērunt*, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn *potuērunt*. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum *commovet*, *hī*, sī *quaerent*, reperire possunt . . . vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus *fuit*, hāc nē ipse quidem *spērat* nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulatiōnem angustiasque itineris *cōferunt faciunt* arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris *dēspērāre* aut praescribere *videantur*. Haec mihi sunt cūrae: frūmentum *Sēquanī, Leucī, Lingonēs subministrant*, iamque sunt in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere *ipsī* brevī tempore *iūdicābitis*. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī *dīciminī*, nihil eā rē *commoveor*; sciō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictā; *mea innocentia* perpetuā vitā, *fēlicitās* Helvētiōrum bellō *est perspecta*. Itaque quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus *fuī repraesentābō* et hāc nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra *movēbō*, ut quam primum intellegere possim utrum apud

*vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeat. Quod sī prae-
tereā nēmō sequētur, tamen ego cum sōlā decimā legiōne ibō,
dē quā nōn dubitō, mihiq̄ue ea praetōria cohors erit.*

I, 44, 2-43. *Trānsiit Rhēnum nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et
arcessitus ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis
domum propinquosque reliquit; sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab ipsis
concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capiō
iūre bellī quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōsuērunt. Nōn ego
Gallis, sed Galli mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae civitā-
tēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuē-
runt; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superatae
sunt. Sī iterum experiri volunt, iterum parātus sum dēcer-
tare; sī pāce ūti volunt, inīquum est dē stipendiō recūsare,
quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pependērunt. Amicitiam
populī Rōmānī mihi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō
esse oportet, atque hāc spē petiit. Sī per populum Rōmānum
stipendium remittētur et dēditiciū subtrahentur, non minus
libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amicitiam quam appetiit.
Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī
mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā faciō; eius rei tes-
timōnium est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnī et quod bellum nōn
intulī, sed dēfendī. Ego prius in Galliam vēnī quam populus
Rōmānus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populī Rōmānī
Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressus est. Quid tibi vīs? Cūr in
meās possesiōnēs venīs? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut
illa vestra. Ut mihi concēdi nōn oporteat, sī in vestrōs fīnēs
impetum faciam, sic item vōs estis inīquī, quod in meō iūre
mē interpellātis. Quod frātres ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs
dīcis, nōn tam barbarus neque tam imperītus sum rērum ut
nōn sciam neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis
auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī
mēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuērunt auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs
esse. Dēbeō suspicārī simulātā tē amicitia, quem exercitum in
Galliā habēs, meī opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs atque
exercitum dēdūcēs ex hīs regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amīcō sed prō*

hoste *habēbō*. Quod si *tē interfecerō*, multis nōbilibus principibusque populī Rōmānī grātum *faciam* (id ab ipsīs per eōrum nūtiōs compertum *habeō*), quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitiam *tuā* morte redimere *possum*. Quod si *dēcesseris* et liberā possessionē Galliae *mihi trādidideris*, magnō *tē* praemiō *remūnerābō* et quaecumque bella gerī *volēs* sine ullō *tuō* labōre et periculō *cōnficiam*.

I, 45, 2-11. Neque *mea* neque populī Rōmānī *cōnsuētūdō patitur* utī optimē meritōs sociōs *dēseram*, neque *ego iūdicō* Galliam potius esse *tuam* quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō *superātī sunt Arvernī et Rutēnī* ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus *ignōvit* neque in prōvinciam *redēgit* neque stīpendium *imposuit*. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī *oportet*, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum *est* in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium senātūs observārī *oportet*, *lībera debet* esse *Gallia*, quam bellō victā suis lēgibus *ūtī voluit*.

II, 3, 4-14. Nōs *nostraque* omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī *permittimus*; neque nōs cum reliquīs Belgīs *cōnsēsimus*, neque contrā populum Rōmānum *coniūrāvimus*, *parātique sumus* et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. *Reliquī* omnēs *Belgae* in armīs *sunt*, *Germānīque* quī cis Rhēnum *incolunt* sēsē cum hīs *coniūnxērunt*; *tantusque* est eōrum omnium *furor* ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque *nostrōs*, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus *ūtuntur*, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum *nobīscum habent*, dēterrere *potuerīmus* quīn cum hīs consentīrent.

II, 4, 2-28. *Plērīque* *Belgae* *sunt* *ortī* ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus *trāductī* propter locī fertilitātem ibi *cōnsēdērunt*, Gallōsque quī ea loca *incolēbant expulērunt*, *sōlīque sunt* quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē *fit* utī eārum rērum memoriā magnā sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī *sūmant*. Dē numerō eōrum omnia nōs *habēmus* explorāta, proptereā quod propinquitāti-

bus affinitatibusque coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit *cognovimus*. Plurimum inter eos *Bellovacii* et virtute et auctoritate et hominum numero *valent*; *hi possunt* conficere armata milia centum; *polliciti sunt* ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi *postulant*. *Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi*; fines latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria *Diviciacus*, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium *obtenuit*; nunc est rex *Galba*; ad hunc propter iustitiam prudentiamque summa totius belli omnium voluntate deferitur; oppida *habent* numero XII; *pollicentur* milia armata quinquaginta; totidem *Nervi*, qui maximè feri inter ipsos *habentur* longissimèque *absunt*; quindecim milia *Atrebatès*, *Ambiani* decem milia, *Morini* xxv milia, *Menapii* vii milia, *Caleti* x milia, *Veliocassès* et *Viromandui* totidem, *Atuatuci* xix milia; *Condrusi*, *Eburonès*, *Caerossi*, *Caemani*, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, *arbitramur* posse armare xl milia.

II, 14, 3-13. *Bellovacii* omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeduae fuerunt; impulsì ab suis principibus, qui dicebant Haeduos à te in servitutem redactos omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Haeduìs defecerunt et populo Romanò bellum intulerunt. Qui eius consilii principes fuerant, quod intellegebant quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugerunt. Petunt non solum *Bellovacii* sed etiam pro his *Haedu* ut tua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utaris. Quod si feceris, Haedorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificabis; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidèrunt, sustentare consueverunt.

II, 15, 8-15. Nullus est aditus ad eos mercatoribus; nihil patiuntur vini reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimant. Sunt hominès feri magnaeque virtutis; increpitant atque incusant reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romanò

dēdiderint patriamque virtūtem prōiēcērint; cōfirmant sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis accep-tūrōs.

II, 16, 2-9. *Sabis flūmen ā castrīs tuīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abest; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervī cōnsēdērunt ad-ventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectant ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs suis; expectantur etiam ab iīs Atuatu-cōrum cōpiāe atque sunt in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetā-tem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidēbantur in eum locum coniēcērunt quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.*

II, 31, 3-13. *Nōn existimāmus Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā cele-ritāte prōmovēre possint. Nōs nostraque omnia eōrum potes-tātī permittimus. Ūnum petimus ac dēprecāmur: sī forte prō tuā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam nōs ab aliīs audīmus, statueris nōs esse cōservandōs, nōlī nōs armīs dēspoliāre. Nōbīs omnēs ferē finitimī sunt inimicī ac nostrae virtūtī in-vident; ā quibus nōs dēfendere trādītis armīs nōn possumus. Nōbīs praestat, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcēmur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēvimus.*

II, 32, 1-6. *Magis cōnsuētūdine meā quam meritō vestrō cīvitatē cōservābō, sī priusquam mūrū ariēs attigerit vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditiōnis nūlla est condiō nisi armīs trā-dītis. Id quod in Nervīis fēcī faciam, finitimisque imperābō nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam īferant.*

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

This Grammatical Appendix is intended to include all the grammatical material which need be put in the hands of a class reading Caesar or Cicero. The examples are drawn chiefly from Caesar, especially from the first half of Book One. Some are made up, for the sake of brevity and clearness, and a few are taken from Cicero. References like I, 14, 3 indicate the book, chapter, and line of Caesar.

PRONUNCIATION

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

A vowel is usually short:

- a. Before another vowel, or **h**; as **eō**, **nihil**.
- b. Before **nd** and **nt**; as **laudandus**, **laudant**.
- c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other final consonant than **s**; as **laudem**, **laudat**.

2. A vowel is long:

- a. Before **nf**, **ns**, **nx**, and **nct**; as **īnferō**, **cōnsul**, **iūnxī**, **iūnctum**.
- b. When it results from contraction; as **īssēt**, for **iisset**.

3. A vowel is usually long:

- a. In monosyllables not ending in **b**, **d**, **l**, **m**, or **t**; as **mē**, **hīs**; but **ab**, **ad**.

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are commonly given more time than others.

a = *a* in *Cuba*

e = *e* in *net*

i = *i* in *pin*

o = *o* in *for* (not as in *got*)

u = *oo* in *foot*

ā = *ah!*

ē = *e* in *they*

ī = *i* in *machine*

ō = *oh!*

ū = *oo* in *boot*

y = French *u* or German *ü*; it rarely occurs.

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS.

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which appear in classical Latin:

ae = *ai* in *aisle*

oe = *oi* in *oil*

au = *ow* in *how*

eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *eh'oo*.

ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *oo'ee*. The diphthong appears in **cui**, **huic**, **cuius**, and **huius**.

a. When the consonant **i** (=j) stands between two vowels, as in **maior**, **eius**, **Troia**, and **cuius**, though **i** was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, **maiior**, **eiius**, **Troiia**, and **cuiius**. The second **i** is the consonant, pronounced like *y* in *yet*.

The first **i** makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases:

ai = *ai* in *aisle*

ei = *ey* in *they*

oi = *oi* in *oil*

ui as indicated above.

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *can*, *go*

i (consonant, sometimes printed **j**) = *y* in *yet*

n before **c**, **g**, **q**, and **x** = *ng* in *sing*

r pronounced distinctly

s as in *this*, never as in *these*

t as in *tin*, never as in *nation*

v = *w*

x = *ks*

ch, **ph**, **th** = *c*, *p*, *t*

bs, **bt** = *ps*, *pt*

qu = *qu* in *quart*

ngu = *ngu* in *anguish*

su = *sw* in *suâdeō*, *suâvis*, *suêscō*, and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in *mittō*, *annus*, both consonants should be sounded, as they are in *out-talk*, *pen-knife*. (We sound only one consonant in *ditty*, *penny*.)

7. *i* is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of *iaciō*, the form *iciō* was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant *i* was pronounced, though not written, before vowel *i*; as *dēiciō*, pronounced as if *dēiiciō*; *abiciō*, as if *abiiciō*.

SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as *fe-rō*, *a-gō*, *mo-nē*.

b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (*b*, *c*, *d*, *g*, *p*, *t*, *ch*, *ph*, or *th*, followed by *l* or *r*) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as *pa-tris*, *a-grī*.

c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as *mit-tō*, *dic-tus*, *magis-ter*, *magis-tri*.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:

a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of *laudō*, and the first syllable of *eius* (5, a).

b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants *x* and *z*. The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position; *est* is *est*, not *ēst*. The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (8, c), lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in *mit-tō* (6, a), *an-nus*, *dic-tus*, *par-tēs*, *nos-ter*.

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as *om'nis*.

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as *divi'sa*, *appel'lō*, *in'colunt*.

12. When an *enclitic* (*-ne*, *-que*, *-ve*) is joined to another word, the combination is accented like a single word, according to 10 and 11; as *dictō'que*, *dictum'que*, *ar'maque*. As enclitics are seldom added to short final vowels, the accent usually falls on the syllable before the enclitic.

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following rules will prove helpful:

a. The names of male beings, winds, months, and of most rivers are *masculine*.

b. The names of female beings, and of most countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and abstract qualities are *feminine*.

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are *neuter*.

THE DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from one another by the final letter of the stem, and by the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	FINAL LETTER OF STEM	ENDING OF GEN. SING.
I.	ā	-ae
II.	o	-ī
III.	{consonant i	-is
IV.	u	-ūs
V.	ē	-ēī or -eī

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in *-ā*; the nominative in *-a*. The gender is usually feminine.

porta, F., gate

	SINGULAR	ENDINGS
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>porta</i>	a gate (<i>as subject</i>) -a
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>portae</i>	of a gate, gate's -ae
<i>Dative</i>	<i>portae</i>	to or for a gate -ae
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>portam</i>	a gate (<i>as object</i>) -am
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>portā</i>	by, from, in, or with a gate -ā
	PLURAL	
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>portae</i>	gates (<i>as subject</i>) -ae
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>portārum</i>	of gates, gates' -ārum
<i>Dative</i>	<i>portīs</i>	to or for gates -īs
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>portās</i>	gates (<i>as object</i>) -ās
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>portīs</i>	by, from, in, or with gates -īs

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (13); as *Belgae, M., the Belgae*; *Matrona, M., the (river) Marne*.

b. The locative singular ends in *-ae*; as *Samarobrivae, at Samarobriva*.

SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in *-o*; the nominative masculine in *-us, -er, -ir*; the nominative neuter in *-um*. Note that nouns in *-us* have, in the singular, a special case-ending for the vocative, the case of address.

	<i>animus, M., mind</i>	<i>puer, M., boy</i>	<i>ager, M., field</i>	<i>vir, M., man</i>	<i>bellum, N., war</i>
	SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>animus</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>animī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bellī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>animō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>animum</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>animō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>anime</i>				
	PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>animī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>animōrum</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>animīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>animōs</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>animīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>

	filius, M., <i>son</i>	Gāius, M., <i>Gaius</i>	Boī, M., <i>the Boi</i>	deus, M., <i>god</i>	
	SING.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	filius	Gāius	Boī	deus	diī, dī
<i>Gen.</i>	filī	Gāī	Boiōrum	dei	deōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	filiō	Gāiō	Boīs	deō	diīs, dīs
<i>Acc.</i>	filium	Gāium	Boiōs	deum	deōs
<i>Abl.</i>	filiō	Gāiō	Boīs	deō	diīs, dīs
<i>Voc.</i>	filī	Gāī	Boī	deus	diī, dī

a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (13). **Vul-gus**, *crowd*, is usually neuter. **Locus, M.**, *place*, has plural **loca, N.**, *places*.

b. The locative singular ends in **-ī**; as **Agedinci**, *at Agedincum*.

c. Nouns in **-ius** regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in **-ī**, instead of **-ii** and **-ie**; and nouns in **-ium** form the genitive in **-ī**. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; as **cōnsi'li**, *of a plan*; **ini'ti**, *of a beginning*.

d. Proper names ending in **-aius**, **-ei**, and **-oi** are declined like **Gāius** and **Boī**.

e. A few words may have **-um** instead of **-ōrum** in the genitive plural; as **socium** (or **sociōrum**), *of allies*.

THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in **-i**. Nominative case-ending for masculines and feminines, **-s** or none; for neuters, none.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, **b** or **p**. The nominative ending is **-s**.

princeps, M., chief
Stem **prīncip-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	prīnceps	prīncipēs
<i>Gen.</i>	prīncipis	prīncipum
<i>Dat.</i>	prīncipī	prīncipibus
<i>Acc.</i>	prīncipem	prīncipēs
<i>Abl.</i>	prīncipe	prīncipibus

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, *d* or *t*. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is *-s*, and the final *d* or *t* of the stem is dropped before it.

laus, F., <i>praise</i> Stem laud-		miles, M., <i>soldier</i> Stem milit-		caput, N., <i>head</i> Stem capit-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i> laus	laudēs	miles	militēs	caput	capita
<i>Gen.</i> laudis	laudum	militis	militum	capitis	capitum
<i>Dat.</i> laudī	laudibus	militī	militibus	capitī	capitibus
<i>Acc.</i> laudem	laudēs	militem	militēs	caput	capita
<i>Abl.</i> laude	laudibus	milite	militibus	capite	capitibus

a. Nouns in *-tās*, *-tātis* belong here, though a few of them, especially *cīvitās*, *state*, sometimes have *-ium* in the genitive plural.

20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, *g* or *c*. The nominative ending is *-s*, which unites with the final *g* or *c* of the stem to form *x*.

lēx, F., <i>law</i> Stem lēg-		dux, M., <i>leader</i> Stem duc-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i> lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
<i>Gen.</i> lēgis	lēgum	ducis	ducum
<i>Dat.</i> lēgī	lēgibus	ducī	ducibus
<i>Acc.</i> lēgem	lēgēs	ducem	ducēs
<i>Abl.</i> lēge	lēgibus	duce	ducibus

21. Stems ending in a liquid, *l* or *r*. There is no nominative case-ending.

cōnsul, M., <i>consul</i> Stem cōnsul-		pater, M., <i>father</i> Stem patr-		aequor, N., <i>sea</i> Stem aequor-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i> cōnsul	cōnsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
<i>Gen.</i> cōnsulis	cōnsulum	patris	patrum	aequoris	aequorum
<i>Dat.</i> cōnsulī	cōnsulibus	patri	patribus	aequorī	aequoribus
<i>Acc.</i> cōnsulem	cōnsulēs	patrem	patrēs	aequor	aequora
<i>Abl.</i> cōnsule	cōnsulibus	patre	patribus	aequore	aequoribus

22. Stems ending in a nasal, *m* or *n*. There is no nominative case-ending, except in *hiems*, the only stem in *-m*. The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final *n* and changes the preceding vowel to *ō*.

	homō, M., F., <i>human being</i> Stem <i>homin-</i>		ratiō, F., <i>reason</i> Stem <i>ratiōn-</i>		flūmen, N., <i>river</i> Stem <i>flūmin-</i>	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
<i>Gen.</i>	hominis	hominum	ratiōnis	ratiōnum	flūminis	flūminum
<i>Dat.</i>	hominī	hominibus	ratiōnī	ratiōnibus	flūminī	flūminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hominem	hominēs	ratiōnem	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
<i>Abl.</i>	homine	hominibus	ratiōne	ratiōnibus	flūmine	flūminibus

23. Stems ending in *s* (apparently *r*, because *s* changes to *r* between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in *s*, sometimes in *r*.

	mōs, M., <i>custom</i> Stem <i>mōs-</i>		honor, M., <i>honor</i> Stem <i>honōs-</i>		tempus, N., <i>time</i> Stem <i>tempos-</i>	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
<i>Gen.</i>	mōris	mōrum	honōris	honōrum	temporis	temporum
<i>Dat.</i>	mōrī	mōribus	honōrī	honōribus	temporī	temporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mōrem	mōrēs	honōrem	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
<i>Abl.</i>	mōre	mōribus	honōre	honōribus	tempore	temporibus

B. i-STEMS

24. Here belong: (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in *-is* or *-ēs* if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative; (2) neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.

25. Theoretically the *i* should appear in most of the cases; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc. *-em*, abl. *-e*, acc. plural either *-ēs* or *-is*. Neuters have abl. *-ī*. All have *-ium* in the gen. plural.

	turris, F., <i>tower</i> Stem <i>turri-</i>	hostis, M., F., <i>enemy</i> Stem <i>hosti-</i>	caedēs, F., <i>slaughter</i> Stem <i>caedi-</i>
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	turris	hostis	caedēs
<i>Gen.</i>	turris	hostis	caedis
<i>Dat.</i>	turri	hostī	caedī
<i>Acc.</i>	turrim or <i>-em</i>	hostem	caedem
<i>Abl.</i>	turri or <i>-e</i>	hoste	caede
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	turrēs	hostēs	caedēs
<i>Gen.</i>	turrium	hostium	caedium
<i>Dat.</i>	turribus	hostibus	caedibus
<i>Acc.</i>	turris or <i>-ēs</i>	hostēs or <i>-is</i>	caedēs or <i>-is</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	turribus	hostibus	caedibus

cubīle, N., couch
Stem **cubīli-**

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	cubīle	cubilia
<i>Gen.</i>	cubilis	cubiliūm
<i>Dat.</i>	cubīlī	cubilibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cubīle	cubilia
<i>Abl.</i>	cubīlī	cubilibus

vectīgal, N., tax
Stem **vectīgāli-**

	SING.	PLUR.
	vectīgal	vectīgālia
	vectīgālis	vectīgālīum
	vectīgālī	vectīgālībus
	vectīgal	vectīgālia
	vectīgālī	vectīgālībus

a. Most nouns in **-is** are declined like **hostis**. **Arar** (for **Araris**), *M.*, the *Saone*, and **Liger** (for **Ligeris**), *M.*, the *Loire*, are declined in the singular like **turris**. **Ignis**, *M.*, *fire*, and **nāvis**, *F.*, *ship*, often have *abl. -ī*. **Mare**, *N.*, *sea*, is declined like **cubīle**, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

C. MIXED STEMS

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from **-i** stems the genitive plural in **-ium** and the accusative plural in **-is**. Here belong most nouns in **-s** and **-x** preceded by any consonant except **p**; **nox**, *night*; and a few other monosyllables.

cliēns, M., retainer
Stem **client-**

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	cliēns	clientēs
<i>Gen.</i>	clientis	clientīum
<i>Dat.</i>	clientī	clientibus
<i>Acc.</i>	clientem	clientēs or -īs
<i>Abl.</i>	cliente	clientibus

urbs, F., city
Stem **urb-**

	SING.	PLUR.
	urbs	urbēs
	urbis	urbīum
	urbī	urbibus
	urbem	urbēs or -īs
	urbe	urbibus

D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

senex, M.,
old man

os, N.,
bone

vīs, F.,
force

bōs, M., F.,
ox, cow

Iuppiter, M.,
Jupiter

SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	senex	os	vīs	bōs	Iuppiter
<i>Gen.</i>	senis	ossis	vīs	bovis	Iovis
<i>Dat.</i>	senī	ossī	vī	bovī	Iovī
<i>Acc.</i>	senem	os	vīm	bovem	Iovem
<i>Abl.</i>	sene	osse	vī	bove	Iove

PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs
<i>Gen.</i>	senum	ossium	vīrium	bovum <i>or</i> boum
<i>Dat.</i>	senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus <i>or</i> būbus
<i>Acc.</i>	senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs
<i>Abl.</i>	senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus <i>or</i> būbus

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (13).

The following rules are useful, though there are some exceptions:

- Masculine* are nouns in -ō (except those in -dō, -gō, and -iō), and -or.
- Feminine* are nouns in -dō, -gō, -iō; -tās, -tūs; and -rs.
- Neuter* are nouns in -e, -al, -ar; -n; and -us.

FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in -u; nominative masculine in -us, nominative neuter in -ū.

passus, M., <i>pace</i>		cornū, N., <i>horn</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	passus	cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	passūs	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	passui	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	passum	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	passū	cornū	cornibus

- Domus**, *house*, **manus**, *hand*, **īdūs**, *Ides*, are feminine.
- The dative singular of nouns in -us sometimes ends in -ū.
- The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in -ubus.
- Domus**, F., *house*, has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs (domī)	domōrum (domuum)
<i>Dat.</i>	domui (domō)	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	domōs (domūs)
<i>Abl.</i>	domō (domū)	domibus
<i>Loc.</i>	domī (<i>at home</i>)	

FIFTH DECLENSION

30. Stem ends in *-ē*; nominative in *-ēs*. Usually feminine.

diēs, M., <i>day</i>			rēs, F., <i>thing</i>	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēi	diērum	reī	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēi	diēbus	reī	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

a. **Diēs** in the singular is either masculine or feminine (feminine usually in the sense of an appointed day); in the plural it is masculine. Its compounds are masculine.

b. The ending of the genitive and dative singular is *-ēi* after a vowel, *-ei* after a consonant. *-ē* is sometimes used instead of either.

c. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. **Acīēs**, **spēs**, and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

ADJECTIVES

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

magnus, *large*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	magnus	magna	magnum	magnī	magnae	magna
<i>Gen.</i>	magnī	magnae	magnī	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	magnō	magnae	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	magnum	magnam	magnum	magnōs	magnās	magna
<i>Abl.</i>	magnō	magnā	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
<i>Voc.</i>	magne	magna	magnum			

liber, *free*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

noster, *our*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
<i>Gen.</i>	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
<i>Abl.</i>	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -IUS

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in -ius and the dative singular in -ī in all genders. These are *alius*, *another*, *sōlus*, *only*, *tōtus*, *whole*, *ūllus*, *any*, *nūllus*, *no*, *ūnus*, *one*, *alter*, *the other*, *uter*, *which* (of two), *neuter*, *neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as of *magnus*. Note the ending -ud in the neuter of *alius*, and that *alterius* is generally used instead of the genitive *alius*.

SINGULAR

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
<i>Gen.</i>	(alius)	(alius)	(alius)	alterius	alterius	alterius
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Acc.</i>	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and i-stems. Adjectives of *three terminations* have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of *two terminations* have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of *one*

termination have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of two or three terminations have only *-ī* in the ablative singular.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

34. Two terminations.

fortior, braver

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Gen.</i>	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>Abl.</i>	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

a. Here belong all comparatives; but *plūs, more*, is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	plūs	plūrēs (-īs)	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

35. One termination.

vetus, old

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Gen.</i>	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
<i>Dat.</i>	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Acc.</i>	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Abl.</i>	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

a. Here belongs *princeps, chief*. *Dives, rich*, *gen. divitis* also belongs here, but has *dītia* for the nominative and accusative neuter plural.

B. i-STEMS

36. Three terminations.

acer, sharp

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs or -īs</i>	<i>ācrēs or -īs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

a. Here belong *celer, swift, equester, equestrian, pedester, pedestrian*; names of months in *-ber*; and a few others.

37. Two terminations.

omnis, all

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs or -īs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

a. Here belong all adjectives in *-is, -e*.

38. One termination.

audāx, bold

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>audācium</i>	<i>audācium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>audācem</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs or -īs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>

oriēs, rising

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>oriēs</i>	<i>oriēs</i>	<i>orientēs</i>	<i>orientia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>orientis</i>	<i>orientis</i>	<i>orientium</i>	<i>orientium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>orientī</i>	<i>orientī</i>	<i>orientibus</i>	<i>orientibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>orientem</i>	<i>oriēs</i>	<i>orientēs or -īs</i>	<i>orientia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>orientē or -ī</i>	<i>orientē or -ī</i>	<i>orientibus</i>	<i>orientibus</i>

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in *-āns* and *-ēns*. Participles usually have the ablative singular in *-ī* only when used as adjectives, in *-e* when used as participles or nouns.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are *-ior*, *-ius*; the superlative, *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um*. They are added to the base of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular).

altus, *high*; *altior*, *-ius*, *higher*; *altissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, *highest*; *fortis*, *brave*; *fortior*, *braver*; *fortissimus*, *bravest*.

40. Adjectives in *-er* form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the *nominative* of the positive.

Ācer, *sharp* (base, *ācr-*), *ācior*, *ācerrimus*.

41. Most adjectives in *-ilis* are compared regularly; as *nōbilis*, *nōbiliar*, *nōbilissimus*. Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the base of the positive. They are *facilis*, *easy*; *difficilis*, *difficult*; *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*; *humilis*, *low*; *gracilis*, *slender*.

Facilis, *facilior*, *facillimus*.

42.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, *melior*, *optimus*, *good*, *better*, *best*.
malus, *peior*, *pessimus*, *bad*, *worse*, *worst*.
magnus, *maior*, *maximus*, *great*, *greater*, *greatest*.
parvus, *minor*, *minimus*, *small*, *less*, *least*.
multus, *plūs*, *plūrimus*, *much*, *more*, *most*.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive, because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

(*citrā*, adv., *on this side*) *citerior*, *citimus*, *hither*, *hithermost*.
(*dē*, prep., *down*) *dēterior*, *dēterrīmus*, *worse*, *worst*.
(*intrā*, prep., *in, within*) *interior*, *intimus*, *inner*, *inmost*.
(*prae*, prep., *before*) *prior*, *prīmus*, *former*, *first*.
(*prope*, adv., *near*) *propior*, *proximus*, *nearer*, *next*.
(*ultrā*, adv., *beyond*) *ulterior*, *ultimus*, *farther*, *farthest*.

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

exterus, *exterior*, *extrēmus* (*extimus*), *outer*, *outmost*.
inferus, *inferior*, *īnīmus* (*īmus*), *lower*, *lowest*.
posterus, *posterior*, *postrēmus* (*postumus*), *latter*, *last*.
superus, *superior*, *suprēmus* (*summus*), *higher*, *highest*.

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in **-us** preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*.

Idōneus, *suitable*; **magis idōneus**, *more suitable*; **maximē idōneus**, *most suitable*.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The *positive* is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base; as **lātus**, *wide*, **lātē**, *widely*: from adjectives of the third declension by adding **-ter** or **-iter** to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in **nt** add only **-er**; as **audāx**, *bold*, **audācter**, *boldly*; **fortis**, *brave*, **fortiter**, *bravely*; **prūdēns**, *prudent*, **prūdentē**, *prudently*. But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as **multum**, *much*, **facile**, *easily*.

b. The *comparative* is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as **lātius**, *more widely*, **audācius**, *more boldly*, **fortius**, *more bravely*, **prudentius**, *more prudently*, **plūs**, *more*, **facilius**, *more easily*.

c. The *superlative* is usually formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the superlative of the adjective; as **lātissimē**, *most widely*, **audācissimē**, *most boldly*, **facillimē**, *most easily*. Less often it is the accusative singular neuter of the superlative of the adjective; as **plūrimum**, *most*.

NUMERALS

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals*, answering the question *how many?* as *one, two*, etc.; *ordinals*, answering the question *which in order?* as, *first, second*, etc.; and *distributives*, answering the question *how many each?* as, *one each, two each*, etc.

Roman Numerals	Cardinal	Ordinal	Distributive
I	ūnus, -a, -um	primus, -a, -um	singuli, -ae, -a
II	duo, -ae, -o	secundus or alter	bīnī
III	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī or trīnī
IV	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
V	quīnque	quīntus	quīnī
VI	sex	sextus	sēnī
VII	septem	septimus	septēnī
VIII	octō	octāvus	octōnī
IX	novem	nōnus	novēnī

X	decem	decimus	dēnī
XI	undecim	undecimus	ūndēnī
XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī
XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
XV	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
XVIII	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus	duodēvicēnī
XIX	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus	ūndēvicēnī
XX	vīgintī	vicēsīmus	vicēnī
XXI	ūnus et vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī ūnus	vicēsīmus prīmus	vicēnī singulī
XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsīmus	duodētricēnī
XXIX	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsīmus	ūndētricēnī
XXX	trīgintā	tricēsīmus	tricēnī
XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēnī
L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	quīnquāgēnī
LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēnī
LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēnī
LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēnī
XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	nōnāgēnī
C	centum	centēsīmus	centēnī
CI	centum (et) ūnus	centēsīmus prīmus	centēnī singulī
CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus	ducēnī
CCC	trecentī	trecentēsīmus	trecēnī
CCCC	quadrīngentī	quadrīngentēsīmus	quadrīngēnī
D	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus	quīngēnī
DC	sescentī	sescentēsīmus	seccēnī
DCC	septīngentī	septīngentēsīmus	septīngēnī
DCCC	octīngentī	octīngentēsīmus	octīngēnī
DCCCC	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus	nōngēnī
M	mille	millēsīmus	singula mīlia
MM	duo mīlia	bis millēsīmus	bīna mīlia

a. The ending **-ēnsīmus** is often used for **-ēsīmus**.

48. Of the cardinals, **ūnus**, **duo**, and **trēs** are declined; **quattuor** to **centum**, inclusive, are indeclinable; **ducentī** to **nōngentī**, inclusive, are declined like the plural of **magnus** (31); **mille** as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of **cubīle** (25) and generally spelled **mīlia**. Ordinals are declined like **magnus**, distributives like the plural of **magnus**.

49. For the declension of **ūnus** see 32. Its plural usually means *only* or *alone*, but is used in the sense of *one* with nouns used only in the plural; as **ūna castra**, *one camp*. **Duo** and **trēs** are declined as follows:

	duo, two			trēs, three	
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by *et*; as *trēs et quadrāgintā*, *three and forty*; or the tens may precede without an *et*; as *quadrāgintā trēs*, *forty-three*. In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without *et*; as *ducenti (et) viginti*, *two hundred (and) twenty*. In combinations of three or more numerals, the order is as in English, without *et*; as *duo milia sescenti viginti sex*, *two thousand six hundred (and) twenty-six*.

PRONOUNS

51.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	First person, <i>ego, I</i>		Second person, <i>tū, you (thou)</i>	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	{nostrum nostrī	tuī	{vestrum vestrī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually *is*, *he*, *ea*, *she*, *id*, *it* (57); or, when *him*, *them*, etc., refer to the subject (163), by the reflexive pronoun of the third person (52).

b. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are the forms used as partitive genitives (101); *nostrī* and *vestrī*, as objective genitives (98).

c. The preposition *cum* is enclitic with personal pronouns; as *nōbīs-cum*, *with us*.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

52. A reflexive pronoun *refers back to* the subject, but cannot *be* the subject of a finite verb; therefore, there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

First person, <i>meī</i> , of myself			Second person, <i>tui</i> , of yourself			Third person, <i>sui</i> , of himself, etc.		
SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī</i>	{ <i>nostrum</i> <i>nostrī</i>	<i>tui</i>	{ <i>vestrum</i> <i>vestrī</i>		<i>sui</i>	<i>sui</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>		<i>sibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>		<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>		<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>	

a. The preposition *cum* is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as *sēcum*, with himself.

53. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

<i>1st pers.</i>	<i>meus</i> , -a, -um, <i>my</i>	<i>noster</i> , -tra, -trum, <i>our</i>
<i>2d pers.</i>	<i>tuus</i> , -a, -um, <i>your</i> (of one)	<i>vester</i> , -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> (of more than one)
<i>3d pers.</i>	{ <i>suus</i> , -a, -um, <i>his, her, its</i> (when referring to the subject)	<i>suus</i> , -a, -um, <i>their</i> (when referring to the subject)
	{ <i>eius</i> (gen. sing. of <i>is</i>) <i>his, her, its</i> (when not referring to the subject)	<i>eōrum</i> , <i>eārum</i> , <i>eōrum</i> (gen. plur. of <i>is</i>) <i>their</i> (when not referring to the subject)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

54. *hic*, *this* (near the speaker)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

55. *iste*, *that* (near the person spoken to)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>iste</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>istīus</i>	<i>istīus</i>	<i>istīus</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>

56. *Ille*, *that* (something more remote) is declined like *iste*.

57. *is, this, that, he, she, it* (unemphatic)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

58. *idem, the same*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	idem	eadem	idem	īdem or eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īdem or eīdem	īdem or eīdem	īdem or eīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īdem or eīdem	īdem or eīdem	īdem or eīdem

59. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, self

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

60. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, who

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. **Quicumque** and **quisquis**, *whoever*, are generalizing relatives. The **quī** of **quicumque** is declined regularly. **Quisquis**, **quicquid** (**quidquid**), and **quōquō** are the only common forms of **quisquis**.

b. The preposition **cum** is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun; as **quibuscum**, *with whom*.

61. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quī, **quae**, **quod**, the adjective *what?* is declined like the relative. **Quis**, **quid**, the substantive *who? what?* is used in the singular.

quis, *who?*

SINGULAR

MAS. AND FEM.

NEUT.

Nom. quis

quid

Gen. cuius

cuius

Dat. cui

cui

Acc. quem

quid

Abl. quō

quō

a. The enclitic **-nam** is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; as **quisnam**, *who, pray?*

62. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The indefinite pronouns are **quis**, **quī**, and their compounds. **Quis** and **quī** in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

SUBSTANTIVE

ADJECTIVE

quis, **quid**, *anyone*

aliquis, **aliquid**, *someone*

quispiam, **quidpiam**, *someone*

quisquam, **quicquam** (**quidquam**),
anyone (abl. sing. and entire plural supplied by **ūllus**, **-a**, **-um**)

quīvis, **quaevis**, **quidvis** }
quīlibet, **quaelibet**, **quidlibet** }
anyone, etc., you like

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quiddam**, *a certain man, woman, thing*

quisque, **quidque**, *each*

quī, **quae** (**qua**), **quod**, *any*
aliquī, **aliqua**, **aliquid**, *some*

quispiam, **quaequam**, **quodpiam**,
some

(adjective supplied by **ūllus**)

quīvis, **quaevis**, **quodvis** }
quīlibet, **quaelibet**, **quodlibet** }
any you like

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, *a certain*

quisque, **quaeque**, **quodque**, *each*

a. In **quī** and **aliquī** the nominative and accusative plural neuter are **qua** (or **quae**) and **aliqua**.

b. In the declension of **quīdam**, **m** becomes **n** before **d**; as **quendam**.

VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

CONJUGATION	FINAL VOWEL OF STEM	PRESENT INFINITIVE
I.	ā	-āre
II.	ē	-ēre
III.	e (i, u)	-ere
IV.	i	-īre

Because the final vowels of the stems are modified by the endings, they are printed in black type in the paradigms, as if they were part of the endings. The parts printed in light type (e.g., laud-, laudāv-, laudāt- in 67) are bases, not stems. Compare 14, a.

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are formed on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the *active*: (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine or the nominative singular neuter of the perfect passive participle (to give the supine stem). For a few verbs which have neither a supine nor a perfect passive participle, the future active participle may be used.

In the *passive* the principal parts are: (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

So, for example, the principal parts of **capiō** are:

capiō, given as the first form of the verb and needed to show to which type of the third conjugation the verb belongs;

capere, given to show that the verb belongs to the third conjugation, and that the present base is **cap-**;

cēpī, given to show that the perfect base is **cēp-**;

captus, given to show that the supine base is **capt-**.

66. CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (irregular verb)

The present stem is *es-* (changing to *er-* before a vowel), or *s-*.

Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present**Present*

<i>sum</i>	<i>sumus</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>estis</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>

<i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>
<i>sīs</i>	<i>sītis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>

*Imperfect**Imperfect*

<i>eram</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
<i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>
<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>

<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>

*Future**Perfect*

<i>erō</i>	<i>erimus</i>
<i>eris</i>	<i>eritis</i>
<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

*Perfect**Past Perfect*

<i>fui</i>	<i>fuiimus</i>
<i>fuisti</i>	<i>fuistis</i>
<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuērunt or -ēre</i>

<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

Past Perfect

IMPERATIVE

<i>fueram</i>	<i>fuerāmus</i>
<i>fuerās</i>	<i>fuerātis</i>
<i>fuerat</i>	<i>fuerant</i>

<i>Pres., 2d pers.</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>este</i>
<i>Fut., 2d pers.</i>	<i>estō</i>	<i>estōte</i>
<i>3d pers.</i>	<i>estō</i>	<i>suntō</i>

Future Perfect

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLE

<i>fuerō</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

<i>Pres. esse</i>	_____
<i>Perf. fuisse</i>	_____
<i>Fut. futūrus (esse) or fore</i>	<i>futūrus</i>

REGULAR VERBS

67.

FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal Parts { *Active:* laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum
 { *Passive:* laudor, laudāri, laudātus sum

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

Present

laudō	laudāmus
laudās	laudātis
laudat	laudant

Présent

laudor	laudāmur
laudāris or -re	laudāmini
laudātur	laudantur

Imperfect

laudābam	laudābāmus
laudābās	laudābātis
laudābat	laudābant

Imperfect

laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābāris or -re	laudābāmini
laudābātur	laudābantur

Future

laudābō	laudābimus
laudābis	laudābitis
laudābit	laudābunt

Future

laudābor	laudābimur
laudāberis or -re	laudābimini
laudābitur	laudābuntur

Perfect

laudāvī	laudāvimus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis
laudāvit	laudāvērunt or -ēre

Perfect

laudātus sum	laudātī sumus
laudātus es	laudātī estis
laudātus est	laudātī sunt

Past Perfect

laudāveram	laudāverāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis
laudāverat	laudāverant

Past Perfect

laudātus eram	laudātī erāmus
laudātus erās	laudātī erātis
laudātus erat	laudātī erant

Future Perfect

laudāverō	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

Future Perfect

laudātus erō	laudātī erimus
laudātus eris	laudātī eritis
laudātus erit	laudātī erunt

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

laudem	laudēmus
laudēs	laudētis
laudet	laudent

Imperfect

laudārem	laudārēmus
laudārēs	laudārētis
laudāret	laudārent

Perfect

laudāverim	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

Past Perfect

laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus
laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis
laudāvisset	laudāvissent

Present

lauder	laudēmur
laudēris or -re	laudēmini
laudētur	laudentur

Imperfect

laudārer	laudārēmur
laudārēris or -re	laudārēmini
laudārētur	laudārentur

Perfect

laudātus sim	laudātī simus
laudātus sis	laudātī sitis
laudātus sit	laudātī sint

Past Perfect

laudātus essem	laudātī essēmus
laudātus essēs	laudātī essētis
laudātus esset	laudātī essent

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> , 2d pers. laudā	laudāte	<i>Pres.</i> , 2d pers. laudāre	laudāmini
<i>Fut.</i> , 2d pers. laudātō	laudātōte	<i>Fut.</i> , 2d pers. laudātor	_____
3d pers. laudātō	laudantō	3d pers. laudātor	laudantor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> laudāre	<i>Pres.</i> laudārī
<i>Perf.</i> laudāvisse	<i>Perf.</i> laudātus esse
<i>Fut.</i> laudātūrus (esse)	<i>Fut.</i> laudātum irī

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i> laudāns	<i>Pres.</i> _____
<i>Perf.</i> _____	<i>Perf.</i> laudātus
<i>Fut.</i> laudātūrus	<i>Fut.</i> laudandus

GERUND .

SUPINE

<i>Gen.</i> laudandī	_____
<i>Dat.</i> laudandō	_____
<i>Acc.</i> laudandūm	<i>Acc.</i> laudātum
<i>Abl.</i> laudandō	<i>Abl.</i> laudātū

68.

SECOND CONJUGATION

Principal Parts { *Active:* moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
 Passive: moneor, monēri, monitus sum

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

Present

moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

Present

moneor	monēmur
monēris or -re	monēmini
monētur	monentur

Imperfect

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

Imperfect

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris or -re	monēbāmini
monēbātur	monēbantur

Future

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

Future

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis or -re	monēbimini
monēbitur	monēbuntur

Perfect

monuī	monuimus
monuisti	monuistis
monuit	monuērunt or -ēre

Perfect

monitus sum	monitī sumus
monitus es	monitī estis
monitus est	monitī sunt

Past Perfect

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

Past Perfect

monitus eram	monitī erāmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis
monitus erat	monitī erant

Future Perfect

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

Future Perfect

monitus erō	monitī erimus
monitus eris	monitī eritis
monitus erit	monitī erunt

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

Imperfect

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

Perfect

monuerim	monuerīmus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

Past Perfect

monuissē	monuissēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

Present

monear	moneāmur
moneāris or -re	moneāmini
moneātur	moneantur

Imperfect

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris or -re	monērēmini
monērētur	monērentur

Perfect

monitus sim	monitī simus
monitus sis	monitī sitis
monitus sit	monitī sint

Past Perfect

monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus esset	monitī essent

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> , 2d pers. monē	monēte	<i>Pres.</i> , 2d pers. monēre	monēmini
<i>Fut.</i> , 2d pers. monētō	monētōte	<i>Fut.</i> , 2d pers. monētor	_____
3d pers. monētō	monentō	3d pers. monētor	monentor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> monēre
<i>Perf.</i> monuisse
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus (esse)

<i>Pres.</i> monērī
<i>Perf.</i> monitus esse
<i>Fut.</i> monitum iri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i> monēns
<i>Perf.</i> _____
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus

<i>Pres.</i> _____
<i>Perf.</i> monitus
<i>Fut.</i> monendus

GERUND

SUPINE

<i>Gen.</i> monendī	_____
<i>Dat.</i> monendō	_____
<i>Acc.</i> monendum	<i>Acc.</i> monitum
<i>Abl.</i> monendō	<i>Abl.</i> monitū

69.

THIRD CONJUGATION

Principal Parts { *Active:* dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum
 Passive: dūcor, dūcī, ductus sum

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

Present

dūcō dūcimus
 dūcis dūcitis
 dūcit dūcunt

Present

dūcor dūcimur
 dūceris or -re dūcimini
 dūcitur dūcuntur

Imperfect

dūcēbam dūcēbāmus
 dūcēbās dūcēbātis
 dūcēbat dūcēbant

Imperfect

dūcēbar dūcēbāmur
 dūcēbāris or -re dūcēbāmini
 dūcēbātur dūcēbantur

Future

dūcam dūcēmus
 dūcēs dūcētis
 dūcet dūcent

Future

dūcar dūcēmur
 dūceris or -re dūcēmini
 dūcētur dūcentur

Perfect

dūxī dūximus
 dūxistī dūxistis
 dūxit dūxērunt or -ēre

Perfect

ductus sum ductī sumus
 ductus es ductī estis
 ductus est ductī sunt

Past Perfect

dūxeram dūxerāmus
 dūxerās dūxerātis
 dūxerat dūxerant

Past Perfect

ductus eram ductī erāmus
 ductus erās ductī erātis
 ductus erat ductī erant

Future Perfect

dūxerō dūxerimus
 dūxeris dūxeritis
 dūxerit dūxerint

Future Perfect

ductus erō ductī erimus
 ductus eris ductī eritis
 ductus erit ductī erunt

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

dūcam	dūcāmus
dūcās	dūcātis
dūcat	dūcant

Imperfect

dūcerem	dūcerēmus
dūcerēs	dūcerētis
dūceret	dūcerent

Perfect

dūxerim	dūxerīmus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

Past Perfect

dūxissem	dūxissemus
dūxisēs	dūxisētis
dūxisset	dūxisent

Present

dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcāris or -re	dūcāmini
dūcātur	dūcantur

Imperfect

dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēris or -re	dūcerēmini
dūcerētur	dūcerentur

Perfect

ductus sim	ductī simus
ductus sis	ductī sitis
ductus sit	ductī sint

Past Perfect

ductus essem	ductī essēmus
ductus essēs	ductī essētis
ductus esset	ductī essent

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> , 2d pers. dūc*	dūcite	<i>Pres.</i> , 2d pers. dūcere	dūcimini
<i>Fut.</i> , 2d pers. dūcitō	dūcitōte	<i>Fut.</i> , 2d pers. dūcitor	_____
3d pers. dūcitō	dūcuntō	3d pers. dūcitor	dūcuntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> dūcere	<i>Pres.</i> dūcī
<i>Perf.</i> dūxisse	<i>Perf.</i> ductus esse
<i>Fut.</i> ductūrus (esse)	<i>Fut.</i> ductum iri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i> dūcēns	<i>Pres.</i> _____
<i>Perf.</i> _____	<i>Perf.</i> ductus
<i>Fut.</i> ductūrus	<i>Fut.</i> dūcendus

GERUND

SUPINE

<i>Gen.</i> dūcendī	_____
<i>Dat.</i> dūcendō	_____
<i>Acc.</i> dūcendum	<i>Acc.</i> ductum
<i>Abl.</i> dūcendō	<i>Abl.</i> ductū

*Irregular for dūce.

70.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Principal Parts { *Active:* audiō, audīre, audivī, audītum
 Passive: audior, audiri, auditus sum

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

Present

audiō audīmus
 audīs auditis
 audit audiunt

Present

audior audīmur
 audiris or -re audimini
 auditur audiuntur

Imperfect

audiēbam audiēbāmus
 audiēbās audiēbātis
 audiēbat audiēbant

Imperfect

audiēbar audiēbāmur
 audiēbāris or -re audiēbāmini
 audiēbātur audiēbantur

Future

audiam audiēmus
 audiēs audiētis
 audiet audient

Future

audiar audiēmur
 audiēris or -re audiēmini
 audiētur audientur

Perfect

audivī audivimus
 audivistī audivistis
 audivit audivērunt or -ēre

Perfect

auditus sum audītī sumus
 auditus es audītī estis
 auditus est audītī sunt

Past Perfect

audiveram audiverāmus
 audiverās audiverātis
 audiverat audiverant

Past Perfect

auditus eram audītī erāmus
 auditus erās audītī erātis
 auditus erat audītī erant

Future Perfect

audiverō audiverimus
 audiveris audiveritis
 audiverit audiverint

Future Perfect

auditus erō audītī erimus
 auditus eris audītī eritis
 auditus erit audītī erunt

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

Imperfect

audirem	audirēmus
audirēs	audirētis
audiret	audirent

Perfect

audiverim	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

Past Perfect

audivissem	audivissēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis
audivisset	audivissent

Present

audiar	audiāmur
audiāris or -re	audiāmini
audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

audirer	audirēmur
audirēris or -re	audirēmini
audirētur	audirentur

Perfect

auditus sim	auditī simus
auditus sis	auditī sitis
auditus sit	auditī sint

Past Perfect

auditus essem	auditī essēmus
auditus essēs	auditī essētis
auditus esset	auditī essent

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> , 2d pers. audi	audite	<i>Pres.</i> , 2d pers. audire	audīmini
<i>Fut.</i> , 2d pers. auditō	auditōtē	<i>Fut.</i> , 2d pers. auditor	—————
3d pers. auditō	audiuntō	3d pers. auditor	audiuntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> audire	<i>Pres.</i> audiri
<i>Perf.</i> audivisse	<i>Perf.</i> auditus esse
<i>Fut.</i> auditūrus (esse)	<i>Fut.</i> auditum iri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i> audiēns	<i>Pres.</i> —————
<i>Perf.</i> —————	<i>Perf.</i> auditus
<i>Fut.</i> auditūrus	<i>Fut.</i> audiendus

GERUND

SUPINE

<i>Gen.</i> audiendī	—————
<i>Dat.</i> audiendō	—————
<i>Acc.</i> audiendum	<i>Acc.</i> auditum
<i>Abl.</i> audiendō	<i>Abl.</i> auditū

71. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -IŌ

These verbs have fourth conjugation endings wherever those endings have two successive vowels; elsewhere they have third conjugation endings.

Principal Parts { *Active:* capiō, capere, cēpī, captum
 Passive: capior, capī, captus sum

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

*Present**Present*

capiō capimus
 capis capitis
 capit capiunt

capior capimur
 caperis or -re capimini
 capitur capiuntur

*Imperfect**Imperfect*

capiēbam capiēbāmus
 capiēbās capiēbātis
 capiēbat capiēbant

capiēbar capiēbāmur
 capiēbāris or -re capiēbāmini
 capiēbātur capiēbantur

*Future**Future*

capiam capiēmus
 capiēs capiētis
 capiet capient

capiar capiēmur
 capiēris or -re capiēmini
 capiētur capientur

*Perfect**Perfect*

cēpī cēpimus
 cēpistī cēpistis
 cēpit cēpērunt or -ēre

captus sum captī sumus
 captus es captī estis
 captus est captī sunt

*Past Perfect**Past Perfect*

cēperam cēperāmus
 cēperās cēperātis
 cēperat cēperant

captus eram captī erāmus
 captus erās captī erātis
 captus erat captī erant

*Future Perfect**Future Perfect*

cēperō cēperimus
 cēperis cēperitis
 cēperit cēperint

captus erō captī erimus
 captus eris captī eritis
 captus erit captī erunt

ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

capiam	capiāmus
capiās	capiātis
capiat	capiant

Imperfect

caperem	caperēmus
caperēs	caperētis
caperet	caperent

Perfect

cēperim	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

Past Perfect

cēpissem	cēpissēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis
cēpisset	cēpissent

Present

capiar	capiāmur
capiāris or -re	capiāmini
capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

caperer	caperēmur
caperēris or -re	caperēmini
caperētur	caperentur

Perfect

captus sim	capti simus
captus sis	capti sitis
captus sit	capti sint

Past Perfect

captus essem	capti essēmus
captus essēs	capti essētis
captus esset	capti essent

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i> , 2d pers. cape	capite	<i>Pres.</i> , 2d pers. capere	capimini
<i>Fut.</i> , 2d pers. capitō	capitōte	<i>Fut.</i> , 2d pers. capitor	_____
3d pers. capitō	capiuntō	3d pers. capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> capere	<i>Pres.</i> capī
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse	<i>Perf.</i> captus esse
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus (esse)	<i>Fut.</i> captum iri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i> capiēns	<i>Pres.</i> _____
<i>Perf.</i> _____	<i>Perf.</i> captus
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus	<i>Fut.</i> capiendus

GERUND

SUPINE

<i>Gen.</i> capiendī	_____
<i>Dat.</i> capiendō	_____
<i>Acc.</i> capiendum	<i>Acc.</i> captum
<i>Abl.</i> capiendō	<i>Abl.</i> captū

CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in *v*, the *v* is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one.

a. Perfects in *-āvi*, *-ēvi*, and *-ōvi*, and the other tenses formed on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop *ve*, *vē*, or *vi* before *r* or *s*.

Laudāstī for *laudāvistī*; *laudāsse* for *laudāvisse*; *dēlērunt* for *dēlēvērunt*; *nōrim* for *nōverim*.

b. Perfects in *-ivī*, and the other tenses formed on the same stem, sometimes drop *v* in all forms. When the resulting combination is *iis* it usually contracts to *īs*.

Audīi for *audivī*; *audieram* for *audiveram*; *audisse* for *audivisse*.

DEPONENT VERBS

73. Dependent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, and supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

<i>hortor, urge</i>	<i>vereor, fear</i>	<i>sequor, follow</i>	<i>partior, share</i>
= <i>laudor</i> (67)	= <i>moneor</i> (68)	= <i>dūcor</i> (69)	= <i>audior</i> (70)

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres. hortārī</i>	<i>verērī</i>	<i>sequī</i>	<i>partīrī</i>
<i>Perf. hortātus esse</i>	<i>veritus esse</i>	<i>secūtus esse</i>	<i>partitus esse</i>
<i>Fut. hortātūrus (esse)</i>	<i>veritūrus (esse)</i>	<i>secūtūrus (esse)</i>	<i>partitūrus (esse)</i>

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. hortāns</i>	<i>verēns</i>	<i>sequēns</i>	<i>partiēns</i>
<i>Perf. hortātus</i>	<i>veritus</i>	<i>secūtus</i>	<i>partitus</i>
<i>Fut. hortātūrus</i>	<i>veritūrus</i>	<i>secūtūrus</i>	<i>partitūrus</i>
<i>Fut. Pass. hortandus</i>	<i>verendus</i>	<i>sequendus</i>	<i>partiendus</i>

GERUND

hortandī, -ō, -um, -ō verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. partiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū partitum, -tū

74.

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses formed on the present stem, passive forms for those formed on the perfect stem.

They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice*
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*
fidō, fidere, fīsus sum, *trust*

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

75. The active periphrastic conjugation expresses *future* or *intended* action. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. laudātūrus sum, I am about to praise, I intend to praise,
Imp. laudātūrus eram, I was about to praise, I intended to praise,
etc.

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses *obligation* or *necessity*. It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. laudandus sum, I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised,
Imp. laudandus eram, I was to be praised, I had to be praised,
etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

77. For the conjugation of *sum* see 66. *Sum* is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *dē*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *prae*, *sub*, *super*. *Praesum* has a present participle, *praesēns*.

78. In *absum*, *sum* is inflected in the same way, but *ā* is used for *ab* before *f*, giving *āfuī*, *āfutūrus*, etc. There is a present participle *ab-sēns*.

79. In *prōsum*, *sum* is inflected in the same way, but the preposition *prō* has its original form *prōd* before all forms of *sum* beginning with *e*; as *prōdesse*, *prōderam*. The present tense is, *prōsum*, *prōdes*, *prōdest*, *prōsumus*, *prōdestis*, *prōsunt*.

POSSUM

80. *Possum*, *be able*, *can*, is a compound of *pot-* and *sum*, in which the combination *ts* always becomes *ss*. Note that the perfect is *potuī*, not *potfui*; the imperfect subjunctive is *possem*, not *potessem*; and the infinitive is *posse*, not *potesse*.

Principal Parts: *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>possum</i>	<i>possumus</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>possim</i>
	<i>potes</i>	<i>potestis</i>		
	<i>potest</i>	<i>possunt</i>		
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>poteram</i>		<i>Imp.</i>	<i>possem</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>poterō</i>			
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>potuī</i>		<i>Perf.</i>	<i>potuerim</i>
<i>Past P.</i>	<i>potueram</i>		<i>Past P.</i>	<i>potuissem</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>potuerō</i>			
INFINITIVE			PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>posse</i>		<i>Pres.</i>	<i>potēns</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>potuisse</i>			

81.

FERŌ

Principal Parts { *Active:* ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
 { *Passive:* feror, ferri, lātus sum

ACTIVE VOICE**PASSIVE VOICE****INDICATIVE**

<i>Pres.</i>	ferō	ferimus	<i>Pres.</i>	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis		ferris	ferimini
	fert	ferunt		fertur	feruntur
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbam		<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbar	
<i>Fut.</i>	feram		<i>Fut.</i>	ferar	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī		<i>Perf.</i>	lātus sum	
<i>Past P.</i>	tuleram		<i>Past P.</i>	lātus eram	
<i>Fut. P.</i>	tulerō		<i>Fut. P.</i>	lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	feram	<i>Pres.</i>	ferar
<i>Imp.</i>	ferrem	<i>Imp.</i>	ferrer
<i>Perf.</i>	tulerim	<i>Perf.</i>	lātus sim
<i>Past P.</i>	tulissem	<i>Past P.</i>	lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres., 2d pers.</i>	fer	ferte	<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferimini
<i>Fut., 2d pers.</i>	fertō	fertōte	<i>Fut.</i>	fertor	feruntor
<i>3d pers.</i>	fertō	feruntō			

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	<i>Pres.</i>	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	<i>Perf.</i>	lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus (esse)	<i>Fut.</i>	lātum iri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	<i>Pres.</i>	_____
<i>Perf.</i>	_____	<i>Perf.</i>	lātus
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus	<i>Fut.</i>	ferendus

GERUND**SUPINE**

ferendī, -ō, -um, -ō lātum, -ū

82.

VOLŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS

<i>Principal Parts</i>	{ volō, velle, voluī, <i>be willing</i>
	{ nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, <i>be unwilling</i>
	{ mālō, mälle, māluī, <i>prefer</i>

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Imp.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam	nōlam	mālam
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Past P.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. P.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
<i>Imp.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Past P.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres., 2d pers.</i>	nōlī	nōlite
<i>Fut., 2d pers.</i>	nōlitō	nōlitōte
<i>3d pers.</i>	nōlitō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mälle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse
<i>Fut.</i>	_____	_____	_____

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns
<i>Perf.</i>	_____	_____
<i>Fut.</i>	_____	_____

FĪŌ

83. **FĪŌ**, *be made, be done, become, happen*, is the irregular passive of **faciō**, *make*. Note the *ī* before all vowels, except before *e* in the combination *-er*.

Principal Parts: fĭō, fierī, factus sum

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	fĭō	fĭmus	<i>Pres.</i>	fĭam
	fĭs	fĭtis		
	fĭt	fĭunt		
<i>Imp.</i>	fĭēbam		<i>Imp.</i>	fierem
<i>Fut.</i>	fĭam			
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum		<i>Perf.</i>	factus sim
<i>Past P.</i>	factus eram		<i>Past P.</i>	factus essem
<i>Fut. P.</i>	factus erō			
IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres.</i>	fĭ, fite	<i>Pres.</i> fierī	<i>Pres.</i>	—————
		<i>Perf.</i> factus esse	<i>Perf.</i>	factus
		<i>Fut.</i> factum irī	<i>Fut.</i>	faciendus

EŌ

84. *Principal Parts: eō, ire, iī, itum*

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	eō	īmus	<i>Pres.</i>	eam
	īs.	ītis		
	it	eunt		
<i>Imp.</i>	ībam		<i>Imp.</i>	īrem
<i>Fut.</i>	ībō			
<i>Perf.</i>	iī (for īvī)		<i>Perf.</i>	ierim
<i>Past P.</i>	ieram		<i>Past P.</i>	īissem or īssem
<i>Fut. P.</i>	ierō			
IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres.</i>	ī, ite	<i>Pres.</i> īre	<i>Pres.</i>	iēns (Gen. euntis)
<i>Fut.</i>	itō, itōte	<i>Perf.</i> īisse or īsse	<i>Perf.</i>	—————
	itō, euntō	<i>Fut.</i> itūrus (esse)	<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus

GERUND
eundī, etc.

SUPINE
itum, -ū

a. In the tenses formed on the perfect stem, *iī* usually contract to *ī* before *s*.

DŌ

85. **Dō, dare, dedī, datum, give**, is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly short **a**. The long vowel, **ā**, appears only in the following forms: **dās, dā, dāns**.

86.

DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects **meminī, I remember; ōdī, I hate; and coepī, I have begun**. Notice that **meminī** and **ōdī** have the meanings of presents. Their past perfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

INDICATIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminī	ōdī	coepī
<i>Past P.</i>	memineram	ōderam	coeperam
<i>Fut. P.</i>	meminerō	ōderō	coeperō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminerim	ōderim	coeperim
<i>Past P.</i>	meminisset	ōdissem	coepissem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Sing.</i>	mementō
<i>Plur.</i>	mementōte

INFINITIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminisse	ōdisse	coepisse
<i>Fut.</i>	_____	ōsūrus (esse)	coeptūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

<i>Perf.</i>	_____	ōsus	coeptus
<i>Fut.</i>	_____	ōsūrus	coeptūrus

a. Instead of **coepī** the passive form **coeptus sum** is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it.

Laudārī coeptus est, he began to be praised.

87.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it*. They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:

- a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as **pluit**, *it rains*.
- b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: **decet**, *it becomes*; **libet**, *it pleases*; **licet**, *it is permitted*; **miseret**, *it causes pity*; **oportet**, *it is right*; **paenitet**, *it repents*; **piget**, *it displeases*; **pudet**, *it shames*; **rēfert**, *it concerns*; **taedet**, *it wearies*. All of these except **rēfert** belong to the second conjugation.
- c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as **accēdit**, *it is added*, from **accēdō**, *I approach*.
- d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as **pugnātur**, *it is fought*.

SYNTAX

Syntax tells how words are put together to form sentences; that is, to express thoughts. It deals very largely with the uses of inflectional forms, because in Latin the connections between words in sentences are shown chiefly by those forms.

SENTENCES

88. A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a complete thought. It consists of at least two parts—the *subject* (that of which something is said), and the *predicate* (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory as in English.

89. A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate.

Caesar vēnit, Caesar came.

90. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences of equal value. These sentences are called *coördinate clauses*, and are connected by *coördinating conjunctions*; i.e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *and, but, for, or*.

Caesar vēnit et Galli fūgērunt, Caesar came and the Gauls fled.

91. A Complex Sentence consists of a simple sentence (called a *principal clause*), modified by one or more dependent sentences (called *subordinate or dependent clauses*). The clauses are connected by relative pronouns or by *subordinating conjunctions*; i.e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before*.

Ubi Caesar vēnit, Galli fūgērunt, when Caesar came, the Gauls fled.

SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES

USES OF CASES

92. The cases show in what relation to the rest of a sentence a declined word stands. This is shown in English almost entirely by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending 's in *the soldier's arms* indicates that *soldier* modifies *arms* and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences *the soldier* (subject) *fights*, *he kills the soldier* (direct object), *he gives the soldier* (indirect object) *a sword*, only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin *miles* would be used in the first sentence, *militem* in the second, and *militi* in the third.

93. But each of the cases, except the nominative and the vocative, expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. E. g., the accusative may express duration of time, but *militem*, *a soldier*, could not be used in this sense, while *multōs annōs*, *many years*, is quite probably so used. *Dīcit pīlum militem vulnerāvisse* might mean either *he says that a javelin wounded the soldier*, or *that a soldier wounded the javelin*, but the latter makes no sense. *Persuāsit*, *he persuaded*, needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English.

Ā milite interfectus est, *he was killed by a soldier*; *cum milite vēnit*, *he came in company with a soldier*.

95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

GENERAL RULE: *A noun which explains another noun and means the same person or thing is put in the same case.*

Compare 97. Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

a. **RULE:** *A predicate noun is connected with the subject by sum or a verb of similar meaning.*

Such verbs are those meaning *appear*, *become*, *seem*, *be called*, *be chosen*, *be made*, *be regarded*, and the like.

Pisō fuit cōsul, Piso was consul; Pisō factus est cōsul, Piso became consul; Pisō appellātus est cōsul, Piso was called consul.

b. RULE: An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb.

Pisō, cōsul, militī Pisōnī gladium dedit, Piso, the consul, gave a sword to Piso, the soldier.

96.

NOMINATIVE

RULE: The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i.e., the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative moods).

Gallia est dīvīsa (I, 1, 1), Gaul is divided.

GENITIVE

A. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

97. GENERAL RULE: A noun which limits another noun and does not mean the same person or thing (compare 95) is put in the genitive.

The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by *of*, but often by *for* or by other prepositions. These combinations of nouns are divided, according to their meanings, into the groups given in 98-105.

A genitive may be either (a) *attributive*, depending directly upon another noun; as *domus Caesaris*, *Caesar's house*; or (b) *predicative*, connected by *sum* or a verb of similar meaning; as *domus est Caesaris*, *the house is Caesar's*.

a. Appositional Genitive. But the genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i.e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends.

Tuōrum comitum sentīna (Cic. Cat. I, 12), that refuse, your comrades.

ATTRIBUTIVE

98. Subjective and Objective Genitives.

RULE: The genitive may express either the subject or the object of an action expressed by a noun.

The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject, it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object, it is an objective genitive. E. g., *amor patris*, *the love of the father*, may imply that *the father loves* (subjective), or that *someone loves his father* (objective).

Occāsum sōlis (I, 1, 22), the setting of the sun (subjective); rēgnī cupiditāte (I, 2, 2), by desire for power (objective).

99. Possessive Genitive.

RULE: *The genitive may express the possessor.*

The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns.

Finibus Belgārum (I, 1, 16), *by the territory of the Belgae*; **finibus vestrīs**, *by your territory*.

a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede **causā** or **grātiā**, *for the sake of*.

Huius potentiae causā (I, 18, 14), *for the sake of this power*; **meā causā**, *for my sake*.

100. Descriptive Genitive.

RULE: *The genitive modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing.*

The ablative is used in the same way, with no difference of meaning (141); but if the description is a measure, the genitive is always used.

Vir magnae sapientiae (or **magnā sapientiā**), *a man of great wisdom*; **trium mēnsium molita cibāria** (I, 5, 7), *provisions for three months*.

101. Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).

RULE: *The genitive may express the whole of which a part is mentioned.*

This genitive may depend on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole.

Eōrum ūna pars (I, 1, 14), *one part of them*; **hōrum omnium fortissimī** (I, 1, 5), *the bravest of all these*; **ubinam gentium sumus** (Cic. Cat. I, 9), *where in the world are we?*

a. Note especially the genitive of a noun, or of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on **satis** used substantively.

Quantum bonī (I, 40, 17), *how much (of) good*; **satis causae** (I, 19, 6), *sufficient (of) reason*.

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with **dē** or **ex** is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with **quidam**.

Ūnus ē filiīs captus est (I, 26, 12), *one of his sons was captured*.

c. English often uses *of* in apparently similar phrases, especially with "all," when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive.

Hī omnēs (I, 1, 3), *all of these*.

102. Genitive of Material.

RULE: *The genitive may express the material of which a thing is composed.*

*Acie*m legiōnum quattuor (I, 24, 3), *a battle line (consisting) of four legions.*

PREDICATIVE

103. Possessive Genitive. The possessive genitive (99) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as *est hominis*, *it is the part (duty, characteristic) of a man.*

Est hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis (IV, 5, 4), *this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs.*

104. Descriptive Genitive. The descriptive genitive (100) is often used predicatively.

Senātūs cōsultum est huiusce modī, *the decree is of this kind.*

105. The Genitive of Value. With *sum* and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of *valuing*, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (147). The words commonly so used are *magnī, parvī, tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris.*

Tantī eius grātiām esse ostendit (I, 20, 14), *he assured him that his friendship was of such value.*

B. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

106. RULE: *Many adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning.*

They are:

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as *conscious (of)*, *desirous (of)*, *mindful (of)*, *sharing (in)*, *skilled (in)*, and their opposites, and *plēnus*, *full (of)*.

Bellandī cupidī (I, 2, 13), *desirous of fighting*; *reī militāris peritissimus* (I, 21, 9), *most skilled in military science.*

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative. (122), *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*. The genitive is more common of living objects, and always used of personal pronouns.

Tuī similis (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *like you*; *vērī simile* (III, 13, 11), *probable (like the truth).*

c. Occasionally other adjectives.

Locum medium utriusque (I, 34, 2), *a place midway between the two.*

C. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

RULE: *Memini* and *reminiscor*, *remember*, and *obliscor*, *forget*, govern either the genitive or the accusative.

Personal and reflexive pronouns are genitive; neuter pronouns and adjectives used as nouns are accusative; other words vary. *Recordor*, *remember*, takes only the accusative.

Reminisceretur veteris incommodi (I, 13, 10), *he should remember the former disaster*; *veteris contumeliae oblivisci* (I, 14, 7), *to forget the former insult*.

108. Verbs of Judicial Action.

RULE: *Verbs of accusing, acquitting, convicting, and condemning* take a genitive of the charge.

The penalty is expressed by the ablative.

Mē inertiae condemnō (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity*.

109. Verbs of Emotion.

RULE: *The impersonal verbs miseret, pity, paenitet, repent, piget, dislike, pudet, be ashamed, taedet, be disgusted, take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling.*

The personal verb *misereor*, *pity*, also takes the genitive.

Mē meōrum factōrum numquam paenitēbit (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *I shall never repent of my deeds*; *mē eius miseret* or *eius misereor*, *I pity him*.

110. Interest and Rēfert.

RULE: *The impersonal verbs interest and rēfert, it concerns, it is to the interest of, take the genitive of the person concerned.*

But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, *interest* is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun.

Reī publicae intersit (II, 5, 5), *it is to the interest of the state*; *meā interest*, *it is to my interest*.

111. **RULE:** *Potior occasionally governs the genitive.*

For *potior* with the ablative see 145.

Galliae potiri (I, 3, 22), *to become masters of Gaul*.

THE DATIVE

112. The dative usually indicates the *person* to whom or *for* whom something is done; but in **119** the dative always denotes a *thing*, and it sometimes does so elsewhere. The dative may depend on a verb (Indirect Object) or an adjective, or may modify a whole clause without depending on any one word (Dative of Reference).

113. Indirect Object.

GENERAL RULE: *The dative denotes the person (or thing) to whom something is said, given, shown, etc.*

For examples, see **114**, **115**, and **116**.

114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.

RULE: *Many verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object.*

These are especially verbs of *giving* and *saying*. For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see **116**.

Eī filiam dat (I, 3, 15), *he gives (to) him his daughter.*

a. *Dōnō*, *give*, *present*, and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing.

Eī librum dōnō, *I give (to) him a book*; *eum librō dōnō*, *I present him with a book.*

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially *cōsulō*, *consult* or *consult for*, and *metuō*, *fear* or *fear for*.

Sī mē cōsulis (Cic. Cat. I, 13), *if you consult me (ask my advice)*; *cōsulite vōbīs* (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), *consult for yourselves (for your own interests)*.

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice.

Eī filia datur, *his daughter is given to him.*

115. Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. The dative is used with all intransitive verbs whose meaning permits. Many of these verbs seem to be transitive in English, so that the indirect object must be translated by the English direct object.

RULE: *The dative is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten, and the like.*

The most common of these verbs in Caesar are: **imperō**, *command* (give orders to); **noceō**, *injure* (do harm to); **persuādeō**, *persuade* (make agreeable to); **resistō**, *resist* (stand up to); **studeō**, *desire* (be eager for).

Civitatī persuāsīt (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the state*; **novīs rēbus studēbat** (I, 9, 8), *he was anxious for a revolution*.

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as **audiēns** *sum*, *obey*, and **fidem habēre**, *trust*.

Cui fidem habēbat (I, 19, 15), *whom he trusted*.

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun.

Prōvinciaē militum numerum imperat (I, 7, 4), *he levies a number of soldiers on the province*; **id iīs persuāsīt** (I, 2, 6), *he persuaded them to this* (lit., *he persuaded this to them*).

c. Some verbs with the meanings given above take the direct object instead of the indirect. The most important are **dēlectō**, *delight*; **iubeō**, *command*; **iuvō**, *please*; **vetō**, *forbid*.

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (124, b), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of 115 can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. E.g., **Caesarī persuādeō**, *I persuade Caesar*, becomes **Caesarī ā mē persuādētur**, *Caesar is persuaded by me* (lit. *it is persuaded to Caesar*).

transitive - acc. thing which has feeling
116. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I. 'Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the simple verb is transitive, the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by *from*, it is sometimes called the *dative of separation*.

This so-called dative of separation is common only with **adimō**, **auferō**, **dētrahō**, and **ēripiō**, all meaning *take away*.

RULE: *The dative is required with many compounds of ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super; and with some compounds of ab, circum, and ex.*

Cum omnibus praestārent (I, 2, 5), *since they excelled all*; **finitimīs bellum inferre** (I, 2, 12), *to make war upon their neighbors*; **mūnitiōnī Labiēnum praeficit** (I, 10, 7), *he puts Labienus in command of the works*; **scūtō militi dētractō** (II, 25, 13), *having snatched a shield from a soldier*.

II. RULE: *The dative is used with compounds of satis and bene.*

Si Haedui satisfaciant (I, 14, 19), *if they should make restitution to the Haedui.*

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs **aggredior**, *attack*; **incendō**, *burn*; **interficiō**, *kill*; **oppugnō**, *assault*; but there are many others.

Eōs aggressus (I, 12, 9), *having attacked (or attacking) them.*

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed.

Illum in equum intulit (VI, 30, 15), *he put him on a horse.*

c. The dative is retained with the passive.

Mūnitiōnī Labiēnus praeficitur, *Labienus is put in command of the works.*

117. Dative of Possession.

RULE: *The dative is used in the predicate with sum to denote the possessor.*

It may be translated as a nominative with the verb *have*.

Mihi est liber, *I have a book* (lit. *a book is to me*); **dēmōnstrant sibi nihil esse** (I, 11, 12), *they declared that they had nothing* (lit. *there was nothing to them*).

118. Dative of the Agent.

RULE: *The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation (76) to express the agent.*

Compare the ablative of the agent (137), which is used with the other forms of the passive.

Nōn expectandum sibi statuit (I, 11, 13), *he decided that he must not wait* (lit. *that it must not be waited by him*).

a. The ablative of the agent (137) is often used with the passive periphrastic, especially if the dative would be ambiguous.

Civitatī ā tē persuādendum est, *the state must be persuaded by you.*

119. Dative of Purpose.

RULE: *The dative may express purpose or tendency.*

The true dative of purpose is especially common in phrases meaning *to go, come, or send for an aid or guard* (**auxiliō**, **praesidiō**, **subsidiō**); *to*

choose a place for a camp, etc. (*castris*, etc.); to set a day for a conference, etc. (*colloquiō*, etc.).

Quem auxiliō Caesarī miserant (I, 18, 27), *whom they had sent to aid Caesar* (lit. *for an aid to Caesar*).

a. Predicative Dative. The dative of certain nouns is used regularly with *sum* where a predicate nominative would seem more natural. It is often used in connection with another dative (of possession or reference). The most common of these idiomatic datives are *auxiliō*, *cūrae*, *praesidiō*, *subsidiō*, *ūsui*; but there are many others.

Qui novissimis praesidiō erant (I, 25, 14), *who were* (for) *a guard for the rear*; *Gallis erat impedimentō* (I, 25, 5), *it was* (for) *a disadvantage to the Gauls*.

120. Dative of Reference.

RULE: The dative may name the person with reference to whom the statement is made.

This dative does not depend on any one word (compare 113) but loosely modifies the whole predicate. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun.

Cibaria sibi quemque efferre iubent (I, 5, 8), *they order each one to carry food for himself*; *sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt* (I, 31, 4), *they cast themselves at Caesar's feet* (lit. *at the feet for Caesar*).

121. Ethical Dative. The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns.

Tongilium mihi ēdūxit (Cic. Cat. II, 4), *he took me out Tongilius*, *he took out my Tongilius*, or simply *he took out Tongilius*.

122. Dative with Adjectives.

RULE: The dative is used with most adjectives whose English translation takes to or for.

These are chiefly adjectives meaning *friendly* or *unfriendly*, *like* or *unlike*, *useful* or *useless*, *equal*, *near*, and *suitable*.

Plēbī acceptus (I, 3, 14), *acceptable* (*pleasing*) *to the people*; *proximī sunt Germānis* (I, 1, 9), *they are nearest to the Germans*; *castris idōneum locum* (VI, 10, 5), *a place suitable for a camp*.

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative.

Ad amicitiam idōneus, *suitable for friendship*.

b. The adjectives **propior** and **proximus** and the adverbs **propius** and **proximē** sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition **prope**.

Proximī Rhēnum (I, 54, 3), *nearest the Rhine*

c. For **similis** and **dissimilis** see 106, b.

ACCUSATIVE

123. Subject of Infinitive.

RULE: *The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.*

Certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse (I, 12, 5), *he was informed that the Helvetii had led across.*

124. Direct Object.

RULE: *The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object.*

The direct object may be either (a) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as **puerum laudat**, *he praises the boy*; or (b) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as **coniūrātiōnem fēcit**, *he made a conspiracy*.

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (228, 229, 262, 279).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive; as **puer laudātur**, *the boy is praised*; **coniūrātiō facta est**, *a conspiracy was made*.

c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially **ad**, **circum**, **in**, **per**, **praeter**, **sub**, **trāns**, have transitive meanings. E.g., **īre**, *to go*, is intransitive; but **flūmen trānsire**, *to cross (go across) the river*, is transitive.

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially 115.

THREE CLASSES OF VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES (125-127)

125. Two Objects. A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. **RULE:** *Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, (also cēlō, I conceal) have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person.*

But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab**.

Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre (I, 16, 1), *he kept asking the Haedui for*

the grain; eadem ab aliis quaerit (I, 18, 5), *he asked the same questions of others.*

b. RULE: Moneō, I warn, advise, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing.

The pronoun is an *inner accusative* (128, a).

Eōs hoc moneō (Cic. Cat. II, 20), *I give them this advice; sī quid ille sē velit* (I, 34, 6), *if he wanted anything of him.*

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained.

Haeduī frūmentum flāgitābantur, the Haedui were asked for the grain; (ii) hoc monentur, they are given this advice.

126. Object and Predicate Accusative.

RULE: Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing oneself, and the like, take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing.

The predicate accusative may be either a noun or an adjective.

Quem rēgem cōstituerat (IV, 21, 13), *whom he had appointed king; Caesarem certiōrem fēcit, he informed Caesar (made Caesar more certain).*

a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (95, a).

Quī rēx cōstitūtus erat, who had been appointed king; Caesar certior factus est (I, 12, 5), *Caesar was informed (made more certain).*

127. Two Objects with Compounds.

RULE: Transitive verbs compounded with trāns may take one object depending on the verb, another depending on the preposition.

Trēs partēs flūmen trādūxērunt (cf. I, 12, 5), *they led three parts across the river.*

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verb becomes the subject, the object of the preposition is retained.

Trēs partēs flūmen trāductae sunt, three parts were led across the river.

128. Cognate Accusative.

RULE: An intransitive verb may take an accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or genitive.

Eam vītam vivere, to live that life; trīduī vīam prōcēdere (cf. I, 38, 3), *to advance a three days' march,*

a. A neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective is often used in a similar way. This is sometimes called an *inner accusative*.

Id iis persuāsit (I, 2, 6), *he persuaded them of this* (lit. *he persuaded this to them*); **multum posse**, *to have much power*.

b. Adverbial Accusative. A few accusatives are commonly called adverbial. They are partly inner accusatives (see *a*), partly accusatives of extent, like the examples under 130 except that they are less definite. The commonest are **quid**, *why? how?* **multum**, *much*; **paulum**, *a little*; **plūs**, *more*; **plūrimum**, *most*; **plērumque**, *for the most part*; **nihil**, *not at all*. Here belong also **id temporis** (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *at that time*, and **maximam partem** (IV, 1, 14), *for the most part*.

129. Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE: *An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation.*

O fortunātam rem publicam (Cic. Cat. II, 7), *O fortunate state!*

130. Accusative of Extent.

RULE: *The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.*

The noun must be one meaning time or distance; as **diēs**, *day*; **pēs**, *foot*. Compare 152 and 148.

Rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat (I, 3, 10), *he had held the royal power many years*; **mīlia passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patēbant** (I, 2, 16), *extended two hundred and forty miles*.

131. Place to Which.

RULE: *Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with ad or in, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Ad iūdicium cōēgit (I, 4, 4), *he brought to the trial*; **in agrum Nōricum trānsierant** (I, 5, 11), *they had crossed over into the Noreian territory*; **sē Massiliam cōferet** (Cic. Cat. II, 14), *he will go to Marseilles*; **domum reditiōnis** (I, 5, 6), *of a return home*.

a. Ad is, however, sometimes used with names of towns in the sense of *toward* (not *to*), or *to the neighborhood of*.

Ad Genavam pervenit (I, 7, 4), *he reached the neighborhood of Geneva*.

132.

VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. This form is the same as the nominative; but see 16.

Dēsīlite, commilitōnēs (IV, 25, 11), *jump down, comrades*.

133.

ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has—the instrumental and the locative. The *original ablative* meant separation (*from*), the *instrumental* meant association or instrument (*with* or *by*), and the *locative* meant place where (*in*). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases. This fact accounts for the many and widely differing uses which the case has.

134. Ablative of Separation.

RULE: *Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, with or without ab, dē, or ex.*

With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see 116, I.

Suis finibus eōs prohibent (I, 1, 13), *they repel them from their own territory*; quae hostem ā pugnā prohibērent (IV, 34, 9), *which kept the enemy from battle*; ā Bibracte aberat (I, 23, 2), *he was distant from Bibracte*.

a. Place from Which.

Rule: *With verbs expressing motion, place from which is expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Ut dē finibus suis exirent (I, 2, 4), *to go out from their territory*; quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant (I, 8, 2), *who had gathered from the province*; Rōmā profūgērunt (Cic. Cat. I, 7), *they fled from Rome*; domō exire (I, 6, 1), *to go out from home*.

Ab is, however, used with names of towns to express *from the neighborhood of*.

b. **RULE:** *With verbs and adjectives of depriving, freeing, being without, and the like, the ablative without a preposition is generally used.*

Magnō mē metū liberābis (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will free me of great fear*; proeliō abstinēbat (I, 22, 11), *refused battle* (lit. *refrained from battle*); eā spē dēiectī (I, 8, 4), *deprived of this hope*.

135. Ablative of Source.

RULE: *The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles nātus and ortus, to express parentage or rank.*

Amplissimō genere nātus (IV, 12, 13), *born of the highest rank*; sorōrem ex mātē (nātam) (I, 18, 16), *his sister on his mother's side*.

136. Ablative of Material.

RULE: The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with ex, less often dē.

Nāvēs factae ex rōbore (III, 13, 5), the ships were made of oak.

137. Ablative of Agent.

RULE: The agent of the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ab.

The agent is the person who performs the act. Compare the ablative of means (143), and the dative of agent (118).

Exercitum ab Helvētiīs pulsum (I, 7, 13), that his army had been routed by the Helvetiī.

138. Ablative of Cause.

RULE: Cause may be expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition.

Grātiā et largitiōne (I, 9, 5), because of his popularity and lavish giving; quod suā victoriā glōriārentur (I, 14, 11), that they boasted (because) of their victory.

a. Cause is more frequently expressed by the accusative with ob, per, or propter; or by dē or ex with the ablative.

Propter angustias (I, 9, 2), because of its narrowness; quā dē causā (I, 1, 11), and for this reason.

139. Ablative of Comparison.

RULE: With comparatives, "than" may be expressed by the ablative.

Lūce sunt clāriōra tua cōsilia (Cic. Cat. I, 6), your plans are clearer than day; nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum (I, 15, 14), not more than five or six miles (compare b).

This is not to be confused with the ablative of degree of difference (148).

a. When quam is used for than, the two nouns compared are in the same case. The ablative is generally used only when the first noun is nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negated.

b. Plūs, minus, amplius, and longius are often used instead of plūs quam, etc.

Quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore (V, 8, 19), of which more than 800 had been in sight at one time.

140. Ablative of Accompaniment.

RULE: Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.

Ut cum omnibus cōpiis exirent (I, 2, 4), *to go out with all their troops.*

a. It is said that **cum** is sometimes omitted in military phrases. Such phrases are really the ablative of manner (142).

Omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt (II, 19, 17), *they dashed out in full force.*

141. Descriptive Ablative.

RULE: The ablative modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing.

Hominēs inimicō animō (I, 7, 15), *men of unfriendly disposition*; nōndum bonō animō vidērentur (I, 6, 11), *they did not yet seem (to be) well disposed (of a good spirit)*. Compare the descriptive genitive (100).

142. Ablative of Manner.

RULE: Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either cum or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.

Pars cum cruciātū necābātur (V, 45, 5), *some were killed with torture*; magnīs itineribus (I, 10, 8), *by forced marches.*

a. *Ablative of Accordance.*

RULE: In some common phrases the ablative means "in accordance with."

These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive—cōsuetūdine, iūre, iussū (iniussū), lēge, mōribus, sententiā, sponte, voluntāte.

Mōribus suis (I, 4, 1), *in accordance with their customs*; suā voluntāte (I, 20, 11), *in accordance with his wish.*

b. *Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.*

RULE: Sometimes the ablative expresses situation or an attendant circumstance.

Imperiō populī Rōmānī (I, 18, 22), *under the sovereignty of the Roman people*; intervāllō pedum duōrum iungēbat (IV, 17, 9), *he joined at a distance apart of two feet.*

143. Ablative of Means.

RULE: The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Rēgnī cupiditāte inductus (I, 2, 2), *influenced by the desire for royal power.*

a. Notice the ablative with the following words: verbs and adjectives of *filling* (except *plēnus*, 106); *fidō*, *cōfidō*, *trust in*; *nitor*, *rely upon*; *laccessō* (*proeliō*), *provoke (to battle)*; *assuēfactus*, *assuētus*, *accustomed to*; *frētus*, *relying upon*.

Nātūrā loci cōfidēbant (III, 9, 12), *they trusted in the nature of the country*; *nūllō officiō assuēfacti* (IV, 1, 17), *accustomed to no obedience*.

144. Ablative of the Way.

RULE: *The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means.*

Quod flūmine Ararī subvexerat (I, 16, 5), *which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone*; *eōdem itinere contendit* (I, 21, 8), *he advanced by the same road*.

145. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs.

RULE: *The ablative is used with ūtor, use, fruor, enjoy, fungor, perform, fulfill, potior, get possession of, vēscor, eat, and their compounds.*

Eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō (I, 5, 9), *adopting (having used) the same plan*; *imperio potiri* (I, 2, 6), *to get possession of the government*.

146. Ablative with *opus est*.

RULE: *The ablative of means is used with opus est and ūsus est, meaning there is need of.*

Caesarī multīs auxiliīs opus est, *Caesar needs many auxiliaries*.

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with *opus* as predicate noun.

Sī quid opus esset (I, 34, 5), *if he needed anything*.

b. Sometimes the ablative neuter of the perfect passive participle is used with *opus est*.

Sī opus factō esset (I, 42, 19), *if there should be need of action*.

147. Ablative of Price.

RULE: *With verbs of buying, selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.*

Parvō pretiō redēmta (I, 18, 9), *bought up at a low price*. Compare the genitive of value, 105.

148. Ablative of Degree of Difference.

RULE: *The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the degree of difference.*

Nihilō minus (I, 5, 1), lit. *less by nothing = nevertheless*; **paucīs ante diēbus** (I, 18, 25), *a few days before* (lit. *before by a few days*).

Multō, *by much, much*, **paulō**, *by a little, a little*, and similar words belong here, though often called adverbs.

a. **Eō . . . quō**, in this construction, may be translated *the . . . the*.

Eō grāvius ferre quō minus meritō accidissent (I, 14, 3), lit. *he endured them with more anger by that amount by which they had happened less deservedly = he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened*.

149. Ablative of Specification.

RULE: *The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true.*

Lingūa inter sē differunt (I, 1, 3), *they differ in language*; **maior nātū**, *older (greater in birth)*.

a. The ablative is used with **dignus**, *worthy*, and **indignus**, *unworthy*.

Ipsīs indignum (V, 35, 11), *unworthy of themselves*.

150. Ablative Absolute.

RULE: *A noun and a participle in the ablative may be used instead of a clause.*

RULE: *Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand in the ablative absolute when the English would connect them by the word "being."*

Remember that **sum** has no present participle, so that Latin has no word for "being."

The construction is called absolute (from **absolvō**, *I set free*) because it is free from dependence on any word.

It may always be translated by the English nominative absolute, translating first the noun, then the participle; as **captā urbe**, *the city having been taken*; **illō licente** (I, 18, 10), *he bidding*; or supplying "being" between two nouns or a noun and adjective; as **Caesare cōsule**, *Caesar being consul*. But it is usually best to translate it in some other way.

Remōtīs equīs proelium commisit (I, 25, 2), lit. *the horses having been sent away*, better, *having sent away the horses*, or *he sent away the horses and began the battle*; **M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus** (I, 2, 2), *in the consulship of*, etc.; **Sēquanīs invītīs ire nōn poterant** (I, 9, 1), lit. *the Sequani being unwilling*, better *if the Sequani should refuse, they could not go*; **monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat** (I, 22, 11), lit. *the mountain having been occupied*, better, *though he had occupied the mountain, he waited for our men*.

151. Place in Which.

RULE: *Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with in.*

In eōrum finibus bellum gerunt (I, 1, 13), *they fight in their territory.*

a. **RULE:** *Names of towns and small islands stand in the locative (15, b; 16, b) if they are singular nouns of the first and second declensions; otherwise, in the ablative without a preposition.*

The locatives **domī**, *at home*, and **rūrī**, *in the country*, are also in regular use.

Samarobrivae (V, 24, 1), *at Samarobriva*; **domī largiter posse** (I, 18, 13), *he had great influence at home.*

b. **RULE:** *No preposition is regularly used with locō, locīs, parte, partibus when accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent genitive; or with any noun modified by tōtus.*

Nōn nullīs locīs trānsitur (I, 6, 8), *is crossed in several places*; **vulgō tōtis castrīs** (I, 39, 17), *everywhere throughout the entire camp.*

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So **ab** and **ex** are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used instead of the ablative with **in** if the construction is at all appropriate.

Ūnā ex parte (I, 2, 7), *on one side*; **cotidiānīs proeliīs contendunt** (I, 1, 12), *they contend in (by means of) daily battles*; **memoriā tenēbat** (I, 7, 12), *he held in (by means of) memory.*

152. Ablative of Time.

RULE: *Time at or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Eō tempore (I, 3, 14), *at that time*; **id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfecerant** (I, 13, 4), *a thing which they had barely accomplished in (within) twenty days.*

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. See 130.

Eā tōtā nocte ierunt (I, 26, 13), *they marched during that whole night.*

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

153. Ablative. The following prepositions govern the ablative: **ab**, **absque**, **cōram**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex**, **prae**, **prō**, **sine**, **tenus**.

a. The forms **ab** and **ex** must be used before words beginning with a vowel or **h**. It is always safe to use **ā** and **ē** before words beginning with a consonant, though **ab** and **ex** are often found.

b. **Cum** is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative.

154. Accusative or Ablative. In and sub with the accusative imply motion from outside *into* and *under*, respectively; with the ablative they mean *in* and *under*. **Super** with the accusative means *above*; with the ablative, *concerning*.

155. Accusative. All other prepositions govern the accusative.

USES OF ADJECTIVES

156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

A *predicate* adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb **sum** or a verb of similar meaning (see **95, a**); as **flūmen est lātum**, *the river is wide*. An *attributive* adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as **flūmen lātum**, *the wide river*.

157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

RULE: *Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

Homō bonus, *a good man*; **mulieri bonae**, *to a good woman*; **bellōrum magnōrum**, *of great wars*.

a. An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns—

1. If attributive, regularly agrees with the nearest noun.

Vir bonus et mulier, *a good man and woman*; **bella et victōriae magnae**, *great wars and victories*.

2. If predicative, regularly agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter, unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter.

Hominēs et mōrēs sunt bonī, *the men and their characters are good*; **hominēs et arma sunt magnī**, *the men and their arms are large*; **montēs et flūmina sunt magna**, *the mountains and rivers are large*.

158. ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY

Adjectives are sometimes used as nouns in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of *man* or *men*, and the feminine in the sense of *woman* or *women*. The

neuter is used in the sense of *thing* or *things*, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the partitive genitive (101, a).

Multi, *many men*; **multōrum**, *of many men*; **multae**, *many women*; **multārum**, *of many women*; **multa**, *many things*; **multārum rērum**, *of many things*.

159.

ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object.

Invītus vēnit, lit. *he came unwilling* = *he came unwillingly* or *he was unwilling to come*; **primus vēnit**, lit. *he the first came* = *he came first*, or *he was the first to come*.

160.

ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean only a part of an object. The most common of these are: **imū**, **infimū**, *the bottom of*; **mediū**, *the middle of*; **summū**, *the top of*; **primū**, *the first part of*; **extrēmū**, *the last part of*; **reliquū**, *the rest of*.

In colle mediō (I, 24, 3), *on the middle of (half way up) the slope*; **summū mōns** (I, 22, 1), *the top of the mountain*; **primā nocte** (I, 27, 12), *in the first part of the night*; **multō diē**, *late in the day*.

161.

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by *quite*, *rather*, *somewhat*, or *too*, the superlative by *very*.

Diūturniorem impūnitātem (I, 14, 15), *quite long immunity*; **cupidiū īsecūtī** (I, 15, 5), *following too eagerly*; **monte Iūrā altissimō** (I, 2, 9), *by the very high mountain, Jura*.

a. The superlative is often strengthened by **quam**, with or without a form of **possum**.

Quam maximum numerum (I, 3, 3), **quam maximum potest numerum** (I, 7, 4), *as great a number as possible*, or *the greatest possible number*.

USES OF PRONOUNS

162. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun (51) is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast.

Ego maneō, tū abīs, I remain, you go.

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as is done in English.

Utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus (II, 1, 1), as I (lit. we) have said before.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

163. GENERAL RULE: *Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence.*

They correspond to *myself, himself, etc.*, in such sentences as *I praise myself, he praises himself*. This use of *myself, etc.*, must not be confused with the use in such sentences as *I myself praise him*, where *myself* emphasizes *I* and is in apposition with it. The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (172). The reflexive of the third person has two uses:

164. The Direct Reflexive.

RULE: *Suī and suus are used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

Sē ēripuit (I, 4, 7), he rescued himself; cīvitatī persuāsīt ut dē finibus suis exīrent (I, 2, 3), he persuaded the citizens to leave their country.

165. The Indirect Reflexive.

RULE: *In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject, suī and suus are also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

This is especially important in indirect discourse (271) where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of *suī* or *suus*. It is also common, but not invariable, in purpose clauses (225), substantive clauses of desire (purpose) (228), and indirect questions (262). In other clauses *is* or some other demonstrative is used to refer to the principal subject.

Sē habēre arbitrābantur (I, 2, 15), *they thought that they had*; **dat negōtium Senonibus utī sē certiōrem faciant** (II, 2, 4), *he employed the Senones to inform him* (=the subject of **dat**).

166. The Reciprocal Expression. The reflexive pronouns are used with **inter** to express the reciprocal idea, *one another, each other*.

Inter nōs laudāmus, *we praise one another or each other*; **obsidēs uti inter sēsē dent** (I, 9, 10), *that they give hostages to each other*.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

167. The possessive pronouns (or adjectives) are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast.

a. **Suus** is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun **suī**, and is used in the same way. See **164** and **165**. When a reflexive is not wanted *his* is **eius**, *their* is **eōrum**. See **53**.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

168. Hic refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person; as **hic liber**, *this book* (near me).

169. Iste refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person; as **iste liber**, *that book* (near you). When used of an opponent it often implies contempt.

170. Ille refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person; as **ille liber**, *that book* (yonder).

a. **Ille** and **hic** are often used in the sense of *the former, the latter*. **Hic** is usually *the latter*, as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned.

171. Is is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer without emphasis to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

a. When **is** is used substantively it is translated by a personal pronoun; when used as an adjective, by *this* or *that*; when used as the antecedent of a relative it is translated in various ways—*the man, a man, such a man*, etc.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

172. Ipse emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by *self*, and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronouns (**163**); as **ipse Caesar**, *Caesar himself*.

a. **Ipse** is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive.

Meus ipsius liber, *my own book (the book of me myself)*; **vester ipsorum liber**, *your own book (the book of you yourselves)*.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

173. RULE: *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.*

If it is used as subject, the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents, it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (**157, a, 2**). The relative is never omitted, as it often is in English.

Caesar, quem laudō, *Caesar, whom I praise*; **ego, quī eum laudō**, *I, who praise him*; **Caesar et Cicerō, quī mē laudant**, *Caesar and Cicero, who praise me*; *the books (which) he gave me*, must be **librī quōs mihi dedit**.

a. **Coördinate Relative.** It is often necessary to translate a relative by a coördinating conjunction (*and, but, etc.*) and a personal or demonstrative pronoun.

Relinquēbātur ūna via, quā ire nōn poterant (I, 9, 1), *there was left only one way, and by it they could not go.*

Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence, as in I, 15, 5. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun.

b. A relative usually agrees in gender with a predicate noun, if there is one, instead of with its antecedent.

Vesontiōnem (masc.), **quod est oppidum** (I, 38, 2), *Vesontio, which is a town.*

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

174. RULE: *Quis, anyone, is the indefinite commonly used after si, nisi, nē, and num.*

Sī quis laudat, *if anyone praises.*

175. RULE: *Aliquis (aliqui) is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean someone, some, etc.*

Aliquis dicat, *someone may say.*

176. **Quispiam** has almost exactly the same meaning as **aliquis**, but is rare.

177. RULE: *Quisquam* and *ūllus* are the indefinites commonly used in negative sentences (except with *nē*), and in questions implying a negative, to mean any, anyone, etc.

Neque quemquam laudō, nor do I praise anyone; cur quisquam iūdicāret (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose?*

178. *Nesciō quis* (*nesciō quī*), originally meaning *I know not who*, is often used in a sense very much like that of *aliquis*, but with even more indefiniteness. When the phrase is followed by the indicative, it must have this meaning; for if it means *I do not know who*, it introduces an indirect question.

Nesciō quis laudat, some one or other praises.

VERBS

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

179. RULE: *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

In the compound tenses the participle agrees with the subject in gender.

Caesar laudātus est, Caesar was praised; mulierēs laudātae sunt, the women were praised.

a. But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb; and a neuter noun sometimes has a masculine participle in agreement.

Multitūdō vēnērunt, a great number came; duo mīlia occīsī sunt, two thousand were killed.

180. If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural. In the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). If the subjects differ in person, the first person is preferred to the second, and the second to the third.

Homō et mulier occīsī sunt, the man and the woman were killed; ego et tū vēnimus, you and I came.

a. The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor*.

Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus, Caesar and Labienus came; neque Caesar neque Labiēnus vēnit, neither Caesar nor Labienus came; filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est (I, 26, 11), *his daughter and one of his sons were taken.*

b. If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular.

Matrona et Sēquana dividit (I, 1, 5), *the Marne and Seine separate* (they make one boundary line).

USES OF THE VOICES

181. The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb cannot be used in the passive except impersonally.

Laudat, *he praises*; **laudātur**, *he is praised*; **eī crēditur** (115, d) lit. *it is believed to him* = *he is believed*.

USES OF THE MOODS

182. The Latin verb has three moods: the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative. The name *mood* (or *mode*) is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is thought of; for example, *as a fact*, *as wished*, *as willed*.

INDICATIVE

183. The indicative speaks of the action as a fact, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact.

Laudat, *he praises*; **nōn laudat**, *he does not praise*; **laudatne?** *does he praise?*

SUBJUNCTIVE

184. The subjunctive has three classes of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

a. The Subjunctive of Desire.

Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called *volitive*) or wish (then called *optative*).

Laudet, *let him praise* or *may he praise*; **imperō ut laudet**, *I command that he praise*, i.e., *I give the command "let him praise."*

b. The Potential Subjunctive.

Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied; this may be called the *would-should potential*.

Laudet, he would praise (if there should be reason); is est qui laudet, he is a man who would praise.

Less often it expresses what may or can take place; this may be called the *may-can potential*.

Aliquis dicat, someone may say.

c. The Subjunctive of Fact.

In certain dependent clauses the subjunctive expresses certainty and is translated like the indicative.

Laudatur cum laudet, he is praised because he praises. Compare *laudatur quod laudat, he is praised because he praises.*

IMPERATIVE

185. The imperative is used only in independent sentences. It expresses a command.

Laudā, praise (thou); dēsilite (IV, 25, 11), jump down.

OTHER VERBAL FORMS

186. The **Infinitive** is not, strictly speaking, a mood, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mood in indirect discourse.

Dicit Caesarem laudārī, he says that Caesar is praised.

187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives. The gerund and the supine are not moods, but are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated into English by clauses.

THE NEGATIVES

188. There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

a. **RULE:** *Nōn, not, and neque, and not, nor, are used with all verb forms except the subjunctive of desire and the imperative.*

That is, they are used with the indicative, the potential subjunctive (184, b), the subjunctive of fact (184, c), and the infinitive.

Nōn laudat, he does not praise; nōn laudet, he would not praise; nōnne laudat? does he not praise?

b. **RULE:** *Nē, not, and nēve, and not, nor, are used with the subjunctive of desire (184, a), and in most subordinate clauses derived from it.*

But *nē . . . quidem, not even*, is used like *nōn*.

Nē laudet, let him not praise, or may he not praise; nē laudat quidem, he does not even praise.

USES OF THE TENSES

189. The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things: *laudāvit, he praised*, simply puts the action in the past; *laudāverat, he had praised*, means that the action was already completed in the past time; *laudābat, he was praising*, means that the action was going on in the past time; and *laudātūrus erat, he was going to praise*, means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

190. The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present.

Laudat, he praises (simple), *he is praising* (progressive), *he does praise* (emphatic).

a. The *historical present* speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and therefore should usually be translated by a past.

Oppida incendunt (I, 5, 3), *they burned* (burn) *their towns*.

b. With such expressions as *iam diū, iam pridem, for a long time, multōs annōs, for many years*, the Latin present is to be translated by the English present perfect.

Multōs annōs tē moneō, I have been warning you for many years. There are really two ideas, "I have been in the past" and "I still am." English expresses the former of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the latter.

c. For the present with *dum*, see **234, a.**

191. The Imperfect puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time.

Laudābat, he was praising.

a. The imperfect is sometimes used of repeated past action.

Laudābat, he used to praise, or he kept praising.

b. With the expressions mentioned in **190**, *b* the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect.

Multōs annōs tē monēbam, I had been warning you for many years.

192. The Future puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See **199**.

Laudābō, I shall or will praise, or be praising.

193. The Perfect has two uses:

I. *The present perfect* corresponds to the English present perfect with *have*. It represents the action as completed at the present time.

Laudāvī, I have praised.

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, *vēnī, I have come*, is nearly equivalent to *I am here*. A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially *nōvī, cognōvī, I know* (lit. *I have found out*); *cōnsuēvī, I am accustomed* (lit. *I have become accustomed*); and *meminī, I remember*.

II. *The historical perfect* simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (**189**) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense.

Laudāvī, I praised.

194. The Past Perfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time.

Laudāveram, I had praised.

a. The past perfect of the verbs mentioned in **193**, I, *a* are nearly equivalent to imperfects.

Vēneram, I had come, i.e., I was there; nōveram, I knew; cōnsuēveram, I was accustomed.

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See **199**.

Laudāverō, I shall or will have praised.

a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in **193**, I, *a* are nearly equivalent to futures.

Vēnerō, I shall have come, i.e., I shall be there; nōverō, I shall know; cōnsuēverō, I shall be accustomed.

196. The Active Periphrastic (75) Tenses represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of *sum*.

Laudātūrus est, he is about to praise; *laudātūrus erat*, he was about to praise; *laudātūrus erit*, he will be about to praise.

INDICATIVE TENSES IN NARRATION

197. It is a mistake to think of the perfect and imperfect as interchangeable. Caesar was as careful in choosing between them as in choosing between the indicative and subjunctive. The forward steps (new events) in the story are all told by the perfect or the equivalent historical present. The imperfect and past perfect are *descriptive tenses* and describe the persons, places, and circumstances which concern each forward step. Sometimes the imperfect of repeated action is used where the perfect would be used of a single action. Sometimes the present is used instead of an imperfect in describing something that still exists. For other exceptions see **198, a**. No short examples can make these statements clear, but a careful reading of almost any chapter in Caesar will illustrate them. See the notes on the first few chapters of Book III.

198. The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfects and past perfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it:

RULE: *In a narrative of past events the independent clauses generally use the perfect, the dependent clauses generally use the imperfect and past perfect.*

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important:

1. After *postquam*, *ubi*, etc. (see **237**), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also **235, a** and **236, a**.

2. After *dum*, *while* (see **234, a**), the present is regularly used.

THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT

199. Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tenses required by the meanings. For an example see **256**.

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

200. The tenses of the subjunctive have two sets of meanings:

a. When the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (**184, c**), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding indicative tenses.

b. When the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (**184, a, b**), the time denoted by the tenses is future to that denoted by the corresponding indicative tenses. E. g., *laudet*, *let him praise*, is a command to praise in the future; *imperāvit ut laudāret*, *he commanded that he praise*, is a past command, to be carried into effect at a time future to the time of commanding.

201. The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses:

Present	= present <i>or</i> future
Imperfect	= imperfect <i>or</i> future to a past
Perfect	= perfect <i>or</i> future perfect
Past Perfect	= past perfect <i>or</i> future perfect to a past

a. Some tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See **221, 254**.

b. Any tense of the subjunctive may thus refer to the future. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used. So *rogō quid faciās* regularly means *I ask what you are doing*, and would not be understood to mean *I ask what you will do*. Therefore the latter meaning must be expressed by *rogō quid factūrus sis*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES IN DEPENDENCE

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

202. When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, the tenses are all used in accordance with the meanings given in **201**. One who thoroughly understands the meaning of the subjunctive tenses has little need of a rule for their use. But the following rule is very convenient and has very few exceptions:

RULE: *In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.*

The following table of examples shows that the rule could be stated in this way:

If a subjunctive depends on a verb meaning either present or future time, use either the present or perfect tense; if it depends on a verb meaning past time, use either the imperfect or past perfect.

203. Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive:

Principal Tenses

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present	rogō, <i>I ask</i>	}	Present	quid faciat, <i>what he is doing</i>
Future	rogābō, <i>I shall ask</i>		Perfect	quid fēcerit, <i>what he has done (or did)</i>
Future perfect	rogāverō, <i>I shall have asked</i>			

Historical Tenses

Imperfect	rogābam, <i>I was asking</i>	}	Imperfect	quid faceret, <i>what he was doing</i>
Perfect	rogāvī, <i>I asked, I have asked</i>		Past Perfect	quid fēcisset, <i>what he had done</i>
Past perfect	rogāveram, <i>I had asked</i>			

a. Although the perfect subjunctive is called a primary tense, another subjunctive depending on it must be imperfect or past perfect, because the perfect subjunctive means past time.

204. Exceptions to Sequence of Tenses.

Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on one another.

a. An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, *he marched around because the mountains are high*, is to be put into Latin, **cum sint** would be an exception to sequence, and it is better to use the indicative construction **quod sunt**.

The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect subjunctive sometimes follows a perfect indicative.

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ut tempus dēfuerit (II, 21, 8), *so short was the time that there was no opportunity.*

b. A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used.

Diem dicunt quā diē convenient (I, 6, 14), *they appoint a day on which they are to assemble*; **frūmentum omne combūrunt ut parātiōrēs ad pericula subeunda essent** (I, 5, 5), *they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger.*

c. For a very common apparent exception in indirect discourse, see 270, a.

TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

205. RULE: *The time denoted by infinitives and participles is relative to the tenses of the verbs on which they depend.*

That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

dicō eum lit. <i>I say him</i> <i>I say that he</i>	laudāre <i>to be praising</i> <i>is praising</i>	laudātūrum esse <i>to be about to praise</i> <i>will praise</i>	laudāvisse <i>to have praised</i> <i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i>
dicam eum, <i>I shall say that he</i>	<i>is praising</i>	<i>will praise</i>	<i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i>
dixī eum, <i>I said that he</i>	<i>was praising</i>	<i>would praise</i>	<i>had praised</i>

a. With such perfects as **dēbui**, **licuit**, **oportuit**, **potui**, Latin correctly uses the present infinitive, though English illogically says *ought to have*, etc.

Laudāre potui, lit. *I was able to praise* = *I could have praised.*

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by **fore** (**futūrum esse**) **ut**, *it will (would) be that*, with the present or imperfect subjunctive.

Dicit fore ut timeat, lit. *he says that it will be that he fears* = *he says that he will fear*; **dixit fore ut laudārētur**, lit. *he said that it would be that he was praised* = *he said that he would be praised.*

SIMPLE SENTENCES

STATEMENTS

206. The Indicative is used to state facts.

Caesar vēnit, Caesar came; Caesar nōn veniet, Caesar will not come.

207. The Would-Should Potential (184, b) is used to state what *would* take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in 254 and 257. For the peculiar use of tenses see those paragraphs.

Caesar veniat, Caesar would come; Caesar nōn vēnisset, Caesar would not have come; velim, I should like.

208. The May-Can Potential (184, b) is sometimes used to state what *may* or *can* happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase *aliquis dicat*, *someone may say*. In an independent sentence the student should express *may*, *might*, *can*, *could*, by such words as *possum* and *licet*.

Nēmō dubitet, but usually nēmō dubitāre potest, no one can doubt.

QUESTIONS

USE OF MOODS

209. The indicative and the potential subjunctive are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (206-208).

Quis veniet? who will come? quis veniat? who would come? quis dubitet? who can doubt?

210. A Deliberative Question is one that asks for an expression of someone's will. The answer, if any, is a command. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive.

Quid faciam? what shall I do? what am I to do?

a. Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do.

Cūr dubitem? why should I doubt?

211. A Rhetorical Question is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the foregoing questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mood.

INTRODUCTORY WORDS

212. Questions which can not be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb.

Quis vēnit? *who came?* *quālis est?* *what sort of man is he?* *ubi est?* *where is he?*

213. Questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* are usually, but not always, introduced by an interrogative particle. In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

a. RULE: When the question asks for information, without suggesting the answer, the enclitic -ne is added to the first word.

The first word is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis.

Scrībitne epistulam? *is he writing a letter?* *epistulamne scrībit?* *is it a letter that he is writing?*

b. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer yes, the interrogative particle is nōne.

Nōne epistulam scrībit? *is he not writing a letter?*

c. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer no, the interrogative particle is num.

Num epistulam scrībit? *he is not writing a letter, is he?*

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

214. Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. *Utrum* may stand at the beginning, not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or *-ne* may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The *or* is expressed by *an*; *or not* is *annōn*.

Utrum pugnāvit an fūgit? *pugnāvitne an fūgit?* *pugnāvit an fūgit?* *did he fight or run away?* *pugnāvit annōn?* *did he fight or not?*

ANSWERS

215. Latin has no words answering exactly to *yes* and *no*. It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use *ita*, *sānē*, etc., for *yes*, *nōn*, *minimē*, etc., for *no*.

Epistulamne scrībit? *scrībit*, *yes*; *nōn scrībit*, *no*.

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

216. These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate moods are the subjunctive of desire (184, *a*) and the imperative (185). The negative with the subjunctive is **nē** (188, *b*).

217. RULE: *An Exhortation is a command or prohibition in the first person plural of the present subjunctive.*

Laudēmus, *let us praise*; **nē eāmus**, *let us not go*.

218. RULE: *A Command in the second person is expressed by the imperative.*

The future imperative is seldom used unless the verb used has no present.

Venīte, *come (ye)*; **mementō**, *remember*.

219. RULE: *A Prohibition (Negative Command) in the second person is usually expressed by nōlī, nōlīte, be unwilling, and the present infinitive.*

A prohibition is less often expressed by **cavē** (with or without **nē**), *take care*, and the present subjunctive; or by **nē** and the perfect subjunctive.

Nōlī dubitāre, *do not doubt*; less often **cavē (nē) dubitēs**, or **nē dubitāveris**.

220. RULE: *A Command or Prohibition in the third person is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive.*

Eat, *let him go*; **nē veniant**, *let them not come*.

WISHES

221. Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (184, *a*) and are usually introduced by **utinam** (not to be translated).

a. RULE: *A wish for something in the future is expressed by the present subjunctive, with or without utinam.*

(**Utinam**) **adsit**, *may he be here!*

b. RULE: *A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive with utinam.*

c. RULE: *A wish for something in the past is expressed by the past perfect subjunctive with utinam.*

Both *b* and *c* express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable.

Utinam adesset, *would that he were here!* **utinam affuisset**, *would that he had been here!*

COÖRDINATE CLAUSES

222. A coördinate clause is connected with another clause by means of a *coördinating conjunction*. The coördinating conjunctions are such as mean *and, but, or, for*, and the like. Their forms and uses are the same as those of simple sentences (**206-221**).

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

223. Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean *if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that*, and the like.

The clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (**184, a-c**).

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

224. The subjunctive of desire (**184, a**) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (**184, c**) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (**188**), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the *ut* clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning: if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

225. RULE: *Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive with ut, nē, quō, or a relative.*

The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see **228**. The connecting words are used as follows:

a. In affirmative clauses:

1. A relative pronoun or adverb is used if the principal clause contains a noun which can be used conveniently as an antecedent.

Hominēs mīsit quī vidērent, he sent men to see (lit. who were to see).

2. *Quō* is used if the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree.

Vēnit quō facilius vidēret, he came that he might see more easily (lit. by which the more easily he might see).

3. **Ut** is used in all other affirmative purpose clauses.

Vēnit ut vidēret, *he came to see, that he might see, or in order to see*; **venit ut videat**, *he comes to see*.

b. In negative clauses **nē** is always used.

Hoc fēcit nē quis (not **ut nēmō**) **vidēret**, *he did this that no one might see, or to keep anyone from seeing*.

RESULT CLAUSES

226. RULE: *Result is expressed by the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

For the so-called relative clause of result see **230, a**. For the substantive clause of result see **229**.

Mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent (I, 6, 4), *a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check*; **incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicārī nōn possit** (I, 12, 2), *of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined*.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE) AND OF RESULT

227. These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun.

There is the same difference between substantive clauses of desire (purpose) and substantive clauses of result as between purpose clauses and result clauses, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (**224**).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)

228. These clauses all consist of the subjunctive of desire (**184, a**) introduced by a conjunction. As the subjunctive of desire is divided into the *volitive* (expressing will) and the *optative* (expressing wish), some grammars divide these clauses into *substantive volitive clauses* and *substantive optative clauses*. The older name, *substantive purpose clauses*, is not good, because they do not really express purpose.

a. **RULE:** *Most verbs expressing any form of desire, or of attempt to carry out a desire, take the subjunctive with ut or nē.*

Such are verbs meaning *accomplish* (when the subject is a conscious agent), *command*, *permit*, *persuade*, *request*, *resolve*, *strive*, *urge*, *wish*, and the like.

But after most of these verbs the infinitive is sometimes used instead, and it always is used after **iubeō**, *command*, **cōnor**, *attempt*, **patior**, **sinō**, *permit*. See **280, a**. **Ut** is often omitted after verbs of asking, command-

ing, and *wishing*, especially after *volō*. The subjunctive, usually without *ut*, is often used with *oportet*, *it is right*, and *licet*, *it is permitted*; but see 276.

Civitatī persuāsit ut exirent (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the citizens to leave*; *civitatī persuāsit nē exirent*, *he persuaded the citizens not to leave*; *oportet eat*, *he ought to go*; *eī licet eat*, *he may go*.

b. *RULE*: Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with *nē* meaning *that*, or *ut* meaning *that not*.

But *nē nōn*, *that not*, is often used instead of *ut*.

Timeō nē veniat, *I fear that he will come* (originally *timeō*: *nē veniat*, *I am afraid: let him, or may he, not come*); *timeō ut* (or *nē nōn*) *veniat*, *I fear that he will not come* (originally *timeō*: *veniat*, *I am afraid: let him, or may he, come*; *ut* or *nē nōn* was then used as the opposite of *nē*).

c. *RULE*: Verbs meaning *avoid*, *hinder*, *prevent*, and *refuse* take the subjunctive with *nē*, *quīn*, or *quōminus*.

Nē is used after an affirmative principal clause, *quīn* after a negative, *quōminus* after either positive or negative.

Eum impediō nē, or *quōminus*, *veniat*, *I hinder him from coming*; *eum nōn impediō quīn*, or *quōminus*, *veniat*, *I do not hinder him from coming*.

But *prohibeō*, *I prevent*, takes the infinitive.

Quī Teutonōs ingredī prohibuerint (II, 4, 6), *who prevented the Teutoni from entering*.

SUBSTANTIVE UT CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them are better called *ut* clauses of fact, since they do not express result. They usually contain the subjunctive of fact (184, c) and are to be translated by the indicative.

a. *RULE*: Verbs meaning *accomplish* take the subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn* when the subject is not a conscious agent.

Montēs efficiunt ut nōn exire possint, *the mountains make (that they cannot) it impossible for them to leave*. Compare 228, a.

b. *RULE*: Impersonal verbs meaning *the result is*, *it happens*, *it remains*, *there is added*, and *the like*, may take the subjunctive with *ut* or *ut nōn*.

The clause is the subject of the verb. But with some of these verbs an indicative *quod* clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See 248.

Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut vagārentur (I, 2, 11), *the result was that they wandered*.

c. RULE: Such phrases as mōs est, cōnsuētūdō est, it is the custom, may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.

Mōs est ut ex equīs pugnent, it is their custom to fight on horseback.

d. RULE: Negated verbs and phrases meaning doubt take the subjunctive with quīn.

After an affirmative expression of doubting, an indirect question with *num*, *an*, or *sī* is used, as *whether* is in English. *Dubitō* with the infinitive means *hesitate*.

Nōn est dubium quīn hoc fēcerit, there is no doubt that he did this.

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

230. The subjunctive is used in certain relative clauses which follow indefinite antecedents. A more accurate statement than those given in *a* and *b* is: The subjunctive is used in all relative clauses which follow indefinite antecedents, if they are neither determining (**231**) nor conditional (**250**).

a. RULE: The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which are equivalent in meaning to ut clauses of result.

These clauses complete the meaning of an expressed or implied antecedent like *is* = (*such*) *a man* (**171**, *a*), *eius modī*, *such*, or an adjective modified by *tam*. Certain grammars call some of these clauses *relative result clauses*. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Is est quī pugnet, he is a man who fights; secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent (IV, **34**, 8), *storms followed which kept our men in camp (=such storms . . . that they kept); tam improbus quī nōn fateātur* (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *so villainous as not to admit*.

b. RULE: The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which complete statements and questions of existence and non-existence.

So after *est quī*, *there is a man who*; *nōn* or *nēmō* or *nūllus est quī*, *there is no one who*; *quis est quī?* *who is there who?* *sōlus* or *ūnus est quī*, *he is the only man who*; etc. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Nūlli sunt quī putent, there are none who think; erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus exīre possent (I, **6**, 1), *there were only two ways by which they could leave*.

c. In some relative clauses of characteristic the subjunctive is to be translated by *can*, *could*, or by *should*, *ought*.

Ūnum (iter) vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur (I, 6, 4), *one road by which wagons could be moved*; neque (populus Rōmānus) commissum intellegeret quārē timēret (I, 14, 6), *they did not know that anything had been done on account of which they should be afraid*.

DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

231. RULE: *Relative clauses which are used for the purpose of telling what person or thing is meant by an indefinite antecedent employ the indicative.*

Ad eam partem Ōceānī quae est ad Hispāniam (I, 1, 21), *to that part of the ocean which is near Spain*.

PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES

232. RULE: *A relative clause for which a parenthetical statement may be substituted usually employs the indicative.*

The antecedent of a parenthetical clause must always be definite, so that the relative clause may be entirely removed without destroying the meaning of the rest of the sentence. When the antecedent is indefinite the clause is either characterizing (230), determining (231), or conditional (250).

Dumnorīgī, quī principātum obtinēbat, persuādet (I, 3, 13), *he persuaded Dumnorix, who held the chief power*; the same meaning could be expressed by Dumnorīgī (is principātum obtinēbat) persuādet.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

233. There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. The most common is *cum*, which must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

CONJUNCTIONS MEANING WHILE, AS LONG AS

234. Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. *Cum* with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

a. RULE: *Dum meaning while (i.e., at some time during the time that) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time.*

Dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est (I, 46, 1), *while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar*.

b. RULE: Dum, dōnec, quoad, and quam diū, as long as, while (i.e., during the entire time that) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb.

Quoad potuit, restitit (IV, 12, 16), he resisted as long as he could.

CONJUNCTIONS MEANING UNTIL

235. Conjunctions meaning *until* show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of moods.

a. RULE: Dum, dōnec, and quoad meaning until are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.

The perfect is regularly used for past time.

Galli fuērunt liberī dum Caesar vēnit, the Gauls were free until Caesar came.

b. RULE: Dum, dōnec, and quoad meaning until are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.

Galli expectāvērunt dum Caesar veniret, the Gauls waited until Caesar should come, or for Caesar to come, or until Caesar came.

CONJUNCTIONS MEANING BEFORE

236. Conjunctions meaning *before* also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of moods is based is the same as that given in **235**.

a. RULE: Priusquam and antequam are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.

The perfect is regularly used for past time.

Galli inter sē pugnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit, the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.

b. RULE: Priusquam and antequam are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.

Galli magnās cōpiās comparāre cōnātī sunt priusquam Caesar veniret, the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive, or arrived, or in view of Caesar's arrival.

c. These conjunctions are often written as two words, the **prius** or **ante** standing in the principal clause, and the **quam** at the beginning of

the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where *quam* does.

Galli prius inter sē pugnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit, translated as in *a*.

d. When the principal verb is future, the present indicative is commonly used with *priusquam* and *antequam*, instead of either the future indicative or the present subjunctive.

Antequam ad sententiam redeō, pauca dicam (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *before I come back to the voting, I will say a few words*.

CONJUNCTIONS MEANING AFTER

237. RULE: *Postquam, after, ut, ubi, when* (=after, not while), *simul ac, cum primum, as soon as* (immediately after), *are used with the indicative, generally the perfect or the historical present*.

Ubi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt (I, 7, 6), *when they were informed of it, they sent envoys*.

CUM CLAUSES

238. Cum has three chief uses:

temporal, *when, after*;
causal, *since, because*;
adversative (concessive), *although*.

239. Causal and Adversative Cum.

RULE: *Cum meaning since or although is used with all tenses of the subjunctive*.

Quae cum ita sint, perge (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *since this is so, go on*; *his cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt* (I, 9, 2), *since they could not persuade them, they sent envoys*; *cum ad vesperum pugnātum sit* (I, 26, 4), *although they fought till evening*.

240. Temporal Cum.

The following rules are incomplete for Cicero, but are sufficient for Caesar:

RULE: *Cum meaning when is always used with the indicative when the principal verb is present or future*.

RULE: *Cum meaning when is generally followed by the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive when the principal verb is past*.

In Caesar I-IV the only exceptions to these rules are a few examples of **241, b**; and *vidēbātur* in I, **40, 14**, which no one understands.

241. The rules given in **240** hold true for Cicero in general, but he uses more exceptions to the second rule. In reading Cicero (and Caesar V-VII), while expecting all **cum** clauses depending on past tenses to be subjunctive, one finds the following:

INDICATIVE *CUM* CLAUSES DEPENDING ON PAST TENSES

a. Date Clauses.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the clause merely dates the action of the principal clause.

These are determining clauses (**231**), the antecedent being "at the time"; but they are much less common than relative determining clauses. They are seldom used except with the expressed antecedent **tum**; or when the **cum** clause has no bearing on the story, but is introduced solely for dating purposes. Although Caesar uses hundreds of **cum** clauses in his *Gallic War*, and although many of them seem to date events, his only indicative date clause is given below.

Tum cum ex urbe Catilinam ēiciēbam (Cic. Cat. III, 3), *at the time when I was trying to drive Catiline from the city*; **cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Haedui** (VI, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Haedui were the leaders*.

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *whenever* is usually followed by the indicative.

These clauses correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (**250**). It is necessary only that *whenever* be a possible translation of **cum**; *when* is usually a better translation. For the occasional subjunctive in such clauses see **242, b**.

Haec cum dēfixerat, contrāria duo statuēbat (IV, 17, 10), *when he had set them firmly (in each of several cases), he put two others opposite*.

c. Inverted *Cum* Clauses.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the principal action is stated in the **cum** clause.

In the most common type of **cum** clauses (**242, a**) the principal action is stated in the principal clause, and the **cum** clause describes the situation under which it happened. In the inverted clause this relation is reversed.

Vix agmen prōcesserat, cum Galli cohortātī (sunt) inter sē (VI, 8, 1), *hardly had the line advanced, when the Gauls encouraged one another* (for **cum . . . prōcessisset, . . . cohortātī sunt**, *when the line had advanced, the Gauls encouraged, etc.*).

242.

TEMPORAL *CUM* WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE

The rules given in 240, with the exceptions given in 241, are sufficient for all practical purposes. If one wants names and rules for the subjunctive clauses, the following may be used:

a. Situation and Narrative Clauses.

RULE: Cum meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause describes the situation under which the principal action took place.

RULE: Cum meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause states a new point in the story. (Unless the clause is inverted, 241, c.)

These rules are given together because most subjunctive clauses are both situation and narrative clauses. Sometimes, however, one rule seems to apply better than the other. The situation clause corresponds to the relative clause of characteristic (230).

Cum civitās iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est (I, 4, 8), *while the state was trying to enforce its laws, Orgetorix died* (both situation and narrative, for the fact that the state tried to enforce its laws is told only in this *cum* clause).

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE: Cum meaning whenever is sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

Cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere poterant (I, 25, 7), *when the iron had bent* (in each of many cases), *they could neither draw it out, etc.* Compare 241, b.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions *cum*, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, or by the relative. The conjunctions *nam*, *enim*, *etenim*, *for*, introduce coördinate clauses.

244. *RULE: Quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō, because, since, are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted; with the subjunctive if the reason is quoted.*

When the writer wishes to imply because (*as he said*), (*as he thought*), (*as I said*), (*as I thought*), the subjunctive is used. See 273.

Reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt, quod contendunt (I, 1, 11), *they surpass the other Gauls, because they fight*; *quod sit dēstitūtus queritur* (I, 16, 18), *he complained because* (*as he said*) *he had been deserted.*

245. RULE: *Cum, since, because, and often quī, since he, etc., are used with the subjunctive.*

But the indicative is often used with *quī*, where the causal idea is perfectly clear. If *praesertim, especially*, stands in a subjunctive *quī* or *cum* clause, the clause is probably causal.

Illī autem, quī omnia praeclāra sentirent, negōtium suscēpērunt (Cic. Cat. III, 5), *and they, since they had none but patriotic thoughts, undertook the matter; fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī adaequārunt* (V, 8, 12), *the energy of the soldiers deserved praise, who (=since they) kept up with, etc.* For examples with *cum*, see 239.

ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

246. RULE: *Quamquam, although, and etsī, tametsī, even if, although, are used with the indicative.*

Etsī nōndum eōrum cōsilia cognōverant, tamen suspicābātur (IV, 31, 1), *although he did not yet know their plans, nevertheless he suspected.*

247. RULE: *Cum, although, and less commonly quamvis (in Cicero), however much, however, although, quī, although he, etc., ut, although, are used with the subjunctive.*

But the indicative is sometimes used with *quī* when the adversative idea is clear.

Quamvis senex sit, fortis est, however old he may be, he is brave; ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent (Caes. III, 9, 16), *though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations.* For *cum* see 239.

SUBSTANTIVE QUOD CLAUSES

248. RULE: *Substantive clauses with quod, that, employ the indicative.*

This clause is most commonly used as the appositive of a neuter pronoun.

Illā praetereō, quod Maelium occīdit (Cic. Cat. I, 3), *I pass over this, that he slew Maelius.*

a. Sometimes the *quod* clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of *as to the fact that, whereas*.

Quod ūnum pāgum adortus es, nōlī ob eam rem dēspicere (cf. I, 13, 12), *as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account.*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

249. A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a *condition* and a *conclusion*. The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends; the conclusion is the principal clause.

If he comes (condition), I shall see him (conclusion).

CONNECTIVES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

250. The connectives are the conjunctions *sī, if, sī nōn, if not, nisi, if not or unless, sīn, but if*, and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense.

Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like *anyone, everyone, always, everywhere* (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, *anyone who thinks will see*, means *if anyone thinks he will see*; *whenever I saw him he used to say*, means *if at any time I saw him he used to say*. Compare this use of the relative with those given in **230-232**.

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

251. There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time:

a. Neutral Present or Past (253).

Sī pugnāt, vincit, if he fights, he conquers; sī pugnāvit, vīcit, if he fought, he conquered.

b. Present or Past Contrary to Fact (254).

Sī pugnāret, vinceret, if he were fighting, he would be conquering; sī pugnāvisset, vicisset, if he had fought, he would have conquered.

c. More Vivid (Confident) Future (256).

Sī pugnābit, vincet, if he fights (shall fight), he will conquer.

d. Less Vivid (Confident) Future (257).

Sī pugnet, vincat, if he should fight, he would conquer.

A. PRESENT OR PAST

252. In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which affirms the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

253. Neutral Present or Past.

RULE: A present or past conditional sentence whose form affirms nothing as to its fulfillment employs the present or past tenses of the indicative.

Sī fortis est, eum laudō, if he is brave, I praise him; quī fortis est prō patriā pugnat, whoever is brave fights for his country; nisi prō patriā pugnāvit, nōn fortis fuit, unless he fought for his country, he was not brave.

254. Present or Past Contrary to Fact.

RULE: A present or past conditional sentence whose form implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled employs the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive.

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express present time, the past perfect to express past time.

Sī fortis esset, eum laudārem, if he were brave, I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he is not, and I do not); nisi prō patriā pugnāvisset, eum nōn laudāvisssem, unless he had (if he had not) fought for his country, I should not have praised him (implying but he did, and I do; the contrary of the negative supposition); sī pugnāvisset, eum laudārem, if he had fought, I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he did not, and I do not; notice the change of tense).

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning *could* or *ought*, or such expressions as *it would be hard*, or *just*, the verb of the conclusion is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or past perfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact.

This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used.

Sī fortis esset, pugnāre poterat, if he were brave, he could fight (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); sī fortis fuisset, pugnāre debuit or debuerat, if he had been brave, he ought to have fought (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).

B. FUTURE

255. There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, since one cannot be sure of the nonfulfillment of a future condition.

256. More Vivid (Confident) Future.

RULE: *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains shall or will employs the future or future perfect indicative.*

The English commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. *If I see him, I shall tell him*, means *if I shall see him, I shall tell him*, and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present. *If he arrives first, he will tell him*, means *if he shall have arrived first*, and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect.

Sī pugnābit, eum laudābō, if he fights or is fighting (shall fight or shall be fighting), I shall praise him; *quī pugnāverit laudābitur*, whoever fights or has fought (shall have fought) will be praised.

257. Less Vivid (Confident) Future.

RULE: *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains should or would employs the present or perfect subjunctive.*

The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in **256**.

Sī pugnet, vincat, if he should fight, or were to fight, he would conquer; *quī pugnet laudētur*, whoever should fight, or should be fighting, would be praised; *sī nōn pugnāverit, eum nōn laudem*, if he should not fight, or should not have fought, I should not praise him.

MIXED CONDITIONS

258. In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another.

Sī veniat, hic adsumus, if he should come, we are here.

CONDITION OMITTED OR IMPLIED

259. Instead of being expressed by a clause, as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought.

Damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat (I, 4, 3), (*if*) *condemned, it was necessary that punishment be inflicted on him; dicat, he would say* (if he should be asked); **velim, I should like**. The last two are simply the independent potential subjunctive (207).

CLAUSES OF PROVISIO

260. RULE: *Dum, modo, and dummodo in the sense of if only, provided that, are used with the subjunctive.*

Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often **nē**. This is because the construction originally meant *only let* (*him come: I will, etc.*), and the mood is the subjunctive of desire (184, a).

Magnō mē metū liberābis dummodo mūrus intersit (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will rid me of much fear if only there be (only let there be) a wall between us; modo nē* (or **nōn**) **discēdat eum vidēbō**, *if only he do not leave I shall see him.*

CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

261. RULE: *The subjunctive is used with ac sī, quam sī, quasi, ut sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī, as if, just as if.*

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, although the English translation might lead one to expect always the imperfect and past perfect subjunctive.

Currit quasi timeat, *he runs as if he were afraid; cucurrit quasi timēret*, *he ran as if he were afraid.*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

262. GENERAL RULE: *The subjunctive is employed in all indirect questions.*

An indirect question is a substantive clause introduced by an interrogative word. A direct question may be quoted in the exact words in which it was asked; as *he asked, "where are you going?"*; or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as *he asked where I (or he) was going*. In the latter form it is an indirect question.

263. RULE: *Subjunctive questions (209, 210) retain the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

The modal meaning is unchanged.

Quis veniat? *who would come?* (indirect) **rogō quis veniat**, *I ask who would come; quid faciam?* *what am I to do?* (indirect) **rogāvi quid facerem**, *I asked what I was to do.*

264. RULE: *All indicative questions change to the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (**212**), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form.

Quis vēnit? *who came?* (indirect) *rogō quis vēnerit*, *I ask who came;*
ubi est? *where is he?* (indirect) *mihi dixit ubi esset*, *he told me where he was.*

b. When the direct question can be answered by *yes* or *no* (**213**) the indirect form is introduced by **num** or **-ne**, *whether* (no difference in meaning). **Si** is also used in the sense of *to see whether* or *whether*.

Venitne? *is he coming?* (indirect) *rogō num veniat*, or *rogō veniatne*, *I ask whether he is coming;* *expectāvit sī venirent*, *he waited to see whether they would come.*

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (**214**), but *or not* is expressed by **necne**, instead of **annōn**.

Rogāvī utrum pugnāvisset an fūgisset, *I asked whether he had fought or run away;* *rogāvī utrum pugnāvisset necne*, *I asked whether he had fought or not.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

265. *Direct discourse* repeats the exact words of a remark or a thought; as *he said*, "*the soldiers are brave.*" *Indirect discourse* repeats a remark or thought with such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction; as *he said that the soldiers were brave.*

Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse, one means a clause that was principal in the direct form.

PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

266. Declarative Sentences.

RULE: *Every principal clause containing a statement requires the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse* (**279**).

Miles est fortis, *the soldier is brave*, becomes *dixit militem esse fortem*, *he said that the soldier was brave.* But the subject is not always expressed.

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see 205. It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and past perfect indicative.

267. Imperative Sentences.

RULE: *Every sentence containing a command or prohibition requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is *nē*.

Ad Īd. Apr. revertiminī, *return about the thirteenth of April*, becomes **respondit**: . . . **ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur** (I, 7, 19), *he replied . . . : (that) they should return*, etc.; **is ita ēgit**: . . . **nē . . . dēspiceret** (I, 13, 14), *he should not despise* (from an original **nōlī dēspicere** (219), *do not despise*).

268. Interrogative Sentences.

I. RULE: *An indicative question (209), if real (211), changes to the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Respondit: . . . **quid sibi vellet** (I, 44, 24), *what did he want?* (for an original **quid tibi vīs**, *what do you want?*)

II. RULE: *An indicative question (209), if rhetorical (211), changes to the infinitive in indirect discourse.*

This is because a rhetorical question is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (266).

Respondit: . . . **num memoriam dēpōnere posse** (I, 14, 8), *could he forget?* (for an original **num . . . possum**, *can I?*)

III. RULE: *A subjunctive question (209, 210), whether real or rhetorical, retains the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Incūsāvit: . . . **cūr quisquam iūdicāret** (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose?* (for an original **iūdicet**. See 210, a).

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

269. RULE: *Every subordinate indicative or subjunctive clause of the direct form requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Infinitives remain unchanged.

Incūsāvit: . . . **ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē boni cōstantia, proptereā quod . . . superāssent** (I, 40, 17), *from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered* (for original **iūdicārī, potest, habeat, superāvistis**).

a. But a coördinate relative clause (173, a), being equivalent to a clause connected by **et**, or some other coördinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under 269: since **quō** connects with the preceding sentence, **posse** might have been a subjunctive.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

270. The tenses of the subjunctive regularly follow the rule of sequence, taking their time from the verb of *saying* or *thinking*.

a. **Repraesentātiō**. But after a past verb of *saying* or *thinking* the person who quotes very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. It is best to use past tenses in translating.

Respondit: . . . cum ea ita sint . . . sēsē pācem esse factūrum (I, 14, 16), *he replied . . . that although these things were so he would make peace*.

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of *saying* or *thinking*; for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present.

Dicit Caesarem laudātum esse quod fortis esset, *he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave*.

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful: *keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence*. So, for example, a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after **dicit**, imperfect after **dixit**, in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after **dicit**, past perfect after **dixit**, in either case retaining the perfect stem.

OTHER CHANGES

271. If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of **suī** or **suus** (rarely of **ipse**). See 165. All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English.

Hunc militem laudō, *I praise this soldier*, may become **dīcō mē hunc militem laudāre**, *I say that I praise this soldier*, or **dīcit sē illum militem laudāre**, *he says that he praises that soldier*. Adverbs will be changed in the same way, *now* to *then*, *here* to *there*, etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and past perfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to **266, a.** The present and perfect subjunctive of less vivid (confident) future conclusions become the future infinitive, in *-ūrus esse*. The imperfect and past perfect of conclusions contrary to fact become an infinitive not elsewhere used, in *-ūrus fuisse*.

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. *Sī pugnāret, eum laudārem*, *if he were fighting, I should praise him*, becomes, after either *dicit* or *dixit*, *sī pugnāret, sē eum laudātūrum fuisse*; *sī pugnāvisset, eum laudāvissem*, *if he had fought, I should have praised him*, becomes, after either *dicit* or *dixit*, *sī pugnāvisset, sē eum laudātūrum fuisse*.

IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE

273. RULE: *The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to imply that it is a quotation.*

This is the reason for the subjunctive in causal clauses with *quod*, etc. (**244**). It is also especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses and substantive clauses of desire (purpose).

Caesar frumentum quod essent polliciti flāgitāre (I, 16, 1), *Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he said) they had promised*; *erat ei praeceptum nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiae visae essent* (I, 22, 8), *he had been commanded not to give battle unless Caesar's forces should be seen* (Caesar had said *nisi meae copiae visae erunt*, *unless my forces shall be seen*.)

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

274. RULE: *Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive.*

Utī ab iis nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgatiōnēs mitterentur (II, 35, 2), *that embassies were sent by those nations which lived across the Rhine*. The clause *quae . . . incolerent* is determining (**231**) and would ordinarily be indicative.

USES OF THE INFINITIVE

For the tenses of the infinitive see 205.

A. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

275. RULE: *Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning.*

Such are verbs meaning *be able, be accustomed, attempt, begin, cease, dare, determine, ought, wish*, and the like. But with some of these verbs a substantive clause of desire (purpose) is often used. See 228, a.

Īre potest, he can go; ĩre potuit, he could have gone (lit. *he was able to go*); *ĩre dēbet, he ought to go; cōstituērunt comparāre* (I, 3, 2), *they determined to prepare.*

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb.

Fortis esse cōnātur, he tries to be brave.

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

276. The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in 278. With *licet*, *it is permitted*, the dative is commonly used instead of a subject accusative.

Īre oportet, one must go (lit. *to go is right*); *ĩre oportuit, one ought to have gone* (205, a) (lit. *to go was right*); *eĩ ĩre licuit, he might have gone* (lit. *to go was permitted to him*); *ĩre necesse est, one must go.*

a. Since a subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accusative. But with *licet* a predicate is commonly dative.

Fortem esse oportet, one ought to be brave; virō licet esse fortĩ (fortem), a man may be brave (lit. *it is permitted to a man to be brave*).

B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

277. The infinitive with a subject accusative (123) forms an infinitive clause (186).

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT

278. RULE: *The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) with subject accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as decet, libet, oportet, placet, praestat, visum est, and of est with a predicate noun or adjective.*

But with some of these verbs the subjunctive is also used. See 228, *a* and 229, *c*. As stated in 276, the subject accusative is not always expressed with these verbs, and with *licet* the dative is much more common.

Mē ire oportet, *I ought to go*; *Caesarem ire oportuit*, *Caesar ought to have gone* (205, *a*); *mē ire necesse est*, *I must go*.

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT

279. RULE: *The infinitive in all its tenses, with subject accusative, is used as the object of verbs of knowing, learning, and telling.*

This is indirect discourse. For examples see 205 and 266.

a. When these verbs are made passive, either the personal construction or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more common in the uncompounded tenses.

(Personal) *Caesar vēnisse fertur*, *Caesar is said to have come*; (impersonal) *Caesarem vēnisse dictum est*, *it has been said that Caesar came*.

280. Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following verbs:

a. Regularly with *iubeō*, *order*, *vetō*, *forbid*, *patior*, *sinō*, *permit*, which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (228, *a*)

Militēs pugnāre iussit, *he ordered the soldiers to fight*.

b. With *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *cupiō*, regularly when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when it is the same (compare 275).

Volō eum ire, *I wish him to go*; *cupiō mē esse clēmentem* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I desire to be merciful*.

c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of *hoping*, and *promising*. But *posse* may be used, instead of a future infinitive, after verbs of *hoping*, because *possum* implies futurity.

Id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant (VII, 26, 4), *lit. they hoped that they could accomplish this=they hoped to accomplish this*; *sēsē potīri posse spērānt* (I, 3, 22), *they hoped that they could get possession*.

C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

281. Historical Infinitive.

RULE: *The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative subject, as an equivalent for an independent past indicative.*

Cotidiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre (I, 16, 1), *Caesar daily demanded the grain*.

USES OF PARTICIPLES

282. Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (156). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (158). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see 205.

283. Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coördinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating.

Victus fūgit may mean *he was conquered and fled, when he had been conquered he fled, or because he had been conquered he fled*; **victus fugiet** may be translated by similar clauses, or by *if he is conquered he will flee*. See also the examples under 150.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

284. The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English present participle, but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as *seeing*, usually, and such forms as *being seen*, always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle.

1. Present participles are often used in English where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. E.g., *seeing this he fled* means *having seen*, etc., and may be translated **hōc visō** (150) **fūgit** (lit. *this having been seen*).

2. Present participles are very often used in English where Latin uses **dum** with the present indicative (234, *a*) or **cum** with the imperfect (or past perfect) subjunctive (242, *a*).

He was killed (while) fighting, sometimes **pugnāns occisus est**, usually either **dum pugnāt occisus est**, or **cum pugnāret occisus est**; *seeing this he fled*, **cum hoc vīdisset fūgit**.

285.

FUTURE PARTICIPLES

I. The future active participle is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of **sum**, making either the active periphrastic conjugation (75 and 196) or the future active infinitive.

Praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant (I, 5, 5), lit. *except what they were about to take with them* = *except what they intended*, etc.

II. The future passive participle has the following uses (see also the gerundive, 288):

a. The future passive participle is used with the verb **sum** to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (76). This denotes duty or necessity; as **laudandus est**, *he is to be praised, he must (ought, deserves to) be praised*. The English form is usually active: remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (118). Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally.

Caesar est mihi laudandus, lit. *Caesar must be praised by me = I must praise Caesar*; **mihi pugnandum fuit** (impersonal), lit. *it had to be fought by me = I had to fight*.

b. The future passive participle is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning *to have* (a thing done) or *to undertake* (to do a thing); especially **cūrō**, *cause, have* (lit. *take care*), **dō**, *give over*, **suscipiō**, *undertake*.

Pontem faciendum cūrat (I, 13, 2), *he had a bridge made*; **cōsulibus senātus rem pūblicam dēfendendam dedit**, *the Senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls* (lit. *gave the state to the consuls to be defended*).

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as *seen* or *having been seen*, but no perfect active participle (but see a), corresponding to such English forms as *having seen*. The English perfect active participle with a direct object can usually be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, 150).

Vīsus fūgit, *having been seen, he fled*; **Caesare vīsō fūgit**, *having seen Caesar, he fled* (lit. *Caesar having been seen, he fled*). See also 150.

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in 286 is not to be made.

Caesarem cōspicātus fūgit, *having seen Caesar he fled*.

b. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used in agreement with the object of **habeo**. The meaning is nearly the same as that of the past active tenses of the simple verb; but the resulting fact is emphasized, rather than the past act.

Magnās cōpiās coāctās habet, *he has great forces (which he has) collected, or he has collected great forces (and still has them)*; while **magnās cōpiās coēgit**, *he (has) collected great forces*, leaves it uncertain whether he still has them.

c. Note the translation of such phrases as **post urbem conditam**, *after the founding of the city* (lit. *after the city founded*).

USES OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal nouns in *-ing*. It governs the case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb; but see **289**, II.

Fugiendī causā (99, *a*), *for the sake of fleeing*; **ad persuādendum eī** (115), *for persuading him*; **urbem videndī causā**, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is the future passive participle (**285**, II) used in a special idiom. In this use it agrees with a noun, but is translated as if it were the gerund (**287**) governing that noun as object. In translating from English into Latin, the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. E.g., in the gerund construction **urbem videndī causā**, **videndī** is the genitive modifying **causā**, and **urbem** is the direct object of **videndī**. In the gerundive construction **urbis videndae causā**, **urbis** is the genitive modifying **causā** and **videndae** agrees with **urbis** (lit. *for the sake of the city to be seen*). Both alike must be translated *for the sake of seeing the city*.

CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

289. I. RULE: *If the verb is intransitive, the gerund must be used.*

The gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally.

Eī crēdendī causā, *for the sake of believing him* (115).

a. But the gerundive of **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vēscor** (145) is used.

Spēs potiundī oppidī (II, 7, 5), *hope of taking the town*.

II. RULE: *If the verb is used transitively, the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition.*

A direct object is sometimes used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition.

(Always) **ad effēminandōs animōs** (I, 1, 8), *to weaken the courage*; (usually) **urbis videndae causā**, *for the sake of seeing the city*; sometimes **urbem videndī causā**, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

USE OF CASES

290. Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

291. The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives. With *causā* and *grātiā* it forms a common expression of purpose.

Bellandī cupiditās, a desire of fighting; *Caesaris* (or *Caesarem*) *videndī cupidus*, desirous of seeing Caesar; *bellandī causā vēnit*, he came to fight (for the sake of fighting).

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, an irregular construction is used—*meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, or vestrī* with a genitive in *-ī* (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number.

Suī cōservandī causā, for the sake of saving themselves. The usual gerund would be *sē cōservandī*; the gerundive, *suī cōservandōrum*.

292. The Dative is very rare.

293. The Accusative is used with a few prepositions, especially *ad* expressing purpose.

Parātus ad proficiscendum, ready to set out; *ad Caesarem videndum vēnit*, he came to see Caesar.

294. The Ablative is used with the prepositions *ab, dē, ex, in*, and as the ablative of means or cause.

In quaerendō reperiēbat, in questioning (them) he learned; *lapidibus subministrandīs* (III, 25, 4), by furnishing stones.

USES OF THE SUPINE

295. RULE: The Accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.

It may govern a direct object.

Gratulātum vēnerunt (I, 30, 2), they came to offer congratulations; *lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium* (I, 11, 4), they sent envoys to ask aid.

296. RULE: The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification (149).

It does not take a direct object. The supine of the verbs *audiō, cognōscō, dīcō, faciō, videō*, is most commonly found; and with the adjectives *facilis, difficilis, crēdibilis, incrēdibilis, iūcundus, iniūcundus, optimus, mīrabilis*, and the expressions *fās est, nefās est, opus est*.

Perfacile factū (I, 3, 16) lit. very easy as to the doing = very easy to do.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

297. The Months. The Latin names of months are adjectives, not nouns as are ours. In the times of Caesar and Cicero the names of the months were *Iānuārius* (-a, -um), *Februārius*, *Mārtius*, *Aprilis* (-e), *Maius*, *Iūnius*, *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September* (-bris, -bre), *Octōber*, *November*, and *December*. Later *Quintilis* was changed to *Iūlius*, in honor of Julius Caesar, and *Sextilis* to *Augustus*, in honor of the emperor Augustus.

Before 45 B.C., that is, till near the death of Caesar and Cicero, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February had 28, and each of the others had 29. In 46 B.C. Caesar reformed the calendar and gave the months their present number of days. The revised calendar went into effect in 45.

298. Calends, Nones, and Ides. The Romans counted the days backwards from three points in each month, the Calends, the Nones, and the Ides, instead of forward from the first as we do; that is, they called the days "the third before the Ides," "the fourth before the Calends," etc.

The *Calends* (*Kalendae*, -ārum, f.) were always the first of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnae*, -ārum, f.) were the seventh, the *Ides* (*Īdūs*, -uum, f.) the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October. In all other months they were the fifth and thirteenth.

299. Method of Reckoning. In reckoning dates they counted both the first day and the last day; for example, while we should speak of Monday as the second day before Wednesday, a Roman would have counted Wednesday as one, Tuesday as two, and Monday as three, and would thus have called Monday the third day before Wednesday.

In counting back from the Calends, remember that the Calends do not belong to the month in which the required day is. Add one to the number of days in the preceding month, then reckon backwards, counting both ends as usual.

For example, *a. d. v. Kal. Apr.* (I, 6, 15) means *the fifth day before the first of April*. The days involved are March 28, 29, 30, 31; April 1. Counting April 1 as the first day, and counting back, March 28 is the fifth day and the one meant by Caesar.

300. Method of Expressing Dates. An idiomatic formula is commonly used, which can neither be parsed nor translated literally; for example *a. d. v. Kal. Apr.* = *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs*. The logical form would be *diē quintō ante Kalendās Aprilēs*.

VOCABULARY

NOTE

In this vocabulary the figures 1, 2, and 4, following verbs, mean that the principal parts are formed like those of *laudō*, *moneō*, and *audiō*, respectively; or, if the verb is deponent, like those of *hortor*, *vereor*, and *partior* (App. 73).

As the fourth principal part of verbs, the form in *-um* is given if a perfect participle is in use. The future active participle, in *-ūrus*, is given for the few verbs which have this form but no perfect participle. The form in *-um* may be called either the supine or the nominative singular neuter of the perfect passive participle. The only objection to calling it supine is that the supine is not in common use.

To all words occurring in the first four books of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the book and chapter of first occurrence. If the word occurs first in Chapters 30-54 of Book I, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the first four books.

Words in italics are purely explanatory, and are never intended as definitions for translation purposes.

After geographical names letters are given, inclosed in parentheses. These correspond to letters on the margin of the general map, and thus serve as an index to the position of the names on the map.

Pronunciation of Proper Names. It is generally agreed that the English pronunciation of proper names should be used in translation; but as no modern grammar gives the rules for the English pronunciation, the greatest confusion exists in practice. Therefore the pronunciation of all proper names is indicated in parentheses. To indicate the sounds of vowels, diacritical marks are used with the following values:

ă = a in mat.	ē = e in me.	ō = o in note.
ā = a in mate.	ě = e in fern.	ô = o in or.
â = a in arm.	ĭ = i in is.	û = u in up.
â = a in Cuba.	ī = i in ice.	ū = u in use.
ě = e in met.	ö = o in not.	ōō = u in rude.

The letter *y* has the sounds of *i*, and is used in indicating pronunciation only as the consonant (= *y* in youth), or to indicate an *i* sound so rapidly uttered that it is barely distinguishable from the consonant *y*, as in Lucius = lū'shyūs.

It must be understood, however, that unaccented syllables are so hastily pronounced that their vowel sounds are usually somewhat indistinct.

Where a word has more than one accented syllable, the main accent is indicated by a heavy mark (ˈ), the lighter, secondary accent, by a light mark (˘).

In giving tribe names it is best to use always the Latin forms of the names (Nervii, Helvetii, etc.), rather than the Anglicized forms (Nervians, Helvetians, etc.). Most of these Anglicized forms have no warrant in good English usage; none has much warrant. The few that are possible are given in the Vocabulary, but are not recommended for use. Modern geographical names may well be used, so far as they are familiar.

VOCABULARY

A.

A., *abbr. for Aulus* (aw'lūs), *a Roman praenomen.* I, 6.

a., *abbr. for ante.* I, 6.

ā (*before consonants*), **ab** (*before vowels and some consonants*), **abs** (*before tē, and in some compounds*), *prep. with abl., originally denoting separation:* (1) *of place, persons, time, etc., from, away from, from the vicinity of;* (2) *denoting position, in some phrases, at, in, on, on the side of; ā tergō, in the rear;* (3) *with expressions of measure, away, off; ab milibus passuum duōbus, two miles away;* (4) *with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes, by;* (5) *variously translated in other relations, from, by, in respect to, after.* I, 1.

abdē, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. I, 12.

abdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead away, draw or carry off, withdraw. I, 11.

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go away, depart.

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw away or down; hurl. IV, 15.

abiēs, -ietis, *f.*, fir tree.

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iunctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], disjoin, detach.

abs, *see ā.*

abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut or lop off, tear off or away. III, 14.

absēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of absum*, be absent], absent, at a distance. I, 32; III, 17.

absimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], unlike. III, 14.

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], keep away from.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *intr.* [teneō, hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. I, 22.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], drag away, carry away by force. III, 2.

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. I, 1.

abundō, 1, *intr.* [unda, wave], overflow; abound.

ac, *see atque.*

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [ad + cēdō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; be added; **accēdebāt**, it was added. I, 19.

accelerō, 1, *intr.* [ad + celerō, hasten], hasten.

acceptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of accipiō*, accept], acceptable, beloved by (*with dative*). I, 3.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [ad + cadō, fall], fall to or upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; **accidit**, it happens. I, 14.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [ad + caedō, cut], cut into.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [ad + capiō, take], take or receive to oneself, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. I, 14.

acclivis, -e, *adj.* [ad + clivus, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. II, 29.

acclivitas, -tātis, *f.* [acclivis, ascending], ascent, slope. II, 18.

Accō, -ōnis, *m.*, Acco (āk'ō), *a chief of the Senones.*

accommodātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of accommodō, adapt*], fit, adapted, appropriate. III, 13.

accommodō, 1, *tr.*, adjust or adapt to oneself, fit or put on. II, 21.

accūrātē, *adv.*, carefully.

accurrō, -currere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [*ad+currō, run*], run or hasten to. I, 22.

accūsō, 1, *tr.* [*ad+causa, cause, case*], bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. I, 16.

acerbē, *adv.* [*acerbus, harsh*], harshly, with pain.

acerbitās, -tātis, *f.* [*acerbus, harsh*], harshness, rigor.

acerbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, harsh, biting, severe.

ācerrimē, *see* ācriter.

acervus, -ī, *m.*, a heap, mass. II, 32.

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, sharp edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; **aciēs prima**, the van; **aciēs media**, the center. I, 22.

acquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [*ad+quaerō, seek*], seek or gain in addition, win, acquire.

ācriter, *adv.* [*ācer, sharp*], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. *Comp.* ācrius; *sup.* ācerrimē (App. 40). I, 26.

actuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*agō, move, drive*], fitted with oars.

actus, *see* agō.

acūtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sharpened, pointed.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, originally denoting motion toward: (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of; (2) denoting position, at, by, near; (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for; (4) with numerals, up to, about; (5) of time, up to, until; at, on; (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. I, 1.

adactus, *see* adigō.

adaequō, 1, *tr.* [*aequō, make equal*], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. I, 48; II, 32.

adamō, 1, *tr.* [*amō, love*], love strongly, covet. I, 31.

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [*dō, put*], place on; add.

addūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [*dūcō, lead*], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. I, 3.

adēptus, *see* adimō.

adeō, *adv.* [*eō, thither*], to such an extent, so much, so very, so; in fact.

adeō, -īre, -īī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [*eō, go. App. 84*], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. II, 7.

adeptus, *see* adipiscor.

adequitō, 1, *intr.* [*equitō, ride; equus, horse*], ride up. I, 46.

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesūrus, *intr.* [*haereō, stick*], cling or stick to.

adhibeō, 2, *tr.* [*habeō, have*], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. I, 20.

adhortor, 1, *tr.* [*hortor, encourage*], encourage, incite.

adhūc, *adv.* [*hūc, hither*], hitherto, as yet. III, 22.

adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacuī, —, *intr.* [*iaceō, lie*], lie near or close to, adjoin.

Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.*, Adiatunnus (ā'dī-ā-tūn'ūs), the leader of the Sotiates. III, 22.

adi-ciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [*iaciō, throw. App. 7*], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. III, 1.

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -actum, *tr.* [*agō, move*], move, drive; thrust, plunge, hurl (of weapons); bind (by an oath). II, 21.

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [*emō, take*], take away, remove.

adipiscor, -ipisci, -eptus sum, *tr.*, attain to, gain.

aditus, -ūs, *m.* [*adeō, go to*], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. I, 43; II, 15.

adiudicō, 1, *tr.* [*iūdicō, judge*], adjudge, assign.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [*iungō, join*], join to, attach, unite; add. III, 2.

adiŭtor, -ōris, *m.* [adiuvō, aid], helper, abettor, assistant.

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iŭvī, -iŭtum, *tr.* [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. II, 17.

administer, -trī, *m.* [minister, servant], attendant; priest.

administrō, 1, *tr.* [minister, servant], manage, take charge of, administer; do, perform. II, 20.

admīror, 1, *tr.* [mīror, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. I, 14.

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], admit; commit, incur; let go, put to full speed (of a horse). I, 22.

admodum, *adv.* [modus, measure], up to the limit; very much, very; with *num.*, fully; with *neg.*, at all. III, 13.

admoneō, 2, *tr.* [moneō, warn], warn.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultum, *intr.*, grow up.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *tr.* [orior, arise], rise against, assail, attack. I, 13.

adsum, adesse, affui, affutūrus, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be near or present, be at hand, appear. I, 16.

adolēscēns, -entis, *m.* [pres. part. of adolēscō, grow up], youth, young man. I, 47; III, 7.

adolēscēntia, -ae, *f.* [adolēscēns, youth], youthfulness, youth. I, 20.

adolēscēntulus, -ī, *m.* [dim. of adolēscēns, youth], a very young man. III, 21.

adventus, -ūs, *m.* [veniō, come], coming, arrival, approach. I, 7.

adversārius, -rī, *m.* [adversus, turned against], antagonist, foe.

adversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of advertō, turn to], turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; **adversō flūmine**, up the river; in **adversum ōs**, full in the face. I, 18.

adversus, *prep. with acc.* [adversus, turned against], opposite to, against. IV, 14.

advocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call to, summon.

advolō, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly to or against, rush on or at.

aedificium, -cī, *n.* [aedificō, build], building, house. I, 5.

aedificō, 1, *tr.* [aedēs, house+faciō, make], build, construct. III, 9.

aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, ill, sick.

aegrē, *adv.* [aeger, ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.*, **aegrius**; *sup.*, **aegerrimē** (App. 40). I, 13.

Aemilius, -lī, *m.*, Aemilius (ē-mīl'ī-ŭs). I, 23.

aequāliter, *adv.* [aequālis, equal; aequus, equal], equally, evenly. II, 18.

aequinoctium, -tī, *n.* [aequus, equal+nox, night], the equinox. IV, 36.

aequitās, -tātis, *f.* [aequus, equal], equality; fairness, equity; **animi aequitās**, contentment. I, 40.

aequō, 1, *tr.* [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. I, 25.

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; favorable; **aequus animus**, equanimity, composure. I, 43; III, 17.

aerāria, -ae, *f.* [aes, copper], copper mine. III, 21.

aes, **aeris**, *n.* copper, bronze; anything made of copper or bronze, coin, money; **aes aliēnum**, another's money, debt. IV, 31.

aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. I, 54; II, 2.

aestimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [aestimō, value], valuation.

aestimō, 1, value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider.

aestivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aestus, heat; aestās, summer], of summer, summer.

aestuārium, -rī, *n.* [aestus, tide], low marshland, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. II, 28.

aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling, surging; tide; **minuente aestū**, at ebb tide. III, 12.

aetās, **aetātis**, *f.*, period of life, age. II, 16.

aeternus, -a, -um, *adj.*, everlasting.

afferō, afferre, attuli, allātum, tr. [ad+ferō, carry. App. 81], bring, take, or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. I, 43; II, 1.

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [ad+faciō, do], do to, treat, affect; magnō dolōre afficere, annoy greatly. I, 2.

affigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [ad+figō, fix], fasten to. III, 14.

affingō, -ingere, -finxī, -fictum, tr. [ad+ingō, invent], invent in addition.

affinitās, -tātis, f., alliance by marriage, relationship. I, 18.

affirmātiō, -ōnis, f. [affirmō, affirm; ad+firmus, strong], declaration, assertion.

affixus, see affigō.

afflictō, 1, tr. [freq. of affligō, strike against, damage], damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. III, 12.

affligō, -figere, -fixī, -flictum, tr., strike against; overthrow; damage, injure. IV, 31.

affore, fut. inf. of adsum.

Āfricus, -ī, m., Africus (āf'rī-kūs), the southwest wind.

āfuī, see absum.

Agedincum, -ī, n. (Be), Agedincum (āj'ē-dīng'kūm), now Sens.

ager, agri, m., land; farm; district, territory. I, 2.

agger, aggeris, m., material for earthworks, earth; causeway, agger (Int. 61); rampart. II, 12.

aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, tr. [ad+gradior, step], advance to or against; attack. I, 12.

aggregō, 1, tr. [ad+grex, flock], unite in a flock; assemble; join, attach. IV, 26.

agitō, 1, tr. [freq. of agō, move; discuss], discuss.

agmen, -inis, n. [agō, move], a moving body; a marching column; army; in agmine, on the march; primum agmen, the van; novissimum or extrēmum agmen, the rear. I, 15.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, tr., set in motion; drive (of animals); move forward, advance (of military works); do, transact, carry on (of business); discuss, speak; hold (conventum); give, render (grātiās); plead (causam or rem). I, 13.

agricultūra, -ae, f. [ager, land + colō, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. III, 17.

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., lively, quick, eager, active, ready, joyous. III, 19.

alacritās, -tātis, f. [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. I, 41; IV, 24.

ālārius, -a, -um, adj. [āla, wing], on the wing; *m. pl. as noun*, auxiliaries. I, 51.

albus, -a, -um, adj., white.

alcēs, -is, f., elk.

Alesia, -ae, f. (Cf), Alesia (ā-lē'zhyá), now Alise Ste. Reine.

aliās, adv. [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; aliās . . . aliās, at one time . . . at another. II, 29.

aliēnō, 1, tr. [aliēnus, of another], make another's or foreign; estrange, alienate; aliēnātā mente, maddened.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alius, other], of or belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; **aes aliēnum**, debt; aliēnissimī, entire strangers. I, 15.

aliō, adv. [alius, other], to another place, person, or thing; elsewhere.

aliquamdiū, adv. [aliquis, some + diū, long], for some time. I, 40.

aliquandō, adv. [aliquis, some], at some time, at length, finally.

aliquantō, adv. [aliquantus, some], somewhat, a little. III, 13.

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., some, considerable; *neut. as noun with partitive gen.*, a good deal, not a little.

aliquis, -quid, and aliquī, -qua, -quod, indef. pron. [quis, who. App. 62, a], someone, something, some; anyone, anything, any. I, 14.

aliquot, indecl. num. adj. [quot, how many], some, a few, several. III, 1.

aliter, *adv.* [alius, other], otherwise;
aliter . . . ac, otherwise . . . than.
II, 19.

alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* alterius (App. 32),
another, other; alius . . . alius,
one . . . another; *pl.*, some . . .
others. I, 1.

allātus, *see* afferō.

alliciō, -licere, -lexī, -lectum, *tr.*, at-
tract, allure, entice.

Allobrogēs, -um, *m.* (Dfg), the Allobro-
ges (ă-lōb'rō-jēs), a powerful Gal-
lic people in the Province. I, 6.

alō, alere, alui, altum, *tr.*, nourish,
feed, support; promote, foster, en-
courage. *I, 18.

Alpēs, -ium, *f.* (Cghi), the Alps. I,
10.

alter, -era, -erum, *gen.* alterius (App.
32), the other (of two); second;
alter . . . alter, the one . . . the
other; alterī . . . alterī, the one
party . . . the other. I, 2.

alternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [alter, the oth-
er], one after another, in turn.

altitudō, -inis, *f.* [altus, high, deep],
height; depth; thickness (of timber).
I, 8.

altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, lofty; deep;
neut. as noun, the deep, the sea. I, 2.

alūta, -ae, *f.*, soft leather. III, 13.

ambactus, -i, *m.*, paid retainer.

Ambarri, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Ambarri
(ă-mbăr'ī), clients of the Haedui. I, 11.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABde), the Ambi-
ani (ă-m'bī-ă'nī). II, 4.

Ambibariī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bbc), the Am-
bibarii (ă-m'bī-bă'rī-ī).

Ambiliati, -ōrum, *m.*, the Ambiliati
(ă-m'bī-lī-ă-tī). III, 9.

Ambiorix, -igis, *m.*, Ambiorix (ă-m'bī-
ō-rīks), king of the Eburones.

Ambivareti, -ōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Am-
bivareti (ă-m'bī-văr'ē-tī), clients of
the Haedui.

Ambivariū, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Ambi-
variti (ă-m'bī-văr'ī-tī). IV, 9.

ambō, -ae, -ō, both.

āmentia, -ae, *f.* [mēns, mind], lack of
mind, folly, insanity. I, 40.

amicitia, -ae, *f.* [amicus, friend],
friendship. I, 3.

amicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [amō, love],
friendly, well disposed; devoted; *m.*
as noun, friend, ally. I, 3.

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*
[mittō, send], send away, dismiss;
let go; lose. I, 28.

amentum, -i, *n.*, strap or thong, fast-
ened to the shaft of a javelin to aid its
propulsion.

amor, -ōris, *m.* [amō, love], love. I, 20.

amplē, *adv.* [amplus, large], largely;
comp., amplius, more, farther. I, 35;
II, 16.

amplificō, 1, *tr.* [amplus, large+faciō,
make], extend, enlarge, increase, ex-
pand. II, 14.

amplitudō, -inis, *f.* [amplus, large],
wide extent, size; importance, con-
sequence, dignity. IV, 3.

amplius, *see* amplē and amplus.

amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of large extent,
spacious, large; illustrious, splendid,
noble; generous, magnificent; **am-
plius**, *comp. as noun*, more, a greater
number, a greater distance. I, 15.

an, *conj.*, used to introduce the second
member of a double question, or, or
rather. I, 40; IV, 14.

Anartēs, -ium, *m.*, the Anartes (ă-năr'-
tēs), a German tribe on the lower
Danube.

Ancalitēs, -um, *m.* (Ac), the Ancalites
(ăn-kăl'ī-tēs).

anceps, ancipitis, *adj.* [ambō, both+
caput, head], two-headed, with two
sides or fronts, double. I, 26.

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor; in ancoris, at
anchor. III, 13.

Andebrogius, -gī, *m.*, Andebrogius
(ăn-dē-brō'jyūs). II, 3.

Andēs, -ium, *m.* (Ce), the Andes (ăn'-
dēs). II, 35.

ānfractus, -ūs, *m.*, circuitous route.

angulus, -i, *m.*, corner.

angustē, *adv.* [angustus, narrow], nar-
rowly, closely; in close quarters.
IV, 23.

angustiae, -ārum, *f.* [angustus, nar-
row], narrowness; a narrow place
or pass, strait, defile; straits, diffi-
culties, perplexity. I, 9.

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; in **angustō**, in a critical condition. I, 2.

anima, -ae, *f.*, breath, life, soul.

animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [animus, mind + ad + vertō, turn], turn the mind to; notice; animadvertere in, punish. I, 19.

animal, -ālis, *n.* [anima, breath of life], a living creature, animal.

animus, -ī, *m.*, soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; animī causā, for amusement; in animō habēre, intend. I, 1.

annōtinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus, year], of last year.

annus, -ī, *m.*, year. I, 3.

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus, year], yearly. I, 16.

ānser, -eris, *m.*, goose.

ante: (1) *adv.*, before, above, previously; (2) *prep. with acc.*, before, in advance of. I, 3.

anteā, *adv.* [ante, before], formerly, before, previously, once. I, 17.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [cēdō, go], go before, precede, excel, surpass. III, 8.

antecursor, -ōris, *m.* [currō, run], fore-runner; *pl.*, vanguard.

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear. App. 81], bear or carry before; prefer.

antemna, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. III, 14.

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before; prefer. IV, 22.

antevertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr.* [vertō, turn], put before, prefer.

antīquus, *adv.* [antīquus, ancient], from early or ancient times; long ago, anciently. II, 4.

antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ante, before], former, old, ancient. I, 18.

Antistius, -tī, *m.*, Gaius Antistius Reginus (gā'yūs ān-tīs'tī-ūs rē-jī'nūs), one of Caesar's legates.

Antōnius, -nī, *m.*, Marcus Antonius (mār'kūs ān-tō'nī-ūs), one of Caesar's legates, afterwards triumvir.

Ap., *abbr. for Appius* (āp'i-ūs), a Roman praenomen.

aperiō, -perire, -peruī, -pertum, *tr.* open, expose.

apertē, *adv.* [apertus, open], openly, manifestly.

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of aperiō*], open, exposed; **ab latere apertō**, on the unprotected (or right) flank. I, 25.

Apollō, -inis, *m.*, Apollo (ā-pōl'ō).

apparō, 1, *tr.* [ad + parō, prepare], prepare, make ready.

appellō, 1, *tr.*, accost, address, call by name, name, call. I, 1.

appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [ad + pellō, drive], bring to land. III, 12.

appetō, -petere, -petivī (-petiī), -petitum, *tr. and intr.* [ad + petō, seek], seek for, aim at; encroach upon; approach, be near. I, 40.

applicō, 1, *tr.* [ad + plicō, fold], apply; sē applicāre, lean.

apportō, 1, *tr.* [ad + portō, carry], bring.

approbō, 1, *tr.* [ad + probō, approve], favor, approve.

appropinquō, 1, *intr.* [ad + propinquus, near], come near or close, approach. II, 10.

appulsus, *see appellō*.

Apr., *abbr. for Aprilis*, -e, *adj.*, of April, April. I, 6.

aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted. III, 13.

apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. I, 2.

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. IV, 17.

aquātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [aqua, water], getting water. IV, 11.

aquila, -ae, *f.*, an eagle; a standard of the legion. IV, 25.

Aquileia, -ae, *f.* (Cj), Aquileia (āk'wī-lē'yā), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. I, 10.

aquilifer, -erī, *m.* [aquila, eagle + ferō, bear], standard bearer.

Aquitānia, -ae, *f.* (DEcd), Aquitania (āk'wī-tā'nī-ā), *southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees.* I, 1.

Aquitānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *m. pl. as noun*, the Aquitani (āk'wī-tā'nī), *possibly Aquitanians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul.* I, 1.

Arar, **Araris** (acc. -im), *m.* (CDfg), the Arar (ār'rār), *the modern Saone.* I, 12.

arbiter, -trī, *m.*, umpire, arbitrator.

arbitrium, -rī, *n.* [arbiter, umpire], decision or judgment (*of the arbiter*); opinion, discretion, pleasure. I, 36.

arbitror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [arbiter, umpire], decide; think, believe. I, 2.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. II, 17.

arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, summon, send for, invite. I, 31; II, 20.

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *intr.*, burn, blaze; be inflamed, be eager.

Arduenna, -ae, *f.* (ABfg), Arduenna (ār'dū-ēn'ā), *better the Ardennes, a vast forest of northeastern Gaul.*

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep; difficult. II, 33.

Arecomici, *see* Volcae.

Aremoricae, -ārum, *f.* (Bbed), *adj.*, maritime, Aremorian.

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver; silver plate or coin.

argilla, -ae, *f.*, white clay.

āridus, -a, -um, *adj.* [āreō, be dry], dry; *neut. as noun*, dry land. IV, 24.

ariēs, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram (Int. 62, c); brace, buttress. II, 32.

Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovistus (ār'vī-ō-vīs'tūs), *a king of the Germans.* I, 31; IV, 16.

Aristius, -tī, *m.*, Marcus Aristius (mār'kūs ā-rīs'tī-ūs), *a military tribune.*

arma, -ōrum, *n.*, arms; equipment; battle, war. I, 4.

armāmenta, -ōrum, *n.* [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. III, 14.

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [armō, arm], armor, equipment; **levis armātūrae**, light-armed. II, 10.

armō, 1, *tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; pass., arm oneself; **armātus**, *pf. part.*, as *adj.*, armed; **armātī**, as *noun*, armed men. I, 40; II, 4.

Arpineus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Arpineus (gā'yūs ār'pī-nē'yūs), *a knight in Caesar's army.*

arripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [ad + rapiō, seize] take or seize hurriedly.

arroganter, *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. I, 40.

arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. I, 33.

ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art; *pl.*, the arts.

artē, *adv.* [artus, close], closely, firmly. IV, 17.

articulus, -ī, *m.*, joint.

artificium, -cī, *n.* [ars, art + faciō, make], a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick.

artus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close, dense, thick.

Arvernus, -ī, *m.* (CDe), an Arvernian; *pl.*, the Arverni (ār-vēr'nī). I, 31.

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress, stronghold. I, 38.

ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [ad + scandō, climb], climb, ascend, mount, scale. I, 21.

ascēsus, -ūs, *m.* [ascendō, climb], a climbing; ascent, approach. I, 21.

asciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, *tr.* [ad + sciscō, approve], approve; admit or receive (*as allies*). I, 5.

aspectus, -ūs, *m.* [aspiciō, look at], look; appearance, mien, aspect.

asper, -era, -erum, *adj.*, rough, violent.

assiduus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ad + sedeō, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant.

assistō, assistere, astitī, —, *intr.* [ad + sistō, stand], stand by or near, stand.

assuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.*, accustom, train. IV, 1.

assuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [suēscō, become accustomed], become accustomed.

at, conj., but, at least. I, 43; II, 23.

atque, ac (*ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants*), *conj.*, and also, and even, and; *after words denoting a comparison or difference*, than, as, from. I, 1.

Atrebās, -bātis, m. (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (āt'rē-bā'tēz). II, 4.

Ātrius, -rī, m., Quintus Atrius (kwīn'tūs ā'trī-ūs), *one of Caesar's officers*.

attexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, tr. [ad+texō, weave], weave.

attingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum, tr. [ad+tangō, touch], touch or border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. I, 1.

attribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, tr. [ad+tribuō, assign], assign, allot. III, 1.

attulī, see afferō.

Atuatuca, -ae, f. (Af), Atuatuca (āt'ū-āt'ū-kā), *a stronghold of the Eburones*.

Atuatuci, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Atuatuci (āt'ū-āt'ū-sī). II, 4.

auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō, increase], producer, originator; promoter, instigator, adviser, authority. III, 17.

auctoritās, -tātis, f. [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. I, 3.

auctus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of augeō, increase*], increased, advanced. I, 43.

audācia, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. I, 18.

audācter, adv. [audāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. I, 15.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, dare, risk, venture. I, 18.

audiō, 4, tr., hear, hear of; listen to; **dictō audiēns, obedient.** I, 39; II, 12.

auditiō, -ōnis, f. [audiō, hear], hearing; hearsay, rumor. IV, 5.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. I, 18.

Aulerci, -ōrum, m., the Aulerci (aw-lēr'sī), *a Gallic people divided into four branches*: (1) Aulerci Eburo-

vices (ēb'ū-rō-vī'sēz), (Bd). III, 17.

(2) Aulerci Cenomani (sē-nōm'ā-nī), (Bd). (3) Aulerci Brannovices

(brān'ō-vī'sēz), *location unknown*.

(4) Aulerci Diablintes (dī'ā-blīn'tēz), (Bc). II, 34.

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold], of gold, gold.

auriga, -ae, m., chariot driver, chariot-eer. IV, 33.

auris, -is, f., ear.

Aurunculeius, -ī, m., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū'shyūs aw-rūng'kū-lē'yūs cōt'ā), *one of Caesar's legates*. II, 11.

Ausci, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Ausci (aw'sī). III, 27.

ausus, see audeō.

aut, conj., or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or. I, 1.

autem, postpositive conj., but; however, on the other hand; now; moreover. I, 2.

autumnus, -ī, m., autumn.

auxī, see augeō.

auxiliāris, -e, adj. [auxilium, aid], auxiliary; *m. pl. as noun*, auxiliary troops. III, 25.

auxilior, 1, intr. [auxilium, aid], give aid, help, assist, render assistance. IV, 29.

auxilium, -li, n., help, assistance, aid; *pl.*, auxiliary troops, reënforcements. I, 11.

Avaricēnsis, -e, adj., of Avaricum.

Avaricum, -ī, n. (Ce), Avaricum (ā-vār'ī-kūm), *the stronghold of the Bituriges, now Bourges*.

avāritia, -ae, f. [avārus, greedy], greed, covetousness. I, 40.

āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry away, take away.

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], turn away from or away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; *pf. part. as adj.*, with back turned. I, 16.

avis, -is, f., bird. IV, 10.

avus, -ī, m., grandfather. I, 12.

Axona, -ae, m. (Bf), the Axona (āk'sō-nā), *a river, now the Aisne*. II, 5.

B.

Bacēnis, -is, f. (Ahi), Bacenis (bá-sē-nis), the forest Bacenis, between the *Cherusci* and the *Suebi*.

Baculus, -i, m., Publius Sextius Baculus (púb'lī-ūs sēks'tī-ūs bāk'ū-lūs). II, 25.

Baliāris, -e, adj., Balearic (bāl'ē-ā-rīk), (i.e., coming from the islands *Majorca* and *Minorca*). II, 7.

balteus, -i, m., sword belt.

Balventius, -tī, m., Titus Balventius (tī'tūs bāl-vēn'shyūs), one of *Caesar's centurions*.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (to *Greeks* and *Romans*), uncivilized, barbarous; *m. pl. as noun*, barbarians. I, 31; II, 35.

Basilus, -i, m., Lucius Minucius Basilus (lū'shyūs mī-nū'shyūs bās'ī-lūs), one of *Caesar's legates*.

Batāvi, -ōrum, m. (Af), the *Batavi* (bā-tā'vī). IV, 10.

Belgae, -ārum, m. (ABdefg), the *Belgae* (bēl'jē), or *Belgians*. I, 1.

Belgium, -gī, n. (ABdefg), *Belgium* (bēl'jyūm), the country of the *Belgae*.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. I, 10.

bellicus, -a, -um, adj. [bellum, war], of or in war, military.

bellō, 1, intr. [bellum, war], make or carry on war, fight. I, 2.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m. (Bde), the *Bellovacī* (bē-lōv'ā-sī). II, 4.

bellum, -i, n., war. I, 1.

bene, adv. [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, *melius*; *sup.*, *optimē*. I, 45; III, 18.

beneficium, -cī, n. [bene, well+faciō, do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. I, 9.

benevolentia, -ae, f. [bene, well+volō, wish], good-will, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, n. (Cef), *Bibracte* (bī-brāk'tē), the chief town of the *Haedui*. I, 23.

Bibrax, -ctis, f. (Be), *Bibrax* (bī-brāks), a town of the *Remi*. II, 6.

Bibroci, -ōrum, m. (Ac), the *Bibroci* (bīb'rō-sī).

bīdūm, -ī, n. [bis, twice+diēs, day], period of two days, two days. I, 23.

biennium, -nī, n. [bis, twice+annus, year], two years. I, 3.

Bigerriōnēs, -um, m. (Ecd), the *Bigerriōnes* (bī-jēr'ī-ō'nēz). III, 27.

binī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. III, 15.

bipedālīs, -e, adj. [bis, twice+pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. IV, 17.

bipertītō, adv. [bis, twice+partior, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. I, 25.

bis, num. adv. [for duis, from duo, two], twice.

Biturīgēs, -um, m. (Cde), the *Bituriges* (bīt'ū-rī'jēz). I, 18.

Boduognātus, -ī, m., *Boduognatus* (bōd'ū-ōg-nā'tūs). II, 23.

Boī, Boiōrum, m. (Ce), the *Boi* (bōī), a *Gallie* tribe once very powerful in southern *Germany* and *Cisalpine Gaul*. Those who joined the *Helvetii* were afterwards settled by *Caesar* as indicated on the map. I, 5.

bonitās, -tātis, f. [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. I, 28.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (with animō) friendly; as noun, bonum, -ī, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; bonī, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. *Comp.*, *melior*; *sup.*, *optimus* (App. 42). I, 6.

bōs, bovis, m., f., ox; cow; *pl.* cattle.

bracchium, -chī, n., the arm, forearm. I, 25.

Brannovicēs, see Aulerci.

Bratuspantium, -tī, n. (Be), *Bratuspantium* (brāt'ūs-pān'shyūm). II, 13.

brevis, -e, adj., short, brief, transitory; brevī, in a short time. I, 40; III, 4.

brevitās, -tātis, f. [brevis, short], shortness, brevity. II, 20.

breviter, adv. [brevis, short], briefly.

Britannia, -ae, f. (Aabcd), *Britannia* (brī-tān'ī-ā), better *Britain*, Great Britain (*England* and *Scotland*), never *Brittany*. II, 4.

Britannicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Britannia, Britain], of Britain, British.

Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Britain, British; *m. pl. as noun*, the Britanni (brī-tānī), better, the Britons. IV, 21.

brūma, -ae, *f.*, the winter solstice.

Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, Decimus Junius Brutus (dēs'ī-mūs jū'nī-ūs brōō'tūs), one of Caesar's officers, probably a legate. III, 11.

C.

C., *abbr. for praenomen Gāius* (gā'yūs). I, 40; III, 5.

C., *sign for centum*, a hundred.

Cabūrus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs kā-bū'rūs), a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Domnotaurus. I, 47.

cacūmen, -inis, *n.*, top.

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. II, 27.

cadō, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus**, *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. I, 15.

Cadūrcus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Dd), Cadurcan; *m. pl. as noun*, the Cadurci (kā-dēr'sī).

caedēs, -is, *f.* [caedō, cut], a cutting; (of persons) slaughter, massacre, murder.

caedō, **caedere**, **cecidī**, **caesum**, *tr.*, cut, kill, slay. III, 29.

caelestis, -e, *adj.* [caelum, heaven], heavenly; *m. pl. as noun*, the gods.

Caemānī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Caemani (sē-mā'nī). II, 4.

caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, a sacred rite.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Caerosi (sē-rō'sī). II, 4.

caeruleus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark blue.

Caesar, -aris, *m.*: (1) Gaius Julius Caesar (gā'yūs jū'lī-ūs sē'zār), conqueror of Gaul and author of the *Commentaries*. I, 7. (2) Lucius Julius Caesar (lū'shyūs jū'lī-ūs sē'zār), a kinsman and legate of the former.

caespes, -itis, *m.*, a sod, turf. III, 25.

caesus, *see* caedō.

calamitās, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, calamity. I, 12.

Caletī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bd), the Caleti (kāl'ē-tī). II, 4.

callidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, shrewd. III, 18.

cālō, -ōnis, *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. II, 24.

campester, -tris, *adj.* [campus, a plain], of a plain, flat, level; **campestria loca**, level country.

campus, -ī, *m.*, plain, open space or country. III, 26.

Camulogenus, -ī, *m.*, Camulogenus (kām'ū-lōj'ē-nūs), a chief of the Auleri.

Canīnius, -nī, *m.*, Gaius Caninius Rebilus (gā'yūs kā-nīn'ī-ūs rēb'ī-lūs), one of Caesar's legates.

canō, **canere**, **cecinī**, —, *intr.*, sing; sound.

Cantabrī, -ōrum, *m.* (Eab), the Cantabri (kǎn'tā-brī). III, 26.

Cantium, -tī, *n.* (Ad), Cantium (kǎn'shyūm), or Kent.

caper, **caprī**, *m.*, goat.

capillus, -ī, *m.*, the hair.

capiō, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captum**, *tr.*, take, capture, seize, catch; take in, beguile, induce; take up (arms); choose, select (a place); form, adopt (a plan); reach, arrive at (a place); make (a beginning); **collem capere**, take position on a hill; **fugam capere**, take to flight. I, 1.

captivus, -ī, *m.* [capiō, take], captive, prisoner. I, 22.

captus, -ūs, *m.* [capiō, take], comprehension, ideas. IV, 3.

captus, *see* capiō.

caput, **capitis**, *n.*, the head (of men and animals); person, individual; mouth (of a river); **capitis poena**, capital punishment. I, 29.

Carcasō, -ōnis, *f.* (Ee), Carcaso (kār'-kā-sō). III, 20.

careō, 2, *intr.*, be without, be free from; miss, want.

carina, -ae, *f.*, keel. III, 13.

Carnutēs, -um, m. (BCde), the Carnutes (kār'nū-tēz). II, 35.

carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat.

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, tr., pluck, pick; censure, jeer at. III, 17.

carrus, -ī, m., cart. I, 3.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, valuable.

Carvilius, -li, m., Carvilius (kār-vīl'ī-ūs), a British king.

casa, -ae, f., cottage, hut.

cāseus, -ī, m., cheese.

Cassī, -ōrum, m. (Ac), the Cassi (kās'ī).

Cassiānus, -a, -um, adj., of Cassius; see Cassius. I, 13.

cassis, -idis, f., a metal helmet.

Cassius, -si, m., Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū'shyūs kāsh'yūs lōn-jī'nūs), consul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the Tigurini. I, 7.

Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., Cassivellaunus (kās'ī-vē-law'nūs), the commander in chief of the Britons against Caesar.

castellum, -ī, n. [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. I, 8.

Casticus, -ī, m., Casticus (kās'tī-kūs). I, 3.

castrum, -ī, n., fort; *pl.*, castra, castrōrum, fortified camp, camp; castra facere or pōnere, pitch camp. I, 12.

cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō, fall], what befalls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; cāsū, by chance. I, 12.

Catamantaloedis, -is, m., Catamantaloedis (kāt'ā-mān'tā-lē'dis). I, 3.

catēna, -ae, f., chain; fetter. I, 47; III, 13.

Caturigēs, -um, m. (Dg), the Caturiges (kāt'ū-rī'jēz). I, 10.

Catuvolcus, -ī, m., Catuvolcus (kāt'ū-vōl'kūs), a chief of the Eburones.

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (legal) case, cause; causam dicere, to plead a case; causā, following a gen.; for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. I, 1.

cautē, adv. [cautus, from caveō, be cautious], cautiously.

cautēs, -is, f., reef. III, 13.

Cavarillus, -ī, m., Cavarillus (kāv'ā-rīl'ūs), a Haeduan noble.

Cavarinus, -ī, m., Cavarinus (kāv'ā-rī'nūs), a king of the Senones.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, intr., be cautious, be on one's guard; obsidibus cavēre, exchange hostages as security. I, 14.

Cavillōnum, -ī, n. (Cf), Cavillonum (kāv'ī-lō'nūm).

Cebenna, -ae, f. (De), the Cebenna (sē-bēn'ā), or the Cevennes mountains.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, intr., go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. II, 19.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick; precipitate. IV, 23.

celeritās, -tātis, f. [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. I, 48; II, 12.

celeriter, adv. [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. I, 18.

cēlō, 1, tr., keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. II, 32.

Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celtae (sēl'tē), better the Celts. I, 1.

Celtillus, -ī, m., Celtillus (sēl-tīl'ūs), an Arvernian chief, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnsis, -e, adj. [Cēnabum], of Cenabum; *m. pl. as noun*, the people of Cenabum.

Cēnabum, -ī, n. (Cd), Cenabum (sēn'ā-būm), now Orleans.

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, m. (Ad), the Cēnimagni (sēn'ī-māg'nī).

Cēnomanī, see Aulerci.

cēnsēre, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsu, tr., think, decide (*acc. and inf.*); propose, advise, vote (*ut and subj.*); propose, vote for (*acc.*). I, 35.

cēnsus, -ūs, m., enumeration. I, 29.

centum (C), indecl. card. num., a hundred. I, 2.

centuriō, -ōnis, m. [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of a century, the sixtieth part of a legion. I, 39; II, 17.

cēpi, see capiō.

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*, separate; see, perceive.

certāmen, -inis, *n.* [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. III, 14.

certē, *adv.* [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. IV, 25.

certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, certain, sure, fixed; certiōrem facere, to inform (*acc. and inf.*); order (*ut or nē and subj.*); certior fierī, be informed. I, 7.

cervus, -ī, *m.*, stag.

cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, the rest of, the other, the remaining; as *noun*, the rest, the others. I, 32; II, 3.

Ceutronēs, -um, *m.*, the Ceutrones (sū'trō-nēz): (1) (Dg). I, 10. (2) (Af).

Chēruscī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ahi), the Cherusci (kē-rūsī), a German tribe.

cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [cibus, food], pertaining to food; *neut. pl. as noun*, provisions; molita cibāria, meal, flour. I, 5.

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food. IV, 1.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Quintus Tullius Cicero (kwīn'tūs tūl'ī-ūs sīs'ē-rō), one of Caesar's legates, brother of the famous orator.

Cimberius, -rī, *m.*, Cimberius (sīm-bē'rī-ūs), a Sueban chief. I, 37.

Cimbri, -ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (sīm-brī). I, 33; II, 4.

Cingetorix, -igis, *m.*, Cingetorix (sīn-jēt'ō-rīks): (1) a chief of the Treveri; (2) a British king.

cingō, cingere, cīnxi, cinctum, *tr.*, encircle, surround; man (a wall). I, 38.

cippus, -ī, *m.*, tombstone.

circinus, -ī, *m.* [circus, circle], a pair of compasses. I, 38.

circiter, *adv.* [circus, circle], about, near. I, 15.

circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [circumeō, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. I, 21.

circum, *prep. with acc.* [circus, a circle], around, about, near. I, 10.

circumcidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut around or off, cut; isolate.

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], encircle.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. I, 38; IV, 32.

circumdūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-tum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or draw around. I, 38; III, 26.

circumeō, -īre, -īi, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go or march around; traverse, visit. III, 25.

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [fundō, pour], surround; *pass.*, gather round.

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw, set, or place around. II, 6.

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-sum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send around.

circummūniō, 4, *tr.* [mūniō, fortify], wall around, inclose. II, 30.

circumplector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* [plectō, fold], infold, inclose.

circumsistō, -sistere, -steti, —, *tr.* [sistō, stand], stand, flock, or rally around, surround, hem in. I, 48; III, 15.

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-tum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look (around) for or at, consider, examine.

circumvallō, 1, *tr.* [vāllum, rampart], surround with a rampart, beleaguer, invest.

circumvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vec-tum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry around; *pass.*, ride around.

circumveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ven-tum, *tr.* [veniō, come], come or get around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. I, 25.

cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. II, 3.

Cisalpinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Alpēs], Cisalpine, lying on the south side of the Alps.

Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Rhēnus], on this (the western) side of the Rhine.

Cita, -ae, *m.*, Gaius Fufius Cita (gā'yūs fū'fī-ūs sī'tá), a Roman knight.
citātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of citō*, put in motion], swift. IV, 10.
citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), nearer, hither; Gallia Citerior (= Cisalpina), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. I, 10.
citō, *adv.*, quickly, speedily. *Comp.*, citius; *sup.*, citissimē. IV, 33.
citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. I, 12.
citrō, *adv.*, hither; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. I, 42.
cīvis, -is, *m., f.*, citizen.
civitas, -tātis, *f.* [civis, citizen], citizenship; the citizens (as forming a community), state, city. I, 2.
clam, *adv.*, secretly. III, 18.
clāmitō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of clāmō*, cry out], cry out repeatedly, exclaim.
clāmor, -ōris, *m.* [clāmō, cry out], outcry, noise, clamor. II, 11.
clandestinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [clam, secretly], hidden, secret.
clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, loud.
classis, -is, *f.*, fleet. III, 11.
Claudius, -dī, *m.*, Appius Claudius Pulcher (āp'ī-ūs klaw'dī-ūs pūl'kēr), consul 54 B.C.
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, *tr.*, shut, close; **agmen claudere**, close the line, bring up the rear. I, 25.
clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike. III, 13.
clēmēntia, -ae, *f.* [clēmēns, gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. II, 14.
cliēns, -entis, *m. and f.*, client, vassal, dependent, retainer. I, 4.
clientēla, -ae, *f.* [cliēns, a client], the relation of client and patron; patronage, vassalage; clients.
clivus, -ī, *m.*, slope, ascent.
Clōdīus, -dī, *m.*, Publius Clodius Pulcher (pūb'lī-ūs klō'dī-ūs pūl'kēr), murdered by Milo in 52 B.C.
Cn., *abbr. for Gnaeus* (nē'ūs), a Roman praenomen. IV, 1.
co-, *see con-*.

coacervō, 1, *tr.* [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. II, 27.
coāctus, *see cōgō*.
coāctus, -ūs, *m.* [cōgō, compel], compulsion.
coagmentō, 1, *tr.*, join, connect.
coartō, 1, *tr.*, crowd together.
Cocosātēs, -um, *m.* (Dc), the Cocosates (kōk'ō-sā'tēz). III, 27.
coēgī, *see cōgō*.
coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, *tr.* [emō, buy], buy, buy up. I, 3.
coēō, -īre, -iī, —, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], assemble.
coepī, coepisse (App. 86 and 86, a), *tr.*, began, commenced, undertook; **coeptus**, *pf. part.*, begun, commenced. I, 15.
coērcēō, 2, *tr.* [arceō, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. I, 17.
cōgitō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [co+agitō, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. I, 33; III, 24.
cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [co+(g)nātus, born], blood relationship; family, clan.
cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *tr.* [co+(g)nōscō, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; *pf.*, I have learned, I know (App. 193, I, a). I, 19.
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *tr.* [co+agō, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. I, 4.
cohors, -tis, *f.*, cohort (Int. 33). I, 40; II, 5.
cohortātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cohortor, encourage], encouragement, cheering. II, 25.
cohortor, 1, *tr.* [co+hortor, encourage], encourage, cheer, animate. I, 25.
collātus, *see cōnferō*.
collaudō, 1, *tr.* [con+laudō, praise], praise highly.
colligō, 1, *tr.* [con+ligō, bind], bind or fasten together. I, 25.

- colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr.** [con+legō, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; *sē colligere, collect oneself, rally.* III, 6.
- collis, -is, m., hill.** I, 22.
- collocō, 1, tr.** [con+locō, place], place, set, station; arrange; *nūptum collocāre, give in marriage.* I, 18.
- colloquium, -quī, n.** [colloquor, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. I, 34.
- colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, intr.** [con+loquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. I, 19.
- colō, colere, coluī, cultum, tr., cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship.** IV, 1.
- colōnia, -ae, f., colony, settlement.**
- color, -ōris, m., color.**
- com-, see con-.**
- combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, tr.** [com(b)+ūrō, burn], burn up. I, 5.
- comes, -itis, m., f., companion.**
- comitium, -tī, n.** [com+eō, go], place of assembly or meeting; *pl.*, an election.
- comitor, 1, tr.** [comes, companion], accompany, follow.
- commeātus, -ūs, m.** [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. I, 34; II, 5.
- commemorō, 1, tr.** [memorō, call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. I, 14.
- commendō, 1, tr.** [mandō, intrust], intrust; surrender. IV, 27.
- commeō, 1, intr.** [meō, go], go back and forth; *with ad.*, resort to, visit. I, 1.
- commilitō, -ōnis, m.** [mīles, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. IV, 25.
- comminus, adv.** [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. I, 52.
- commissūra, -ae, f.** [committō, join], uniting, joint, juncture.
- committō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr.** [mittō, send], join, splice; *commit (a crime)*, do; allow, permit; intrust; *proelium committere*, join or begin battle. I, 13.
- Commius, -mī, m., Commius (kōm'ī-ūs), a chief of the Atrebatas.** IV, 21.
- commodē, adv.** [commodus, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; *satis commodē*, to much advantage, very easily. I, 25.
- commodum, -ī, n.** [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. I, 35; III, 22.
- commodus, -a, -um, adj.** [modus, measure], *in full measure*; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. I, 42.
- commonefeciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, tr., remind forcibly.** I, 19.
- commoror, 1, intr.** [moror, tarry], wait, stop.
- commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr.** [moveō, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. I, 13.
- communicō, 1, tr.** [commūnis, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. IV, 13.
- communiō, 4, tr.** [mūniō, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. I, 8.
- commūnis, -e, adj., common, general; rēs commūnis, the common interest.** I, 30; II, 4.
- commūtatiō, -ōnis, f.** [commūtō, change], a changing, change. I, 14.
- commūtō, 1, tr.** [mūtō, change], change or alter completely, change, exchange. I, 23.
- comparō, 1, tr.** [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure, prepare for. I, 3.
- comparō, 1, tr.** [pār, equal], place in comparison, compare. I, 31.
- compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr.** [pellō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. II, 23.
- compendium, -dī, n., gain, profit.**
- comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertum, tr.** [pariō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. I, 22.
- complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, tr.** [plectō, fold], embrace, clasp, inclose. I, 20.
- compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, tr.** [pleō, fill], fill up or completely; complete; cover. I, 24.
- complexus, see complector.**

complūrēs, -a, adj. [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. I, 8.

comportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry together, collect, bring. I, 16.

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehensum, tr. [prehendō (=prēndō), seize], grasp, lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (fire). III, 14.

comprobō, 1, tr. [probō, approve], approve, sanction, justify.

compulsus, see compellō.

con-, com-, co- [the forms taken by cum in composition], together; completely; or mere emphasis.

cōnātum, -ī, n. [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 3.

cōnātus, -ūs, m. [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 8.

cōnātus, see cōnor.

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, tr. and intr. [cēdō, go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. I, 7.

concessus, -ūs, m. [concēdō, permit], concession, permission.

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [caedō, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. I, 12.

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [cadō, fall], fall down, fall. III, 14.

conciliō, 1, tr. [concilium, assembly], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. I, 3.

concilium, -li, n., gathering, assembly, council. I, 18.

concisus, see concidō.

concitō, 1, tr. [citō, put in motion], stir up, rouse, instigate, incite.

conclāmō, 1, intr. [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. I, 47; III, 18.

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [claudō, close], shut up; **conclūsum mare**, an inland sea. III, 9.

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, m., Conconnetodumnus (kōn-kōn'ē-tō-dūm'nūs), a chief of the Carnutes.

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepium, intr., clash.

concurrō, -currere, -curri, cursum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush to-

gether; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. I, 48; II, 20.

conkursō, 1, intr. [freq. of concurrō, run], run about.

conkursus, -ūs, m. [concurrō, run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. I, 8.

conkursus, see concurrō.

condemnō, 1, tr. [damnō, condemn], convict.

condiciō, -ōnis, f., condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. I, 28.

condōnō, 1, tr. [dōnō, give], give up; pardon, forgive. I, 20.

Condrūsi, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Condrusi (kōn-drōō'sī). II, 4.

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. I, 4.

confectus, see cōnficiō.

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, tr. [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring or get together, collect, gather, carry, bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put off, defer; compare; **sē cōnferre**, betake oneself, take refuge. I, 16.

cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj., dense, thick, compact; in close order. I, 24.

cōnfestim, adv., hastily, at once, immediately. IV, 32.

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (leather). I, 3.

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fisis sum, intr. [fidō, trust. App. 74], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; **cōnfisus, pf. part. with present meaning**, relying on. I, 23.

cōnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], fasten. III, 13.

cōnfinis, -e, adj. [finis, boundary], adjoining; contiguous.

cōnfinium, -ni, n. [finis, boundary], common boundary, neighborhood.

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, f. [cōnfirmō, assert], assurance. III, 18.

cōnfirmō, 1, tr. [firmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. I, 3.

cōnfisus, *see* cōnfidō.

cōnfiteor, -fiterī, -fessus sum, *tr.* [fateor, confess], acknowledge, confess.

cōnfixus, *see* cōnfigō.

cōnflagrō, 1, *intr.* [flagrō, burn], burn, be on fire.

cōnflictō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of cōnfigō], strike together; *pass.*, be distressed.

cōnfigō, -figere, -fixi, -flictum, *intr.* [figō, strike], strike against; contend, fight. II, 5.

cōnfluēs, -entis, *f.* [cōnfluō, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.

cōnfluō, -fluere, -fluxi, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow together.

cōnfigiō, -fugere, -fūgi, —, *intr.* [fugiō, flee], flee, take refuge.

cōnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [fundō, pour], pour together, bring together.

congregior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join (*peacefully*). I, 36; II, 23.

congressus, -ūs, *m.* [congregior, meeting], meeting, engagement, conflict. III, 13.

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast; put; put together *logically*, conjecture; in fugam conicere, put to flight. I, 26.

coniectūra, -ae, *f.* [coniciō, conjecture], inference, conjecture.

coniectus, *see* coniciō.

coniūctim, *adv.* [coniungō, join], jointly.

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. I, 37; II, 3.

coniūnx, -iugis, *f.* [coniungō, join], wife.

coniūratiō, -ōnis, *f.* [coniūrō, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. I, 2.

coniūrō, 1, *intr.* [iūrō, swear], swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. II, 1.

cōnor, 1, *intr.*, attempt, endeavor, try. I, 3.

conquiēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvi, —, *intr.* [quiēscō, to rest; quiēs, rest] lie down to rest.

conquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. I, 27.

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sanguis, blood], of the same blood; *m. as noun*, kinsman, relative. I, 11.

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr.* [scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. IV, 23.

cōnscientia, -ae, *f.* [cōnscius, conscious], consciousness, knowledge, sense.

cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum, *tr.* [sciscō, resolve], resolve upon; sibi mortem cōnsciscere, commit suicide. I, 4.

cōnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sciō, know], conscious; aware. I, 14.

cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write. I, 10.

cōnsecrō, 1, *tr.* [sacrō, dedicate], dedicate, consecrate.

cōnsector, 1, *tr.* [sector, freq. of sequor, follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. III, 15.

cōnsecūtus, *see* cōnsequor.

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cōnsentiō, agree], agreement.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsentiō, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. I, 30; II, 28.

cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsus, *intr.* [sentiō, feel], think together; agree, combine. II, 3.

cōnsequor, -sequi, -seqūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow up; go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, accomplish; ensue, succeed. I, 13.

cōnservō, 1, *tr.* [servō, save], save, spare, protect; observe, maintain. II, 12.

Cōnsidius, -dī, *m.*, Publius Considius (pūb'li-ūs kōn-sid'i-ūs), one of Caesar's officers. I, 21.

cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [sīdō, sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. I, 21.

cōnsilium, -lī, *n.*, consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; council of war of Roman officers; *commūnī cōnsiliō*, by, or in accordance with, general action; *pūblicō cōnsiliō*, by action of the state; *cōnsilium capere* or *inīre*, form or adopt a plan; *cōnsilium habēre*, think, consider. I, 5.

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], very like, similar. II, 11.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], take a stand or position, keep one's position, stand; (of soldiers) form; stop, halt, remain, stay; (of ships) ride at anchor; consist in, depend or rest on. I, 13.

cōnsobrinus, -ī, *m.*, cousin.

cōsōlor, 1, *tr.*, cheer, comfort. I, 20.

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnspiciō, look at], sight, view; presence. I, 11.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. I, 47; II, 21.

cōnspicor, 1, *tr.*, observe, descry, perceive. I, 25.

cōnspirō, 1, *intr.* [spirō, breathe], combine, conspire. III, 10.

cōnstanter, *adv.* [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. II, 2.

cōnstantia, -ae, *f.* [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. I, 40.

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [sternō, strew], strew over, cover over. IV, 17.

cōnsternō, 1, *tr.* [cōnsternō, -ere, strew over], confound, perplex, dismay.

cōnstipō, 1, *tr.*, press or crowd closely.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint, set; decide, decree, determine, establish, settle;

(of troops) draw up, station; (of ships) anchor, station; raise (a legion). I, 3.

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, —, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; *impersonal*, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. III, 6.

cōnstrātus, *see* cōnsternō.

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, a), be accustomed, be wont; *cōnsuētus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. I, 14.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. I, 31; II, 17.

cōnsuētus, *see* cōnsuēscō.

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. I, 2.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsul, consul], consulship. I, 35.

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr.* and *intr.*: *tr.*, take counsel, consult, consider; *intr. with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. I, 53.

cōnsultō, 1, *intr.* [freq. of cōnsulō, take counsel], reflect, consider, take counsel.

cōnsultō, *adv.* [cōnsulō, take counsel], deliberately, designedly, on purpose.

cōnsultum, -ī, *n.* [cōnsulō, take counsel], result of deliberation; decree, enactment, decision. I, 43.

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūptum, *tr.* [sūmō, take], take together or all at once; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. I, 11.

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxi, -sur-rēctum, *intr.* [surgō, rise], arise together or in a body; arise.

contabulō, 1, *tr.* [tabula, board], floor over, build in stories, build up.

contāgiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contingō, touch], contact.

contāminō, 1, *tr.*, corrupt, contaminate.

contegŏ, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegŏ, cover], cover up, cover. IV, 17.

contemnŏ, -temnere, -tempſī, -temp-tum, *tr.* [temnŏ, scorn], despise, disdain.

contemptiŏ, -ŏnis, *f.* [contemnŏ, despise], disdain, contempt. III, 17.

contemptus, -ūs, *m.* [contemnŏ, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. II, 30.

contendŏ, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [tendŏ, stretch], strive; push forward, hasten; march; contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. I, 1.

contentiŏ, -ŏnis, *f.* [contendŏ, strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. I, 44.

contentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* contineŏ, restrain], satisfied, contented.

contigī, *see* contingŏ.

continēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* contineŏ, hold together], continuous, unbroken; neighboring; *f. as noun*, mainland, continent. III, 28.

continenter, *adv.* [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. I, 1.

continentia, -ae, *f.* [contineŏ, hold], self-restraint, moderation.

contineŏ, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [teneŏ, hold], hold together; hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; contain; *sē* continēre, *with abl.*, remain in, on, or within. I, 1.

contingŏ, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr. and intr.* [tangŏ, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. I, 38.

continuātiŏ, -ŏnis, *f.* [continuus, continuous], continuance, succession. III, 29.

continuoŏ, *adv.* [continuus, continuous], immediately, forthwith.

continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [contineŏ, hold together], unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous; consecutive. I, 48; IV, 34.

cōntio, -ŏnis, *f.* [*for* conventiŏ; conveniŏ, come together], assembly, mass meeting; speech (*before such a meeting*).

contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*: (1) *as adv.*, against him or them; on the other hand; *contrā atque*, contrary to what; (2) *as prep.*, against, contrary to; opposite, facing. I, 18.

contrahŏ, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahŏ, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. I, 34; IV, 22.

contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [contrā, against], lying over against, opposite, facing; *ex contrāriŏ*, on the contrary. II, 18.

contrōversia, -ae, *f.* [contrā, against + versus, turned], dispute, quarrel, controversy.

contulī, *see* cōnferŏ.

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, affront, indignity, insult. I, 14.

convalēscŏ, -valēscere, -valuī, —, *intr.* [valēscŏ, *incept. of* valeŏ, be well], gain health or strength, recover.

convallis, -is, *f.* [vallis, valley], inclosed valley, defile. III, 20.

convehŏ, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [vehŏ, carry], carry or bring together, collect.

conveniŏ, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr. and intr.* [veniŏ, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; be agreed upon; *impersonal*, be convenient, suitable, necessary. I, 6.

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [conveniŏ, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. I, 18.

convertŏ, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [vertŏ, turn], turn completely, wheel around; turn, change; *signa convertere*, face about. I, 23.

Convictolitāvis, -is, *m.*, Convictolitavis (kŏn-vīk'tŏ-lī-tā'vīs), a Haeduan chief.

convincŏ, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.* [vincŏ, conquer], conquer completely; prove. I, 40.

convocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call together, summon, assemble. I, 16.
coerior, -orirī, -ortus *sum*, *intr.* [co+rior, rise], arise, spring up, break out. III, 7.
cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply, plenty, abundance, number; *pl.*, resources; forces, troops. I, 2.
cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cōpia, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. I, 23.
cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook. III, 13.
cor, cordis, *n.*, heart; cordi esse, be dear.
cōram, *adv.*, face to face, in person. I, 32.
Coriosolitēs, -um, *m.* (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō'ri-ō-sōl'i-tēz). II, 34.
corium, -rī, *n.*, skin, hide, leather.
cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (of an army) flank, wing. I, 52; II, 23.
corōna, -ae, *f.*, wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; sub corōnā vēndere, sell at auction. III, 16.
corpus, -oris, *n.*, body; person; a (dead) body. I, 25.
corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [con+rumpō, break], destroy, ruin.
cortex, -icis, *m.*, bark. II, 33.
Cōrus, -ī, *m.*, the northwest wind.
cotidiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cotidiē, daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. I, 1.
cotidiē, *adv.* [quot, how many+diēs, day], daily, every day. I, 16.
Cotta, see Aurunculeius.
Cotuātus, -ī, *m.*, Cotuatus (kōt'ū-ā'-tūs), a chief of the Carnutes.
Cotus, -ī, *m.*, Cotus (kō'tūs), a Haedian noble.
crassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [crassus, thick], thickness. III, 13.
Crassus, -ī, *m.*: (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus (mār'kūs lī-sīn'i-ūs krās'-ūs), *triumvir* with Caesar and Pompey. I, 21. (2) his son, Marcus Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's quaestors. (3) a second son, Publius Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's officers, perhaps a legate. I, 52; II, 34.

cratēs, -is, *f.*, wicker work; fascine (bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.). IV, 17.
crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. II, 1.
crēbrō, *adv.* [crēber, repeated], repeatedly, often.
crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr. and intr.*, believe, suppose; intrust. II, 33.
cremō, 1, *tr.*, burn. I, 4.
creō, 1, *tr.*, create; elect, choose, appoint. I, 16.
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, *intr.*, grow or increase (in size, power, age, etc.), swell. I, 20.
Crētēs, -um, *m.*, the Cretes (krē'tēz), better, Cretans, natives of the island of Crete. II, 7.
Critognātus, -ī, *m.*, Critognatus (krīt'ōg-nā'tūs), a chief of the Arvernī.
cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture, torment. I, 31; II, 31.
crūdēlitās, -tātis, *f.* [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelty, harshness. I, 32.
crūdēliter, *adv.* [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly. I, 31.
crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg.
cubile, -is, *n.* [cubō, lie down], bed, resting-place.
culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. III, 2.
culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt. IV, 27.
cultus, -ūs, *m.* [colō, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. I, 1.
cum, *conj.*, when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; **cum primum**, as soon as (App. 238-242). I, 1.
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with. I, 1.
cumulus, -ī, *m.*, heap, pile.
cūctātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cūctor, delay], delay, hesitation, reluctance. III, 18.
cūctor, 1, *intr.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. III, 23.

cūnctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [for *coniūnctus*, joined together], all together, all. II, 29.

cuneātim, *adv.* [cuneus, wedge], in wedge-shaped masses.

cuneus, -ī, *m.*, wedge; wedge-shaped mass.

cuniculus, -ī, *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. III, 21.

cupidē, *adv.* [cupidus, desirous], desirously, eagerly. I, 15.

cupiditās, -tātis, *f.* [cupidus, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. I, 2.

cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cupiō, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. I, 2.

cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum, *tr.* and *intr.*, long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. I, 18.

cūr, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why? for what reason? for which reason, wherefore. I, 40; IV, 16.

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, attention. I, 33.

cūrō, 1, *tr.* [cūra, care], care for, take care of, provide for; *with gerundive* (App. 285, II, b), have, order. I, 13.

currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. IV, 33.

cursus, -ūs, *m.* [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. I, 48; II, 23.

custōdia, -ae, *f.* [custōs, guard], custody, guard (*state of being guarded*); *pl.*, guard, keepers. II, 29.

custōdiō, 4, *tr.* [custōs, guard], guard.

custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. I, 20.

D.

D., *abbr. for praenomen Decimus* (dēs'-i-mūs). III, 11.

D., *sign for quingenti*, five hundred. III, 22.

d., = *diem*, *in abbr. for dates*. I, 6.

Dāci, -ōrum, *m.*, the Daci (dā'sī) or Dacians, the inhabitants of *Dacia*, now *Rumania*.

damnō, 1, *tr.* [damnum, damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. I, 4.

damnum, -ī, *n.*, loss, damage.

Dānuvius, -vī, *m.* (Bhi), the Danuvius (dā-nū'vī-ūs), *better*, the Danube.

dē, *prep. with abl.*: (1) of place, from, out of; especially down from; (2) of time, just after, about; (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. I, 1.

dēbeō, 2, *tr.* [dē+habeō, have], have or keep from someone; owe; *with inf.*, ought, must; *pass.*, be due. I, 11.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. I, 31.

decem (X), *card. num. adj.*, ten. I, 4.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.* [cernō, separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. II, 35.

dēcērtō, 1, *intr.* [cērtō, contend], fight to the end, fight it out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. I, 44; II, 10.

dēcēssus, -ūs, *m.* [dēcēdō, depart], departure; ebb, fall (*of the tide*). III, 13.

Decetia, -ae, *f.* (Ce), Decetia (dē-sē'-shyā), a town of the *Haedui*, now Decize.

dēcīdō, -cidere, -cīdī, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall from or off. I, 48.

decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [decem, ten], tenth. I, 40; II, 21.

dēcīpiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], entrap; deceive. I, 14.

dēclārō, 1, *tr.* [clārus, clear], make plain, declare. I, 50.

dēclivis, -e, *adj.* [clivus, a slope], sloping downward; declining; *neut. pl.* as *noun*, slopes. II, 18.

dēclivitās, -tātis, *f.* [dēclivis, sloping downward], descent.

dēcērētum, -ī, *n.* [dēcernō, decide], decision, decree, order.

dēcērētus, *see dēcernō*.

decumānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decuman; **decumāna porta**, the rear gate (*of the camp*). II, 24.

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. I, 23.

dēcurrō, -currere, -currere, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run down, hurry down. II, 19.

dēdecus, -oris, *n.* [decus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. IV, 25.

dedī, *see* dō.

dēdidī, *see* dēdō.

dēditicius, -a, -um, *adj.* [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; *m. as noun*, one who has surrendered, prisoner. I, 27.

dēditio, -ōnis, *f.* [dēdō, surrender], surrender, capitulation. I, 27.

dēditus, *see* dēdō.

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give up or over, yield, surrender; devote; sē dēdere, submit, surrender. II, 15.

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (*ships*); give in marriage. I, 44; II, 2.

dēfatigatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfatigō, weary], fatigue, weariness. III, 19.

dēfatigō, 1, *tr.* [fatigō, weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. I, 40.

dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēficiō, fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. III, 10.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, *tr.* [fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect. I, 11.

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfendō, defend], a defending, defense. II, 7.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.* [dēfendō, defend], defender, protector; (*means of*) defense. II, 6.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring before, refer; bestow, confer; **dēlātus** (*sometimes*), falling; coming by chance. II, 4.

dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.* wearied, exhausted, faint. I, 25.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [faciō, make], fail, desert, fall away, revolt. II, 10.

dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix], fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. IV, 17.

dēfiniō, 4, *tr.* [finiō, limit; finis, end], mark off; define, determine.

dēfixus, *see* dēfigō.

dēfore, *fut. inf. of* dēsum.

dēfōrmis, -e, *adj.* [fōrma, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. IV, 2.

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *tr.* [fugiō, flee], flee from, shun.

dēfui, *see* dēsum.

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iēcīō, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. I, 8.

dēiectus, -ūs, *m.* [dēiciō, cast down], slope, descent. II, 8.

dēinceps, *adv.*, one after the other, in turn, successively, in succession. III, 29.

deinde, *adv.* [dē+inde, thence], thereupon, then, next. I, 25.

dēlātus, *see* dēferō.

dēlectō, 1, *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight in, take pleasure in. IV, 2.

dēlēctus, *see* dēligō.

dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *tr.*, wipe out, efface, destroy, annihilate. II, 27.

dēliberō, 1, *tr.* [libra, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. I, 7.

dēlibrō, 1, *tr.* [liber, bark], peel.

dēlictum, -ī, *n.*, fault, offense.

dēligō, 1, *tr.* [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. I, 53; IV, 29.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], pick out, select, choose. I, 3.

dēlitescō, -litescere, -litui, —, *intr.* [latescō, *incept. of* lateō, lie hidden], hide oneself, lurk. IV, 32.

dēmentia, -ae, *f.* [mēns, mind], madness, folly. IV, 13.

dēmetō, -metere, -messui, -messum, *tr.* [metō, reap], mow, reap. IV, 32.

dēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [migrō, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate, remove. IV, 4.

dēminuō, -minuere, -minui, -minutum, *tr.* [minuō, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. I, 18.

dēmiltō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send, thrust, or let down; sink; bow; sē dēmittere, come or get down, descend; sē animō dēmittere, lose courage; dēmissus, *pf. part. as adj.*, low. I, 32.

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsi, dētemptum, *tr.* [dē+emō, take], take down, remove.

dēmōnstrō, 1, *tr.* [mōnstrō, show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. I, 11.

dēmōror, 1, *tr.* [mōror, delay], hinder, delay. III, 6.

dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally. I, 17.

dēnegō, 1, *tr.* [negō, deny], refuse. I, 42.

dēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [decem, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. I, 43.

dēnique, *adv.*, and then, thereupon, finally, at last; at least. I, 22.

dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, closely set or packed, thick, dense. II, 22.

dēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, announce], announce, give or send notice, declare, threaten. I, 36.

dēpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive from or away, ward off. III, 25.

dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. I, 43; III, 28.

dēpereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [pereō, perish; eō, App. 84], go to ruin, perish; be lost or undone.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. I, 14.

dēpopulor, 1, *tr.* [populor, lay waste], lay waste, ravage. I, 11.

dēportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry off or away. III, 12.

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposci, —, *tr.* [poscō, demand], demand; call for.

dēpositus, *see* dēpōnō.

dēprecātor, *m.* [dēprecor, plead for], mediator, intercessor. I, 9.

dēprecor, 1, *tr. and intr.* [precor, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. II, 31.

dēprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, *tr.* [prehendō (= prēndō), seize], seize, capture, catch.

dēpugnō, 1, *intr.* [pugnō, fight], fight decisively; contend.

dēpulsus, *see* dēpellō.

dērēctē, *adv.* [dērēctus, straight], straight. IV, 17.

dērēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [dērigō, put in line], straight. IV, 17.

dērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *tr.* [regō, direct], put in line; arrange, draw up, put in order.

dērīvō, 1, *tr.* [rivus, stream], draw off.

dērogō, 1, *tr.* [rogō, ask], take away, withdraw.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsus, *intr.* [scandō, climb], climb or go down, descend; have recourse (to), resort.

dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectum, *tr.* [secō, cut], cut away or off.

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* [serō, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; dēsertus, *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. I, 45; II, 25.

dēsertor, -ōris, *m.* [dēserō, desert], deserter.

dēsiderō, 1, *tr.*, feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. IV, 2.

dēsidia, -ae, *f.*, inactivity, idleness.

dēsignō, 1, *tr.* [signō, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. I, 18.

dēsiliō, -silire, -siluī, —, *intr.* [salio, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. IV, 2.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [sistō, stand], abandon, cease, give up. I, 8.

dēspectus, *see* dēspiciō.

dēspectus, -ūs, *m.* [dēspiciō, look down upon], a looking down, view. III, 14.

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēspērō, despair], despair, hopelessness.

dēspērō, 1, *intr.* [spērō, hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; dēspērātus, *as part.*, from transitive meaning, despaired of; *as adj.*, desperate. I, 18.

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. I, 13.

dēspoliō, 1, *tr.* [spoliō, strip], deprive. II, 31.

dēstinō, 1, *tr.*, fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. III, 14.

dēstiti, *see* dēsistō.

dēstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set or place aside, forsake, desert. I, 16.

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxi, -strictum, *tr.* [stringō, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (*a sword*). I, 25.

dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be lacking, be absent from, fail. I, 40; II, 21.

dēsuper, *adv.* [super, above], from above. I, 52.

dēterior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), worse, less. I, 36.

dēterreō, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. I, 17.

dētestor, 1, *tr.*, execrate, curse.

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold off or back; hinder, detain. III, 12.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw off or away, take away, take off, remove. I, 42; II, 21.

dētrectō, 1, *tr.*, refuse, avoid.

dētrimentōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [dētrimentum, harm], hurtful, harmful.

dētrimentum, -ī, *n.* [dē+terō, rub or wear out], harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. I, 44.

dētuli, *see* dēferō.

dēturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], drive off, dislodge.

deūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [ūrō, burn], burn up, destroy.

deus, -ī (*nom. pl.*, dī; *dat. pl.*, dis), *m.*, god, deity. I, 12.

deustus, *see* deūrō.

dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry away, bring. I, 43.

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come down, go, come. II, 21.

dēvēxus, -a, -um, *adj.* [dēvehō, carry away or down], sloping; *neut. pl. as noun*, slopes, hillsides.

dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.* [vincō, conquer], conquer completely, subdue.

dēvocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call off or away; bring.

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *tr.* [voveō, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; dēvōtus, *pf. part. as noun*, a sworn follower. III, 22.

dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. I, 52; II, 23.

dextra, -ae, *f.* [dexter, right; *sc. manus*], the right hand. I, 20.

dī, *see* deus.

dī-, *see* dis-.

Diablintēs, -um, *m.* (Be), the Diablintes (dī'ā-blīn'tēs). III, 9.

diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. I, 31; II, 34.

dicō, 1, *tr.* [dicō, say], proclaim; give over, surrender.

dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum, *tr.*, say, tell, speak, express, mention; name, appoint; causam dicere, plead a case; iūs dicere, administer justice. I, 1.

dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dicō, say], speaking, pleading. I, 4.

dictum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* dicō, say], word; statement; command; dictō audiēns, obedient. I, 39.

didūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or draw apart; separate, divide. III, 23.

diēs, -ēī, *m., f.*, day; time; in diēs, from day to day; diem ex diē, day after day. I, 4.

dis-, *see* dis.

differō, differre, distuli, dilātum, *tr. and intr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. I, 1.

difficilis, -e, *adj.* [facilis, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. I, 6.

difficultās, -tātis, f. [difficilis, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. II, 20.

difficulter, adv., with difficulty.

diffidō, -fidere, -fusus sum, intr. [fidō, trust. App. 74], distrust; lack confidence, despair.

diffuō, -fluere, -fluxī, —, intr. [fluō, flow], flow in different directions, divide. IV, 10.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr. [fundō, pour], pour or spread out.

digitus, -ī, m., finger; as measure of length, a finger's breadth, the sixteenth part of a Roman foot; **digitus pollex**, the thumb. III, 13.

dignitās, -tātis, f. [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, position, rank. I, 43; III, 16.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy, deserving.

dīiudicō, 1, tr. [iudicō, judge], decide.

dilēctus, see diligō.

dilēctus, -ūs, m. [diligō, choose], choice; levy.

diligenter, adv. [diligēns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains, or care. II, 5.

diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. I, 40; III, 20.

diligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctum, tr. [legō, choose], single or choose out, esteem highly, love.

dīmētiōr, -mētiri, -mēnsus sum, tr. [mētiōr, measure], measure out or off. II, 19.

dīmīcātiō, -ōnis, f. [dīmīcō, fight], fight, contest.

dīmīcō, 1, intr. [mīcō, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. II, 21.

dīmīdius, -a, -um, adj. [medius, middle], divided in the middle, half; neut. as noun, a half.

dīmīttō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss; break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. I, 18.

dir-, see dis-.

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, tr. [emō, take], take apart, interrupt, break off. I, 46.

diripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, tr. [rapiō, seize], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. II, 17.

Dis, Ditis, m., Dis (dīs), Pluto (plū'tō), the god of the lower world.

dīs, see deus.

dis- (dī-, dif-, dir-), insep. prefix, apart, asunder, in different directions; negative, = Eng. un-, not.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go away, depart, retire; leave (especially with **ab** or **ex**). I, 14.

disceptātor, -ōris, m., judge, umpire.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, tr. [cernō, separate], separate, keep apart.

discessus, -ūs, m. [discēdō, depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. II, 14.

disciplīna, -ae, f. [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. I, 40; IV, 1.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. IV, 17.

discō, discere, didicī, —, tr. and intr., learn, be taught. I, 13.

discrimen, -minis, n., danger, critical condition.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, tr., clear away.

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, break, disperse. I, 25.

dispār, -paris, adj. [pār, equal], unequal, ill-matched.

disparō, 1, tr. [parō, prepare], separate.

disperspō, -spergere, -spersi, -persum, tr. [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. I, 40; III, 28.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place apart; distribute, arrange, station. I, 8.

disputātiō, -ōnis, f. [disputō, discuss], argument, discussion.

disputō, 1, intr. [putō, reckon], discuss, debate about.

dissĕnsiŏ, -ŏnis, *f.* [dissentiŏ, think differently], disagreement, dissension.

dissentiŏ, -sentire, -sĕnsi, -sĕnsum, *intr.* [sentiŏ, feel], differ, disagree.

disserŏ, -serere, -sĕvi, -situm, *tr.* [serŏ, sow], sow or set at intervals.

dissimulŏ, 1, *tr.* [simulŏ, make like], disguise, conceal. IV, 6.

dissipŏ, 1, *tr.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. II, 24.

dissuadeŏ, -suadĕre, -suasi, -suasum, *intr.* [suadeŏ, advise], advise against.

distineŏ, -tinĕre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [teneŏ, hold], hold or keep apart; divide, isolate. II, 5.

distŏ, -stare, —, —, *intr.* [stŏ, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed, or separated. IV, 17.

distrahŏ, -trahere, -traxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahŏ, drag], pull asunder, remove.

distribuŏ, -tribuere, -tribui, -tributum, *tr.* [tribuŏ, assign], assign, divide, distribute. III, 10.

distuli, *see* differŏ.

ditissimus, *sup. of* dives.

diu, *adv.*, for a long time, long; quam diu, as long as; *comp.*, diutius, longer, too long, any longer; *sup.*, diutissimē, for the longest time. I, 14.

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diēs, day], of the day, by day, day. I, 38.

diutinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diu, long], of long duration, long.

diuturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [diuturnus, long], long duration. I, 40; III, 4.

diuturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diu, long], long. I, 14.

diversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, different; separate, remote. II, 22.

dives, divitis, wealthy, rich; *sup.*, ditissimus. I, 2.

Diviciacus, -i, *m.*, Diviciacus (div'ī-sh'ī-ā'kūs): (1) a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans. I, 3. (2) a chief of the Suessiones. II, 4.

Divicŏ, -ŏnis, *m.*, Divico (div'ī-kŏ), an Helvetian chieftain. I, 13.

dividŏ, dividere, divisi, divisum, *tr.*, divide, separate; divisus, *pf. part. as adj.*, divided. I, 1.

divinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [divus, divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. II, 31.

dŏ, dare, dedi, datum (App. 85), *tr.*, give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; in fugam dare, put to flight; dare manūs, yield; dare negŏtium, with *dat.*, employ, engage, direct. (Some compounds of dŏ are derived from an obsolete verb, dŏ, put.) I, 3.

doceŏ, docĕre, docui, doctum, *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. I, 43; II, 5.

documentum, -i, *n.* [doceŏ, teach], example; warning.

doleŏ, 2, *intr.*, feel pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. I, 14.

dolor, -ŏris, *m.* [doleŏ, grieve], grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*), vexation, annoyance. I, 2.

dolus, -i, *m.*, craft, trick, treachery. I, 13.

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [domus, house], belonging to the home, domestic; in or of one's own land. II, 10.

domicilium, -li, *n.* [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. I, 30; II, 29.

dominor, 1, *intr.* [dominus, master?], be master, rule. II, 31.

dominus, -i, *m.*, master.

Domitius, -ti, *m.*, Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus (lū'shyūs dŏ-mĭsh'-yūs ā-hĕn'ŏ-bār'būs), consul 54 B.C.

Domnotaurus, *see* Valerius.

domus, -ūs (App. 29, d), *f.*, house; home; native country. I, 5.

dŏnŏ, 1, *tr.* [dŏnum, gift], give, present; endow with. I, 47.

dŏnum, -i, *n.* [dŏ, give], present, gift.

dorsum, -i, *n.*, back; ridge.

dŏs, dŏtis, *f.* [dŏ, give], a marriage portion, dowry.

Druidēs, -um, *m.*, the Druids, an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.

Dūbis, -is, *m.* (Cfǵ), the river Dubis (dū'bĭs), now the Doubs. I, 38.

dubitātiŏ, -ōnis, *f.* [dubitō, doubt, hesitate], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. I, 14.

dubitō, 1, *intr.* [dubius, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. I, 17.

dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, doubtful. I, 3.

ducenti, -ae, -a (CC), *card. num. adj.* [duo, two + centum, hundred], two hundred. I, 2.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *tr.*, lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. I, 3.

ductus, -ūs, *m.* [dūcō, lead], leading, command.

dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; till, until. I, 7.

Dumnorix, -īgis, *m.*, Dumnorix (dŭm'-nō-rīks), a *Haedian* chieftain, brother of Diviciacus. I, 3.

duo, duae, duo (App. 49), *card. num. adj.*, two. I, 6.

duodecim, *card. num. adj.* [duo, two + decem, ten], twelve. I, 5.

duodecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [duodecim, twelve], twelfth. II, 23.

duodēni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [duodecim, twelve], twelve each, twelve at a time.

duodēviginti, *card. num. adj.* [duo, two + dē, from + vīginti, twenty], eighty. I, 23.

duplex, -plicis, *adj.* [duo, two + plicō, fold], twofold, double. II, 29.

duplicō, 1, *tr.* [duplex, double], double, increase. IV, 36.

dūritia, -ae, *f.* [dūrus, hard], hardness, hardship.

dūrō, 1, *tr.* [dūrus, hard], make hardy, harden.

Dūrocortorum, -ī, *n.* (Bf), Durocortorum (dū'rō-cōr'tō-rŭm), the capital of the Remi, now Rheims.

dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. I, 48.

Dūrus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Laberius Durus (kw'ntŭs lā-bē'rī-ŭs dū'rŭs), a tribune.

dux, ducis, *m.* [dūcō, lead], leader, guide, commander. I, 21.

E.

ē (only before consonants), **ex** (before vowels and some consonants), *prep.* with *abl.*, originally denoting motion out of: (1) of place, out of, from, away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; ūnā **ex parte**, on one side; (2) of time, from, after, since; **ex itinere**, immediately after the march; (3) variously translated in other relations, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with. I, 2.

eā, *adv.* [= eā viā], by that way, there.

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.* (Afg), the Eburones (ēb'ū-rō'nēz). II, 4.

Ebuovicēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Aulerci Ebuovices (aw-lēr'sī ēb'ū-rō-vī'sēz). III, 17.

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, —, *tr.* [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, get by heart.

ēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of ēdō, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. II, 8.

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give out; inflict. I, 31.

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctum, *tr.* [doceō, teach], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. III, 18.

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword). I, 10.

effēminō, 1, *tr.* [ex + fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enfeeble. I, 1.

efferciō, -fercīre, —, -fertum, *tr.*, fill completely, stop up.

effērō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *tr.* [ex + ferō, carry. App. 81], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. I, 5.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ex + faciō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. I, 38; II, 5.

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [ex + fodiō, dig], dig out.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *tr. and intr.* [ex + fugiō, flee], flee from or away, escape. IV, 35.

egēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of egeō, want*], in want, needy, destitute.

egeō, egēre, egui, —, *intr.*, need, want, lack, be without or destitute.

egestās, -tātis, *f.* [egeō, want], poverty.

ēgi, *pf. of agō.*

ego, mei (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, I; *pl.*, nōs, we. I, 40; II, 9.

egomet, *emphatic for ego*, I myself, I for my part.

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (*from a ship*), disembark. I, 27.

ēgregiē, *adv.* [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. II, 29.

ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ē+grex, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. I, 19.

ēgressus, *see* ēgredior.

ēgressus, -ūs, *m.* [ēgredior, step out], a landing, landing-place.

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], cast or drive out, expel; cast up; sē ēicere, rush out, make a rush. IV, 7.

eius modī, of such a sort or kind, such. III, 3.

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, *intr.* [lābor, slip], slip away, escape.

ēlātus, *see* efferō.

Elaver, -eris, *n.* (Ce), the river Elaver (ēl'ā-vēr), now the Allier.

ēlēctus, *see* ēligō.

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant.

Eleuteti, -ōrum, *m.* (Dd), the Eleuteti (ē-lū'tē-tī).

ēliciō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, draw or entice out, lure forth.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], choose, pick out, select; ēlēctus, *pf. part. as adj.*, picked (*men, etc.*). II, 4.

Elusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ēl'ū-sā'tēz). III, 27.

ēmigrō, 1, *intr.* [migrō, migrate], depart, migrate. I, 31.

ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, project.

ēminus, *adv.* [manus, hand], aloof, at a distance, at long range.

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. I, 25.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēemptum, *tr.*, take; buy, purchase. I, 16.

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.* [nāscor, be born], be born from; grow out. II, 17.

enim, *conj.*, for; sed enim, but in fact. I, 14.

ēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. I, 4.

eō, ire, ii (ivī), itum (App. 84), *intr.*, go, proceed, march, pass. I, 6.

eō, *adv.* [old dative of is], thither, there (*in sense of thither*), to the place (*where, etc.*), to them (*it, him, etc.*). I, 25.

eō, *abl. of is.*

eōdem, *adv.* [old dative of idem], to the same place, to the same point (*result, end, etc.*). I, 4.

ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ephippium, saddle], using a saddle. IV, 2.

ephippium, -pī, *n.*, saddle. IV, 2.

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, epistle.

Eporēdorix, -igis, *m.*, Eporedorix (ēp'ō-rēd'ō-rīks), the name of two Haeduan leaders.

epulae, -ārum, *f.*, feast, banquet.

eques, -itis, *m.* [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry; then (*as originally serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate*); also, a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*). I, 15.

equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. I, 18.

equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [equitō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. I, 15.

equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. I, 22.

Eratosthenēs, -is, *m.*, Eratosthenes (ēr'ā-tōs'thē-nēz), a Greek geographer, born 276 B.C.

ērēctus, *see* ērigō.

ēreptus, *see* ēripiō.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, toward.

ergō, *adv.*, therefore, then.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [re-gō, direct], lift or raise; ērēctus, *pf. part. as adj.*, standing upright, high. III, 13.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripiui, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. I, 4.

errō, 1, *intr.*, wander; err, be mistaken.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *intr.* [rumpō, break], break forth, make a sortie. III, 5.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ērumpō, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie. II, 33.

essedārius, -rī, *m.* [essedum, a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. IV, 24.

essedum, -ī, *n.*, a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. IV, 32.

Esvuii, -ōrum, *m.* (Bed), the Esvuii (ē-sū'vī-ī). II, 34.

et, *conj.*, and; also, too; even; et . . . et, both . . . and. I, 1.

etiam, *conj.* and also, also, even, yet. I, 1.

etsi, *conj.* [et + si, if], even if, although. I, 46; III, 24.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *intr.* [vādō, go], escape. III, 19.

ēvellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, *tr.* [vellō, pluck], pluck out, pull out. I, 25.

ēveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], turn out, result. IV, 25.

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [ēveniō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. II, 22.

ēvocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call forth or out, summon; ēvocātus, *pf. part. as noun*, reënlisted veteran. III, 20.

ēvolō, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. III, 28.

ex, *see* ē.

exāctus, *see* exigō.

exagitō, 1, *tr.* [agitō, *freq. of* agō, drive], drive out or away; disturb, harass. II, 29.

exāminō, 1, *tr.*, weigh.

exanimō, 1, *tr.* [anima, breath], deprive of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. II, 23.

exārdescō, -ārdescere, -ārsī, -ārsum, *intr.* [ārdescō, *incept. of* ardeō, blaze], take fire; be inflamed or enraged.

exaudiō, 4, *tr.* [audiō, hear], hear (from a distance). II, 11.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go out or away, withdraw, retire. II, 25.

excellō, -cellere, -cellui, —, *intr.*, excel, surpass.

excelsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [excellō, surpass], high.

exceptō, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of* excipio, catch], take hold of, catch.

excidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], hew away or down.

excipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [capiō, take]: *tr.*, take up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet, withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*); *intr.*, follow. I, 52; III, 5.

excitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (towers); kindle (fires). III, 10.

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent.

excōgitō, 1, *tr.* [cōgitō, think], think out, contrive, devise, invent.

exercuciō, 1, *tr.* [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture greatly, torment, rack.

excubitor, -ōris, *m.* [excubō, keep guard], watchman, sentinel.

excubō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *intr.* [cubō, lie], lie outside; keep guard.

exculcō, 1, *tr.*, trample, tread down.

excursiō, -ōnis, *f.* [excurrō, run forth], a running out, sortie. II, 30.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [excūsō, excuse], excuse, apology.

excūsō, 1, *tr.* [causa, reason], give reason for; excuse. IV, 22.

exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example, precedent. I, 8.

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go out, depart, leave. I, 2.

exerceō, 2, *tr.*, practice, train, exercise. I, 48.

exercitatio, -ōnis, *f.* [exerceō, train], exercise, training; practice, experience. I, 39; III, 19.

exercitatus, -a, -um, *adj.* [exerceō, train], well trained, skilled, versed. I, 36; II, 20.

exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [exerceō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. I, 3.

exhauriō, -haurire, -hausi, -haustum, *tr.* [hauriō, draw], draw out, empty.

exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, drive], finish, end. III, 28.

exiguē, *adv.* [exiguus, scanty], meagerly, scarcely.

exiguitas, -tatis, *f.* [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. II, 21.

exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, short, small, meager, limited. IV, 20.

eximius, -a, -um, *adj.* [eximō, take out], taken from the mass; hence choice, eminent. II, 8.

existimatio, -ōnis, *f.* [existimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. I, 20.

existimō, 1, *tr.* [aestimō, estimate], estimate, reckon, think, consider. I, 6.

exitus, -ūs, *m.* [exeō, go out], a going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. III, 8.

expediō, 4, *tr.* [pēs, foot], set free; arrange, prepare.

expeditio, -ōnis, *f.* [expeditus, unimpeded], march or expedition without baggage.

expeditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of expediō*, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light-armed; *m. as noun*, a light-armed soldier. I, 6.

expellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive out, expel. II, 4.

experior, -periri, -pertus sum, *tr.*, try, test, experience. I, 31; II, 16.

expiō, 1, *tr.*, atone for, expiate; avenge.

expleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *tr.* [pleō, fill], fill out or up; finish, complete.

explorator, -ōris, *m.* [explorō, search out], explorer, scout, spy. I, 12.

exploratus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of explorō*, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. III, 18.

explorō, 1, *tr.*, search or find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. II, 4.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. IV, 23.

exportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry out or away. IV, 18.

exposcō, -poscere, -poposci, —, *tr.* [poscō, demand], entreat, demand.

exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. I, 32.

expugnatio, -ōnis, *f.* [expugnō, take by storm], a taking by assault, storming.

expugnō, 1, *tr.* [pugnō, fight], take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. I, 11.

exquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. I, 41; III, 3.

exsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. I, 4.

exserō, -ere, -ui, -tum, *tr.*, thrust or put out; uncover.

existō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, *intr.* [sistō, stand], stand or come forth, appear, arise; ensue. III, 15.

expectō, 1, *tr.* [spectō, look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. I, 11.

exspoliō, 1, *tr.* [spoliō, strip], rob.

extinguō, -stinguere, -stinxi, -stinctum, *tr.*, put out, quench; destroy.

extō, -stāre, —, —, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand out, extend above.

extruō, -struere, -struxi, -strūctum, *tr.* [struō, build], build or pile up, rear, construct, build. II, 30.

exsul, -sulis, *m., f.*, an exile.

exterior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of exterus.* App. 44], outer, exterior.

exterreō, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], frighten outright, strike with terror.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, —, *tr.* [timeō, fear], dread. III, 13.

extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsi, -tortum, *tr.* [torqueō, twist], wrest or force from, extort.

extrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. I, 10.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw out; waste.

extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of exterus.* App. 44], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme; the farthest part of; **extrēmī**, *as noun*, the rear; **extrēmum**, at last, at the end. I, 1.

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *tr.* [trūdō, thrust], thrust or shut out. III, 12.

extulī, *see efferō*.

exuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtum, *tr.*, strip; rob, deprive. III, 6.

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [ūrō, burn], burn up. I, 5.

F.

faber, -bri, *m.*, workman, mechanic; carpenter.

Fabius, -bi, *m.*: (1) Gaius Fabius (gā'yūs fā'bī-ūs), one of Caesar's legates; (2) Lucius Fabius (lū'shyūs fā'bī-ūs), a centurion of the 8th legion; (3) Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwīn'tūs fā'bī-ūs māk'sī-mūs), victor over the Gauls 121 B.C. I, 45.

facile, *adv.* [facilis, easy], easily, readily. *Comp.*, **facilius**; *sup.*, **facillimē** (App. 41). I, 2.

facilis, -e, *adj.* [faciō, do], easy. I, 6.

facinus, -noris, *n.* [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. I, 40; III, 9.

faciō, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factum**, *tr. and intr.*: *tr.*, make, construct, form, do, execute (commands, etc.); give (opportunity, etc.); with **ut**, bring about, cause; *intr.*, do, act. *Pass.*, **fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum** (App. 83), with passive of above meanings, and, used

impersonally, it results, it happens, it comes to pass. I, 2.

factiō, -ōnis, *f.* [faciō, make], party, faction. I, 31.

factum, -i, *n.* [*pf. part. of faciō*, do], act, exploit, deed. III, 14.

factus, *see faciō*.

facultās, -tātis, *f.*, power; opportunity, chance; resources, means, supply. I, 7.

fāgus, -i, *f.*, beech tree.

fallō, **fallere**, **fefelli**, **falsum**, *tr.*, deceive, cheat, disappoint. II, 10.

falsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of fallō*, deceive], false.

falx, **falcis**, *f.*, sickle, pruning-hook; hook. III, 14.

fāma, -ae, *f.* [fāri, to speak], common talk, rumor, report; reputation, fame.

famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. I, 28.

familia, -ae, *f.*, household (including slaves); retinue (including all dependents); family. I, 4.

familiāris, -e, *adj.* [familia, household], personal, private; *m. as noun*, intimate friend; **rēs familiāris**, personal property, estate. I, 18.

familiāritās, -tātis, *f.* [familiāris, intimate], intimacy.

fās, *n.*, *indecl.*, right, divine right, will of Heaven. I, 50.

fastigātē, *adv.* [fastigātus, sloping], sloping. IV, 17.

fastigātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sloping. II, 8.

fastigium, -gī, *n.*, the top of a gable; elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope.

fātum, -i, *n.* [fāri, to speak], fate, lot. I, 39.

faveō, **favēre**, **fāvi**, **fautum**, *intr.*, favor. I, 18.

fax, **facis**, *f.*, firebrand, torch.

fēlicitās, -tātis, *f.* [fēlix, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. I, 40.

fēliciter, *adv.* [fēlix, happy], happily, fortunately. IV, 25.

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, female, woman.

femur, -inis, *n.*, the thigh.

fera, -ae, *f.* [ferus, wild], wild animal.

ferāx, -ācis, *adj.* [ferō, bear], productive, fertile. II, 4.

ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. I, 1.

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum** (App. 81), *tr. and intr.*: *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, support, withstand; receive; tell, report; give, render (*aid*); offer, propose (*terms*); **graviter** or **molestē ferre**, be annoyed or angry at; *pass.* (*sometimes*) rush; *intr.*, almost = *verb* to be. I, 13.

ferrāmentum, -ī, *n.* [ferrum, iron], an iron tool or implement.

ferrāria, -ae, *f.* [ferrum, iron], an iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. III, 13.

ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron; *anything made of iron*, sword, spear point. I, 25.

fertilis, -e, *adj.* [ferō, bear], fruitful, fertile, productive.

fertilitās, -tātis, *f.* [fertilis, fertile], fertility. II, 4.

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. I, 31; II, 4.

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [ferveō, be red hot + faciō, make], heat, melt.

fervēns, -entis, *adj.* [ferveō, be red hot], heated, glowing, hot.

fibula, -ae, *f.*, clasp; fastening. IV, 17.

fictus, *see* **fiŋgō**.

fidēlis, -e, *adj.* [fidēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. IV, 21.

fidēs, -ei, *f.* [fidō, confide], faith, confidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; good faith, protection; pledge, assurance; **fidem facere**, convince, give a pledge. I, 3.

fidūcia, -ae, *f.* [fidō, confide], confidence, trust, reliance.

figūra, -ae, *f.* [fiŋgō, form], form, shape, figure. IV, 25.

filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter. I, 3.

filius, -li, *m.*, son. I, 3.

fiŋgō, **fiŋgere**, **finxi**, **fictum**, *tr.*, form, fashion; imagine, invent. I, 39; IV, 5.

finiō, 4, *tr.* [finis, end], limit, bound; determine, measure. IV, 16.

finis, -is, *m.*, end; boundary, limit, border; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. I, 1.

finitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *m. pl. as noun*, neighbors. I, 2.

fiō, **fieri**, **factus sum**, *pass. of faciō*.

firmiter, *adv.* [firmus, strong], firmly. IV, 26.

firmitūdō, -inis, *f.* [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. III, 13.

firmō, 1, *tr.* [firmus, strong], strengthen, fortify.

firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I, 3.

fistūca, -ae, *f.*, pile-driver. IV, 17.

Flaccus, *see* **Valerius**.

flāgitō, 1, *tr.*, demand. I, 16.

flamma, -ae, *f.*, fire, blaze.

flectō, **flectere**, **flexi**, **flexum**, *tr.*, bend, turn, direct. IV, 33.

fleō, **flēre**, **flēvi**, **flētum**, *intr.*, weep, shed tears, lament. I, 20.

flētus, -ūs, *m.* [fleō, weep], weeping, lamentation. I, 32.

flō, 1, *intr.*, blow.

flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [flōreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. I, 30; IV, 3.

flōs, **flōris**, *m.*, blossom, flower.

flūctus, -ūs, *m.* [fluō, flow], flood, billow, wave. III, 13.

flūmen, -inis, *n.* [fluō, flow], river, stream. I, 1.

fluō, **fluere**, **flūxi**, —, *intr.*, flow, run. I, 6.

fodiō, **fodere**, **fōdī**, **fossum**, *tr.*, dig.

foedus, -eris, *n.*, compact, treaty, alliance.

fore = **futūrus esse**; *see* **sum**.

forem = **essem**; *see* **sum**.

foris, *adv.*, out of doors, without.

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, appearance. III, 14.

fors, **fortis**, *f.*, chance; **forte**, *abl. as adv.*, by chance; perchance. II, 21.

fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong, valiant, brave. I, 1.

fortiter, *adv.* [fortis, brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. II, 11.

fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. I, 2.
 fortuitō, *adv.* [fors, chance], by chance.
 fortuna, -ae, *f.* [fors, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. I, 11.
 fortunātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fortūna, fortune], prosperous, fortunate.
 forum, -ī, *n.*, public square, market place.
 fossa, -ae, *f.* [*pf. part.* of fodiō, dig], trench, ditch. I, 8.
 fovea, -ae, *f.*, pitfall.
 frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discourage. I, 31; IV, 29.
 frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother. I, 3.
 frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. I, 20.
 fraus, -dis, *f.*, cheating, deception.
 fremitus, -ūs, *m.*, a confused noise, uproar, din. II, 24.
 frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, in great numbers, in crowds. IV, 11.
 frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying upon. III, 21.
 frigidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, cold. IV, 1.
 frigus, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, cold seasons. I, 16.
 frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead; front. II, 8.
 fructuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fructus, fruit], fruitful, productive. I, 30.
 fructus, -ūs, *m.* [fruor, enjoy], fruit; profit, reward.
 frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūmentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful, productive of grain; rēs frūmentāria, supply of grain, provisions. I, 10.
 frūmentātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [frūmentor, get grain], getting grain, foraging expedition.
 frūmentor, 1, *intr.* [frūmentum, grain], get grain, forage. IV, 9.
 frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain; *pl.* grain crops. I, 3.
 fruor, fruī, fructus sum, *intr.*, enjoy. III, 22.
 frūstrā, *adv.*, without effect, in vain, to no purpose. III, 4.

frūx, -gis, *f.* [fruor, enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops, produce. I, 28.
 Fūsius, *see* Cita.
 fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; in fugam conicere or dare, put to flight. I, 11.
 fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *tr. and intr.* [fuga, flight]: *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. I, 53; II, 11.
 fugitivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fugiō, flee], fleeing; *m. as noun*, deserter. I, 23.
 fugō, 1, *tr.* [fuga, flight], put to flight, rout.
 fūmō, 1, *intr.* [fūmus, smoke], smoke.
 fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke. II, 7.
 funda, -ae, *f.*, sling. IV, 25.
 funditor, -ōris, *m.* [funda, sling], slinger. II, 7.
 fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, pour, throw; rout, put to flight. III, 6.
 fūnebris, -e, *adj.* [fūnus, funeral], of a funeral; *n. pl. as noun*, funeral rites.
 fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, *intr.*, perform, execute, discharge.
 fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. III, 13.
 fūnus, -eris, *n.*, funeral.
 furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. I, 40; II, 3.
 fūrtum, -ī, *n.*, theft.
 fūsilis, -e, *adj.* [fundō, pour], liquid, molten.
 futūrus, *see* sum.

G.

Gabali, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Gabali (gāb'ā-lī).
 Gabinius, -nī, *m.*, Aulus Gabinius (aw'lūs gā-bīn'ī-ūs), consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B.C. I, 6.
 gaesum, -ī, *n.*, a heavy iron javelin (of the Gauls). III, 4.
 Galba, -ae, *m.*: (1) Galba (gāl'bā), a king of the Suessiones. II, 4. (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba (sēr'vī-ūs sūl-pīsh'yūs gāl'bā), one of Caesar's legates. III, 1.
 galea, -ae, *f.*, a leather helmet. II, 21.
 Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gallia (gāl'ī-ā), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtica. I, 1.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Gallia, Gaul], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. I, 22.
gallina, -ae, *f.*, hen.
Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic; *m. pl.* as *noun*, the Gauls, *inhabiting central Gaul, northern Italy, etc.* I, 1.
Gallus, -i, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē'bī-ūs gāl'ūs), *an officer in Caesar's army.* III, 7.
Garumna, -ae, *m.* (DĒcd), the Garumna (gā-rūm'nā), or Garonne, *a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul.* I, 1.
Garumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumni (gā-rūm'nī). III, 27.
Gatēs, -um, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (gā-tēz). III, 27.
gaudeō, *gaudēre*, gāvīsus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, rejoice. IV, 13.
Geidumnī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Geidumni (jē'ī-dūm'nī).
Genava, -ae, *f.* (Cg), Genava (jēn'ā-vā), *a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva.* I, 6.
gener, -erī, *m.*, son-in-law.
generātīm, *adv.* [genus, tribe], by tribes. I, 51.
gēns, *gentis*, *f.*, race; clan, tribe, people. II, 28.
genus, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. I, 48; III, 14.
Gergovia, -ae, *f.* (De), Gergovia (jēr-gō'vī-ā), *the chief town of the Arverni.*
Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Germani (jēr-mā'nī), *better Germans.* I, 1.
Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germania (jēr-mā'nī-ā), *better, Germany, the country east of the Rhine.* IV, 4.
Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Germānus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German. IV, 16.
gerō, *gerere*, gessī, gestum, *tr.*, bear, carry, wield; (*of war*) carry on, wage, conduct; *pass.*, be done, go on, occur. I, 1.
gladius, -dī, *m.*, sword. I, 25.
glāns, *glandis*, *f.*, acorn; ball, slug of lead.
glēba, -ae, *f.*, clod of earth; lump.

glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. I, 2.
glōrior, 1, *intr.* [glōria, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. I, 14.
Gobannitiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Gobannitio (gōb'ā-nīsh'yō), *an Arvernian chief.*
Gorgobina, -ae, *f.* (Ce), Gorgobina (gōr-gōb'ī-nā), *a city of the Boi after they had settled in the territory of the Haedui.*
Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; *m. pl.* as *noun*, the Greeks. I, 29.
Graioceli, -ōrum, *m.* (Dg), the Graioceli (grā-yōs'ē-lī). I, 10.
grandis, -e, *adj.*, great, large, bulky. I, 43.
grātia, -ae, *f.* [grātus, pleasing], favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; grātiās agere, thank; grātiām habēre, feel grateful; grātiām referre, return a favor; grātiām inire, gain favor; grātiā following a gen., for the purpose of, in order to. I, 9.
grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. I, 53.
grātulor, 1, *intr.* [grātus, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. I, 30.
grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. I, 44.
gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (*in years*). I, 20.
gravitās, -tātis, *f.* [gravis, heavy], heaviness, weight; power. IV, 3.
graviter, *adv.* [gravis, heavy], heavily, with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; graviter ferre, take to heart, be annoyed or vexed (*at*); graviter premere, press hard. I, 14.
gravor, 1, *intr.* [gravis, heavy], be unwilling. I, 35.
Grudīi, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Grudii (grōō'dī-i).
gubernātor, -ōris, *m.*, navigator, captain. III, 9.
gustō, 1, *tr.*, taste, eat.

H.

habeō, 2, *tr.*, have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (*with orationem*); in *animō habēre*, intend; *rationem habēre*, have regard for; take care or see that (*followed by an ut clause*); *cōsilium habēre*, form a plan; *aliter sē habēre*, be otherwise or different. I, 2.

Haedus, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cef), of the Haedui (hēd'ū-i), Haeduan; *m.* as noun, a Haeduan; *pl.*, the Haedui, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. I, 3.

haesitō, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of haereō*, stick], stick or cling fast, remain fixed.

hāmus, -i, *m.*, hook, barb.

harpagō, -ōnis, *m.*, grappling hook.

Harūdēs, -um, *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (hā-rōō'dēz), a German tribe. I, 31.

haud, *adv.*, not, by no means, not at all.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Helvētius], of the Helvetii, Helvetian.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē'shyi), Helvetian; *m.* as noun, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.* the Helvetii. I, 1.

Helvii, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Helvii (hēl'vī-i).

Hercynia, -ae, *f.* (Bhi), Hercynia (hēr-sīn'ī-ā), the Hercynian forest.

hērēditās, -tātis, *f.* [hērēs, heir], inheritance.

hiberna, -ōrum, *n.* [*sc. castra*, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. I, 10.

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Hibernia (hī-bēr'nī-ā), better, Ireland.

hic, *haec*, *hoc*, *dem. pron.* (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time, or thought, with more emphasis than is; this, this man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; *abl. sing.* hōc, on this account; in this respect; the (*with comparatives*); *hic . . . ille*, the latter . . . the former (App. 170, a). I, 1.

hic, *adv.*, here, in this place; (*of a place just mentioned*) there, in that place;

(*of an incident just mentioned*) then, at this or that time. IV, 19.

hiemō, 1, *intr.* [hiems, winter], pass the winter, winter. I, 10.

hiems, -mis, *f.*, winter. III, 7.

hinc, *adv.* [hic, this], from this or that point or place, hence.

Hispānia, -ae, *f.* (Eabcd), Hispania (hīs-pā'nī-ā), better, Spain. I, 1.

Hispānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Spanish.

homō, -inis, *m.*, human being, man, as distinguished from the lower animals; in *pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. I, 2.

honestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. I, 53.

honōrificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs, honor + faciō, make], conferring honor, honorable. I, 43.

honōs, -ōris, *m.*, honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. I, 18.

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour, the twelfth part of the day or night (*reckoning between sunrise and sunset*), and hence varying in length according to the season. I, 26.

horreō, -ēre, -ui, —, *tr.*, shudder at, dread. I, 32.

horribilis, -e, *adj.* [horreō, dread], dreadful, horrible, frightful, hideous.

hortor, 1, *tr.*, urge, encourage, incite. I, 19.

hospes, -itis, *m., f.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. I, 53.

hospitium, -ti, *n.* [hospes, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. I, 31.

hostis, -is, *m. and f.*, (*public*) enemy, in distinction from inimicus, a personal enemy; *pl.*, the enemy. I, 11.

hūc, *adv.* [hic, this], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. I, 38.

hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.* [hūmānus, human], humanity, refinement, culture. I, 1.

hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. IV, 3.
humilis, -e, *adj.* [humus, the ground], on the ground; low, humble, abject, weak. IV, 3.
humilitās, -tātis, *f.* [humilis, low], humility, lowness; weakness.

I.

I, *sign* for ūnus, one.

iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —, *intr.*, lie; lie slain. II, 27.

iaciō, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iacum**, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl; (of an *agger*) throw up, construct. II, 6.

iactō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of **iaciō**, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. I, 18.

iactūra, -ae, *f.* [iaciō, throw], loss, sacrifice.

iaculum, -ī, *n.* [iaciō, throw], javelin, dart.

iam, *adv.*, now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; **neque iam** or **iam nōn**, no longer; **ubi iam**, as soon as. I, 5.

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place. I, 10.

Iccius, -cī, *m.*, Iccius (īk-shyūs), a chief of the Remi. II, 3.

ictus, -ūs, *m.*, stroke, blow. I, 25.

Īd., *abbr.* for **Īdūs**.

idcirco, *adv.*, therefore.

idem, **eadem**, **idem** (App. 58), *dem. pron.* [is, this, that], the same; this very; **idem atque**, the same as. I, 3.

identidem, *adv.* [idem, the same], repeatedly. II, 19.

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. I, 49; II, 8.

Īdūs, -uum, *f.*, the Ides: the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of other months. I, 7.

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. I, 4.

ignōbilis, -e, *adj.* [in- + (g)nōbilis, well known], ignoble, unknown.

ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, dishonor.

ignōrō, 1, *tr.* [ignārus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. I, 27.

ignōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum, *intr.* [in- + (g)nōscō, learn, know], forgive, pardon. I, 45; IV, 27.

ignōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + (g)nōtus, known; nōscō, learn, know], unknown, unfamiliar. IV, 24.

illātus, *see* **inferō**.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, *gen. illius, dat. illi* (App. 56), *dem. pron.* (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc.; cf. **hic**), that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; **hic . . . ille**, the latter . . . the former (App. 170, a). I, 3.

illic, *adv.* [ille, that], in that place, there. I, 18.

illigō, 1, *tr.* [ligō, bind], attach, hold or bind together. IV, 17.

illō, *adv.* [ille, that], thither, to that place, there (= thither). IV, 11.

illūstris, -e, *adj.*, distinguished, illustrious.

Īllyricum, -ī, *n.*, Illyricum (ī-līr'ī-kūm), Illyria, which lay northeast of the Adriatic, and formed a part of Caesar's province. II, 35.

imbēcillitās, -tātis, *f.*, weakness.

imber, -bris, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain. III, 29.

imitor, 1, *tr.*, imitate, copy after.

immānis, -e, *adj.*, huge, immense. IV, 1.

immineō, -minēre, —, —, *intr.*, project, hang over; threaten, menace.

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [in- + mittō, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct toward or against. IV, 17.

immolō, 1, *tr.*, sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, *adj.* [in- + mortālis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. I, 12.

immūnis, -e, *adj.* [in- + mūnus, burden], unburdened, by taxes, requirements of service, etc.

imparātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + parātus, prepared; parō, prepare], unprepared, not ready.

impedimentum, -ī, *n.* [impediō, hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; *pl.*, baggage, luggage (of an army), baggage-train. I, 24.

impediō, 4, *tr.* [*in*+*pēs*, foot], *entangle the feet*; hamper, obstruct, hinder, impede, delay.

impeditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of *impediō*, hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or burdened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; (*of places*), difficult of passage. I, 12.

impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.* [*in*+*pellō*, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. I, 40; II, 14.

impendeō, -pendēre, —, —, *intr.* [*in*+*pendeō*, hang], overhang, impend. I, 6.

impēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive; with pretium, great. IV, 2.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [*imperō*, command], commander in chief, general. I, 40; II, 25.

imperātum, -i, *n.* [*imperō*, command], command, order. II, 3.

imperitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in*+*peritus*, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. I, 40; IV, 22.

imperium, -ri, *n.* [*imperō*, command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. I, 2.

imperō, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*in*+*parō*, procure], command, order, instruct, rule; demand from, enjoin or levy upon. I, 7.

impetrō, 1, *tr.* [*in*+*patrō*, accomplish], obtain (*by request, entreaty, exertion*), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (*one's request*). I, 9.

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. I, 22.

impius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in*+*pius*, pious], wicked.

implicō, 1, *tr.* [*in*+*plicō*, fold], interlace, interweave.

implōrō, 1, *tr.* [*in*+*plōrō*, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. I, 31.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [*in*+*pōnō*, place], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. I, 42.

importō, 1, *tr.* [*in*+*portō*, carry], carry or bring in, import. I, 1.

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in*+*probus*, good], unprincipled. I, 17.

imprōvisō, *adv.* [*imprōvisus*, unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. I, 13.

imprōvisus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in*+*prōvisus*, foreseen], unforeseen, unexpected; *dē imprōvisō*, unexpectedly, suddenly. II, 3.

imprūdēns, -entis, *adj.* [*in*+*prūdēns*, prudent], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. III, 29.

imprudentia, -ae, *f.* [*imprūdēns*, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. IV, 27.

impugnō, 1, *tr.* [*in*+*pugnō*, fight], fight against, attack, assail. I, 44; III, 26.

impulsus, *see* *impellō*.

impulsus, -ūs, *m.* [*impellō*, impel], impulse, instigation.

impūne, *adv.* [*in*+*poena*, punishment], without punishment. I, 14.

impūnitās, -tātis, *f.* [*in*+*poena*, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. I, 14.

īnus, *sup. of inferus*.

in-, *negative prefix*.

in, *prep. with acc. and abl.* With *acc.*: (1) *of motion*, from one place into or toward another place, into, to; in, among; toward, for, against; at; upon; (2) *of time*, till, into; for; on, at; (3) *other uses*, in, in respect to, for, under, over, on. With *abl.*: (1) *of rest or motion within a place*, in, among, over, within, throughout; on, upon; (2) *of time*, in, during, in the course of; on; (3) *other uses*, in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon. I, 1.

inānis, -e, *adj.*, empty, vain, idle.

incautē, *adv.* [*incautus*, incautious], incautiously, unwarily.

incautus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in*+*cautus*, cautious; *caveō*, be cautious], incautious, unwary.

incendium, -di, *n.* [*incendō*, burn], fire, burning, conflagration.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum, tr., set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. I, 5.

incertus, -a, -um, adj. [*in*+*certus*, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. IV, 5.

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, intr. [*cadō*, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, occur. I, 53; II, 14.

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, tr. [*cae-dō*, cut], cut into. II, 17.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [*capiō*, take], undertake; begin, commence. II, 2.

incitō, 1, tr. [*citō*, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; *cursū incitātō*, at full speed. I, 4.

incognitus, -a, -um, adj. [*in*+*cognitus*, known; *cognōscō*, learn], unknown. IV, 20.

incolō, -colere, -coluī, —, tr. and intr. [*colō*, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. I, 1.

incolumis, -e, adj., unhurt, uninjured, safe, unharmed, unimpaired. I, 53; III, 6.

incommodē, adv. [*incommodus*, inconvenient], inconveniently, unseasonably.

incommodum, -ī, n. [*incommodus*, inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. I, 13.

incrēdibilis, -e, adj. [*in*+*crēdibilis*, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. I, 12.

incredipitō, 1, tr., chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. II, 15.

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, intr. [*cumbō*, lie down], recline upon; devote oneself to.

incursiō, -ōnis, f. [*incurrō*, rush into or upon], invasion, raid.

incursus, -ūs, m. [*incurrō*, rush into or upon], attack. II, 20.

incūsō, 1, tr. [*causa*, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. I, 40; II, 15.

inde, adv., from that place, thence; then, thereupon. I, 10.

indiciū, -cī, n., disclosure, information. I, 4.

indicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, tr. [*dicō*, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. I, 30.

indictus, -a, -um, adj. [*in*+*dictus*, *pf. part. of dicō*, say], unsaid; *causā indictā*, without a trial.

indignē, adv. [*indignus*, unworthy], unworthily, dishonorably.

indignitās, -tātis, f. [*indignus*, unworthy], indignity; outrage, disgrace. II, 14.

indignor, 1, intr. [*indignus*, unworthy], deem unworthy; be indignant.

indignus, -a, -um, adj. [*in*+*dignus*, worthy], unworthy, disgraceful.

indiligēns, -entis, adj. [*in*+*diligēns*, careful], not careful; negligent, lax.

indiligenter, adv. [*indiligēns*, careless], carelessly. II, 33.

indiligentia, -ae, f. [*indiligēns*, careless], negligence.

indūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [*dūcō*, lead], lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. I, 2.

indulgentia, -ae, f. [*indulgeō*, indulge], forbearance, clemency.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, —, intr., be indulgent to, favor. I, 40.

induō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, tr., put on; *sē induere*, be impaled or pierced. II, 21.

industriē, adv. [*industrius*, diligent], diligently.

indūtiae, -arum, f., truce. IV, 12.

Indutiomārus, -ī, m., Indutiomarus (*in*-*dū*-*shyō*-*mā*-*rūs*), a chief of the Treveri.

ineō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr. [*eō*, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; *inire cōsiliū*, form a plan; *inire ratiōnem*, make an estimate, decide; *inire grātiā*, gain favor; *inire numerum*, enumerate. II, 2.

inermis, -e, adj. [*in*+*arma*, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. I, 40; II, 27.

iners, -ertis, *adj.* [in-+ars, skill], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. IV, 2.

infāmia, -ae, *f.* [in-+fāma, renown], dishonor, ill repute.

infāns, -antis, *adj.* [in-+fāns, speaking], not speaking; *m. as noun*, infant.

infectus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+factus, done; faciō, do], not done, unaccomplished, unfinished.

inferior, -ius, *comp. of inferus*.

inferō, **inferre**, **intulī**, **illātum**, *tr.* [ferō, bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; **bellum inferre**, make war upon; **in equum inferre**, mount on a horse; **causā illātā**, making an excuse; **signa inferre**, advance the standards, attack. I, 2.

inferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below; *comp.*, inferior, lower; inferior; **ab inferiōre parte**, below, down stream; *sup.*, **īnīmus** or **īmus**, lowest, last; *with collis*, the base of; **ad īnīmum**, **ab īnīmō**, at the bottom, I, 1.

infestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile; **īnfestīs signīs**, with standards in battle array.

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], stain.

īnfidēlis, -e, *adj.* [in-+fidēlis, faithful], faithless, untrustworthy.

īnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix] fasten in.

īnīmus, *sup. of inferus*.

īnīnitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+finitus, limited; fīniō, limit], endless, boundless, vast, countless.

īnfirmitās, -tātis, *f.* [īnfirmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconsistency. IV, 5.

īnfirmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+firmus, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. III, 24.

īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *tr.* [flectō, bend], bend down; *with reflex.*, become bent. I, 25.

īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow into, empty into. I, 8.

īnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossam, *tr.* [fodiō, dig], dig or drive into.

īnfrā, *adv.* [īnferus, below], below; *prep. with acc.*, below, smaller than. IV, 36.

īngēns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast. I, 39; IV, 10.

īngrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+grātus, pleasing], displeasing, disagreeable.

īngredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, go], go or come into, enter. II, 4.

īniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon, put or place on; inspire, infuse. I, 46; IV, 17.

īnimicitia, -ae, *f.* [īnimicus, unfriendly], enmity.

īnimicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+amīcus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; *m. as noun*, an enemy (*personal*), rival, to be distinguished from **hostis**, a public enemy. I, 7.

īnīquītās, -tātis, *f.* [īnīquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. II, 22.

īnīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+aequus, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. I, 44; II, 10.

īnitium, -tī, *n.* [īneō, go into], beginning, commencement, origin; of a country, borders. I, 1.

īniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join to; impose.

īniūria, -ae, *f.* [in-+iūs, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. I, 7.

īniussū, *abl. m.*, as if from **īniussus**, -ūs [iubeō, order], without command or order. I, 19.

īnnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.* [nāscor, be born], be born in, be engendered; **īnnātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, inborn, natural.

īnnitor, -nītī, -nīxus sum, *intr.* [nītor, rest on], lean upon. II, 27.

īnnocēns, -entis, *adj.* [in-+nocēns, injurious], not injurious; innocent.

īnnocentia, -ae, *f.* [īnnocēns, innocent], integrity. I, 40.

īnopia, -ae, *f.* [īnops, needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. I, 27.

inopināns, -antis, *adj.* [in-+opināns, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unaware, off one's guard. I, 12.

inquam, -is, -it, *def. verb. tr.*, used only with direct quotations, and following one or more words of the quotation, say. IV, 25.

insciēns, -entis, *adj.* [in-+sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. I, 19.

inscientia, -ae, *f.* [insciēns, ignorant], ignorance. III, 9.

inscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sciō, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. IV, 4.

insequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon, pursue. I, 15.

inserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, *tr.*, insert, thrust in. III, 14.

insidiae, -ārum, *f.* [sedeō, sit], a sitting or lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade; treachery; artifice, crafty device. I, 13.

insidior, I, *intr.* [insidiae, ambush], lie in ambush.

insignis, -e, *adj.* [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; *neut. as noun*, mark, sign; ornament, trapping, decoration. I, 12.

insiliō, -silire, -silui, —, *tr.* [saliō, leap], leap upon. I, 52.

insimulō, I, *tr.*, charge, blame, accuse.

insinuō, I, *tr.* [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. IV, 33.

insistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *tr. and intr.* [sistō, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; with *rationem*, adopt, use. II, 27.

insolenter, *adv.*, unusually; arrogantly, insolently. I, 14.

inspectō, I, *tr.* [spectō, look], look at, view.

instabilis, -e, *adj.* [in-+stabilis, firm], not firm, unsteady. IV, 23.

instar, *n.*, indecl., likeness; with *gen.*, like. II, 17.

instigō, I, *tr.*, urge on, incite.

instituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up or put in

order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; **institutus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, usual, customary; finished, in addition to definitions above. I, 14.

institutum, -i, *n.* [instituō, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. I, 1.

instō, -stāre, -stiti, —, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at hand; press on; threaten. I, 16.

instrūmentum, -i, *n.* [instruō, build], tool; apparatus, equipment.

instruō, -struere, -struxi, -strūctum, *tr.* [struō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up in battle array; equip, furnish. I, 22.

insuēfactus, -a, -um, *adj.* [suēscō, become accustomed, faciō, make], accustomed, trained. IV, 24.

insuētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+suētus, accustomed], unaccustomed, not used to.

insula, -ae, *f.*, island. III, 9.

insuper, *adv.* [super, above], above, on the top, from above. IV, 17.

integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, whole, unimpaired; fresh; *rē integrā*, before anything was done. III, 4.

integō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegō, cover], cover over; protect.

intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.* [inter+legō, choose, select], select or distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. I, 10.

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [tendō, stretch], stretch out or to; **intentus**, *pf. part.*, intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. III, 22.

inter, *prep. with acc.* (sometimes following its noun): (1) of place, among, between; (2) of time, during, within, for; (3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with; (4) with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action (App. 166), with, to, or from each other or one another; each other, one another. I, 1.

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go or come between, be or lie between, intervene; pass. I, 7.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], take or catch between (one point and another); interrupt; intercept, cut off. II, 27.

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut or cut off, separate, hinder; with *itinerā*, block. I, 23.

interdicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, *intr.* [dicō, say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; *aquā atque igni interdīcere*, forbid the use of water and fire, banish. I, 46.

interdiū, *adv.* [diēs, day], during the day, by day. I, 8.

interdum, *adv.* [dum, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. I, 14.

intereā, *adv.* [inter, between], in the meantime, meanwhile. I, 8.

intereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], perish, die.

interesse, *see intersum*.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. I, 12.

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl between; put or place between; *interiectus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, lying between, intervening, interspersed. II, 17.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. I, 16.

interior, -ius, *adj.* (App. 43), interior, inner; *as noun*, *interiōrēs*, inhabitants of the interior; occupants of a town.

interitus, -ūs, *m.* [intereō, die], destruction, death.

intermittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum, *tr. and intr.* [mittō, send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, let up, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass; *intermissis magistrātibus*, when magistrates were not in office. I, 26.

interneciō, -ōnis, *f.* [necō, destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. I, 13.

interpellō, *1, tr.*, interrupt, hinder. I, 44.

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; *fidem interpōnere*, pledge. I, 42; IV, 9.

interpres, -etis, *m. and f.*, interpreter; mediator. I, 19.

interpretor, *1, tr.* [interpres, interpreter], interpret, explain.

interrogō, *1, tr.* [rogō, ask], ask, question.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [rumpō, break], break off or through; destroy.

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scisum, *tr.* [scindō, cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. II, 9.

intersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 66], be or lie between, intervene; be present *at*, take part *in*; *impers.*, interest, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference or an interval; *magni interest*, it is of great importance. I, 15.

intervallum, -ī, *n.*, interval (of space or time); distance. I, 22.

intervenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come between, come up; arrive.

interventus, -ūs, *m.* [intervenīō, come between], intervention, help. III, 15.

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [texō, weave], weave in or together. II, 33.

intoleranter, *adv.*, intolerably; impatiently, eagerly.

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within, inside; into. I, 32; II, 4.

inritus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+tritus, worn], unwearied. III, 26.

intrō, *1, tr.*, go or walk into, enter, penetrate. II, 17.

intrōdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [intrō, within+ducō, lead], lead or bring into. II, 5.

introeŏ, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr. [intrŏ, within+eŏ, go. App. 84], go or come in, enter.

introitus, -ūs, m. [introeŏ, go in], entrance, approach.

intrōmittŏ, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [intrŏ, within+mittŏ, send], send or let in. II, 33.

intrŏsus, adv. [intrŏ, within+versus, pf. part. of vertŏ, turn], within, on the inside. II, 18.

intrŏrumpŏ, -rumpere, -rŭpi, -ruptum, tr. [intrŏ, within+rumpŏ, break], break in or through.

intueor, 2, tr. [tueor, look], look at. I, 32.

intus, adv., within, on the inside.

inŭsitātus, -a, -um, adj. [in+ŭsitātus, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. II, 31.

inŭtilis, -e, adj. [in+ŭtilis, useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. II, 16.

inveniŏ, -venire, -vĕni, -ventum, tr. [veniŏ, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. I, 53; II, 16.

inventor, -ŏris, m. [inveniŏ, find], inventor, author.

inveterāscŏ, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, —, intr., grow old; become established. II, 1.

invictus, -a, -um, adj. [in+victus, conquered], unconquerable, invincible. I, 36.

invideŏ, -vidĕre, -vidī, -vīsum, intr. [videŏ, see], look askance at; envy. II, 31.

invidia, -ae, f. [invideŏ, envy], envy, hatred.

inviolātus, -a, -um, adj. [in+violātus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. III, 9.

invitŏ, 1, tr., invite, summon; allure, persuade. I, 35; IV, 6.

invītus, -a, -um, adj., against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant. I, 8.

Iovis, see Iuppiter.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius (App. 59), *intensive pron.*, self (as opposed to someone else; not to be confused with the reflexive *sē*, self. App. 163); him-

self, herself, itself, themselves; as *adj.*, very. I, 1.

irācundia, -ae, f. [irācundus, irritable], irritability, anger.

irācundus, -a, -um, adj. [irā, anger], irritable. I, 31.

irrideŏ, -ridĕre, -rīsi, -rīsum, intr. [in+rideŏ, laugh], laugh, jeer. II, 30.

irridiculĕ, adv. [in+ridiculus, witty], without wit, unwittily. I, 42.

irrupŏ, -rumpere, -rŭpi, -ruptum, tr. [in+rumpŏ, break], break into, rush into; force a way into, storm. IV, 14.

irruptiŏ, -ŏnis, f. [irrupŏ, break into], a breaking into, attack.

is, ea, id, gen. eius (App. 57), *weak dem. pron.*, referring to some person or thing named in the context, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the; a; eŏ, with *comp.*, the; eŏ magis, all the more; eŏ . . . quŏ, with *comparatives*, the . . . the. I, 1.

iste, -a, -ud, gen. istius (App. 55), *dem. pron.* used of something near the person addressed, that, this.

ita, adv., so, thus, in this way; as follows; **ut . . . ita, as . . . so; nŏn ita,** not so very, not very; **ita . . . ut,** just . . . as; so . . . that. I, 11.

Ītalia, -ae, f., Italy, sometimes including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula. I, 10.

itaque, conj. [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. I, 9.

item, adv., also, likewise. I, 3.

iter, itineris, n. [eŏ, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; **facere iter,** march, travel; **magnis itineribus,** by forced marches. I, 3.

iterum, adv., again, a second time; **semel atque iterum,** again and again. I, 31.

Itius, -ti, m. (Ad), Itius (ĭsh'yŭs), a harbor.

itŭrus, see eŏ.

iuba, -ae, f., mane. I, 48.

iubeŏ, iubĕre, iussi, iussum, tr., order, bid, command, enjoin. I, 5.

iudicium, -cī, *n.* [iūdex, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; **iudicium facere**, express an opinion; **iudiciō**, by design, purposely. I, 4.

iudicō, I, *tr.* [iūdex, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. I, 12.

iugum, -ī, *n.* [iungō, join], yoke; ridge, crest. I, 7.

iumentum, -ī, *n.* [iungō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal. I, 3.

iunctūra, -ae, *f.* [iungō, join], joining. IV, 17.

iungo, **iungere**, **iūnxī**, **iunctum**, *tr.*, join or unite together, attach, connect. I, 8.

iūnior, *see* **iuvenis**.

Iūnius, -nī, *m.*: (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, *see* **Brūtus**; (2) Quintus Junius (kwīn'tūs jū'nī-ūs), a Spaniard in Caesar's service.

Iuppiter, **Iovis** (App. 27), *m.*, Jupiter (jū'pī-tēr), or Jove, god of the heavens, the chief god of the Romans.

Iūra, -ae, *m.* (Cg), the Jura (jū'ra) mountains. I, 2.

iūrō, I, *tr. and intr.* [iūs, right], take oath; swear. I, 31.

iūs, **iūris**, *n.*, right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. I, 4.

iūs iurandum, **iūris iurandī**, *n.* [iūs, right + iūrō, swear], an oath. I, 3.

iussū, *m.*, *abl. of* **iussus**, -ūs [iubeō, order], by command, by order.

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [iūstus, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. I, 19.

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; *with* **fūnera**, appropriate. I, 43; IV, 16.

iuvenis, -e, *adj.*, young; *comp.*, **iūnior**; **iūniōrēs**, *as noun*, men of military age.

iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.* [iuvenis, young], period of youth; the youth, the young men. III, 16.

iuvō, **iuvāre**, **iūvī**, **iūtum**, *tr.*, aid, assist, help. I, 26.

iūxtā, *adv.*, next, near. II, 26.

K.

Kal., *abbr. for* **Kalendae**, -ārum, *f.*, the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. I, 6.

L.

L., *abbr. for* **Lūcius**, Lucius (lū'shyūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 6.

L., *sign for* **quinquāgintā**, fifty.

Laberius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Laberius Durus (kwīn'tūs lā-bē'rī-ūs dū'rūs), a tribune.

Labienus, -ī, *m.*, Titus Atius Labienus (tī'tūs ā'shyūs lā'bī-ē'nūs), Caesar's most trusted legate in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he deserted Caesar, and was slain at Munda, 45 B.C. I, 10.

lābor, **lābi**, **lāpsus sum**, *intr.*, slip; go wrong; **hāc spē lāpsus**, disappointed in this hope.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, labor, toil, effort, striving; hardship. I, 44; III, 5.

labōrō, I, *intr.* [labor, toil], labor, toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; suffer, be hard pressed. I, 31; IV, 26.

labrum, -ī, *n.*, lip; edge.

lāc, **lactis**, *n.*, milk. IV, 1.

laccessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. I, 15.

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear. I, 20.

lacrimō, I, *intr.* [lacrima, tear], weep.

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake. I, 2.

laedō, **laedere**, **laesī**, **laesum**, *tr.*, hurt, damage; **laedere fidem**, break faith.

laetitia, -ae, *f.* [laetus, joyful], joy, rejoicing.

laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful. III, 18.

languidē, *adv.* [languidus, faint], faintly, sluggishly.

languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak, faint, sluggish. III, 5.

languor, -ōris, *m.*, weakness, faintness, lassitude.

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone. I, 46; II, 6.

laqueus, -ī, *m.*, noose, snare.

largior, 4, *tr.* [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. I, 18.

largiter, *adv.* [largus, large], largely, freely, much; **largiter posse**, to have great influence. I, 18.

largitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [largior, bribe], bribery. I, 9.

lassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [lassus, weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. II, 23.

lātē, *adv.* [lātus, wide], widely, extensively; **longē lātēque**, far and wide. I, 2.

latebra, -ae, *f.* [lateō, lie hidden], hiding place.

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. II, 19.

lātītūdō, -inis, *f.* [lātus, wide], width, extent, breadth. I, 2.

Latobrigi, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Lato-brigi (lāt'ō-brī'jī), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, bandit, robber. III, 17.

latrocīnium, -nī, *n.* [latrō, robber], robbery, brigandage.

lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad, wide, extensive. I, 2.

lātus, *see ferō*.

latus, -eris, *n.*, side; wing or flank of an army. I, 25.

laudō, 1, *tr.* [laus, praise], praise.

laus, **laudis**, *f.*, praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. I, 40; IV, 3.

lavō, **lavāre**, **lāvī**, **lautum**, *tr.*, wash; *pass.*, bathe. IV, 1.

laxō, 1, *tr.*, stretch out, extend, open. II, 25.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [lēgō, delegate], embassy, legation; commission. I, 3.

lēgātus, -ī, *m.* [lēgō, delegate], one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy; legate, lieutenant general. I, 7.

legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [legō, choose], a legion. I, 7.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [legiō, legion], of a legion, legionary. I, 42; II, 27.

Lemannus, -ī, *m.* (Cg), Lake Lemanus (lē-măn'ūs), better, the Lake of Geneva. I, 2.

Lemovicēs, -um, *m.* (CDd), the Lemo-vices (lēm'ō-vī'sēz).

lēnis, -e, *adj.*, gentle, mild. IV, 28.

lēnitās, -tātis, *f.* [lēnis, gentle], smoothness, gentleness. I, 12.

lēniter, *adv.* [lēnis, gentle], softly, smoothly, gently, gradually. II, 8.

Lepontii, -ōrum, *m.* (Ch), the Lepontii (lē-pōn'shyī). IV, 10.

lepus, -oris, *m.*, hare.

Leuci, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Leuci (lū'sī). I, 40.

Levacī, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Levaci (lē-vā'sī).

levis, -e, *adj.*, light (*in weight*), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. II, 10.

levitās, -tātis, *f.* [levis, light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. II, 1.

levō, 1, *tr.* [levis, light], lighten, ease, relieve.

lēx, **lēgis**, *f.*, law, statute, enactment. I, 1.

Lexovii, -ōrum, *m.* (Bd), the Lexovii (lēk-sō'vī-ī). III, 9.

libenter, *adv.* [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. I, 44; III, 18.

liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free, unrestrained, undisputed. I, 44.

liberalitās, -tātis, *f.* [liber, free], freedom in giving, etc., generosity. I, 18.

liberaliter, *adv.* [liber, free], graciously, generously, kindly. II, 5.

liberē, *adv.* [liber, free], freely, without restraint, boldly. I, 18.

liberī, -ōrum, *m.* [liber, free], the free members of the household (as opposed to slaves); children. I, 11.

liberō, 1, *tr.* [liber, free], make or set free, release, deliver. IV, 19.

libertās, -tātis, *f.* [liber, free], freedom, liberty, independence. I, 17.

librīlis, -e, *adj.* [libra, a pound], of a pound in weight; **funda librīlis**, a sling for throwing heavy missiles.

licēns, *see liceor*.

licentia, -ae, *f.* [licet, it is permitted], lawlessness, presumption.

liceor, 2, *intr.*, bid (*at an auction*). I, 18.

licet, **licēre**, **licuit** and **licitum est**, *intr., impers.*, it is lawful, permitted, or allowed; **licet mihi**, I may; **petere ut liceat**, to ask permission. I, 7.

Liger, **-eris**, *m.* (Cce), the river Liger, (lī'jēr), better, the Loire. III, 9.

lignātiō, **-ōnis**, *f.* [lignum, wood], the procuring of wood.

lignātor, **-ōris**, *m.* [lignum, wood], one sent to get wood, wood-forager.

lilium, **-li**, *n.*, lily.

linea, **-ae**, *f.* [linum, flax], linen thread; line.

Lingonēs, **-um**, *m.* (Bf), the Lingones (līng'gō-nēz). I, 26.

lingua, **-ae**, *f.*, tongue; language. I, 1.

lingula, **-ae**, *f.* [lingua, tongue], a little tongue; a tongue of land. III, 12.

linter, **-tris**, *f.*, skiff, rowboat, canoe. I, 12.

linum, **-ī**, *n.*, flax; linen, canvas. III, 13.

lis, **litis**, *f.*, strife; lawsuit; damages.

Liscus, **-ī**, *m.*, Liscus (līs'kūs), a chief magistrate of the Haedui. I, 16.

Litaviccus, **-ī**, *m.*, Litaviccus (līt'ā-vīk'ūs), a Haeduan nobleman.

littera, **-ae**, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet, a written sign, mark, or character; *pl.*, letters of the alphabet; letter, epistle. I, 26.

lītus, **-oris**, *n.*, seashore, beach, shore. IV, 23.

locus, **-ī**, *m.* (*pl. loca*, **-ōrum**, *n.*), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition, state; rank, family; opportunity; **obsidum locō**, as hostages. I, 2.

locūtus, *see loquor*.

longē, *adv.* [longus, long], far, far away, distant; **longē latēque**, far and wide. I, 1.

longinquus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [longus, long], far off, distant, remote; long, long-continued. I, 47; IV, 27.

longitūdō, **-inis**, *f.* [longus, long], length, extent; long duration. I, 2.

longurius, **-rī**, *m.* [longus, long], a long pole. III, 14.

longus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, long, distant; of long duration; tedious. I, 40; II, 21.

loquor, **loquī**, **locūtus sum**, *intr.*, speak, talk, converse. I, 20.

lōrica, **-ae**, *f.*, coat of mail; parapet, breastwork.

Lūcānius, **-nī**, *m.*, Quintus Lucanius (kwīn'tūs lū-kā'nī-ūs) a centurion.

Lucterius, **-rī**, *m.*, Lucterius (lūk-tē'rī-ūs), a chief of the Cadurci.

Lugotorix, **-igis**, *m.*, Lugotorix (lū-gōt'ō-rīks), a British chief.

lūna, **-ae**, *f.*, the moon. I, 50; IV, 29.

Lutecia, **-ae**, *f.* (Be), Lutecia (lū-tē'-shyā), the capital of the Parisii, now Paris.

lūx, **lūcis**, *f.*, light, daylight; **primā lūce**, at daybreak. I, 22.

lūxuria, **-ae**, *f.*, luxury, high living. II, 15.

M.

M., *abbr. for* **Mārcus** (mār'kūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 2.

M, *sign for* mille, thousand.

māceria, **-ae**, *f.*, wall.

māchinātiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, machine, engine, derrick. II, 30.

maestus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [maereō, be sad], dejected, sad.

Magetobriga, **-ae**, *f.* (Cf), Magetobriga (māj'ē-tōb'rī-gā), a Gallic town where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. I, 31.

magis, *adv., comp.* [magnus, great], more, rather, in a higher degree; *sup.*, **maximē**, especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. I, 3.

magistrātus, **-ūs**, *m.* [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. I, 4.

magnificus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [magnus, great + faciō, make], magnificent, splendid.

magnitūdō, **-inis**, *f.* [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (**corporum**); violence (**ventī**); severity (**poenae**); **magnitūdō animī**, courage. I, 39; II, 12.

- magnopere**, *adv.* [magnus, great + opus, work], with great labor; especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. I, 13.
- magnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (in size, quantity, or degree), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (voice); high (tide); **magnī** (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance. *Comp.*, maior; *sup.*, maximus. I, 2.
- maiestās**, -tātis, *f.* [maior, greater], greatness, honor, majesty.
- maior**, maius, *adj.* [*comp.* of magnus, great], greater (in degree, size, time, etc.); older, elder; as noun, maiōrēs nātū, elders, old men; maiōrēs, ancestors. I, 13.
- malacia**, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea. III, 15.
- male**, *adv.* [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely. *Comp.*, peius; *sup.*, pessimē. I, 40.
- maleficium**, -cī, *n.* [malum, evil + faciō, do], evil-doing, mischief, harm, injury. I, 7.
- mālō**, mälle, mālui, — (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [magis, more + volō, wish], wish more or rather, prefer. III, 8.
- mālus**, -ī, *m.*, mast; pole, beam (*up-right*). III, 14.
- malus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, evil, bad, injurious. *Comp.*, peior, peius; *sup.*, pessimus. I, 31.
- mandātum**, -ī, *n.* [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. I, 35; II, 5.
- mandō**, I, *tr.* [manus, hand + dō, give], give into one's hands; intrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. I, 12.
- Mandubii**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Mandubii (mān-dū'bī-ī).
- Mandubracius**, -cī, *m.*, Mandubracius (mān-dū-brā'shyūs), a British chief.
- mane**, *adv.*, in the morning, early. IV, 13.
- maneō**, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *intr.*, remain, continue, abide, stay. I, 36; IV, 1.
- manipulāris**, -e, *adj.* [manipulus, manipule], of a manipule; *m. as noun*, common soldier; suus manipulāris, a soldier of his own company.
- manipulus**, -ī, *m.*, a company (of two centuries, the third of a cohort), manipule. II, 25.
- Manlius**, -li, *m.*, Lucius Manlius (lū'shyūs mǎn'li-ūs), proconsul in 78 B.C. III, 20.
- mānsuēfaciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (*pass.*, mānsuēfiō), *tr.* [mānsuētus, tame + faciō, make], tame.
- mānsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.* [mānsuētus, tame], gentleness, mercy, compassion. II, 14.
- manus**, -ūs, *f.*, the hand; an armed force, troop, band, company; in manibus, near at hand; manū, by hand, by art; ferrea manus, a grappling-hook; dare manūs, yield. I, 25.
- Marcomanni**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bj), the Marcomanni (mār'kō-mǎn'ī). I, 51.
- mare**, -is, *n.*, sea; mare Ōceanum, the ocean. III, 7.
- maritimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [mare, sea], of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; **maritima ōra**, the seashore. II, 34.
- Marius**, -rī, *m.*, Gaius Marius (gā'yūs mǎ'rī-ūs), the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni. I, 40.
- Mārs**, -tīs, *m.*, Mars (mārz), god of war; war; aequō Mārte, with equal advantage.
- mās**, maris, *adj.*, male; as noun, a male.
- mātara**, -ae, *f.*, Celtic javelin. I, 26.
- māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother; mātērēs familiae, matrons. I, 18.
- māteria**, -ae, *f.*, material; wood, timber. III, 29.
- māterior**, I, *intr.* [māteria, material, wood], procure wood.
- Matiscō**, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf), Matisco (mā'tis'kō), a city of the Haedui, now Macon.
- mātrimōnium**, -nī, *n.* [māter, mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; in mātrimōnium dare, to give in marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, to marry (*said of the man*). I, 3.
- Matrona**, -ae, *m.* (Bef), the river Matrona (mǎtrō-nā), now the Marne. I, 1.
- mātūrē**, *adv.* [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. I, 33; IV, 6.

mātūrēscō, mātūrēscere, mātūri,
——, *intr.* [mātūrus, ripe], become
ripe, ripen.

mātūrō, 1, tr. and intr. [mātūrus, ripe],
ripen; quicken, accelerate; make
haste, hasten. I, 7.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe; early.
I, 16.

maximē, see magis.

maximus, -a, -um, adj. [*sup. of mag-*
nus, great. App. 42], greatest,
largest. I, 3.

Maximus, -i, m., Quintus Fabius
Maximus (quīn'tūs fā'bī-ūs māk'si-
mūs), *victor over the Gauls, 121 B.C.*
I, 45.

Meclosēdum, -i, n. (Be), Meclosedum
(mē'klō-sē'dūm), *a town of the*
Senones, now Melun.

medeor, medēri, ——, intr., remedy,
cure.

mediocris, -cre, adj. [medius, middle],
middling, ordinary, moderate. III,
20.

mediocriter, adv. [mediocris, mode-
rate], moderately; *nōn mediocriter*,
in no small degree. I, 39.

Mediomatrici, -ōrum, m. (Bfg), the
Mediomatrici (mē'dī-ō-māt'rī-sī).
IV, 10.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, adj. [medius,
middle+terra, land], midland, in-
land.

medius, -a, -um, adj., middle, the
middle of; in the middle, interven-
ing, intermediate; *locus medius*
utriusque, a place midway between
the two. I, 24.

Meldi, -ōrum, m. (Be), the Meldi (mēl'-
dī).

melior, comp. of bonus.

membrum, -i, n., member of the body,
limb. IV, 24.

memini, -isse (App. 86), *tr.*, remember,
bear in mind. III, 6.

memoria, -ae, f. [memor, mindful], the
faculty of memory; recollection,
memory, remembrance; tradition;
memoriā tenēre, remember; **patrum**
memoriā, in the time of our fathers.
I, 7.

Menapii, -ōrum, m. (Afg), the Mena-
pii (mē-nā'pī-i). II, 4.

mendācium, -ci, n., lie, falsehood.

mēns, mentis, f., the thinking faculty,
mind, intellect; thought; disposi-
tion, feelings; **mentēs animōsque**,
minds and hearts. I, 39; III, 19.

mēnsis, -is, m., month. I, 5.

mēnsūra, -ae, f. [mētior, measure],
measure.

mentiō, -ōnis, f., naming, mention.

mercātor, -ōris, m. [mercōr, trade],
merchant, trader. I, 1.

mercātūra, -ae, f. [mercōr, trade], a
commercial enterprise, trade.

mercēs, -ēdis, f., pay, hire. I, 31.

Mercurius, -rī, m., Mercurius (mēr-
kūrī-ūs), *the god Mercury.*

mereō, and mereor, 2, tr., deserve,
merit, be worthy of; win, earn;
incur (odium); *serve as a soldier*
(i.e., *earn pay*). I, 11.

meridiānus, -a, -um, adj. [meridiēs,
midday], of midday or noon.

meridiēs, -ēi, m. [for medidiēs, from
medius, middle+diēs, day], the
middle of the day, midday, noon;
the south. I, 50.

meritō, adv. [meritum, merit], justly,
deservedly.

meritum, -i, n. [mereor, deserve], de-
sert, merit, service; favor, kindness,
benefit. I, 14.

Messāla, -ae, m., Marcus Valerius
Messala (mār'kūs vā-lē'rī-ūs mē-
sā'lā), *consul, 61 B.C.* I, 2.

mētior, mētiri, mēnsus sum, tr., deal
or measure out, distribute. I, 16.

Mētius, -ti, m., Marcus Metius (mār'-
kūs mē'shyūs). I, 47.

metō, metere, messui, messum, tr.,
mow, reap. IV, 32.

metus, -ūs, m. [metuō, fear], fear,
dread, anxiety, apprehension. IV,
4.

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron., my,
mine, my own. IV, 25.

miles, -itis, m., soldier, private sol-
dier; infantry (*opposed to equitēs*).
I, 7.

milia, see mille.

militāris, -e, adj. [mīles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; **rēs militāris**, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. I, 21.

militia, -ae, f. [mīles, soldier], military service, warfare.

mille, indecl. num. adj., a thousand; *n. pl. as noun, milia, -ium*, thousands (usually followed by *part. gen.*); **milia passuum**, thousands of paces, miles. I, 2.

Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva (mĭ-nĕr'vā), goddess of wisdom and the arts.

minimē, adv. [minimus, least], least, very little; by no means, not at all. I, 1.

minimus, -a, -um, sup. of parvus.

minor, comp. of parvus.

Minucius, -cī, m., Lucius Minucius Basilus (lū'shyūs mĭ-nū'shyūs bās'ī-lūs), a commander of cavalry.

minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum, tr. and intr. [minus, less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (*contrōversiās*); **minuente aestū**, the tide ebbing. I, 20.

minus, comp. adv. [parvus, little], less; not, not at all; too little. I, 2.

mīror, 1, tr. and intr., wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. I, 32.

mīrus, -a, -um, adj. [mīror, wonder at], strange, astonishing; **mīrum in modum**, surprisingly. I, 34.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. I, 32; II, 28.

misericordia, -ae, f. [misereō, pity+cor, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. II, 28.

miseror, 1, tr. [miser, wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. I, 39.

misi, see mittō.

missus, -ūs, m. [mittō, send], a sending, dispatching; **missū Caesaris**, sent by Caesar.

missus, see mittō.

mitissimē, sup. adv. [mitis, mild], very mildly or gently.

mittō, mittere, misi, missum, tr., send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. I, 7.

mōbilis, -e, adj. [moveō, move], changeable. IV, 5.

mōbilitās, -tātis, f. [mōbilis, movable], movableness, activity, speed; changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. II, 1.

mōbiliter, adv. [mōbilis, movable], readily, easily. III, 10.

moderor, 1, tr. [modus, limit], manage, govern, control, guide. IV, 33.

modestia, -ae, f. [modus, limit], moderation, self-control, sobriety of behavior.

modo, adv. [modus, measure], with measure or limit; only, merely; even, just, at least, but; of time, just now, recently; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, not only. . . but also. I, 16.

modus, -ī, m., measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; **eius modī**, of such a kind, such; *abl.*, **modō**, with *gen.*, in the character of, like. I, 41; II, 31.

moenia, -ium, n. pl., defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. II, 6.

mōlēs, -is, f., mass; dike. III, 12.

molestē, adv., with annoyance; **molestē ferre**, be annoyed. II, 1.

mōlimentum, -ī, n. [mōlior, exert oneself], effort, difficulty. I, 34.

molitus, -a, -um, see molō.

molliō, 4, tr. [mollis, soft], soften; make easy.

mollis, -e, adj., soft; smooth; weak. III, 19.

mollitia, -ae, f. [mollis, soft], softness, weakness.

mollitiēs, -ēī, f. [mollis, soft], softness, weakness.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, tr., grind. I, 5.

mōmentum, -ī, n., weight, influence, importance.

Mona, -ae, f., Mona (mō'nā), an island off the coast of Britain, probably the Isle of Man.

moneō, 2, tr., warn, advise. I, 20.

mōns, montis, m., mountain; mountain range; hill, height. I, 1.

mora, -ae, f., delay. II, 15.

morbus, -ī, m., illness, sickness, disease.

Morinī, -ōrum, m. (Ae), the Morini (mōr'ī-nī). II, 4.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, intr. [mors, death], die. I, 4.

Moritasgus, -ī, m., Moritasgus (mōr'-ī-tās'gūs), a chief of the Senones.

moror, 1, tr. and intr. [mora, a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. I, 26.

mors, -tis, f., death. I, 4.

mortuus, see morior.

mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, practice; pl., customs, habits; character. I, 4.

Mosa, -ae, m. (ABf), the river Mosa (mō'sā), now the Meuse. IV, 9.

mōtus, -ūs, m. [moveō, move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. IV, 23.

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, tr., set in motion, move; affect, influence; with castra, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. I, 15.

mulier, -eris, f., woman; wife. I, 29.

mūliō, -ōnis, m. [mūlus, mule], mule driver, muleteer.

multitūdō, -inis, f. [multus, much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. I, 2.

multō, 1, tr., fine, deprive one of something as a fine.

multō, adv. [abl. of multus, much. App. 148], by far, much.

multum, adv. [acc. of multus, much. App. 128, b], much, very, greatly, especially; *comp.* plūs, more; plūs posse, be more able or powerful, have more influence; *sup.* plūrimum, most, very; plūrimum posse, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. I, 3.

multus, -a, -um, adj., much, great; pl. many; with abl. denoting time when, late; multā nocte, late at night; as noun, many persons or things; comp. plūs, plūris, more; *as noun*, more; *pl.* more, several, many; *sup.* plūrimus, -a, -um, most; *pl.*, very many. I, 3.

mūlus, -ī, m., a mule.

Munātiūs, -tī, m., Lucius Munatius Plancus (lū'shyūs mū-nā'shyūs plāng'kūs), one of Caesar's legates.

mundus, -ī, m., universe, world.

mūnimentum, -ī, n. [mūniō, fortify], defense, fortification. II, 17.

mūniō, 4, tr., defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; mūnitus, pf. part. as adj., fortified, defended, protected. I, 24.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. [mūniō, fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. I, 8.

mūnus, -eris, n., duty, service, task; present. I, 43.

mūrālis, -e, adj. [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; *mūrāle pīlum*, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. III, 14.

mūrus, -ī, m., wall. I, 8.

musculus, -ī, m., shed. See Int. 62, b.

mutilus, -a, -um, adj., mutilated, broken.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, see nanciscor.

nam, conj., for. I, 12.

Nammeius, -ī, m., Nammeius (nă-mē'yūs). I, 7.

Namnetēs, -um, m. (Cc), the Namnetes (năm'nē-tēz). III, 9.

namque, conj. [nam, for], for. I, 38; III, 13.

nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. I, 53; IV, 23.

Nantuātes, -ium, m. (CDg), the Nantuates (năn'tū-ā'tēz). III, 1.

Narbō, -ōnis, m. (Ee), Narbo (nār'bō), now Narbonne. III, 20.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, intr., be born or produced; rise, spring up, be reared. II, 18.

Nasua, -ae, m., Nasua (năsh'ū-ā), a leader of the Suebi. I, 37.

nātālis, -e, adj. [nāscor, be born], pertaining to birth; *diēs nātālis*, birthday.

nātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. I, 53; II, 35.

nātivus, -a, -um, adj. [nāscor, be born], native; natural.

nātūra, -ae, f. [nāscor, be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. I, 2.

nātus, -ūs, *m.* [nāscor, be born], birth; maiōrēs nātū, *greater by birth*, elders. II, 13.

nātus, -a, -um, *see* nāscor.

nauta, -ae, *m.* [for nāvita; nāvis, ship], sailor. III, 9.

nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nauta, sailor], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. III, 8.

nāvālis, -e, *adj.* [nāvis, ship], pertaining to ships, naval. III, 19.

nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim.* of nāvis, ship], small boat, skiff. I, 53.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāvigō, sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. III, 9.

nāvigium, -gī, *n.* [nāvigō, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. III, 14.

nāvigō, 1, *intr.* [nāvis, ship], set sail, sail. III, 8.

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat; nāvis longa, galley, ship of war; nāvis onerāria, transport, freight ship. I, 8.

nāvō, 1, *tr.*, do zealously or well. II, 25.

nē (App. 188, b): (1) *conj.* with subj., that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest; after verbs of fearing, that; (2) *adv.*, not, only with subj. of desire, or in **nē** . . . quidem (*inclosing the emphatic word*), not even. I, 4.

ne-, **nec-**, **neg-**, *inseparable negative prefixes.*

-ne, *interrog. enclitic: in direct questions, not translated* (App. 213, a); *in indirect questions, whether; -ne* . . . -ne, -ne . . . an, utrum . . . -ne, whether . . . or. I, 50; IV, 14.

nec, *see* neque.

necessāriō, *adv.* [*abl.* of necessārius, necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. I, 17.

necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [necesse, necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; with tempus, critical; *m.* as noun, kinsman, friend. I, 11.

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. IV, 5.

necessitās, -tātis, *f.* [necesse, necessary], necessity, constraint, need. II, 11.

necessitūdō, -inis, *f.* [necesse; cf. necessārius, friend], friendship, alliance. I, 43.

necne, *conj.* [nec, nor+-ne], or not. I, 50.

necō, 1, *tr.* [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. I, 53; III, 16.

nēcubi, *conj.*+*adv.* [nē, not+(c)ubi, where], that nowhere, lest anywhere.

nefārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [nefās, sin], wicked, impious.

nefās, *n.*, *indecl.* [ne+-fās, divine right], contrary to divine right; sin, crime.

neg-, *see* ne-.

neglēgō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [neg+-lēgō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. I, 35; III, 10.

negō, 1, *tr. and intr.*, say no, refuse, say . . . not. I, 8.

negōtiōr, 1, *intr.* [negōtium, business], carry on business, traffic, trade.

negōtium, -tī, *n.* [neg+-ōtium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; negōtium dare, employ, direct. I, 34; II, 2.

Nemetēs, -um, *m.* (Bh), the Nemetes (nēm'ē-tēz). I, 51.

nēmō, *acc. nēminem, m. and f.* [ne+-homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. I, 18.

nēquāquam, *adv.*, in no way, by no means, not at all. IV, 23.

neque (nec), *conj.* [ne+-que, and], and not, not, nor; but not; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor. I, 4.

nēquīquam, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose. II, 27.

Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Nervius], of or with the Nervii. III, 5.

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.* (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. sing. as noun*, one of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun*, the Nervii (nēr'vī-i). II, 4.

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew; *pl.*, vigor, strength, power. I, 20.

neu, *see* nēve.

neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* -trius, *dat.* -trī), *adj.* used as *noun* [ne+uter, which of two], neither; *m. pl.*, neither side, neither party. II, 9.

nēve (neu) (App. 188, b), *conj.* [nē+ve, or], and not, nor. I, 26.

nex, *necis*, *f.*, violent death, death, execution. I, 16.

nihil, *noun*, *n.*, *nom.* and *acc. sing.*, nothing; with *gen.*, no, none of; *acc. as adv.*, not, not at all, by no means; **nōn nihil**, somewhat. I, 11.

nihilō [*abl. of nihil*, nothing], by no means; **nihilō minus** or **sētius**, none the less, nevertheless. I, 5.

nimius, -a, -um, *adj.* [nimis, too much], beyond measure, too great, excessive.

nisi, *conj.* [ne+si, if], if not, except, unless. I, 22.

Nitiobrogēs, -um, *m.* (Dd), the Nitiobroges (nīsh'ī-ōb'rō-jēz).

nītor, **nīti**, **nixus sum**, *intr.*, rest or rely upon; exert oneself, strive, endeavor. I, 13.

nix, *nivis*, *f.*, snow.

nōbilis, -e, *adj.* [nōscō, know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; *m. as noun*, a noble. I, 2.

nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.* [nōbilis, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. I, 2.

noceō, **nocēre**, **nocuī**, **nocitum**, *intr.*, injure, hurt; **nocēns**, *pres. part. as noun*, guilty person. III, 13.

noctū, *adv.* [nox, night], by night. I, 8.

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, night. I, 38.

nōdus, -ī, *m.*, knot; joint.

nōlō, **nolle**, **nōluī**, — (App. 82), *tr.* and *intr.* [ne+volō, wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; *imperative*, **nōlī** or **nōlīte**, with *inf.* (App. 219), do not. I, 16.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, title; reputation, prestige; **nōmine** with *gen.*, in the name of, as; **suō nōmine**, on his or their own account, personally. I, 13.

nōminātim, *adv.* [nōminō, name], by name; expressly; in detail. I, 29.

nōminō, *1, tr.* [nōmen, name], call by name, name, mention. II, 18.

nōn, *adv.*, not; no. I, 3.

nōnāgintā, *card. num. adj.*, ninety. I, 29.

nōndum, *adv.* [nōn, not+dum], not yet. I, 6.

nōnus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, ninth. II, 23.

Nōreia, -ae, *f.* (Ck) Noreia (nō-rē'yá), a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt. I, 5.

Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican. I, 5.

nōs, *see ego*.

nōscō, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtum**, *tr.*, learn, become acquainted or familiar with; **nōvī**, *pf.*, have learned, hence, know; **nōtus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, known, well known, familiar. III, 9.

nōsmet, *see egomet*.

noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.* [nōs, we], our, ours, our own; *m. pl. as noun*, our men, our troops. I, 1.

nōtitia, -ae, *f.* [nōscō, know], knowledge, acquaintance.

nōtus, -a, -um, *see nōscō*.

novem, *card. num. adj.*, nine.

Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*, Noviodunum (nō'vī-ō-dū'nūm): (1) the capital of the Suessiones, near Soissons (Be); (2) a city of the Bituriges (Ce); (3) a city of the Haedui (Ce). II, 12.

novitās, -tātis, *f.* [novus, new], newness; strangeness, novelty.

novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, novel, unusual; fresh; **rēs novae**, a change of government, revolution; *sup.*, **novissimus**, -a, -um, latest, last; *as noun (m.) or with agmen*, those in the rear, the rear. I, 9.

nox, **noctis**, *f.*, night; **media nox**, middle of the night, midnight; **ad multam noctem**, till late at night. I, 26.

noxia, -ae, *f.*, crime, offense.

nūbō, **nūbere**, **nūpsi**, **nūptum**, *intr.*, veil oneself for the marriage ceremony, marry. I, 18.

nūdō, 1, *tr.* [nūdus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. II, 6.

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. I, 25.

nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, nūllius, *adj.* [ne-+ūllus, any], not any, no; *as noun*, no one, none; **nōn nūllus**, some; *m. as noun*, some, some persons. I, 7.

num, *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply.* I, 14.

nūmen, -inis, *n.*, divinity; divine will.

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, quantity, amount; account; **in numerō**, *with gen.*, among, *as.* I, 3.

Numidae, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidae (nū'mī-dē), *better*, the Numidians, *a people of North Africa, in modern Algeria.* II, 7.

nummus, -ī, *m.*, coin.

numquam, *adv.* [ne-+umquam, ever], not ever, never; **nōn numquam**, sometimes. I, 8.

nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. I, 31; II, 4.

nūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntius, messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. I, 7.

nūntius, -tī, *m.*, messenger; message, news, report. I, 26.

nūper, *adv.*, recently, not long ago. I, 6.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; **ad nūtum**, at one's nod *or* command. I, 31; IV, 23.

O.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; *in compounds*, opposed to, to, toward, against; **quam ob rem**, wherefore, why. I, 4.

obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes, money], in debt; *m. as noun*, debtor. I, 4.

obducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead toward; extend, dig. II, 8.

obeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go to *or* toward; perform, attend to.

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw against *or* in the way; place in front *or* opposite, present; expose; **obiectus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, lying in the way *or* opposite, in the way. I, 26.

obitus, -ūs, *m.* [obeō, go to death], destruction. II, 29.

oblātus, *see offerō.*

obliquē, *adv.* [obliquus, slanting], obliquely, slantwise. IV, 17.

obliquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, running obliquely, slanting.

obliviscor, **obliviscī**, **oblitus sum**, *intr.*, forget. I, 14.

obsecrō, 1, *tr.* [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. I, 20.

obsequentia, -ae, *f.* [obsequor, comply], complaisance, compliance.

observō, 1, *tr.* [servō, give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. I, 45.

obses, -idis, *m.*, *f.*, hostage; pledge, security. I, 9.

obsessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [obsideō, blockade], blocking up, blockade, siege.

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sēssum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], *sit in the way of*, obstruct; besiege, blockade. III, 23.

obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [obsideō, blockade], siege; peril, oppression. IV, 19.

obsignō, 1, *tr.* [signō, mark], seal, sign and seal. I, 39.

obsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [sistō, stand], oppose, resist, withstand.

obstinātē, *adv.*, firmly, resolutely.

obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, *tr.* [stringō, tie], bind, hold under obligations, pledge. I, 9.

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [struō, pile up], block up, barricade, obstruct.

obtemperō, 1, *intr.* [temperō, control oneself], comply with, obey. IV, 21.

obtestor, 1, *tr.* [testor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. IV, 25.

obtimeō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold, retain, possess, maintain; acquire, obtain. I, 1.

obtuli, *see* offerō.

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to *by lot*. II, 23.

obviam, *adv.* [via, way], in the way; to meet, toward, against.

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. III, 18.

occāsus, -ūs, *m.* [occidō, fall, set], falling down, setting; *with* sōlis, sunset; the west. I, 1.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus, *intr.* [ob+cadō, fall], fall down, set; happen; be slain, perish; occidēns sōl, the west.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [ob+caedō, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. I, 7.

occultātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occultō, hide], concealment.

occultē, *adv.* [occultus, secret], secretly.

occultō, 1, *tr.* [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. I, 27.

occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *neut. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. I, 32; II, 18.

occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occupō, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. IV, 16.

occupō, 1, *tr.* [ob+capiō, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. I, 3.

occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob+currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon, find; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. I, 33; II, 21.

Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, the ocean; *as adj.*, with mare, the ocean. I, 1.

Ocelum, -ī, *n.* (Dg), Ocelum (ōs'ē-lūm). I, 10.

octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eighth. II, 23.

octingenti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eight hundred. IV, 12.

octō (VIII), *card. num. adj.*, eight. I, 21.

Octodūrus, -ī, *m.* (Cg), Octodurus (ōk'tō-dū'rūs). III, 1.

octōgēni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [octōgintā, eighty], eighty each, eighty.

octōgintā (LXXX), *card. num. adj.*, [octō, eight], eighty. I, 2.

octōnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eight at a time, eight.

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. I, 12.

ōdī, ōdisse (App. 86), *tr.*, *pf.* with meaning of *pres.*, hate, detest. I, 18.

odium, -dī, *n.* [ōdī, hate], hatred.

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsūm, *tr.* [ob+fendō, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; *animus offendere*, hurt the feelings, offend. I, 19.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [offendō, hurt], offense. I, 19.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *tr.* [ob+ferō, bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; *with* sē, expose oneself to, charge upon, encounter. II, 21.

officiūm, -cī, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; *esse, manēre, or permanēre in officiō*, to remain faithful. I, 40; III, 11.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Ollovico (ō-lōv'ī-kō), a king of the Nitiobroges.

omittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [ob+mittō, send], let go or fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. II, 17.

omninō, *adv.* [omnis, all], altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only; at all. I, 6.

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; *m. pl. as noun*, all, every one; *neut. pl. as noun*, all possessions or goods. I, 1.

onerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; *with* nāvis, transport, freight ship. IV, 22.

onerō, 1, *tr.* [onus, load], load.

onus, -eris, *n.*, load, burden; weight. II, 30.

opera, -ae, *f.* [opus, work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; **dare operam**, give attention, take pains. II, 25.

opiniō, -ōnis, *f.* [opinor, think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; **opiniō timōris**, impression of cowardice. II, 3.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, —, *intr.*, *impers.*, it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; *when translated as personal verb*, must, ought. I, 4.

oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; *m. pl. as noun*, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. II, 7.

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, fortified town, town, stronghold. I, 5.

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [ob + pōnō, place], place against or opposite, oppose; **oppositus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, in front, opposite.

opportūnē, *adv.* [opportūnus, fit], opportunely, seasonably. IV, 22.

opportunitās, -tātis, *f.* [opportūnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportunity; advantage. III, 12.

opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. I, 30; II, 8.

oppositus, *see* oppōnō.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [ob + premō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. I, 44; III, 2.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [oppugnō, storm], a storming, assault, attack; plan or method of storming. II, 6.

oppugnō, 1, *tr.* [ob + pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. I, 5.

ops, **opis**, *f.*, help, aid; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. I, 20.

optātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [optō, wish], wished for, desired, welcome.

optimē, *sup. of bene*.

optimus, *sup. of bonus*.

opus, **operis**, *n.*, work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of engineering or

architecture; **nātūrā et opere**, by nature and art; **opera**, crafts. I, 8.

opus, *indecl. noun, n.*, need, necessity; **opus est**, it is necessary, there is need, *the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or abl.* (App. 146). I, 34; II, 8.

ōra, -ae, *f.*, border, margin; coast, shore. III, 8.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ōrō, speak], a speaking, speech, language, words, address, argument. I, 3.

ōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [ōrō, speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. IV, 27.

orbis, -is, *m.*, orb, ring, circle; **orbis terrārum**, the world. IV, 37.

Orcynia, -ae, *f.*, Orcynia (ōr-sin'ŷ-ā), same as **Hercynia**.

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; **primi ordinēs**, centurions of the first rank. I, 40; II, 11.

Orgetorix, -igis, *m.*, Orgetorix (ōr-jēt'-ō-riks), a chief of the *Helvetii*. I, 2.

orior, **oriri**, **ortus sum**, *intr.*, arise, begin, spring up, rise, start; be born, descend; **oriēns sōl**, the rising sun, sunrise; the east. I, 1.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* [ōrnō, adorn], ornament; mark of honor. I, 44.

ōrnō, 1, *tr.*, adorn; furnish, supply; **ōrnātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. III, 14.

ōrō, 1, *tr.* [ōs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. I, 20.

ortus, -ūs, *m.* [orior, rise], rising.

ōs, **ōris**, *n.*, mouth; face, countenance.

Osismī, -ōrum, *m.* (Bb), the *Osismi* (ō-sis'mī), a *Gallie* people living in what is now *Brittany*. II, 34.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [obs + tendō, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. I, 8.

ostentātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ostentō, show], show, display; pretense; pride.

ostentō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of ostendō, show], show frequently; show, exhibit.

ōtium, -tī, *n.*, leisure, inactivity, quiet.

ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg. IV, 10.

P.

P., *abbr. for Pūblius, a Roman praenomen.* I, 21.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [pābulor, forage], getting fodder, foraging. I, 15.

pābulātor, -ōris, *m.* [pābulor, forage], forager.

pābulor, 1, *intr.* [pābulum, fodder], forage.

pābulum, -ī, *n.*, fodder; pasturage. I, 16.

pācō, 1, *tr.* [pāx, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; **pācātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. I, 6.

pactum, -ī, *n.* [paciscor, agree to], agreement; manner.

Padus, -ī, *m.* (Dh), the Padus (pā'dūs), better, the Po, the largest river of northern Italy.

paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost. I, 11.

paenitet, **paenitēre**, **paenituit**, —, *tr., impers.*, it causes regret, makes one repent; *when translated as pers. verb*, repent (App. 109). IV, 5.

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, district, canton. I, 12.

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

palma, -ae, *f.*, palm of the hand.

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. I, 40; II, 9.

palūster, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [palūs, swamp], swampy, marshy.

pandō, **pandere**, **pandī**, **passum**, *tr.*, spread or stretch out, extend; **passis capillis**, with disheveled hair. I, 51; II, 13.

pār, **paris**, *adj.*, equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; *with words of number and quantity*, the same; **pār atque**, the same as. I, 28.

parcē, *adv.* [parcus, frugal], frugally, sparingly.

parcō, **parcere**, **peperci**, **parsum**, *intr.* [parcus, frugal], be frugal or economical; spare, not injure.

parēns, -entis, *m., f.* [pariō, give birth to], parent.

parentō, 1, *intr.* [parēns, parent], make funeral offerings especially for parents; avenge.

pāreō, 2, *intr.*, appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. I, 27.

pariō, **parere**, **peperi**, **partum**, *tr.*, give birth to; gain, acquire, win, procure.

Parisii, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Parisii (pā-rīzh'yī), a Gallic tribe living in the region where Paris now is.

parō, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for; **parātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared; equipped. I, 5.

pars, **partis**, *f.*, part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. I, 1.

partim, *adv.* [pars, part], partly, in part. II, 1.

partior, 4, *tr.* [pars, part], part, share, divide. III, 10.

partus, *see pariō.*

parum, *adv.* [parvus, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. III, 18.

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim.* of parvus, little], small, insignificant, slight; **parvula proelia**, skirmishes; *m. pl. as noun*, children. II, 30.

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little, small, insignificant; *comp.*, minor, minus, lesser, smaller; shorter; **minus**, *as noun*, less; *sup.*, **minimus**, -a, -um, least, very small. I, 8.

passim, *adv.*, in all directions. IV, 14.

passus, -ūs, *m.* [pandō, extend], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10½ inches (five Roman feet); **mille passus** or **passuum**, a Roman mile, 4851 feet. Thirteen Roman miles = about twelve of ours. I, 2.

passus, *see pandō and patior.*

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [pateō, be open + faciō, make], make or throw open, open. II, 32.

patefiō, -fierī, -factus sum, *pass. of patefaciō.*

patēns, -entis, *adj.* [pateō, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. I, 10.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. I, 2.

pater, -tris, *m.*, father; *pl.*, forefathers, ancestors; **pater familiae**, father or head of a family. I, 3.

patienter, *adv.* [patiēns; patior, endure], patiently.

patientia, -ae, *f.* [patiēns; patior, endure], endurance, patience.

patior, pati, passus sum, *tr. and intr.*, endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. I, 6.

patrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater, father], fatherly; ancestral. II, 15.

patrōnus, -ī, *m.* [pater, father], protector, patron.

patruus, -ī, *m.* [pater, father], a father's brother, uncle.

pauci, -ae, -a, *adj.*, few; *as noun*, few, a few, persons or things. I, 15.

paucitās, -tātis, *f.* [pauci, few], fewness, small number. III, 2.

paulatim, *adv.* [paulus, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. I, 33; II, 8.

paulisper, *adv.* [paulus, little], for a short time, for a little while. II, 7.

paulō, *adv.* [abl. of paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 54; II, 20.

paululum, *adv.* [acc. of paululus, very little], a very little. II, 8.

paulum, *adv.* [acc. of paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 50; II, 25.

paulus, -a, -um, *adj.*, little; **paulum**, *as noun*, a little; **post paulum**, soon after.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace; favor. I, 3.

peccō, 1, *intr.*, sin, transgress, do wrong. I, 47.

pectus, -oris, *n.*, the breast.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, property, wealth; money.

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, a herd; usually sheep; meat, flesh. III, 29.

pedālis, -e, *adj.* [pēs, foot], of a foot in thickness or diameter. III, 13.

pedes, peditis, *m.* [pēs, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry. I, 42; II, 24.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [pēs, foot], on foot, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōpiae**, infantry. II, 17.

peditātus, -ūs, *m.* [pedes, foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry. IV, 34.

Pedius, -dī, *m.*, Quintus Pedius (kwīn'tūs pē'dī-ūs), one of Caesar's legates. II, 2.

peius, *comp.* of malus.

pellis, -is, *f.*, a hide, a skin (either on or off the body of an animal); tent made of hides. II, 33.

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *tr.*, beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. I, 7.

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsu, *tr.*, weigh, weigh out; weigh out money, pay, pay out; with poenās, suffer. I, 36.

penitus, *adv.*, deeply; far within.

per, *prep.* with acc., through, through-out; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; **per sē**, of their own accord, on their own responsibility, sometimes with intensive force, in itself, themselves; *in composition*, through, very, thoroughly, completely. I, 3.

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, lead], lead through; complete, finish; hold (a council).

perangustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [angustus, narrow], very narrow.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], take completely, obtain; learn of, hear.

percontātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiry, questioning. I, 39.

percurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run along or over. IV, 33.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, *tr.*, strike or thrust through, slay.

perdiscō, -discere, -didici, —, *tr.* [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, learn by heart.

perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], ruin; **perditus**, *pf. part.* as *adj.*, desperate, ruined. III, 17.

perdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. I, 8.

perendinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, after to-morrow.

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed, perish. I, 53; IV, 15.

perequitō, 1, *intr.* [equitō, ride], ride about, ride through or around. IV, 33.

perexiguus, -a, -um, *adj.* [exiguus, little], very little.

perfacilis, -e, *adj.* [facilis, easy], very easy. I, 2.

perfectus, *see* perficiō.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear], bear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. I, 17.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. I, 3.

perfidia, -ae, *f.* [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dishonesty. IV, 13.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [frangō, break], break through, break up. I, 25.

perfuga, -ae, *m.* [perfugiō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. I, 28.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *intr.* [fugiō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. I, 27.

perfugium, -gī, *n.* [perfugiō, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. IV, 38.

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *intr.* [per+regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. III, 18.

periclitor, 1, *tr. and intr.* [periculum, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger or peril. II, 8.

periculōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [periculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. I, 33.

periculum, -ī, *n.*, trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. I, 5.

peritus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. I, 21.

perlātus, *see* perferō.

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, read], read through, read.

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtum, *tr.* [luō, wash], wash completely, bathe; *pass.*, bathe oneself.

permagnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [magnus, large], very large, very great.

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. I, 32; III, 8.

permisceō, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mixtum, *tr.* [misceō, mix], mix thoroughly, mingle.

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; intrust, commit; permit, allow. I, 30; II, 3.

permixtus, *see* permisceō.

permovēō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. I, 3.

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *tr.*, soothe completely, appease. IV, 6.

perniciēs, -ēi, *f.*, ruin, destruction. I, 20.

perpauci, -ae, -a, *adj.* [pauci, few], very few, but very few. I, 6.

perpendicularum, -ī, *n.*, plummet, plumb-line. IV, 17.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus sum, *tr.* [patior, suffer], suffer, bear patiently.

perpetuō, *adv.* [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. I, 31.

perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; in perpetuum, forever. I, 35; III, 2.

perquirō, -quīrere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, ask], ask about, make careful inquiry.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.* [rumpō, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. I, 8.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write out, report, describe.

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. I, 13.

persēvērō, 1, *intr.*, persist, persevere. I, 13.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, *tr.* [solvō, pay], pay in full; suffer (*punishment*). I, 12.

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [-spiciō, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. I, 40; II, 11.

perstō, -stāre, -stitī, —, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand firm, persist.

persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *tr. and intr.* [suādēō, advise], advise *prevailingly*; convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate; *sibi persuādēri*, be convinced. I, 2.

perterreō, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify. I, 18.

pertinācia, -ae, *f.* [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. I, 42.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, —, *intr.* [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; *eōdem pertinēre*, tend to the same purpose or result. I, 1.

pertulī, *see* **perferō**.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [perturbō, disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion. IV, 29.

perturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass; alarm, terrify. I, 39; II, 11.

pervagor, 1, *intr.* [vagor, wander], wander about, scatter.

perveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; of *property*, fall, revert. I, 7.

pēs, **pedis**, *m.*, the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; **pedibus**, on foot; **pedem referre**, retreat. I, 8.

petō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.*, seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's

course to or toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. I, 19.

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, *m.* (Ccd), the Petrocorii (pēt'rō-kō'rī-i).

Petrōnius, -nī, *m.*, Marcus Petronius [mār'kūs pē-trō'nī-ūs), a centurion of the eighth legion.

Petrosidius, -dī, *m.*, Lucius Petrosidius (lū'shyūs pēt'rō-sīd'i-ūs), a standard bearer.

phalanx, -ngis, *f.*, a compact body of troops, phalanx. I, 24.

Pictōnēs, -um, *m.* (Ccd), the Pictones (pīk'tō-nēz). III, 11.

pietās, -tātis, *f.* [pius, dutiful], devotion, loyalty.

pīlum, -ī, *n.*, heavy javelin, pike. I, 25.

pīlus, -ī, *m.*, century of soldiers; **primus pīlus**, first century of a legion; **primī pīli centuriō**, or **primipīlus**, the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. III, 5.

pinna, -ae, *f.*, feather; battlement, parapet.

Pirūstae, -ārum, *m.*, Pirustae (pī-rūs'tē), a tribe of Illyricum.

piscis, -is, *m.*, fish. IV, 10.

Pisō, -ōnis, *m.*: (1) Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mār'kūs pū'pī-ūs pī'sō kāl-pēr'nī-ā'nūs), consul with Messala, 61 B.C. I, 2. (2) Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō), killed in the defeat of Cassius's army by the Tigurini, 107 B.C. I, 12. (3) Lucius Calpurnius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law; consul 58 B.C. I, 6. (4) Piso, an Aquitanian. IV, 12.

pix, **picis**, *f.*, pitch.

placeō, 2, *intr.*, please, satisfy; often *impers.*, it seems good to one, hence, he decides, resolves, determines. I, 34; III, 3.

placidē, *adv.*, calmly.

plācō, 1, *tr.*, appease.

Plancus, *see* **Munātius**.

plānē, *adv.* [plānus, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. III, 26.

plānitiēs, -ēi, *f.* [plānus, level], level ground, plain. I, 43; II, 8.

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, flat, plain. III, 13.

plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, -eī, *f.*, populace, common people. I, 3.

plēnē, *adv.* [plēnus, full], fully. III, 3.

plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [plēō, fill], full, whole, complete. III, 2.

plērīque, -aeque, -aque, *adj.*, very many, the most of; *as noun*, a great many, very many. II, 4.

plērumque, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. I, 40; II, 30.

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Pleumoxii (plū-mōk'sī-ī).

plumbum, -ī, *n.*, lead; plumbum album, tin.

plūrimum, *see* multum.

plūrimus, *see* multus.

plūs, *see* multus and multum.

pluteus, -ī, *m.*, wooden breastwork; pluteus; *see* Int. 62, a.

pōculum, -ī, *n.*, cup.

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty. I, 4.

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb. III, 13.

polliceor, 2, *tr. and intr.*, hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. I, 14.

pollicitatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [polliceor, promise], promise, offer. III, 18.

pollicitus, *see* polliceor.

Pompeius, -ī, *m.*: (1) Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ūs pōm-pē'yūs), better, Pompey, *triumvir* with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C. IV, 1. (2) Gnaeus Pompeius, an interpreter of Quintus Titurius.

pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight. II, 29.

pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, *tr.*, place, put; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; *with castra*, pitch; *pass.*, be situated; *with in and abl.*, depend on, *in addition to above meanings*. I, 16.

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge. I, 6.

poposci, *see* poscō.

populatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [populor, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. I, 15.

populor, 1, *tr.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. I, 11.

populus, -ī, *m.*, the people, the mass, the crowd, *as opposed to individuals*; a people or nation. I, 3.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [regō, keep straight], extend; porrēctus, *pf. part. as adj.*, extended, in extent. II, 19.

porrō, *adv.*, farther on; furthermore, then.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate. II, 6.

portō, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, bring, take. I, 5.

portōrium, -rī, *n.*, toll, import and export duty. I, 18.

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, haven, port. III, 8.

poscō, poscere, poposci, —, *tr.*, ask, demand, request, require. I, 27.

positus, *see* pōnō.

possessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [possideō, possess], possession, occupation; a possession, property. I, 11.

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], occupy, hold, possess; take possession of, seize. I, 34; II, 4.

possum, posse, potui, — (App. 80), *intr.* [potis, able+sum, be], be able, can; to have power or influence, have strength, be strong; *with quam and sup.*, as . . . as possible, *e.g.*, quam plūrimās possunt, as many as possible; multum posse, plūs posse, and plūrimum posse, *see* multum. I, 2.

post, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*: (1) *as adv.*, later, afterwards; (2) *as prep.*, behind, after; post tergum or post sē, in the rear. I, 5.

postea, *adv.* [post, after], after this, afterwards. I, 21.

posteaquam or postea . . . quam, *conj.* [postea, afterwards+quam, than], after, when. I, 31; IV, 19.

posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [post, after], after, following, next; *m. pl. as noun*, posterity; *sup.*, postrēmus or postumus, last. I, 15.

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [post, after+pōnō, place], place after, postpone; disregard.

postquam, *conj.* [post, afterwards+quam, than], after, when. I, 24.

postrēmō, *adv.* [postrēmus, last], finally, at last.

postridiē, *adv.* [posterus, following+diēs, day], on the day following, the next day; **postridiē eius diēi**, on the next or following day. I, 23.

postulātum, -i, *n.* [postulō, demand], demand, claim, request. I, 40; IV, 11.

postulō, 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. I, 31; II, 4.

potēns, -entis, *adj.* [pres. part. of possum, be able], powerful, influential. I, 3.

potentātus, -ūs, *m.* [potēns, powerful], chief power, supremacy. I, 31.

potentia, -ae, *f.* [potēns, powerful], power, authority, influence. I, 18.

potestās, -tātis, *f.* [potēns, powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; **potestātem facere**, grant permission, give a chance. I, 16.

potior, 4, *intr.* [potis, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. I, 2.

potius, *adv.*, rather. I, 45; II, 10.

potītus, *see* **potior**.

prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; on account of; in comparison with; *in composition*, before, at the head of, in front; very. II, 30.

praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [acūtus, sharpened], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. II, 29.

praebeō, 2, *tr.* [prae+habeō, hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present. II, 17.

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *intr.* [caveō, guard against], guard against beforehand, take precautions. I, 38.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.* [cēdō, go], go before; surpass, excel. I, 1.

praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [caput, head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous. II, 24.

praeceptum, -i, *n.* [praecipio, instruct], instruction, injunction, command.

praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], take or obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. I, 22.

praecipitō, 1, *tr.* [praeceps, headlong], throw or hurl headlong, precipitate. IV, 15.

praecipuē, *adv.* [praecipuus, especial], especially, particularly. I, 40.

praecipuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, especial.

praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [prae+claudō, shut], close or shut in front, block up, close.

praecō, -ōnis, *m.*, herald.

Praecōninus, *see* **Valerius**.

praecurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run before, hasten on before, precede; outstrip, surpass.

praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder, spoil. IV, 34.

praedicō, 1, *tr.* [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. I, 39; IV, 34.

praedor, 1, *tr.* [praeda, booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. II, 17.

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead before, construct before or in front.

praefectus, -ī, *m.* [praeficiō, place over], prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). I, 39; III, 7.

praefērō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above; prefer to, *with quam*; **praeferre sē alicui**, surpass. II, 27.

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. I, 10.

praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix], fix or set in front.

praefuī, *see* **praesum**.

praemetuō, -metuere, -metuī, —, *intr.* [metuō, fear], fear beforehand, be apprehensive.

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send before or in advance. I, 15.

praemium, -mī, n., distinction, prize, reward. I, 43; III, 18.

praeeoccupō, 1, tr. [occupō, seize], seize upon beforehand, preoccupy.

praeeoptō, 1, tr. [optō, wish], wish before; prefer. I, 25.

praeparō, 1, tr. [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. III, 14.

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place before or over, put in command of, put in charge of. I, 54.

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; **praeruptus, pf. part. as adj.,** steep, precipitous. III, 14.

praesaepiō, -saepīre, -saepī, -saepitum, tr. [saepēs, a hedge], hedge or block up.

praescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. I, 36; II, 20.

praescriptum, -ī, n. [praescribō, order], order, dictation, command. I, 36.

praesēns, -entis, pres. part. of praesum.

praesentia, -ae, f. [praesēns; praesum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praesentiā, for the present; then. I, 15.

praesentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, tr. [sentiō, feel], feel beforehand, foresee.

praesertim, adv., particularly, especially. I, 16.

praesidium, -dī, n. [praesideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. I, 8.

praestō, adv., at hand, ready; *with sum and the dative*, meet.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, tr. and intr. [stō, stand], stand or place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; *impers., praestat*, it is better or more advisable. I, 2.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be before or over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; **praesēns, pres. part. as adj.,** present, in person; for the present. I, 16.

praeter, prep. with acc., beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, besides; except. I, 11.

praetereā, adv. [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. I, 34; III, 17.

praetereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr. and intr. [eō, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by, omit; **praeteritus, pf. part. as adj.,** past; *n. pl. as noun*, the past. I, 20.

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. IV, 13.

praeterquam, adv., besides, except. I, 5.

praetor, -ōris, m., praetor, a Roman magistrate next in rank below the consul. I, 21.

praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. I, 40.

praeūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, tr. [ūrō, burn], burn in front or at the end.

praevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], forestall, anticipate.

prāvus, -a, -um, adj., perverse, wrong.

precēs, precum, f., prayers, entreaties; curses, imprecations. I, 16.

premo, premere, pressī, pressum, tr., press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. I, 52; II, 24.

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum, tr., seize, grasp. I, 20.

pretium, -tī, n., price. I, 18.

prīdiē, adv. [diēs, day], on the day before. I, 23.

prīmipīlus, -ī, m. [prīmus, first + pīlus, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. II, 25.

prīmō, adv. [prīmus, first], at first, in the first place. I, 31; II, 8.

primum, *adv.* [**primus**, first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; **cum primum**, or **ubi primum**, as soon as; **quam primum**, as soon as possible, very soon. I, 25.

primus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; *pl. as noun*, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; in **primis**, especially. I, 10.

princeps, -ipis, *adj.* [**primus**, first + **capiō**, take], *taking the first place*; chief, most prominent, first; *m. as noun*, chief or principal person, leader, chief. I, 7.

principatus, -ūs, *m.* [**princeps**, chief], chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. I, 3.

prior, **prius**, *adj.*, *comp.* (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; *m. pl. as noun*, those in front. II, 11.

pristinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, former, original; previous, preceding. I, 13.

prius, *adv.* [**prior**, former], before, sooner; previously; **prius quam**, *see priusquam*.

priusquam or **prius . . . quam**, *conj.*, sooner than, before; *after negatives*, often, until. I, 19.

privatim, *adv.* [**privatus**, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. I, 17.

privatus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, personal, individual; *m. as noun*, person, individual. I, 5.

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; *in compounds (written prō, pro, and prōd)*, for, before, forward, forth. I, 2.

probō, 1, *tr.* [**probus**, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. I, 3.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō**, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. I, 38; II, 20.

Procillus, *see Valerius*.

prōclinō, 1, *tr.* [**clinō**, incline], bend forward, incline; **prōclinātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, tottering, critical.

prōcōsul, -is, *m.*, a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. III, 20.

procul, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. II, 30.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, —, *intr.* [-**cumbō**, lie down], lean forward, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. II, 27.

prōcūrō, 1, *tr.* [**cūrō**, care], care for, attend to.

prōcurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [**currō**, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. I, 52.

prōdeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**prō** + **eō**, go. App. 84], go or come forth, go forward, advance. I, 48.

prōdesse, *see prōsum*.

prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**prōdō**, betray], betrayal, treason.

prōdītōr, -ōris, *m.* [**prōdō**, betray], betrayer, traitor.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [**dō**, give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down; **memoriā prōditum**, told in tradition, handed down. I, 13.

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [**dūcō**, lead], lead out or forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce. I, 48; III, 17.

proelior, 1, *intr.* [**proelium**, battle], join or engage in battle, fight. II, 23.

proelium, -li, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement; **proelium committere**, join or begin battle. I, 1.

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**proficiscor**, set out], a setting out, start, departure. I, 3.

profectus, *see proficiō*.

profectus, *see proficiscor*.

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [**ferō**, bring. App. 81], bring forth or out, produce.

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [**faciō**, make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. III, 21.

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum,
intr., set out, start, depart; go,
proceed. I, 3.

profiteor, -fītēri, -fessus sum, tr.
[fateor, confess], admit, acknowl-
edge, declare, offer.

prōfligō, 1, tr. [fligō, strike], strike
down; overcome; put to flight. II,
23.

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, intr.
[fluō, flow], flow forth, rise. IV,
10.

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, intr.
[fugiō, flee], flee, flee from, run
away, escape. I, 31; II, 14.

prōfui, see prōsum.

prōgnātus, -a, -um, adj. [(g)nāscor,
be born], born; descended, sprung.
II, 29.

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, intr.
[gradior, step], step or go forward,
advance, proceed, go. I, 50; II,
10.

prohibeō, 2, tr. [habeō, have, hold],
keep from, keep, restrain, prevent,
prohibit; keep out or away from;
protect, guard. I, 1.

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō,
throw. App. 7], throw forward or
away; throw, cast; reject, give up;
sē prōicere, cast oneself; jump.
I, 27.

proinde, adv., hence, accordingly,
therefore.

prōlātus, see prōferō.

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, —, intr.,
project, lean out.

prōmiscuē, adv., promiscuously, in
common.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,
tr. [mittō, send], send forward; let
grow.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,
tr. [moveō, move], move forward,
advance, push forward. I, 48; II,
31.

prōmptus, -a, -um, adj., ready, active.
III, 19.

prōmunturium, -rī, n. [prōmineō, pro-
ject], promontory, headland. III,
12.

prōnē, adv., sloping or slanting down-
ward. IV, 17.

prōnūntiō, 1, tr. [nūntiō, announce],
announce, give out publicly, tell,
relate, report, say; give orders; with
sententiam, pronounce. IV, 5.

prope, adv., and prep. with acc.: (1) as
prep., near, close to; (2) as *adv.*,
almost, nearly; recently. I, 22.

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr.
[pellō, drive], drive forward, put to
flight, rout; dislodge, drive back.
I, 15.

properō, 1, intr., hasten, hurry. II,
11.

propinquitās, -tātis, f. [propinquus,
neighboring, near], nearness, vicini-
ty; relationship. II, 4.

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near],
near, neighboring, close at hand;
m. pl. as noun, relatives. I, 16.

propius, adv., and prep. with acc. (App.
122, b) [*comp. of prope, near*], near-
er. I, 42; IV, 9.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,
tr. [pōnō, place], place or put for-
ward, present, offer; relate, tell of,
explain; propose, purpose; expose.
I, 17.

proprius, -a, -um, adj., one's own,
characteristic, indicative.

propter, prep. with acc., on account of,
because of, in consequence of. I, 9.

propterea, adv. [propter, because of],
on this account; **propterea quod**, be-
cause. I, 1.

prōpugnātor, -ōris, m. [prōpugnō,
fight for], defender.

prōpugnō, 1, intr., fight for, defend;
rush out to fight, attack. II, 7.

prōpulī, see prōpellō.

prōpulsō, 1, tr. [freq. of prōpellō, drive
forward], drive back, repel; ward
off. I, 49.

prōra, -ae, f., prow. III, 13.

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, tr. [ruō,
fall], overthrow. III, 26.

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, tr.
[sequor, follow], follow, accompany;
pursue; with **orātiōne**, address. II,
5.

prŏspectus, -ūs, *m.* [**prŏspiciō**, look forth], view, prospect; sight. II, 22.

prŏspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *intr.* [-spiciō, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. I, 23.

prŏsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [sternō, stretch out], prostrate, destroy.

prŏsum, prŏdesse, prŏfuī, prŏfutūrus, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 79], be useful, benefit.

prŏtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegō, cover], cover, protect.

prŏtefrēō, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], terrify, frighten off.

prŏtinus, *adv.*, continuously; forthwith, immediately. II, 9.

prŏturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. II, 19.

prŏvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry forward; *pass.*, be carried forward, sail. IV, 28.

prŏveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come forth, grow; be produced, yield (*of grain*).

prŏventus, -ūs, *m.* [prŏveniō, come forth], a coming forth, result.

prŏvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsum, *tr.* [videō, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. II, 2.

prŏvincia, -ae, *f.*, office of governor of a province; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France. I, 1.

prŏvinciālis, -e, *adj.* [prŏvincia, province], of a province; of the Province.

prŏvisus, *see* prŏvideō.

prŏvolō, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. II, 19.

proximē, *adv.* [proximus, last], last; lately. I, 24.

proximus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; *with acc.* (App. 122, b), next to. I, 1.

prŏudentia, -ae, *f.* [prŏdēns, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. II, 4.

Ptianii, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Ptianii (tī-ā-nī-i). III, 27.

pūbēs, -eris, *adj.*, grown up, adult; *m. pl.* as noun, grown men, adults.

pūblicē, *adv.* [pūblicus, public], publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. I, 16.

pūblicō, 1, *tr.* [pūblicus, public], adjudge to public use; confiscate.

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the state or people, common, public; *neut.* as noun, public, public view; **rēs pūblica**, common weal; state. I, 12.

pudet, -ēre, -uit or -itum est, *tr.*, *impers.*, it shames; *translated as personal*, be ashamed, feel shame.

pudor, -ōris, *m.* [pudet, it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. I, 39.

puer, -erī, *m.*, boy, child, son; *pl.*, children (*of both sexes*); **ā pueris**, from childhood. I, 29.

puerilis, -e, *adj.* [puer, child], childish.

pugna, -ae, *f.* [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest. I, 25.

pugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight, give battle, contend; strive; *often impers.*, as **pugnātur**, it is fought, *i. e.*, they fight. I, 25.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful; noble, glorious.

Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*, Titus Pullo (tītūs pŭl'ō), a centurion of Cicero's legion.

pulsus, *see* pellō.

pulsus, -ūs, *m.* [pellō, strike], stroke. III, 13.

pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust. IV, 32.

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern of a ship. III, 13.

pŭrgō, 1, *tr.* [pŭrus, clean+agō, do, make], clean, clear; excuse, exonerate; **pŭrgātus**, *pf. part.* as *adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. I, 28.

putō, 1, *tr.*, think, consider, believe. I, 7.

Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenean; **Pŷrēnaei montēs** (Ecde), the Pyrenaei (pīr'ē-nē'i), better, Pyrenees Mountains. I, 1.

Q.

Q., *abbr. for Quintus, Quintus* (kwīn'tūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 45; II, 2.

quā, *adv.* [= quā viā], by which way or road; where. I, 6.

quadrāgēni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, [quadrāgintā, forty], forty each. IV, 17.

quadrāgintā (XL), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, forty. I, 2.

quadrīngenti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. I, 5.

quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, *tr. and intr.*, seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. I, 18.

quaestiō, -ōnis, *f.* [quaerō, inquire], inquiry; examination, investigation.

quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), a treasury officer in charge of the finances of the army. I, 52; IV, 13.

quaestus, -ūs, *m.* [quaerō, seek], gain, acquisition.

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind, or nature? I, 21.

quam, (1) *adv.*: (a) *interrog.*, how? (b) *rel.*, as; with *sup.* and with or without *posse*, as . . . as possible; **quam diū**, as long as; (2) *conj. with comparatives*, than; **prius** . . . **quam**, before; **postea** . . . **quam**, after. I, 3.

quamquam, *conj.*, although. IV, 3.

quamvis, *adv.* [quam, as+vis, you wish], however; although. IV, 2.

quandō, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any time. III, 12.

quantopere, *adv.* [quantus, how much +opus, work]: (1) *interrog.*, how greatly? how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as. II, 5.

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*: (1) *interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? **quantum**, *as adv.*, how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as, as; **quantum**, *as adv.*, as much as, as; **quantō** . . . **tantō** (*with comparatives*), the . . . the. I, 17.

quantusvis, -avis, -umvis, *adj.* [quantus, as great as+vis, you wish], as great as you wish, however great.

quārē, *adv.* [quī+rēs, thing]: (1) *interrog.*, why? wherefore? (2) *rel.*, wherefore; on this account, therefore. I, 13.

quārtus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [quattuor, four], fourth. I, 12.

quasi, *conj.* [qua(m), as+si, if], as if, just as if.

quattuor (IV), *card. num. adj.*, four. I, 12.

quattuordecim (XIV), *card. num. adj.*, fourteen. I, 29.

-que, *enclitic conj.* (always translated before the word to which it is attached), and; **-que** . . . **-que**, or **-que** . . . **et**, both . . . and. I, 1.

queror, **queri**, **questus sum**, *tr. and intr.*, complain, bewail, lament. I, 16.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.* (and see **quis**), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; at beginning of sentence, often with force of *dem.*, this, that; **quam ob rem**, wherefore; **quem ad modum**, in what manner, how, as; **quō**, with *comparatives*, the; **quō** . . . **eō**, the . . . the. I, 1.

quicquam, see **quisquam**.

quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *indef.* (or generalizing) *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever; whosoever, whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who, everything that. I, 31; III, 4.

quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? with *posse*, how? (App. 128, b). I, 36; II, 4.

quidam, **quaedam**, **quiddam**, and **quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62 and b), a certain one, someone; a certain, some, a; a kind of. I, 30; II, 17.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at any rate, at least, truly; on the other hand; **nē** . . . **quidem**, not even. I, 16.

quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, quiet, rest, repose.

quiētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, in repose, undisturbed, peaceful, calm, quiet.

quīn, *conj.* [quī, who or how+ne, negative], that not, but that; after negative words of doubt or hindrance, but that, that, from, to; **quīn etiam**, nay even, moreover. I, 3.

quīnam, *see* **quīsnam**.

quīncūnx, -uncis, *m.*, quincunx, an arrangement like the five spots on dice.

quīndecim (XV), *card. num. adj.* [quīnque, five+decem, ten], fifteen. I, 15.

quīngentī, -ae, -a (D), *card. num. adj.* [quīnque, five+centum, hundred], five hundred. I, 15.

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [quīnque, five], five each, five at a time, five. I, 15.

quīnquāgintā (L), *card. num. adj.*, fifty. I, 41; II, 4.

quīnque (V), *card. num. adj.*, five. I, 10.

quīntus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [quīnque, five], fifth. I, 6.

quis, **quid**, and **quī**, **quae**, **quod** (App. 61 and 62): (1) *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? **quam ob rem**, why? **quem ad modum**, how? (2) *indef. pron.*, especially after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**, anyone, anything, any; somebody, something, some. I, 7.

quīsnam, **quīdnam**, and **quīnam**, **quāenam**, **quodnam**, *interrog. pron.* (App. 61 and 61, a), who? which? what? who then? what, pray? II, 30.
quīspīam, **quīdpīam**, and **quīspīam**, **quāepīam**, **quodpīam**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), anyone, any.

quīsquā, **quīcquā**, *indef. pron. used after all negatives but nē* (App. 62), any; any person or thing. I, 19.

quīsque, **quīdque**, and **quīsque**, **quāeque**, **quodque**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each; everyone, all. I, 5.

quīsquis, **quīcquid**, *indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron.* (App. 60, a), whoever, whatever. II, 17.

quīvis, **quāevis**, **quīdvīs**, and **quīvīs**, **quāevis**, **quodvīs**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62) [quī, who+vis, you wish], whom or what you wish; anyone, anything, any whatever, any. II, 31.

quō, *adv.*: (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. I, 48; II, 8.

quō, *conj.* [abl. case form of quī, who, which], in order that, that; because. I, 8.

quoad, *conj.* [quō, whither+ad, to], as long as, as far as; till, until. IV, 11.

quod, *conj.* [adv. acc. of the neuter of quī, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, in so much as; because; **quod sī**, but if. I, 1.

quōminus, *conj.* [quō, so that+minus, not], so that not, that not; from; to (*with recūsō*). I, 31; IV, 22.

quoniam, *conj.* [quom = cum, since+iam, now], since now, since, in as much as, because, whereas. I, 35.

quoque, *conj.*, following the word emphasized, also, too, likewise. I, 1.

quōqueversus, *adv.*, in every direction, all around. III, 23.

quot, *adj.*, *indecl.*: (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as, the number that. I, 29.

quotannis, *adv.* [quot, as many as+annus, year], every year, yearly. I, 36; IV, 1.

quotiēns, *adv.* [quot, how many]: (1) *interrog.*, how many times? how often? (2) *rel.*, as often as. I, 43.

R.

rādix, -īcis, *f.*, root; *pl. with montis* or *collis*, foot, base. I, 38.

rādō, **rādere**, **rāsī**, **rāsum**, *tr.*, scrape, shave.

raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon with four wheels. I, 26.

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough. II, 17.

rapiditās, -tātis, *f.* [rapidus, swift], swiftness. IV, 17.

rapina, -ae, *f.* [rapīō, seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. I, 15.

rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, far apart; in small detachments, a few at a time; few. III, 12.

rāsus, *see* **rādō**.

ratio, -ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms. I, 28.

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft. I, 8.

Rauraci, -ōrum, *m.* (Cg), the Rauraci (raw'rá-sī). I, 5.

re- and **red-**, inseparable prefixes, again, back, un-, re-.

rebelliō, -ōnis, *f.* [bellum, war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. III, 10.

Rebilus, -i, *m.*, see **Caninius**.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go back, retire.

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. I, 14.

recēnsēō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsium, *tr.*, inspect, review.

receptāculum, -i, *n.* [recipiō, receive], retreat, refuge.

receptus, see **recipiō**.

receptus, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō, receive], retreat; refuge, shelter. IV, 33.

recessus, -ūs, *m.* [recēdō, go back], going back, retreat; chance to retreat.

recidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall back; fall upon; be reduced.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive; receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow; with **sē**, withdraw oneself, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover oneself. I, 5.

recitō, 1, *tr.*, read aloud.

reclinō, 1, *tr.* [clinō, incline], lean back, recline, lean.

rēctē, *adv.* [rēctus, straight], properly, rightly.

rēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [regō, keep straight], straight.

recuperō, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain. III, 8.

recūsō, 1, *tr.* and *intr.*, refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with **periculum**, shrink from. I, 31; III, 22.

red-, see **re-**.

redactus, see **redigō**.

reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. I, 35; II, 5.

redēptus, see **redimō**.

redeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go or turn back, return; come; fall to, descend; be referred. I, 29.

redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. I, 45; II, 14.

redimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēptum, *tr.* [emō, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. I, 18.

redintegrō, 1, *tr.* [integer, whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. I, 25.

reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [redeō, return], return. I, 5.

reditus, -ūs, *m.* [redeō, return], returning, return. IV, 30.

Redonēs, -um, *m.* (BCc), the Redones (rēd'ō-nēz). II, 34.

redūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. I, 28.

refectus, see **reficiō**.

referō, **referre**, **rettuli**, **relātum**, *tr.* [ferō, bear. App. 81], bear, carry or bring back, report; **pedem referre**, go back, retreat; **grātiā referre**, show one's gratitude, make a requital. I, 25.

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; with **sē**, refresh oneself, rest. III, 5.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -frāctum, *tr.* [frangō, break], break in or open; break, diminish. II, 33.

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, —, *intr.* [fugiō], flee back, retreat; escape.

Rēginus, -i, *m.*, see **Antistius**.

regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [regō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; ē **regiōne** with *gen.*, opposite. I, 44; II, 4.

rēgius, -a, -um, *adj.* [rēx, king], of a king, royal.
rēgnō, 1, *intr.* [rēgnum, royal power], reign, rule.
rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [rēx, king], kingly or royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. I, 2.
regō, regere, rēxi, rēctum, *tr.*, keep straight; guide, direct, control. III, 13.
reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or drive back, repel; throw down or off; drive off or out. I, 24.
relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, —, *intr.*, become weak or enfeebled. II, 15.
relātus, *see* referō.
relēgō, 1, *tr.* [lēgō, depute], send away; remove.
relictus, -a, -um, *see* relinquo.
religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, religion; *pl.*, religious observances, rites; superstitions.
relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum, *tr.*, leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. I, 9.
reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [relinquō, leave]; remaining, the rest of; future, subsequent; *neut. as noun*, remainder, rest. I, 1.
remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.* [maneō, remain], stay behind, remain. I, 39; IV, 1.
rēmex, -igis, *m.* [rēmus, oar], oarsman, rower. III, 9.
rēmigō, 1, *intr.* [rēmex, rower], row.
remigrō, 1, *intr.* [migrō, move], move back, return. IV, 4.
reminiscor, -ī, *intr.* [mēns, mind], call to mind, remember. I, 13.
remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send or dispatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; *remissus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, mild. I, 43; II, 15.
remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, *intr.*, become weak, become enervated. IV, 2.
removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move back or

away, remove, withdraw; *remōtus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, remote, far away. I, 19.
remūneror, 1, *tr.*, repay, reward. I, 44.
rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar. III, 13.
Rēmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the Remi, or to one of them; *m. pl. as noun*, Rēmī (Bef), the Remi (rēmī). II, 3.
rēnō, -ōnis, *m.*, deerskin.
renovō, 1, *tr.* [novus, new], renew. III, 2.
renūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, announce], bring back word, bring news, report; declare elected. I, 10.
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, *tr.* [pellō, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. I, 8.
repente, *adv.* [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. I, 52; II, 33.
repentinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. I, 13.
reperiō, reperire, repperī, repertum, *tr.* [pariō, procure], procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain; devise. I, 18.
repetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum, *tr.* [petō, seek], seek or ask again, demand back; *with poenās*, exact, inflict. I, 30.
repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.* [pleō, fill], fill again, replenish, supply.
reportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry] carry or bring back, convey. IV, 29.
reposcō, -poscere, —, —, *tr.* [poscō, demand], demand back, exact, ask for.
reppulī, *see* repellō.
repraesentō, 1, *tr.* [praesēns, present], make present; do at once. I, 40.
reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, *tr.* [prehendō (= prēndō), seize], hold back; criticize, blame, censure. I, 20.
reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [primō, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. III, 14.

repudiŏ, 1, *tr.*, reject. I, 40.
 repugnŏ, 1, *intr.* [pugnŏ, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. I, 19.
 repulsus, *see* repellŏ.
 requirŏ, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerŏ, seek], seek again; require, demand; miss, desire, long for.
 rēs, rei, *f.*, of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context, thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; rēs familiāris, property; rēs frumentāria, supplies; rēs militāris, warfare; novae rēs, revolution; rēs pūblica, state; rēs āctae, deeds, achievements; quam ob rem, *see* quī and quis. I, 2.
 rescindŏ, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.* [scindŏ, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. I, 7.
 resciscŏ, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, *tr.*, find out, learn. I, 28.
 rescribŏ, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribŏ, write], write again; enroll, transfer. I, 42.
 reservŏ, 1, *tr.* [servŏ, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. I, 53; III, 3.
 resideŏ, -sidere, -sēdī, —, *intr.* [sedeŏ, sit], sit back; remain.
 residŏ, -sidere, -sēdī, —, *intr.* [sidŏ, sit down], settle, become calm.
 resistŏ, -sistere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [sistŏ, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. I, 25.
 respiciŏ, -spicere, -spexī, -spectrum, *tr.* [-spiciŏ, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, regard. II, 24.
 respondeŏ, -spondere, -spondī, -spōnsum, *tr.* and *intr.*, reply, answer. I, 7.
 respōnsum, -ī, *n.* [respondeŏ, answer], reply, answer. I, 14.
 respuŏ, -spuere, -spuī, —, *tr.*, reject, spurn. I, 42.
 restinguŏ, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctum, *tr.*, extinguish.

restiti, *see* resistŏ.
 restituŏ, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, *tr.* [statuŏ, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. I, 18.
 retineŏ, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [teneŏ, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. I, 18.
 retrahŏ, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahŏ, drag], drag back; bring back.
 rettuli, *see* referŏ.
 revellŏ, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, *tr.* [re-+vellŏ, pluck], pull or tear up, pull out. I, 52.
 revertŏ, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *intr.*, used in the perfect tenses, and revertor, -vertī, -versus sum, *intr.*, used in the tenses formed on the present stem [vertŏ, turn], turn back, come back, return. I, 7.
 revinciŏ, -vincire, -vīnxī, -vinctum, *tr.* [vinciŏ, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. III, 13.
 revocŏ, 1, *tr.* [vocŏ, call], call back, recall; withdraw. II, 20.
 rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king. I, 31; II, 4.
 Rhēnus, -ī, *m.* (ABCfgh), the river Rhine. I, 1.
 Rhodanus, -ī, *m.* (CDfg), the river Rhodanus (rōd'ā-nūs), better, the Rhone. I, 1.
 ripa, -ae, *f.*, bank (of a stream). I, 6.
 rīvus, -ī, *m.*, small stream, brook.
 rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak. III, 13.
 rogŏ, 1, *tr.*, ask; request, ask for. I, 7.
 Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. I, 31.
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Rōma, Rome], Roman; *m.* as noun, a Roman. I, 3.
 Rōscius, -cī, *m.*, Lucius Roscius (lū'shyūs rōsh'yūs), one of Caesar's legates.
 rōstrum, -ī, *n.*, beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship. III, 13.
 rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. IV, 33.
 rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. II, 17.
 Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, *see* Sulpicius.
 rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, report, rumor. II, 1.

rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. II, 29.
rūrsus, *adv.* [for reversus, from re-
vertō, turn back], again, back, anew;
in turn. I, 25.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m.* (DEde), the Ru-
teni (rōō-tē'nī). I, 45.

Rutilus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Sempronius
Rutilus (mār'kūs sēm-prō'nī-ūs
rōō'tī-lūs), one of Caesar's legates.

S.

Sabinus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Titurius Sa-
binus (kwīn'tūs tī-tūrī-ūs sā-bī-
nūs), one of Caesar's legates. II, 5.

Sabis, -is, *m.* (Af), the river Sabis (sā-
bīs), now the Sambre. II, 16.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m.* [sacer, sacred],
priest.

sacramentum, -ī, *n.* [sacer, sacred],
oath.

sacrificium, -cī, *n.* [sacer, sacred +
faciō, make], sacrifice.

saepē, often, frequently; many times,
again and again; saepe numerō,
often, time and again, frequently;
comp. saepius, oftener, more fre-
quently; time and again; too often.
I, 1.

saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge. II, 17.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow. IV, 25.

sagittārius, -rī, *m.* [sagitta, an arrow],
bowman, archer. II, 7.

sagulum, -ī, *n.*, a military cloak.

saltus, -ūs, *m.*, pass, wooded ravine,
glade.

salūs, salūtis, *f.*, welfare, security,
safety; preservation, deliverance;
place of safety; life (*when in dan-
ger*). I, 27.

Samarobriva, -ae, *f.* (Be), Samaro-
briva (sām'ā-rō-brī'vā).

sanciō, sancire, sānxi, sānctum, *tr.*,
make sacred, sanction; bind; sānc-
tus, *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred, invi-
olable; established. I, 30; III, 9.

sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood.

sānitās, -tātis, *f.* [sānus, sound],
soundness of mind, good sense, dis-
cretion, sanity. I, 42.

sānō, 1, *tr.* [sānus, sound], make
sound; make good, repair.

Santonī, -ōrum, or Santonēs, -um,
m. (Ded), the Santoni (sān'tō-nī), or
Santones (sān'tō-nēz). I, 10.

sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound; sensible,
sane.

sānxi, *see* sancio.

sapiō, -ere, -ivī, —, *intr.*, taste; be
wise, understand.

sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack, luggage; *pl.*,
baggage, packs (*carried by indi-
vidual soldiers*). I, 24.

sarciō, sarcire, sarsi, sartum, *tr.*, make
good, repair, compensate for.

sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, brushwood, small
branches. III, 18.

satis, *adv.*, and *indecl. adj. and noun*:
(1) *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently;
rather; very; well; (2) *as adj.*, suffi-
cient; (3) *as noun*, enough. I, 3.

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.*
[satis, enough + faciō, make], make
or do enough for; give satisfaction,
satisfy; make amends, apologize,
ask pardon. I, 14.

satisfactiō, -ōnis, *f.* [satisfaciō, give
satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse,
apology. I, 41.

saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded.
III, 4.

saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, large stone. II,
29.

scālae, -ārum, *f.* [scandō, climb],
stairs; scaling ladder.

Scaldis, -is, *m.* (Aef), the river Scaldis
(skāl'dīs), or Scheldt.

scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat. IV, 26.

scelerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [scelerō, pol-
lute], accursed, infamous; *m. as
noun*, criminal.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness.
I, 14.

scienter, *adv.* [sciō, know], knowingly,
skillfully.

scientia, -ae, *f.* [sciō, know], knowl-
edge, science, skill. I, 47; II, 20.

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, *tr.*,
split; tear down, destroy. III, 5.

sciō, 4, *tr.*, distinguish; know, under-
stand. I, 20.

scorpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, scorpion, a military
engine for shooting arrows.

scribō, *scribere*, scripsi, scriptum, *tr.*, write, record or make mention in writing. II, 29.
scrobis, -is, *m.*, pit.
scūtum, -i, *n.*, shield; see Int. 35, c. I, 25.
sē- and **sēd-**, inseparable prefix, apart, away.
sē, see **suī**.
sēbum, -i, *n.*, tallow.
secō, *secāre*, **secuī**, **sectum**, *tr.*, cut, reap.
sēcŕētō, *adv.*, separately, privately, secretly. I, 18.
sectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [secō, cut], dividing of captured goods; booty. II, 33.
sector, *l. tr.* [freq. of **sequor**, follow], follow eagerly, chase after.
sectūra, -ae, *f.* [secō, cut], cutting; shaft, mine. III, 21.
secundum, *prep. with acc.* [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; in accordance with. I, 33; II, 18.
secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; **secundō flūmine**, down the river. I, 14.
secūris, -is, *f.*, ax; Roman authority, because the ax and fasces of the lictor were symbols of authority.
secūtus, see **sequor**.
sēd-, see **sē-**.
sed, *conj.*, but, but yet. I, 12.
sēdecim (XVI), *card. num. adj.*, sixteen. I, 8.
sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedeō, sit], seat, chair; residence, settlement, home. I, 31; IV, 4.
sēditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [eō, go], insurrection, sedition.
sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sēditiō, sedition], seditious, mutinous. I, 17.
Sedulius, -li, *m.*, Sedulius (sē-dū'ly-ūs), a chief of the Lemovices.
Sedūni, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū'ni). III, 1.
Sedusii, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Sedusii (sē-dū'shyi). I, 51.
seges, -etis, *f.*, growing grain, field of grain.

Segni, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Segni (sēg'ni).
Segontiāci, -ōrum, *m.* (Acd), the Segontiaci (sē-gōn'shī-ā'si).
Segovax, -actis, *m.*, Segovax (sēg'ō-vāks), a king of Kent.
Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (Def), the Segusiavi (sēg'ū-shī-ā'vī). I, 10.
semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; **semel atque iterum**, repeatedly. I, 31.
sēmentis, -is, *f.*, sowing. I, 3.
sēmita, -ae, *f.*, narrow path, byway, footpath.
semper, *adv.*, always, ever, continually. I, 18.
Semprōnius, -nī, *m.*, see **Rutilus**.
senātor, -ōris, *m.* [senex, old], senator. II, 28.
senātus, -ūs, *m.* [senex, old], a body of old men; senate; esp., the administrative council of Rome. I, 3.
senex, **senis**, *adj.*, old; *m. as noun*, old man. I, 29.
sēni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, six each, six. I, 15.
Senonēs, -um, *m.* (Bef), the Senones (sēn'ō-nēz). II, 2.
sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentiō, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. I, 45; II, 10.
sentiō, **sentire**, **sēnsi**, **sēnsus**, *tr.*, perceive, notice, see; experience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. I, 18.
sentis, -is, *m.*, brier. II, 17.
sēparātim, *adv.* [sēparō, separate], separately, privately. I, 19.
sēparō, *l. tr.* [parō, prepare], separate; **sēparātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, separate. IV, 1.
septem (VII), *card. num. adj.*, seven. II, 4.
septentrionēs, -um, *m.* [septem, seven + triōnēs, plow oxen], the seven plow oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the North. I, 1.
septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [septem, seven], seventh. I, 10.

septingentī, -ae, -a (DCC), *card. num. adj.* [septem, seven], seven hundred.
 septuāgintā (LXX), *card. num. adj.* [septem, seven], seventy. IV, 12.
 sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial. I, 26.
 Sequana, -ae, *m.* (BCdef), the river Sequana (sěk'wá-ná), better, Seine. I, 1.
 Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to the Sequani; *pl. as noun*, Sēquani (Cfg), the Sequani (sěk'wá-nā). I, 1.
 sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.*, follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow *in point of time*; with *poena*, be inflicted; *fidem sequi*, seek the protection. I, 4.
 sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation, interview, speech.
 sērō, *adv.*, late, too late.
 serō, serere, sēvi, satum, *tr.*, sow, plant.
 Sertōrius, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Sertorius (kwīn'tūs sēr-tō'rī-ūs), a partisan of Marius; after the death of Marius, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party until murdered in 72 B.C. III, 23.
 servilis, -e, *adj.* [servus, slave], of or like a slave, servile. I, 40.
 serviō, 4, *intr.* [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote oneself to, follow. IV, 5.
 servitūs, -ūtis, *f.* [servus, slave], slavery, servitude. I, 11.
 Servius, -vī, *m.*, Servius (sēr'vī-ūs), a Roman praenomen. III, 1.
 servō, 1, *tr.*, save, preserve; maintain, keep; guard, watch; reserve. II, 33.
 servus, -ī, *m.*, slave, servant. I, 27.
 sescenti, -ae, -a (DC), *card. num. adj.*, [sex, six], six hundred. I, 38; II, 15.
 sēsē, see suī.
 sēsquipedālis, -e, *adj.* [sēsqui-, one and a half + pēs, foot], a foot and a half thick. IV, 17.
 sētius, *adv.*, less, otherwise; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless. I, 49; IV, 17.
 seu, see sive.
 severitās, -tātis, *f.*, sternness, severity.

sēvocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call aside or apart.
 sex (VI), *card. num. adj.*, six. I, 27.
 sexāgintā (LX), *card. num. adj.*, [sex, six], sixty. II, 4.
 Sextius, -tī, *m.*: (1) Publius Sextius Baculus (püb'lī-ūs sěks'tī-ūs bak'ū-lūs), a centurion in Caesar's army. II, 25. (2) Titus Sextius (tītūs sěks'tī-ūs), one of Caesar's legates.
 sī, *conj.*, if, if perchance; to see whether or if; whether; quod sī, but if, now if. I, 7.
 sibi, see suī.
 Sibusātēs, -um, *m.* (Ec), the Sibusates (sīb'ū-sā'tez). III, 27.
 sic, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner; sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as. I, 38; II, 4.
 siccitās, -tātis, *f.*, drought, dryness. IV, 38.
 sicut or sicutī, *adv.* [sic, so + ut (ī), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. I, 44.
 sīdus, -eris, *n.*, star; constellation.
 signifer, -erī, *m.* [signum, standard + ferō, bear], standard-bearer. II, 25.
 significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. II, 33.
 significō, 1, *tr.* [signum, sign + faciō, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. II, 7.
 signum, -ī, *n.*, mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle; standard, ensign; ab signis discēdere, withdraw from the ranks; signa inferre, advance to the attack; signa conversa inferre, face about and advance to the attack; signa ferre, advance on the march; direct the attack; signa convertere, face or wheel about; ad signa convenire, join the army. I, 25.
 Silānus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Silanus (mār'-kūs sī-lā'nūs), one of Caesar's legates.
 silentium, -tī, *n.*, silence, stillness.
 Sīlius, -lī, *m.*, Titus Silius (tīt'ūs sīl'y-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.
 silva, -ae, *f.*, a wood, woods, forest. I, 12.

silvestris, -e, *adj.* [silva, forest], of a wood; wooded; in a wood or forest. II, 18.

similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar. III, 13.

similitūdō, -inis, *f.* [similis, like], likeness, resemblance.

simul, *adv.*, at the same time, at once; **simul . . . simul**, both . . . and, partly . . . partly; **simul atque**, as soon as. I, 19.

simulācrum, -ī, *n.* [simulō, make like], image, statue.

simulatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. I, 40; IV, 13.

simulō, 1, *tr.* [similis, like], make like; pretend. I, 44; IV, 4.

simultās, -tātis, *f.*, jealousy, rivalry.

sīn, *conj.*, if however, but if. I, 13.

sincērē, *adv.* [sincērus, sincere], sincerely, truthfully.

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without. I, 7.

singillatim, *adv.* [singuli, one each], singly, one by one; individually. III, 2.

singulāris, -e, *adj.* [singulī, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. II, 24.

singulī, -ae, -a, *istrib. num. adj.*, one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; in **annōs singulōs**, annually. I, 6.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left; *fem. sing. as noun (sc. manus)*, the left hand; **sub sinistrā**, on the left. I, 25.

sinistrōrsus, *adv.* [sinister, left + **versus**, from **vertō**, turn], to the left. **situs**, -ūs, *m.*, situation, site, position. III, 12.

sive and seu, *conj.* [sī, if + **-ve**, or], or if, if; or; whether; **sive . . . sive**, whether . . . or, to see if . . . or; either . . . or. I, 12.

socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law. I, 12.

societās, -tātis, *f.* [socius, ally], alliance.

socius, -cī, *m.*, companion; confederate, ally. I, 5.

sōl, **sōlis**, *m.*, the sun; **ad occidentem sōlem**, toward the setting sun or

west; **ad orientem sōlem**, toward the rising sun or east. I, 1.

sōlācium, -cī, *n.* [sōlor, console], comfort, solace.

soldurius, -rī, *m.*, vassal. III, 22.

soleō, **solēre**, **solitus sum** (App. 74), *intr.*, be wont, be accustomed.

sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [sōlus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. IV, 18.

sollertia, -ae, *f.* [sollers, skillful], skill, expertness; ingenuity.

sollicitō, 1, *tr.*, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate, urge. II, 1.

sollicitūdō, -inis, *f.*, anxiety, worry, apprehension.

solum, -ī, *n.*, bottom; ground, soil, earth. I, 11.

sōlum, *adv.* [sōlus, alone], only, merely. I, 12.

sōlus, -a, -um, *gen. sōlius* (App. 32), *adj.*, alone, only; the only. I, 18.

solvō, **solvere**, **solvi**, **solūtum**, *tr.*, loosen, untie; *with or without nāvēs*, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. IV, 23.

sonitus, -ūs, *m.*, sound, din.

sonus, -ī, *m.*, sound.

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister. I, 18.

sors, **sortis**, *f.*, lot, chance; casting or drawing of lots; fate. I, 50.

Sotiātēs, -ium, *m.* (DEcd), the Sotiates (sō'shī-ā'tēz). III, 20.

spatium, -tī, *n.*, space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time, hence time, opportunity. I, 7.

speciēs, -ēī, *f.* [-spiciō, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. I, 51; II, 31.

spectō, 1, *tr.* [-spiciō, see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. I, 1.

speculātor, -ōris, *m.* [speculor, spy], spy, scout. II, 11.

speculātōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [speculātor, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. IV, 26.

speculor, 1, *intr.* [-spiciō, see], spy. I, 47.

spērō, 1, *tr.* [spēs, hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. I, 3.

spēs, -eī, f., hope, anticipation, expectation. I, 5.

spīritus, -ūs, m. [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; *pl.*, haughtiness, pride. I, 33; II, 4.

spoliō, 1, tr., strip, despoil.

sponte, abl. (*obsolete nom.*, spōns), *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one's own efforts. I, 9.

stabiliō, 4, tr. [stabilis, firm], make firm, fix.

stabilitās, -tātis, f. [stabilis, firm], firmness, steadiness. IV, 33.

statim, adv. [stō, stand], *as one stands*, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. I, 53; II, 11.

statiō, -ōnis, f. [stō, stand], standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts; *in statiōne esse*, be on guard. II, 18.

statuō, statuere, statui, statūtum, tr. [status, position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. I, 11.

statūra, -ae, f. [status; stō, stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. II, 30.

status, -ūs, m. [stō, stand], standing, condition, status; position.

stimulus, -ī, m., goad, spur.

stipendiārius, -a, -um, adj. [stipendium, tribute], paying tribute, tributary; *m. pl. as noun*, tributaries. I, 30.

stipendium, -di, n., tax, tribute. I, 36.

stipes, -itis, m., log, trunk; stake.

stirps, -pis, m., stem, stock; race.

stō, stāre, steti, stātūrus, intr., stand; abide by.

strāmentum, -ī, n., covering; straw, thatch; pack-saddle.

strepitus, -ūs, m. [strepō, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. II, 11.

studeō, ēre, -ui, —, intr., be eager or zealous; desire, strive after, devote oneself to; pay attention to; accustom oneself to. I, 9.

studiōsē, adv. [studiōsus, eager], eagerly, zealously.

studium, -di, n. [studeō, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. I, 19.

stultitia, -ae, f. [stultus, foolish], foolishness, folly.

sub, prep. with acc. and abl. (1) *With acc.*, (a) *with verbs of motion*, under, beneath; up to; (b) *of time*, just at, about, toward. (2) *With abl.*, (a) *of position*, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot or base of; (b) *of time*, during, within; *in compounds*, **sub** or **subs**, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. I, 7.

subāctus, see subigō.

subdolus, -a, -um, adj. [dolus, deceit], subtle, crafty.

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; *with nāvēs*, haul up, beach. I, 22.

subductiō, -ōnis, f. [subdūcō, beach], beaching.

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, tr. [eō, go. App. 84], come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. I, 5.

subesse, see subsum.

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iacciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. I, 26.

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [agō, lead, drive], subdue, reduce.

subitō, adv. [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. I, 39; II, 19.

subitus, -a, -um, adj., unexpected, sudden. III, 7.

sublātus, see tollō.

sublevō, 1, tr. [levō, lift], lift from beneath, lift or raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. I, 16.

sublica, -ae, f., pile. IV, 17.

subluō, -luere, —, -lūtum, tr., wash, flow around the base.

subministrō, 1, tr. [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. I, 40; III, 25.

submitto, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. II, 6.

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. I, 25.

subruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, *tr.* [ruō, fall], cause to fall from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine. II, 6.

subsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr. and intr.* [sequor, follow], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. II, 11.

subsidium, -dī, *n.* [subsideo, sit near or in reserve], reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. I, 52; II, 6.

subsido, -sīdere, -sēdi, -sessum, *intr.*, sit down, remain.

subsisto, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. I, 15.

subsum, -esse, —, —, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be under or below; be near or close at hand. I, 25.

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or carry off from beneath; take away, withdraw. I, 44.

subvectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [subvehō, convey], conveying; transportation.

subvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], bring or carry up; convey. I, 16.

subveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come or go to help, aid, succor.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [sub+cēdō, go], go or come under; come up to, come up, advance; be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. I, 24.

succendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsum, *tr.*, set on fire below, kindle, burn. II, 6.

succidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [sub+caedō, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. IV, 19.

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, —, *intr.* [-cumbō, lie down], sink under; yield.

succurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [sub+currō, run], run to help, aid, assist.

sudis, -is, *f.*, pile, stake.

Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun*, **Suēbi** (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bi), a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes. I, 37; IV, 1.

Suessiōnēs, -um, *m.* (Be), the Suessiones (swēs'ī-ō'nēs). II, 3.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *intr.* [sub+faciō, make], be sufficient.

suffodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossum, *tr.* [sub+fodiō, dig], dig under; stab underneath. IV, 12.

suffrāgium, -gī, *n.*, vote, ballot.

Sugambri, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-gām'brī). IV, 16.

suggestus, -ūs, *m.*, platform, stage, tribunal.

sui, **sibi**, **sē** or **sēsē**, *reflex. pron. of 3d person* (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; **inter sē**, see **inter and App. 166**. I, 1.

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū'shyūs sūl'ā), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. I, 21.

Sulpicius, -ci, *m.*, Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pūb'li-ūs sūl-pīsh'yūs rōō'-fūs), one of Caesar's legates. IV, 22.

sum, **esse**, **fui**, **futūrus** (App. 66), *intr.*, be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; with *gen. in predicate*, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of; with *dat. of possessor*, have. I, 1.

summa, -ae, *f.* [summus, highest], the main thing or point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; **summa imperi**, the chief command. I, 29.

summus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of superus*, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; preëminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. I, 16.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, tr., [sub+emō, take], take away, take; assume; with **supplicium**, inflict; with **labor**, spend. I, 7.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, adj. [sūmptus, expense], expensive.

sūmptus, -ūs, m. [sūmō, spend], expense. I, 18.

sūmptus, see sūmō.

super, adv., and prep. with acc., above, over, on.

superbē, adv., proudly, haughtily. I, 31.

superior, -ius, adj. [comp. of **superus**, high. App. 44]: (1) of place, upper, higher, superior; (2) of time, previous, earlier, former. I, 10.

superō, 1, tr. and intr. [super, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; **vitā superāre**, survive. I, 17.

supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, intr. [sedeō, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. II, 8.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be over or above; be left, remain, survive. I, 23.

superus, -a, -um, adj. [super, above], over, above. Comp., see **superior**; sup., see **summus**.

suppetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum, intr. [sub+petō, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. I, 3.

supplēmentum, -ī, n. [suppleō, fill up], a filling up; supplies, reinforcements.

supplex, -icis, m., f., suppliant. II, 28.

supplicatiō, -ōnis, f. [supplex, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence thanksgiving. II, 35.

suppliciter, adv. [supplex, suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. I, 27.

supplicium, -cī, n., punishment. I, 19.

supportō, 1, tr. [sub+portō, carry], carry or bring up; bring, convey; supply, furnish. I, 39; III, 3.

suprā, adv., and prep. with acc.: (1) as adv., above, before, previously; (2) as prep. with acc., above; before. I, 24.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [su(b)s+capiō, take], take or lift up; undertake, assume, take on oneself; begin, engage in. I, 3.

suspectus, -a, -um, adj., suspected, distrusted.

suspiciō, -ōnis, f., suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. I, 4.

suspīcor, 1, tr., suspect, distrust; surmise. I, 44; IV, 6.

sustentō, 1, tr. and intr. [freq. of **sustineō**, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. II, 6.

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, tr. and intr. [su(b)s+teneō, hold], hold up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. I, 24.

sustulī, see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, reflex. pronominal adj. referring to subject (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, a) [suī, himself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; **sua, n. pl. as noun**, one's property; **suī, m. pl. as noun**, their men (friends or countrymen). I, 1.

T.

T. abbr. for Titus (tī'tūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 10.

tabernāculum, -ī, n., tent. I, 39.

tabula, -ae, f., board; tablet; list. I, 29.

tabulātum, -ī, n. [tabula, board], flooring of boards; story.

taceō, 2, tr. and intr., be silent, keep silent; pass over in silence; **tacitus, pf. part. as adj.**, silent. I, 17.

tālea, -ae, f., rod, bar; piece of wood, stake.

tālis, -e, adj., such, such a; such a great; so great a.

tam, adv., so, so very. I, 14.

tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. I, 7.

Tamesis, -is, *m.* (Acd), the river Tamesis (tām'ē-sis), better, the Thames.

tametsi, *conj.* [tamen, however+etsi, even if], although, though. I, 30.

tandem, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis*, as quid tandem, what, pray? what then? I, 25.

tangō, *tangere*, *tetigī*, *tāctum*, *tr.*, touch, border on.

tantopere, *adv.* [tantus, so great+opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. I, 31.

tantulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of tantus*, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. II, 30.

tantum, *adv.* [tantus, so great], so much, so, so far; only, merely.

tantummodo, *adv.*, only. III, 5.

tantundem, *adv.* [tantus, so great], so much or so far.

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so much, so great, so powerful, such; **quantō** . . . **tantō**, *with comparatives*, the . . . the. I, 15.

Tarbelli, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (tār-bēl'i). III, 27.

tardē, *adv.* [tardus, slow], slowly. IV, 23.

tardō, 1, *tr.* [tardus, slow], make slow, delay; hinder, check. II, 25.

tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish. II, 25.

Tarusātēs, -ium, *m.* (DEc), the Tarusates (tār'ū-sā'tēz). III, 23.

Tasgetius, -tī, *m.*, Tasgetius (tās-jē'shyūs), a chief of the Carnutes.

taurus, -i, *m.*, bull.

Taximagulus, -ī, *m.*, Taximagulus (tāk'sī-māg'ū-lūs), a king of Kent.

taxus, -i, *f.*, yew tree, yew.

Tectosagēs, -um, *m.* (Ede), the Tectosages (tēk-tōs'ā-jēz).

tēctum, -ī, *n.* [tegō, cover], covering, roof; house. I, 36.

tēctus, *see tegō*.

tegimentum, -ī, *n.* [tegō, cover], a covering, cover. II, 21.

tegō, *tegere*, *tēxī*, *tēctum*, *tr.*, cover, hide; protect, defend.

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. I, 8.

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [temerē, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. I, 31.

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. I, 40; IV, 20.

temeritās, -tātis, *f.* [temerē, rashly], rashness, indiscretion.

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (of a wagon). IV, 33.

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [temperō, control oneself], prudence, self-control. I, 19.

temperō, 1, *intr.*, control oneself, refrain; **temperātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, temperate, mild. I, 7.

tempestās, -tātis, *f.* [tempus, time], time, season; weather; usually bad weather, storm, tempest. III, 12.

temptō, 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. I, 14.

tempus, -oris, *n.*, a division or section of time, a time, time (*in general*); occasion, crisis; **omni tempore**, always; **in reliquum tempus**, for the future; **ūnō tempore**, at the same time, at once. I, 3.

Tēnctērī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tencteri (tēngk'tē-rī). IV, 1.

tendō, *tendere*, *tetendī*, *tentum*, *tr.*, stretch, stretch out, extend; *stretch a tent*, pitch; encamp. II, 13.

tenebrae, -ārum, *f.*, darkness.

teneō, *tenēre*, *tenuī*, —, *tr.*, hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; **sē tenēre**, remain; **memoriā tenēre**, remember. I, 7.

tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender. II, 17.

tenuis, -e, *adj.*, slim, thin; slight, insignificant; delicate.

tenuitās, -tātis, *f.* [tenuis, thin], thinness; poverty.

tenuiter, *adv.* [tenuis, thin], thinly. III, 13.

ter, *num. adv.* [*cf.* *trēs*, three], three times. I, 53.

teres, *-etis*, rounded; tapering.

tergum, *-i*, *n.*, the back; *terga vertere*, to flee; *post tergum* or *ab tergō*, in the rear. I, 53; III, 19.

ternī, *-ae*, *-a*, *distr. num. adj.* [*ter*, thrice], three each, three apiece. III, 15.

terra, *-ae*, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; *terrae* (*pl.*) or *orbis terrarum*, the world. I, 32; III, 15.

Terrasidius, *-dī*, *m.*, Titus Terrasidius (*tī'tūs tēr'ā-sīd'ī-ūs*), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

terrēnus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [*terra*, earth], of earth. I, 43.

terreō, 2, *tr.*, frighten, terrify.

terrītō, 1, *tr.* [*freq.* of *terreō*, frighten], frighten, terrify, alarm.

terror, *-ōris*, *m.* [*terreō*, frighten], fright, alarm, panic, terror. II, 12.

tertius, *-a*, *-um*, *num. adj.* [*ter*, thrice], third. I, 1.

testāmentum, *-i*, *n.* [*testor*, be a witness], will. I, 39.

testimōnium, *-nī*, *n.* [*testor*, be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. I, 44.

testis, *-is*, *m., f.*, witness. I, 14.

testūdō, *-inis*, *f.*, tortoise; shed; a *testudo*, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped above their heads. II, 6.

Teutomatus, *-i*, *m.*, Teutomatus (*tū-tōm'ā-tūs*), a king of the *Nitiobroges*.

Teutonī, *-ōrum* or *Teutonēs*, *-um*, *m.*, the Teutoni (*tū'tō-nī*), or Teutones (*tū'tō-nēs*). I, 33; II, 4.

tēxī, *see* *tegō*.

tignum, *-i*, *n.*, log, timber, beam, pile. IV, 17.

Tigurinus, *-a*, *-um*, of or belonging to the Tigurini; *pl. as noun*, Tigurini (Cg), the Tigurini (*tīg'ū-rī'nī*). I, 12.

timeō, *-ēre*, *-uī*, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of, dread; *with dat.*, be anxious about, be anxious for; *nihil timēre*, have no fear. I, 14.

timidē, *adv.* [*timidus*, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. III, 25.

timidus, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [*timeō*, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. I, 39.

timor, *-ōris*, *m.* [*timeō*, fear], fear, alarm, dread. I, 22.

Titūrius, *-rī*, *m.*, *see* *Sabinus*.

tolerō, 1, *tr.*, bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; *with famem*, appease, alleviate. I, 28.

tollō, *tollere*, *sustuli*, *sublātum*, *tr.*, lift, elevate; take on board; *take away*, remove; *do away with*, destroy; cancel; *sublātus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, elated. I, 5.

Tolōsa, *-ae*, *f.* (Ed), Tolosa (*tō-lō'sā*), now Toulouse. III, 20.

Tolōsātēs, *-ium*, *m.*, the Tolosates (*tōl'ō-sā'tēz*), the people of Tolosa. I, 10.

tormentum, *-i*, *n.* [*torqueō*, twist], means of twisting; an engine, artillery, for hurling missiles, *e.g.*, *cata-pulta* and *ballista*; windlass, hoist; device for torturing, hence, torment, torture. II, 8.

torreō, *torrēre*, *torruī*, *tostum*, *tr.*, scorch, burn.

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many. III, 10.

totidem, *indecl. adj.* [*tot*, so many], just as many, the same number. I, 48; II, 4.

tōtus, *-a*, *-um*, *gen.* *tōtius* (App. 32), *adj.*, the whole, the whole of; entire, all; *with force of adv.*, wholly, entirely. I, 2.

trabs, *trabis*, *f.*, beam, timber, pile. II, 29.

tractus, *see* *trahō*.

trādō, *-dere*, *-didī*, *-ditum*, *tr.* [*trāns* + *dō*, give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. I, 27.

trādūcō, *-ducere*, *-dūxī*, *-ductum*, *tr.* [*trāns* + *dūcō*, lead], lead across, lead over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. I, 11.

trāgula, *-ae*, *f.*, a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. I, 26.

trahō, *trahere*, *trāxī*, *tractum*, *tr.*, drag, drag along. I, 53.

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [trāns + iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl across; pierce, transfix.
 trāiectus, -ūs, *m.* [trāiciō, hurl across], crossing, passage. IV, 21.
 trānō, 1, *intr.* [trāns + nō, swim], swim across. I, 53.
 tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. III, 15.
 trāns, *prep.* with *acc.*, across, beyond, over; *in compounds*, trāns or trā, across, over, through. I, 1.
 Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Alpēs, the Alps], across the Alps, Transalpine.
 trānscondō, -scendere, -scendī, scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [scandō, climb], climb across; board. III, 15.
 trānsēō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [ēō, go. App. 84], go across or over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of time, pass by. I, 5.
 trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], carry or bring over, transfer.
 trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix], pierce through, transfix. I, 25.
 trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [fodiō, dig], dig through; pierce through, impale.
 trānsgridior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *tr.* [gradior, step], step over, cross. II, 19.
 trānsitus, -ūs, *m.* [trānsēō, go across], crossing, passage.
 trānslātus, *see* trānsferō.
 trānsmarinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mare, sea], across the sea, foreign.
 trānsmissus, -ūs, *m.* [trānsmittō, send across], sending across; passage.
 trānsmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send across.
 trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry across or over, bring over, convey, transport. I, 37; IV, 16.
 Trānshēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond or across the Rhine; *pl. as noun*, Trānshēnānī, the people across the Rhine. IV, 16.

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, crossbeam, thwart. III, 13.
 trānsversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [trāns-vertō, turn across], turned across, cross. II, 8.
 Trebius, -bī, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē'bī-ūs gāl'ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.
 Trebōnius, -nī, *m.*: (1) Gaius Trebonius (gā'yūs trē-bō'nī-ūs), one of Caesar's legates; (2) Gaius Trebonius, a Roman knight.
 trecentī, -ae, -a (CCC), *card. num. adj.* [trēs, three + centum, hundred], three hundred. IV, 37.
 trepidō, 1, *intr.*, hurry about in alarm; pass., be disturbed or in confusion.
 trēs, tria, *gen. trium* (III), *card. num. adj.*, three. I, 1.
 Trēvir, -eri, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* Trēverī (Bīgh), the Treveri (trēv'ē-rī). I, 37; II, 24.
 Triboci, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trīb'ō-sī). I, 51; IV, 10.
 tribūnus, -i, *m.*, tribune; tribūnus militum or militāris, a military tribune. *See* Int. 41. I, 39; II, 26.
 tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, *tr.*, divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, render. I, 13.
 tribūtum, -i, *n.* [tribuō, render, pay], tribute, tax.
 triduum, -i, *n.* [trēs, three + diēs, day], three days. I, 26.
 triennium, -nī, *n.* [trēs, three + annus, year], three years. IV, 4.
 trigintā (XXX), *card. num. adj.* [trēs, three], thirty. I, 26.
 trinī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. I, 53.
 Trinovantēs, -um, *m.* (Ad), the Trinovantes (trīn'ō-vān'tēz).
 tripertitō, *adv.* [trēs, three + partior, divide], in three parts or divisions.
 triplex, -icis, *adj.* [trēs, three + plicō, fold], threefold, triple. I, 24.
 triquetrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, triangular.
 tristis, -e, *adj.*, sad, dejected. I, 32.
 tristitia, -ae, *f.*, sadness. I, 32.
 Troucillus, -ī, *m.*, *see* Valerius.

truncus, -ī, *m.*, trunk of a tree. IV, 17.

tū, **tuī** (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, you.

tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. II, 20.

tueor, **tuēri**, **tūtus sum**, *tr.*, watch, guard, protect. IV, 8.

tuli, *see ferō*.

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū-lin'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.

Tullius, -lī, *m.*, *see Cicerō*.

Tullus, -ī, *m.*, *see Volcācius*.

tum, *adv.*, then, at this or that time; then, secondly; then, also; **cum** . . .

tum, both . . . and, not only . . . but also. I, 17.

tumultuor, 1, *intr.* [tumultus, disorder], make a disturbance; *impers.*, there is a disturbance.

tumultuōsē, *adv.* [tumultus, disorder], with confusion or noise.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. I, 40; II, 11.

tumulus, -ī, *m.*, mound, hill. I, 43; II, 27.

turma, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron, of about thirty cavalymen. IV, 33.

Turonī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cd), the Turoni (tūrō-nī). II, 35.

turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. I, 33; IV, 2.

turpiter, *adv.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgracefully, cowardly, basely.

turpitūdō, -inis, *f.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. II, 27.

turris, -is, *f.*, tower. II, 12.

tūtō, *adv.* [tūtus, safe], safely, securely. III, 13.

tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. II, 5.

tuus, -a, -um, *poss. pron.* [tū, you], your, yours.

U.

ubi, *adv. and conj.*: (1) of place (*adv.*), in which place, where; (2) of time (*conj.*), when, whenever; as soon as; **ubi primum**, as soon as. I, 5.

Ubii, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū-bī-i). I, 54; IV, 3.

ubique, *adv.* [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. III, 16.

ulciscor, **ulciscī**, **ultus sum**, *tr.*, avenge; punish, take vengeance on. I, 12.

ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **ūllius** (App. 32), *adj.*, a single, any; *m. as noun*, anyone, anybody. I, 7.

ulterior, -ius, *adj., comp.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farther, more remote, ulterior. I, 7.

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj., sup.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote; *m. pl. as noun*, those in the rear. III, 27.

ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, on the farther side of. I, 48.

ultrō, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. I, 42; III, 27.

ultus, *see ulciscor*.

ululātus, -ūs, *m.*, yell, shriek.

umerus, -ī, *m.*, the shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever; **neque** . . . **umquam**, and never, never. I, 41; III, 28.

ūnā, *adv.* [ūnus, one]: (1) of place, together, along with, in one place; (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also. I, 5.

unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence. I, 28.

undecim (XI), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [ūnus, one + decem, ten], eleven.

ūndecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [undecim, eleven], eleventh. II, 23.

ūndēvigintī, *card. num. adj.* [ūnus, one + dē, from + vigintī, twenty], nineteen. I, 8.

undique, *adv.* [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. I, 2.

ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus, one + versus, from vertō, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all as a mass. II, 33.

ūnus, **ūna**, **ūnum**, *gen.* **ūnius** (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one; single, alone; the sole, the only one. I, 1.

urbānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [urbs, city], of or in the city.

urbs, urbis, f., city; especially, the city, Rome. I, 7.

urgeō, urgēre, ursi, —, tr., press, press hard. II, 25.

ūrus, -ī, m., wild ox.

Usipetēs, -um, m., the Usipetes [ū-sīp'-ē-tēz]. IV, 1.

ūsītātus, -a, -um, adj., ordinary, familiar.

usque, adv.: (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with *ad*, until. I, 50; III, 15.

ūsus, see ūtor.

ūsus, -ūs, m. [ūtor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; **ūsus est**, there is need; **ūsui esse** or **ex ūsū esse**, be of advantage or service; **ūsū venīre**, come by necessity; happen. I, 30; II, 9.

ut and uti, adv. and conj. With indicative: (1) as, just as; inasmuch as; (2) when, after. With subjunctive: (1) that, so that; (2) that, in order that, to; (3) after verbs of fearing, that not; (4) although; (5) how? I, 2.

uter, utra, utrum, gen. utrius (App. 32) **adj.**: (1) as interrog., which one or which of two? (2) as rel., the one who, of two, whichever. I, 12.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, adj. [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. I, 34; II, 8.

utī, see ut.

ūtī, see ūtor.

ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor, use], useful, serviceable. IV, 7.

ūtilitās, -tātis, f. [ūtilis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. IV, 19.

ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, intr., make use of, employ, use, avail oneself of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess; show; adopt, accept; **ūsus, pf. part.**, often translated with. I, 5.

utrimque, adv. [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. I, 50; IV, 17.

utrum, conj. [uter, which of two], whether; **utrum . . . an**, whether . . . or; **utrum . . . necne**, whether . . . or not. I, 40.

uxor, -ōris, f., wife. I, 18.

V.

V, sign for quinque, five.

Vacalus, -ī, m. (Af), the Vacalus (vāk'-ā-lūs) river, now the Waal. IV, 10.

vacō, 1, intr., be empty or unoccupied; lie waste. I, 28.

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. [vacō, be empty], empty, unoccupied; free from, destitute of. II, 12.

vadum, -ī, n., ford, shallow place. I, 6.

vāgīna, -ae, f., sheath, scabbard.

vagor, 1, intr. [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. I, 2.

valeō, 2, intr., be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence, or strength; **plūrimum valēre**, be very powerful. I, 17.

Valerius, -rī, m.: (1) Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs trōō-sīl'ūs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar. I, 19.

(2) Gaius Valerius Flaccus (flāk'ūs), Governor of Gaul, 83 B.C. I, 47.

(3) Gaius Valerius Caburus (kā-bū'rūs), a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship. I, 47.

(4) Gaius Valerius Proculus (prō-sīl'ūs), son of (S). I, 47.

(5) Lucius Valerius Praeconinus (lū'shyūs vā-lē'rī-ūs prēk'ō-nī'nūs). III, 20.

(6) Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus (dōm'nō-taw'rūs), son of (S).

Valetiācus, -ī, m., Valetiacus (vāl'ē-shī-ā'kūs), a nobleman of the Haedui.

valētūdō, -inis, f. [valeō, be strong], health; poor health.

vallēs, -is, f., valley. III, 1.

vallum, -ī, n. [vāllus, palisade], wall or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. I, 26.

vāllus, -ī, m., stake; palisade.

Vangionēs, -um, m. (Bgh), the Vangiones (vān-jī'ō-nēz). I, 51.

varietās, -tātis, f. [varius, diverse], diversity, variety.

varius, -a, -um, adj., diverse, changing, various. II, 22.

vāstō, 1, tr. [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. I, 11.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., waste; boundless, vast. III, 8.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, divination. I, 50.

-ve, *conj.*, *enclitic*, = vel, or.

vectigal, -ālis, *n.* [vectigālis, tributary], tax, tribute; *pl.*, revenues. I, 18.

vectigālis, -e, *adj.* [vehō, carry], paying revenue or tribute; tributary. III, 8.

vectōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [vehō, carry], for carrying; vectōria nāvis, a transport, freight ship.

vehementer, *adv.* [vehemēns, violent], violently, fiercely, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. I, 37; III, 22.

vel, *conj.* and *adv.*: (1) as *conj.*, or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or; (2) as *adv.*, even. I, 6.

Velānius, -nī, *m.*, Quintus Velanius (kwīn'tūs vē-lā'nī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

Veliocassēs, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Velio-casses (vē'lī-ō-kās'ēz). II, 4.

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, *n.* (Be), Vellaunodunum (vē-law'nō-dū'nūm), a town of the Senones.

Vellāvī, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Vellavii (vē-lā'vī-ī).

vēlōcītās, -tātis, *f.* [vēlōx, swift], swift-ness, speed.

vēlōciter, *adv.* [vēlōx, swift], swiftly, speedily.

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, rapid, speedy. I, 48.

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail. III, 13.

velut, *adv.*, as, just as. I, 32.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [vēnor, hunt], hunting, the chase. IV, 1.

vēnātor, -ōris, *m.* [vēnor, hunt], hunter.

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [vē-num, sale+dō, give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. II, 33.

Venellī, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Venelli (vē-nēlī). II, 34.

Venetī, -ōrum, *m.* (Cb), the Veneti (vēn'ē-tī). II, 34.

Venetia, -ae, *f.*, Venetia (vē-nē'shyā), the country of the Veneti. III, 9.

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti, Venetan. III, 18.

venia, -ae, *f.*, indulgence, favor; pardon.

veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, *intr.*, come, arrive, go, advance; in *spem venire*, have hopes; *pass.* often *impers.*, as *ventum est*, it was come = they came, it came, etc. I, 8.

ventitō, *l.*, *intr.* [freq. of veniō, come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. IV, 3.

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind. III, 13.

vēr, vēris, *n.*, the spring.

Veragrī, -ōrum, *m.* (CDg), the Veragri (vē'r'ā-grī). III, 1.

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.* (Cgh), Verbigenus (vēr-bīj'ē-nūs), a canton of the Helvetii. I, 27.

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word; *pl.*, speech; entreaty; verba facere, plead. I, 20.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, Vercassivellaunus (vēr-kās'ī-vē-law'nūs).

Vercingetorix, -igis, *m.*, Vercingetorix (vēr'sin-jēt'ō-rīks), an Arvernian, the greatest leader produced by the Gauls. See Book VII.

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. I, 19.

vergō, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, look or lie toward, be situated; slope. I, 1.

vergobretus, -ī, *m.*, vergobret (vēr'gō-brēt), the title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui. I, 16.

veritus, see vereor.

vērō, *adv.* [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. I, 32; II, 2.

versō, *l.*, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass.* as *deponent*, turn oneself; be, remain; engage in; fight. I, 48; II, 1.

versus, *adv.* [vertō, turn], turned to; toward.

versus, -ūs, *m.* [vertō, turn], turning; verse.

Verticō, -ōnis, *m.*, Vertico (vēr'tī-kō), one of the Nervii.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *tr.*, turn, turn around; terga vertere, flee. I, 53; III, 19.

Verucloetius, -tī, *m.*, Verucloetius (vēr'ū-klē'shyūs). I, 7.

vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; *neut. as noun*, the truth; vēri *similis*, likely, probable. I, 18.

verūtum, -ī, *n.*, dart, javelin.

Vesontio, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf), Vesontio (vēsōn'shyō), the chief town of the Sequani, modern Besançon. I, 38.

vesper, -eri, *m.*, evening; *sub vesperum*, toward evening. I, 26.

vester, -tra, -trum, *poss. pron.* [vōs, you], your, yours.

vēstīgium, -gī, *n.*, trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. IV, 2.

vestiō, 4, *tr.*, clothe, cover.

vestis, -is, *f.*, clothing.

vestitus, -ūs, *m.* [vestiō, clothe], clothing. IV, 1.

veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus, old], old, veteran; *m. pl. as noun*, veterans. I, 24.

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, forbid. II, 20.

vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, ancient, former; *with milites*, veteran. I, 13.

vexillum, -ī, *n.*, banner, flag. II, 20.

vexō, 1, *tr.*, harass, plunder, waste, overrun. I, 14.

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route; journey, march. I, 9.

viātor, -ōris, *m.* [via, road], traveler. IV, 5.

vicēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, twenty each, twenty.

vicēsīmus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, twentieth.

vicēs, *num. adv.*, twenty times.

vicinitās, -tātis, *f.* [vicinus, near], neighborhood; *pl.*, neighbors.

vicis, *gen. (no nom.)*, change; *in vicem*, alternately, in turn. IV, 1.

victima, -ae, *f.*, victim; a sacrificial animal.

victor, -ōris, *m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.* victorious. I, 31; II, 24.

victōria, -ae, *f.* [victor, victor], victory. I, 14.

victus, *see* vincō.

victus, -ūs, *m.* [vivō, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. I, 31.

vicus, -ī, *m.*, hamlet, village. I, 5.

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *tr.*, see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; *in pass.*, be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. I, 6.

Vienna, -ae, *f.* (Df), Vienna (vī-ēn'ā), modern Vienne.

vigilia, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. I, 12.

vīginti (XX), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., twenty. I, 13.

vīmen, -inis, *n.*, a pliant twig, switch, osier. II, 33.

vinciō, vincere, vīnxi, vīctum, *tr.*, bind. I, 53.

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *tr.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way or desire. I, 25.

vīctus, *see* vinciō.

vinculum, -ī, *n.* [vinciō, bind], bond, fetter, chain. I, 4.

vindicō, 1, *tr.*, assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. III, 16.

vineā, -ae, *f.*, vinea, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. II, 12.

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine. II, 15.

violō, 1, *tr.*, harm, injure; devastate.

vir, virī, *m.*, man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; cf. homō, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. II, 25.

virēs, *see* vis.

virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin.

virgultum, -ī, *n.*, thicket, bushes, brushwood. III, 18.

Viridomārus, -ī, *m.*, Viridomarus (vīr'ī-dō-mā'rūs), a chief of the Haedui.

Viridovīx, -īcis, *m.*, Viridovix (vī-rīd'-ō-vīks), a chief of the Venelli. III, 17.

virītim, *adv.* [vir, man], man by man, to each one, individually.

Viromandui, -ōrum, *m.* [Be], the Viromandui (vīr'ō-mān'dū-ī). II, 4.

virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [vir, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; *pl.*, good qualities, virtues, merits. I, 1.

vis, vīs (App. 27), *f.*, force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; *pl.*, **vīrēs**, strength, force; **vim facere**, use violence. I, 6.

visus, *see* **videō**.

vita, -ae, f. [*cf.* **vivō**, live], life; manner of living, living. I, 16.

vitō, 1, tr., avoid, shun, evade, escape. I, 20.

vitrum, -ī, n., woad, a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

vivō, vivere, vixi, victum, intr., live; subsist on. IV, 1.

vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [*cf.* **vivō**, live], alive, living.

vix, adv., with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. I, 6.

Vocātēs, -ium, m. (Dcd), the Vocates (**vō-kā'tēz**). III, 23.

Vocciō, -ōnis, m., Voccio (**vōk'shyō**), a king of Noricum. I, 53.

vocō, 1, tr. [**vōx**, voice], call, summon; invite. I, 19.

Vocontii, -ōrum, m. (Df), the Vocontii (**vō-kōn'shyī**). I, 10.

Volcācius, -cī, m., Gaius Volcaciū Tullus (**gā'yūs vōl-kā'shyūs tūl'ūs**), a young man in Caesar's army.

Volcae, -ārum, m.: (1) **Volcae Arecomici** (Eef), the Volcae Arecomici (**vōl'sē ār'ē-kōm'ī-sī**); (2) **Volcae Tectosagēs** (Ede) (**vōl'sē tēk-tōs'ā-jēz**).

volō, velle, volui, — (App. 82), *tr. and intr.*, wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; **quid sibi vellet**, what did he intend or mean? I, 7.

voluntārius, -a, -um, adj. [**voluntās**, will], willing; *m. pl. as noun*, volunteers.

voluntās, -tātis, f. [**volō**, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. I, 7.

voluptās, -tātis, f., pleasure, delight, enjoyment. I, 53.

Volusēnus, -ī, m., Gaius Volusenus Quadratus (**gā'yūs vōl'ū-sē'nūs kwā-drā'tūs**), a tribune of Caesar's army, afterwards commander of cavalry. III, 5.

Vorēnus, -ī, m., Lucius Vorenus (**lū'-shyūs vō-rē'nūs**), a centurion in Caesar's army.

vōs, see **tū**.

Vosegus, -ī, m. (BCg), the Vosegus (**vōs'ē-gūs**), better, the Vosges (**vōzh**) Mountains. IV, 10.

voveō, vovēre, vovī, vōtum, tr., vow.

vōx, vōcis, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language, variously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. I, 32; II, 13.

Vulcānus, -ī, m., Vulcanus (**vūl-kā'-nūs**), better Vulcan, the god of fire.

vulgō, adv. [**vulgus**, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. I, 39; II, 1.

vulgus, -ī, n., the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. I, 20.

vulnerō, 1, tr. [**vulnus**, a wound], wound. I, 26.

vulnus, -eris, n., a wound. I, 25.

vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, looks. I, 39.

X.

X, sign for decem, ten.

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

This index includes only the Grammatical Appendix and such notes as either supplement the information given by the Appendix or call attention to the less usual forms and constructions. References to the Appendix are by sections. References to the notes are in the style elsewhere used for references to the text.

ABLATIVE:

- absolute, 150; I, 3, 21
- of accompaniment, 140
- of accordance, 142, *a*
- of agent, 137
- of attendant circumstance, 142, *b*
- of cause, 138
- of comparison, 139
- of degree of difference, 148
- with the deponent verbs *utor*, etc., 145
- descriptive, 141
- with *dignus* and *indignus*, 149, *a*
- of duration of time, 152, *a*
- of manner, 142
- of material, 136
- of means, 143
- with *opus est* and *usus est*, 146
- for partitive genitive, 101, *b*
- of penalty, 108
- of place from which, 134, *a*
- of place in which, 151
- with preposition, 153
- of price, 147
- of separation, 134
- of source, 135
- with special verbs and adjectives, 143, *a*
- of specification, 149
- of time, 152
- of the way, 144

absum, conjugation of, 78

ACCENT, 10-12: in genitive of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 16, *c*

Accomplishing, clauses with verbs of, 228, *a*; 229, *a*

ACCUSATIVE:

- adverbial, 128, *b*
- cognate, 128
- of direct object, 124
- of duration of time, 130
- in exclamations, 129
- of extent, 128, *b*; 130
- inner, 125, *b*; 128, *a*, *b*
- with passive verbs, 125, *c*; 127, *a*; II, 4, 3
- of place to which, 131
- with prepositions, 155
- with *propior*, etc., 122, *b*
- as subject of infinitive, 123
- two, with verbs of *asking*, etc., 125, *a*

ACCUSATIVE—Continued:

two, with compound verbs, 127; I, 12, 5

two, with verbs of *making*, etc., 126

two, with *moneō*, *volō*, etc., 125, *b*; I, 34, 6

Accusing, genitive with verbs of, 108

Acquitting, genitive with verbs of, 108

ac si, with subjunctive, 261

ACTIVE VOICE, 181

ADJECTIVES:

for adverbs, 159

agreement of, 157

attributive, 156

comparison of, 39-45: occasional meaning of comparative and superlative, 161; I, 14, 15

declensions of, 1st and 2d, 31: with genitive in *-ius*, 32: 3d, 33-38: numeral, 48; 49

governing the ablative, 134, *b*; 149, *a*: the accusative, 122, *b*: the dative, 122: the genitive, 106

as nouns, 158

with partitive meaning, 160

predicate, 156

as predicate accusative, 126

ADVERBS, formation and comparison of, 46

ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES, 239; 246; 247

AGENT, see Dative of and Ablative of

AGREEMENT, of adjectives, 157: of relatives, 173 and *b*: of substantives, 95: of verbs; 179; 180

according to sense, I, 14, 4; 27, 9

aliquis, declension of, 62: use of, 175

alterius, for *alius*, 32; I, 36, 3

amplius, construction with, see *plūs*

an, 214; I, 47, 18

And, use of in series, I, 1, 3; 5, 3

annōn, 214

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS, 215

ANTECEDENT, in relative clause, I, 6, 1; 12, 16; II, 19, 11

antequam, mood with, 236: as two words, 236, *c*

APPOSITIVES, 95, *b*

Asking, cases with verbs of, 125, *a*; I, 18, 4

assuēfactus and *assuētus*, with ablative, 143, *a*

at, *ab* and *ex* translated by, I, 1, 15

- ATTRACTION**, subjunctive by, 274; II, 27, 2
- audiēns sum**, dative with, 115, *a*
- Avoiding*, clauses with verbs of, 228, *c*
- BASE**, of nouns, 14, *a*: of verbs, 63
- bōs**, declension of, 27
- Buying*, ablative with verbs of, 147
- Calling*, two accusatives with verbs of, 126
- CARDINAL NUMERALS**, 47-50
- CASES**, uses of, 92-94. And see Ablative, Accusative, Dative, Genitive, Locative, Nominative, Vocative
- causā**, with genitive, 99, *a*: with gerund or gerundive, to express purpose, 291: position of, 99, *a*
- CAUSAL CLAUSES**, 239; 243-245
- cavē**, in prohibitions, 219
- cēlō**, two objects with, 125, *a*
- CHARACTERISTIC**, clauses of, see Relative clauses
- Choosing*, two accusatives with verbs of, 126
- CLAUSES**, coördinate, 90; 222: subordinate or dependent, 91; 223. For subordinate, see Adversative, Causal, Comparison, Conditions, Indirect discourse, Indirect questions, Infinitive, Proviso, Purpose, Relative, Result, Substantive, Temporal
- coepī**, conjugation of, 86: passive with passive infinitives, 86, *a*
- cognōvī**, meaning of tenses of, 193, I, *a*; 194, *a*; 195, *a*
- COMMANDS**, 216-220: in indirect discourse, 267; I, 35, 9. For negative commands, see Prohibitions
- COMPARATIVES**, declension of, 34: occasional meaning of, 161: with ablative, 139; 148
- COMPARISON**, of adjectives, 39-45: of adverbs, 46
- COMPARISON**, clauses of, 261
- COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE**, 275
- CONCESSIVE CLAUSES**, see Adversative clauses
- Condemning*, genitive with verbs of, 108
- CONDITIONAL RELATIVE CLAUSES**, 250
- CONDITIONS**, 249-259:
 classes of: contrary to fact, 251, *b*; 252; 254; VII, 77, 17: more vivid future, 251, *c*; 255; 256: less vivid future, 251, *d*; 255; 257: neutral, 251, *a*; 252; 253: mixed, 258
 connectives in, 250
 indicative in conclusion of contrary to fact conditions, 254, *a*
- CONDITIONS—Continued**
 in indirect discourse, 272; I, 31, 7; 34, 5; 44, 25
 omitted or implied, 259
 cōfidō, with ablative, 143, *a*
- CONJUGATIONS**, how distinguished, 63. And see Verbs.
- CONJUNCTIONS**, coördinating, 90; 222: subordinating, 91; 223
- CONSONANTS**, sounds of, 6: division of, into syllables, 8
- cōnsuēvī**, meaning of tenses of, 193, I, *a*; 194, *a*; 195, *a*
- cōnsulō**, cases with, 114, *b*
- CONTRACTED VERB FORMS**, 72
- Convicting*, genitive with verbs of, 108
- COÖRDINATE**, clauses, 90; 222: relative clauses, see Relative clauses
- cum**, as conjunction, 238-242:
 adversative (*although*), 239; 247
 causal (*since*), 239; 245
 temporal (*when*), easy rules for, 240: date clauses, 241, *a*: inverted clauses, 241, *c*: narrative clauses, 242, *a*: of repeated action, 241, *b*; 242, *b*; III, 14, 15; 15, 1: situation clauses, 242, *a*
- cum**, as preposition, enclitic, 153, *b*
- cum primum**, 237
- cūrō**, etc., with future passive participle, 285, *b*
- DATE cum CLAUSES**, 241, *a*
- DATIVE**:
 with adjectives, 106, *b*; 122
 of agent, 118
 with **audiēns sum** and **fidem habēre**, 115, *a*
 double, see purpose and predicative ethical, 121
 of indirect object, 113-116: with compound verbs, 116: with intransitive verbs, 115: with transitive verbs, 114
 of possession, 117
 predicative, 119, *a*
 of purpose, 119
 of reference, 120
 of separation, 116, I
- DECLENSION**, of adjectives, 31-38: of nouns, 14-30: of numerals, 48; 49: of pronouns, 51-62.
- DEFECTIVE VERBS**, 86
- dēlectō**, accusative with, 115, *c*
- DELIBERATIVE QUESTIONS**, 210
- DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS**, declension of, 54-58: uses of, 168-171
- DEPENDENT CLAUSES**, see Clauses
- DEPONENT VERBS**, 73: with ablative, 145
- Depriving*, verbs and adjectives of, with ablative, 134, *b*

DESIRE, SUBJUNCTIVE OF, see Subjunctive

Desiring, clauses with verbs implying, 228, *a*

DETERMINING CLAUSES, 231

deus, declension of, 16

diēs, gender of, 30, *a*

dignus, with ablative, 149, *a*

Diphthongs, sounds of, 5

DIRECT DISCOURSE, 265

DIRECT REFLEXIVE, 164

DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS, 47: used in multiplying, V, 13, 18: with nouns used only in plural, V, 53, 10

dō, conjugation of, 85

domus, gender of, 29, *a*: declension of, 29, *d*; used without prepositions, 131; 134, *a*; 151, *a*

dōnec, with indicative, 234, *b*; 235, *a*: with subjunctive, 235, *b*

dōnō, cases with, 114, *a*

Doubling, clauses with expressions of, 229, *d*

dubitō, constructions with, 229, *d*

dum, meaning *as long as*, 234, *b*; VII, 82, 1: *if only*, 260: *until*, 235: *while*, 234, *a*

dummodo, with subjunctive, 260

duo, declension of, 49

ego, declension of, 51: use of, 162

EMOTION, verbs of, with genitive, 109

ENCLITICS, effect on accent, 12: *cum*, with some pronouns, 153, *b*: *-nam*, 61, *a*

eō, conjugation of, 84

eō . . . quō, 148, *a*

etsi, indicative with, 246

EXHORTATIONS, 217; VII, 77, 19

FACT, SUBJUNCTIVE OF, see Subjunctive

FEARING, clauses with expressions of, 228, *b*

ferō, conjugation of, 81

fidem habēre, dative with, 115, *a*

fidō, with ablative, 143, *a*

Filling, verbs and adjectives of, with ablative, 143, *a*

fiō, conjugation of, 83

fore (futūrum esse) ut, for future infinitive, 205, *b*; I, 20, 11; 31, 36

Forgetting, cases with verbs of, 107

Freeing, verbs and adjectives of, with ablative, 134, *b*

frētus, with ablative, 143, *a*

frūr, with ablative, 145: gerundive in use, 289, I, *a*

fungor, with ablative, 145: gerundive in use, 289, I, *a*

FUTURE INDICATIVE, use of, 192; 199

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE, use of, 195; 199: equivalent to future, 195, *a*

GENDER, general rules, 13: of 1st declension, 15 and *a*: of 2d declension, 16 and *a*: of 3d declension, 28: of 4th declension, 29 and *a*: of 5th declension, 30 and *a*

GENERALIZING RELATIVES, 60, *a*

GENITIVE:

with adjectives, 106

appositional, 97, *a*

with *causā* and *grātiā*, 99, *a*

descriptive, 100; 104

of material, 102

of measure, 100

with nouns, general rule for, 97

objective, 98; I, 30, 3

partitive, 101; I, 11, 12

possessive, 99; 103

subjective, 98; I, 30, 3

of value, 105

with verbs: of emotion, 109: *interest* and *réfert*, 110: of judicial action, 108: of *remembering* and *forgetting*, 107

of the whole, see Partitive

GERUND, 287; 289-294

GERUNDIVE, 288-294; I, 3, 6

and gerund, choice between, 289

and gerund, use of cases, 290-294

of *ūtōr*, etc. 289, I, *a*; III, 6, 4

grātiā, with genitive, 99, *a*

habēō, with perfect participle, 286, *b*

Happening, etc., clauses with verbs of, 229, *b*

hic, declension of, 54: use of, 168

Hindering, clauses with verbs of, 228, *c*

HISTORICAL INFINITIVE, 281; I, 16, 2

HISTORICAL PRESENT, 190, *a*; I, 3, 7

HISTORICAL TENSES, 203

Hoping, future infinitive with verbs of, 280, *c*

i, as consonant, 5, *a*; 7

iaciō, in compounds, 7

iam diū, etc., with present, 190, *b*: with imperfect, 191, *b*

idem, declension of, 58

ille, declension of, 56: use of, 170

IMPERATIVE, use of, 185; 218: in indirect discourse, 267; I, 7, 19

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE, uses of, 191:

descriptive, 197; II, 24, 4; III, 1,

5: with *iam diū*, etc., 191, *b*; I, 31,

10: in narration, 197; 198; III, 1,

1, 3, 5, 7; 6, 1: of repeated action,

191, *a*; I, 26, 8; III, 3, 10

imperō, with accusative (rare), 115, *b*: with dative, 115: with passive infinitive (rare), V, 1, 11: with subjunctive, 228, *a*

IMPERSONAL USE of passive intransitive verbs, 115, *d*; 285, *a*; 289, I; I, 22, 8; 33, 18

- IMPERSONAL VERBS**, 87: with genitive, 109: with infinitive, 278: with substantive clauses of result, 229, *b*
- IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE**, 273; I, 16, 1; I, 30, 15
- in**, cases governed by, 154
- INDEFINITE PRONOUNS**, declension of, 62: uses of, 174-178
- INDICATIVE MOOD**, uses of, 183: in questions, 209: in statements, 206: and see Adversative clauses, Causal clauses, Conditions, Relative clauses, Substantive *quod* clauses, *antequam* and *priusquam*, *cum*, *dum*, *postquam*
- indignus**, with ablative, 149
- INDIRECT DISCOURSE**, 265-272
- commands and prohibitions in, 267; I, 7, 19
- conditions in, 272; I, 31, 7; 34, 5; 44, 25
- coördinate relative clauses in, 269, *a*; II, 17, 11
- declarative sentences in, 266; I, 2, 5
- general explanation of, 265; I, 13, 7
- imperative in, see Commands in indirect for explanations inserted by the writer, II, 4, 28; 9, 10; III, 2, 3
- principal clauses in, 265; 266-268
- pronouns in, 271; I, 30, 3
- questions in, 268; I, 40, 6
- subordinate clauses in, 269; I, 3, 17
- tenses of infinitive in, 266, *a*; 272, II; I, 31, 11
- tenses of subjunctive in, 270
- INDIRECT QUESTIONS**, 262-264
- INFINITIVE**, uses of, 186; 275-281:
- clauses, 277-280
- complementary, 275
- historical, 281
- in indirect discourse, 266; 268, II; 269, *a*
- as object, 279; 280
- subject of, 123; 276; 278; 281
- as subject, 276; 278
- INTENSIVE PRONOUN**, see *ipse*
- interest**, cases with, 110
- INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES**, see Questions
- INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN**, declension of, 61: uses, see Questions, direct and indirect
- INTRANSITIVE VERBS**, in passive, see Impersonal use
- INVERTED *cum* CLAUSES**, 241, *c*
- ipse**, declension of, 59: use of, 163; 172
- Irregular verbs**, conjugation of, 66; 77-85
- is**, declension of, 57: use of, 171
- iste**, declension of, 55: use of, 169
- iubeō**, with accusative, 115, *c*: with infinitive, 228, *a*; II, 28, 11
- Iuppiter**, declension of, 27
- iuvō**, with accusative, 115, *c*
- JUDICIAL ACTION**, genitive with verbs of, 108
- laccessō**, with ablative, 143, *a*
- LOCATIVE**, forms of, 15, *b*; 16, *b*; 29, *d*: use of, 151, *a*
- locō**, **locis**, without preposition, 151, *b*
- longius**, construction with, see *plūs*
- magis**, comparison with, 45
- Making*, two accusatives with verbs of, 126
- mālō**, conjugation of, 82
- maximē**, comparison with, 45
- meminī**, conjugation of, 86: cases with, 107
- minus**, construction with, see *plūs*
- misereor** and **miseret**, cases with, 109
- modo**, with subjunctive, 260
- moneō**, two objects with, 125, *b*
- Moods**, uses of, 182-185. And see Imperative, Indicative, Subjunctive
- nam**, 61, *a*
- NARRATIVE *cum* CLAUSES**, 242, *a*
- nātus**, with ablative, 135
- ne**, in direct questions, 213, *a*; 214: in indirect questions, 264, *b*
- nē**, 188, *b*
- in indirect discourse, 267; I, 35, 7
- in prohibitions, 216; 217; 219; 220
- in clauses of proviso, 260
- in purpose clauses, 225, *b*
- in substantive clauses of desire, 228
- with verbs of *fearing*, 228, *b*
- with verbs of *hindering*, 228, *c*
- nē . . . quidem**, 188, *b*
- necne**, 264, *c*
- NEGATIVES**, 188
- neque**, 188, *a*
- nesciō quis**, 178
- nēve**, **neu**, 188, *b*; VI, 20, 4
- nisi**, 250
- nitor**, with ablative, 143, *a*
- noceō**, with dative, 115
- nōli**, in prohibitions, 219
- nōlō**, conjugation of, 82
- NOMINATIVE**, in predicate, 95, *a*: as subject, 96: as subject of historical infinitive, 281
- nōn**, 188, *a*
- nōn modo (nōn)**, III, 4, 10
- nōnne**, 213, *b*
- NOUNS**, 1st declension, 15: 2d declension, 16: 3d declension, 17-28: 4th declension, 29: 5th declension, 30: appositive, 95, *b*: predicate, 95, *a*. And see Gender

- nōvī**, meaning of tenses of, 193, I, *a*;
194, *a*; 195, *a*
- num**, 213, *c*: in indirect questions,
264, *b*
- NUMERALS**, 47-50: combinations of, 50:
declension of, 48; 49: forms of, 47
- OBJECT**, direct, see Accusative: in-
direct, see Dative
- obliviscor**, cases with, 107
- ōdī**, conjugation of, 86
- OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE**, 184, *a*; 221;
228
- opus est**, constructions with, 146
- ORDINAL NUMERALS**, 47
- ortus**, with ablative, 135
- os**, declension of, 27
- paenitet**, cases with, 109
- PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES**,
232
- parte, partibus**, without preposition,
151, *b*
- PARTICIPLES**, uses of, 282-286:
agreement of, 157
instead of clauses, 283
as nouns, 158; 146, *b*
tenses of, 205
future active, 285, I
future passive, in passive peri-
phrastic conjugation, 285, II, *a*:
with **cūrō**, **dō**, **suscipiō**, etc., 285,
II, *b*: and see Gerundive
perfect, 286: of deponent verbs,
usually with active meaning, 286,
a; II, 7, 6: sometimes with
passive meaning, I, 11, 9; II, 19,
13: with **habēō**, 286, *b*
present, 284: substitutes for, 284, *a*;
II, 29, 15
- PASSIVE VOICE**, 181: dative retained
with, 114, *c*; 115, *d*; 116, *c*:
intransitive verbs in, 115, *d*; 285,
a; 289, I; I, 22, 8; 33, 18: con-
struction with passive verbs of
saying, 279, *a*
- PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE**, 194: equiv-
alent to imperfect, 194, *a*: in
narration, 197-198: with **ubi**
(rare), IV, 26, 5
- PERFECT INDICATIVE**, 193: equivalent
to present, 193, I, *a*: in narration,
197; 198; III, 1, 1, 3, 5, 7; 6, 1:
with **dum**, 235, *a*: with **postquam**,
etc., 237: with **priusquam**, etc.,
236, *a*
- PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION**:
active, 75; 285, I: tenses of, 196;
201, *b*
passive, 76; 285, II, *a*: with abla-
tive of agent, 118, *a*: with dative
of agent, 118
- PERSONAL PRONOUNS**, declension of,
51: use of, 162: with gerund or
gerundive, 291, *a*
- persuādeō**, dative with, 115
- piget**, cases with, 109
- PLACE**, from which, 134, *a*: in which,
151: to which, 131
- plēnus**, with genitive, 106, *a*
- PLUPERFECT**, see Past perfect
- plūs**, declension of, 34, *a*
- plūs, minus, amplius, longius**, con-
struction with, 139, *b*; I, 38, 10;
41, 11; II, 7, 10
- POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS**, 53: with
causā and **grātiā**, 99, *a*: instead of
genitive of possession, 99: with
interest, 110: omission of, 167
- possum**, conjugation of, 80
- postquam**, etc., indicative with, 237:
as two words, IV, 28, 1
- POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE**, see Sub-
junctive
- potior**, with ablative, 145: with geni-
tive, 111: gerundive in use, 289, I, *a*
- praesertim**, in causal clauses, 245
- PREDICATE**, 88: accusative, 126: adjec-
tive, 156; 157, *a*, 2; 275, *a*; 276,
a: noun, 95, *a*; 275, *a*; 276, *a*
- PREDICATIVE DATIVE**, 119, *a*
- PREPOSITIONS**, cases governed by,
153: verbs compounded with,
116, I; 124, *c*; 127
- PRESENT INDICATIVE**, 190: with **dum**,
234, *a*: with **iam diū**, etc., 190,
b: historical, 190, *a*; III, 5, 8
- Preventing*, clauses with verbs of, 228, *c*
- PRINCIPAL PARTS**, 65
- PRINCIPAL TENSES**, 203
- priusquam**, mood with, 236: as two
words, 236, *c*
- prohibeō**, with infinitive, 228, *c*; II, 4, 6
- PROHIBITIONS**, 216-220: in indirect
discourse, 267; I, 35, 7: negative
in, 216: with **nōlī**, 219; VII, 77, 23
- Promising*, future infinitive with verbs
of, 280, *c*: present infinitive
(rare), IV, 21, 10
- PRONOUNS**, declension of, 51-62: uses
of, 162-178. And see Demon-
strative, Generalizing relative,
Indefinite, Intensive, Interroga-
tive, Personal, Possessive, Re-
flexive, Relative
- PRONUNCIATION**, 1-12: of proper
names, p. 68, 3
- propior, propius**, cases with, 122 and *b*
- prōsum**, conjugation of, 79
- PROVISO**, clauses of, 260
- proximus, proximē**, cases with, 122
and *b*
- pudet**, cases with, 109

- PURPOSE**, expressed by:
 future passive participle with *cūrō*,
 etc., 285, *b*
 gerund and gerundive, 291; 293
 purpose clauses, 224; 225
 supine, 295
- quam**, with comparatives, 139, *a*:
 omitted with *plūs*, etc., see *plūs*:
 with superlatives, 161, *a*
- quam diū**, with indicative, 234, *b*
- quamquam**, with indicative, 246
- quamvis**, with subjunctive, 247
- quandō**, in causal clauses, 244
- QUANTITY**, of syllables, 9: of vowels, 1-3
- quasi**, *quam si*, with subjunctive, 261
- QUESTIONS**, 209-214:
 deliberative, 210
 double, 214: indirect, 264, *c*
 indirect, 262-264
 in indirect discourse, 268; I, 40, 6
 introductory words, 212; 213
 real and rhetorical, 211
- qui**, declension of, 60; 62, *a*: for *quis*,
 I, 48, 15: for uses, see Indefinite,
 Interrogative, Relative pronouns
- quia**, in causal clauses, 244
- quicumque**, 60, *a*
- quidam**, 62, *b*
- quilibet** and *quivīs*, 62
- quin**, with expressions of *doubting*, 229,
d: with verbs of *hindering*, 228, *c*
- quis**, indefinite, declension of, 61: use
 of, 174
 interrogative, declension of, 61: use
 of, see Questions
- quispiam**, 62: use of, 176
- quisquam**, 62: use of, 177
- quisque**, 62: with superlatives, I, 31, 42
- quisquis**, 60, *a*
- quō**, in purpose clauses, 225, *a*, 2
- quod**, in causal clauses, 244: in sub-
 stantive clauses, 248
- quod si**, I, 20, 9
- quōminus**, with verbs of *hindering*,
 etc., 228, *c*
- quoniam**, in causal clauses, 244
- RECIPROCAL EXPRESSION**, 166
- recordor**, case with, 107
- rēfert**, case with, 110
- REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS**, 52: uses of,
 163-166: direct, 164: indirect,
 165: substitutes for indirect, I,
 37, 4; 40, 11: in indirect dis-
 course, 271: in reciprocal ex-
 pressions, 166
- Regarding*, two acc. with verbs of, 126
- RELATIVE CLAUSES**:
 adversative, 247; V, 4, 13
 causal, 245; V, 47, 11
 of characteristic, 230; I, 6, 1; 6, 4;
 28, 7; IV, 34, 9: with indicative,
 IV, 10, 10; VI, 27, 1
- RELATIVE CLAUSES—Continued**
 conditional, 250; 253; 256; 257
 coördinate, 173, *a*; I, 1, 11: in in-
 direct discourse, 269, *a*; II, 17, 11
 determining, 231
 parenthetical, 232
 of purpose, 225, *a*
 of result, 230, *a*
- RELATIVE PRONOUN**, 60: agreement of,
 173: agrees with predicate noun,
 173, *b*; I, 38, 3; II, 1, 3. And
 see Relative clauses
- Remembering*, cases with verbs of, 107
- reminiscor**, cases with, 107
- REPEATED ACTION**, see *cum*, and
 Imperfect indicative
- Repraesentiō**, 270, *a*; I, 14, 14; 31, 26
- resistō**, dative with, 115
- RESULT CLAUSES**, 224; 226: sequence
 of tenses in, 204, *a*; II, 21, 12;
 V, 15, 3: substantive, 227; 229
- RHETORICAL QUESTIONS**, 211
- rūs**, without preposition, 131; 134, *a*;
 151, *a*
- Selling*, ablative with verbs of, 147
- SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS**, 74
- senex**, declension of, 27
- SENTENCES**, defined, 88: complex, 91:
 compound, 90: simple, 89
- SEPARATION**, see Ablative and Dative
- SEQUENCE OF TENSES**, 202-204:
 exceptions to, 204; 272, I; I, 26, 4;
 II, 21, 12; V, 15, 3
 depending on historical present,
 204, *b*; III, 5, 8; 11, 2
 depending on perfect infinitive,
 270, *b*
 rule of, 202; I, 12, 2
- si**, in conditions, 250; and see Condi-
 tions: in indirect questions, 264, *b*
- similis**, cases with, 106, *b*; 122
- simul ac**, with indicative, 237
- sin**, 250
- SITUATION cum CLAUSES**, 242, *a*
- STATEMENTS**, 206-208
- studeō**, dative with, 115
- sub**, cases governed by, 154
- SUBJECT**, defined, 88: of finite verb,
 96: of infinitive, 123: of historical
 infinitive, 281
- SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**:
 of desire, 184, *a*: in commands and
 prohibitions, 216; 217; 219; 220:
 in clauses of proviso, 260: in
 purpose clauses, 224; 225: in
 substantive clauses of desire,
 227; 228: in wishes, 221
 of fact, 184, *c*: in clauses of char-
 acteristic, 230: in result clauses,
 224; 226: in substantive clauses
 of result, 227; 229

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—*Continued*

potential, 184, *b*: in conclusions of conditional sentences, 207; 254; 257: in questions, 209: in statements, 207; 208.

and see Adversative clauses, Attraction, Causal clauses, Comparison, clauses of, Conditions, Implied indirect discourse, Indirect discourse, Indirect questions, Proviso clauses, *antequam* and *priusquam*, *cum*, *dum* meaning *until*

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES, see *Clauses*

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES:

of desire (also called optative; volitive, purpose), with *ut*, *nē*, *quā*, *quōminus*, 227; 228

with *quod*, 248

of result or fact, with *ut*, *ut nōn*, *quā*, 227; 229

SUBSTANTIVES, agreement of, 95

sum, conjugation of, 66: compounds of, 77-80

SUPERLATIVES, occasional meaning of, 161

SUPINE, ablative of, 296: accusative of, 295

suus, 53: uses of, 167, *a*

SYLLABLES, division of, 8: quantity of, 9

taedet, cases with, 109

tametsi, indicative with, 246

tamquam, subjunctive with, 261

Teaching, two objects with verbs of, 125, *a*

TEMPORAL CLAUSES, 233-242. See *cum*, *dum*, *postquam*, *priusquam*

TENSES:

of indicative, 190-199: in narration, 197, 198: and see Present, Imperfect, etc.

of infinitive, 205: in indirect discourse, 266, *a*; 272, II; I, 31, 11: future passive (rare), V, 36, 6: substitutes for future, 205, *b*; I, 20, 11; 31, 36; IV, 6, 6: in *-urus fuisse*, 272, II

of participles, 205

periphrastic, 196; 201, *b*

of subjunctive, 200-204: in indirect discourse, 270: sequence of tenses, 202-204. For details, see Sequence of tenses

Than, expressed by ablative or *quam*, 139

TIME, at which, 152: duration of, 130; 152, *a*. And see Temporal clauses

tōtus, ablative modified by, without preposition, 151, *b*

TOWNS, names of, without prepositions, 131; 134, *a*; 151, *a*

trēs, declension of, 49

tū, declension of, 51: use of, 162

ubi, with indicative, 237

ūllus, declension of, 32: use of, 177

ūnus, declension of, 32; 49

-urus fuisse, 272, II; I, 34, 5

usus est, constructions with, 146

ut:

in adversative clauses (*although*), 247

with verbs of *fearing* (*that not*), 228, *b*

in indirect questions (*how*), I, 46, 11

in purpose clauses (*in order that*), 225, *a*, 3

in result clauses (*so that*), 226

in substantive clauses of desire (*to*), 228, *a*, *b*: sometimes omitted, 228, *a*

in substantive clauses of result (*that*), 229, *a*, *b*, *c*

in temporal clauses (*when*), 237

utinam, in wishes, 221

ūtor, with ablative, 145: gerundive in use, 289, I, *a*

utrum, in double questions, 214

Valuing, genitive with verbs of, 105

VERBS, inflection of: conjugations, regular: 1st, 67; 2d, 68; 3d, 69; 3d in *-iō*, 71; 4th, 70

contracted forms of, 72

defective, 86

deponent, 73

impersonal, 87

irregular, 66; 77-85

periphrastic, 75; 76

principal parts of, 65

semi-deponent, 74

three stems (bases) of, 64

VERBS, uses of:

agreement of, 179; 180

moods, 182-185

tenses, 189-205

voices, 181

and see Gerund, Gerundive, Indicative, Infinitive, Participles, Subjunctive, Supine

VERBAL ADJECTIVES, 187

VERBAL NOUNS, 187

vēscor, with ablative, 145: gerundive in use, 289, I, *a*

vetō, accusative with, 115, *c*

vis, declension of, 27

VOCATIVE, form of, 16; 132: use of, 132

VOICES, 181

VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE, 184, *a*; 228

volō, conjugation of, 82

VOWELS, quantity of, 1-3: sounds of, 4

WISHES, 221

INDEX OF PERSONS, PLACES, AND THINGS

This index includes the Introduction, text, notes, and illustrations. Numbers without prefix refer to sections of the Introduction. Such references as I, 2, 4 refer to passages in the text. Other references are clearly indicated by "Fig." for illustrations, "note on" for notes, "p." for page.

The purpose of this index is to group the information contained in the Introduction, text, notes, and illustrations; and particularly to present summaries of the activities of persons, tribes, legions, etc.

The index is not exhaustive. (1) Except for special reasons, persons, etc., mentioned only once are not included. If they are mentioned in Books I-IV, they may be located by the Vocabulary. (2) In general, persons, etc. who are mentioned only in the unannotated portions of the text are not included. (3) The index is not a complete list of the occurrences of words in the text. But it is hoped that the summary of activities given under each name is complete for the entire seven books; and references are given for each statement. Therefore, in comparing the activities of the several legions or legates, it is to be understood that the differences are not due to any incompleteness of this index.

- Acco, leader of revolt among the Senones, VI, 4, 1: executed by Caesar, VI, 44, 4: his death alarms other Gallic chiefs and leads to general revolt, VII, 1, 10-13
- aciēs triplex**, 56; Fig. 32
- AGGER, 61; note on VII, 27, 8; Figs. 34, 35, 120, 189: inflammable, VII, 22, 10; 24, 8-19: passages in, note on VII, 22, 13: undermined, III, 21, 9; VII, 22, 5
- AGRICULTURE, German, IV, 1, 9; VI, 22
- ALESIA, description of, VII, 69, 1-9; p. 466, introductory note; plan, p. 467; Figs. 193, 196: Caesar's fortifications at, VII, 69, 72-74; plan, p. 467; Fig. 194: siege of, VII, 68-89
- ALLOBROGES, conquered in 121 B.C. and made part of Province, notes on I, 28, 13; 45, 5: revolt and subdued, note on I, 6, 7: damaged by Helvetii, I, 11, 10: ordered to supply food to Helvetii, I, 28, 7: defend themselves against threatened attack, VII, 64, 12; 65, 6
- ALPS, Caesar fights his way across, I, 10, 10-15: Galba's operations in, III, 1-6; map, p. 261; Fig. 124
- AMBIANI, II, 4, 24: submit to Caesar, II, 15, 6: in rebel army, VII, 75, 12: coin of, Fig. 109: and see Samarobriua, their capital
- AMBIORIX, benefited by Caesar, V, 27, 3-9: leads revolt and destroys a legion and a half, V, 26-37: instigates attack on Cicero, V, 38: is hunted persistently, but escapes, VI, 29-35, 43
- amicus**, as title, notes on I, 3, 11; 33, 3
- amentum**, Fig. 176
- ANDES, winter quarters among, II, 35, 6; III, 7, 7: joined Vercingetorix quickly, VII, 4, 16: in rebel army, VII, 75, 12
- ANIMALS, in Hercynian Forest, VI, 26-28
- ANTONIUS, MARCUS (Mark Antony), at Alesia, VII, 81, 14: coins of, Figs. 42, 199, 200
- aquila**, standard of the legion, 43; Figs. 23, 154, 172
- aquilifer**, 43; IV, 25, 10; V, 37, 11; Fig. 172
- AQUITANIA, 28; I, 1, 20-23: subjugation of, III, 20-27
- ARCHERS, used by Caesar, II, 7, 2; 10, 2; 19, 8; IV, 25, 4
- Arduenna (silva), V, 3, 10-12; VI, 29, 13-15: Caesar searched for Ambiorix in, VI, 33, 6
- AREMORICAN STATES, note on III, 7, 9: V, 53, 21
- ARIOVISTUS, pp. 143, 144; I, 30-54; Plate facing p. 175
- before Caesar entered Gaul—in-
vited by Arverni and Sequani, I, 31, 10; VI, 12, 2: defeated Haedui, I, 31, 16-19; VI, 12, 6: defeated combined Gallic forces, I, 31, 40; 40, 23-28; 44, 8-10: asked for and

ARIOVISTUS—Continued

- received recognition by Rome, I, 35, 4; 40, 5; 43, 8-10; 44, 13-15 negotiations with Caesar—refuses to come for conference, I, 34: exchanges communications with Caesar, I, 35, 36: holds a conference with Caesar, I, 42-46: asks for second conference, I, 47
- movements before battle—falsely reported marching on Vesontio, I, 38, 1: probably marches north, note on I, 37, 7: marches toward Caesar, I, 48, 1: then past him, I, 48, 2
- battle with Caesar, I, 51-53: location of, p. 145: plan of, p. 187; Figs. 96, 97
- escapes from battle, I, 53, 5: but dies soon after, V, 29, 9; note on I, 53, 5
- ARMOR**, Roman, 35; Fig. 20; Plate facing p. 111
- ARTILLERY**, 63: and see **ballista**, **Catapult**, **onager**, **scorpiö**
- ARVERNI**, conquered in 121 B.C. but set free, I, 45, 5: head of confederation of states, I, 31, 10; note on VI, 12, 2: make Vercingetorix king, and thus head revolt, VII, 4: raided by Caesar, VII, 8-9, 6: invaded unsuccessfully by Caesar, VII, 34-53: in rebel army, VII, 75, 8: get back captives taken by Caesar, VII, 90, 4
- coin of, Fig. 79
- ASSAULT ON TOWNS**, 60
- ATREBATES**, II, 4, 24: defeated by Caesar, II, 16-23: Commius appointed king over, IV, 21, 13: in rebel army, VII, 75, 14: coin of, Fig. 114
- ATUATUCI**, II, 4, 26: expected by Nervii, II, 16, 6: take refuge in a town, II, 29, 4: submit to Caesar, II, 29-32: their treachery, II, 33, 1-16: sold into slavery, II, 33, 16-20: revolt, V, 38, 2-4; 56, 3; VI, 2, 8
- their town, description of, II, 29, 5-8: location of, p. 197; note on II, 29, 4; plan, p. 247
- coin of, Fig. 121
- AUGUSTUS**, see Octavianus
- AULERCI EBUROVICES**, revolt and are defeated, III, 17-19: winter quarters established among them, III, 29, 11: in rebel army, VII, 75, 15: coin of, Fig. 61
- AUXILIARY TROOPS**, 47; Figs. 27, 28: use in battle, I, 24, 4-8; 51, 2-5; III, 24, 2, and note; 25, 2-5

- AVARICUM**, approached by Caesar, VII, 13, 8-12: Gauls decide to defend, VII, 15: taken and sacked, VII, 17, 21-28: plan of, p. 436
- AXONA**, camp on, II, 8, 5-14: location of, p. 197; note on II, 5, 14; plan, p. 214; Fig. 31
- BACULUS**, the centurion, II, 25, 7; III, 5, 5: saves Cicero's camp, VI, 38
- BAGGAGE**, individual, 37; Figs. 20, 57: of the legion, 46
- ballista**, 63, a; Fig. 40; Plate facing p. 47
- balteus**, 36, b; note on V, 44, 16; Fig. 17
- BASILUS, L. MINUCIUS**, tries to catch Ambiorix, VI, 29, 16-30: quartered among Remi, VII, 90, 7
- BATTERING-RAM**, 62, c; note on II, 32, 3; Fig. 38; Plate facing p. 47
- BATTLE**, general description of, 55: line of, 56; Fig. 32: hand-to-hand, Fig. 118
- for the chief battles of Books I-IV, see Aquitani, Ariovistus, Helvetii, Nervii, Northwestern states, Tigurini, Usipetes and Tencteri, Veneti
- BELGAE**, I, 1, 5-10: conquest of, II, 1-33: confederated army marches on Caesar, II, 4-10: but disperses, II, 10, 11: for details of the conquest, and for their later activities, see the individual tribes
- BELGIUM**, 28
- BELLOVACI**, II, 4, 13: their land menaced by Diviciacus, II, 10, 17: submit to Caesar, II, 13-15: revolt, VII, 59, 5: but refuse to obey orders of Gallic council, saying they will fight when they like, VII, 75, 19-22
- coin of, Fig. 58
- BIBRACTE**, location of, note on I, 23, 2: Caesar starts for, I, 23, 5: council of Gauls held in, VII, 63, 8: Caesar's winter quarters, VII, 90, 14
- BIBRAX**, relief of, II, 6, 7
- BITS**, Gallic, Figs. 63, 92
- BITURIGES**, join Vercingetorix, VII, 5: Caesar takes Noviodunum, a town of, VII, 12, 13: and their chief town (see Avaricum): in rebel army, VII, 75, 10: coin of, Fig. 65
- BLOCKADE OF TOWNS**, 59: best account of, VII, 68-89

- Boi, join the Helvetii, I, 5, 11: attack the Romans, I, 25, 13: are given land by the Haedui, I, 28, 13; VII, 9, 16: furnish supplies to Caesar, VII, 17, 4-8: in rebel army, VII, 75, 16
- BOULOGNE, p. 301; note on IV, 21, 6; Figs. 151, 158
- BRACELETS, Gallic, Fig. 182; Plate facing p. 479
- BRIDGE, building of, Fig. 102: pontoon, notes on I, 8, 11; 13, 2; Fig. 57
across the Rhine (first), IV, 17; 19, 16: Fig. 147: location of, p. 301; note on IV, 17, 5; Fig. 150
across the Rhine (second), VI, 9, 4-9; 29, 4-11
- BRITAIN, Caesar's description of, V, 12-14; map on p. 61: Gallic knowledge of, IV, 20, 8-15, and note on 8: helps Gaul against Caesar, IV, 20, 4 and note: not held by Rome, note on V, 22, 14: origin of inhabitants, notes on V, 12, 1, 2
Caesar's first invasion of, IV, 20-36: date of arrival, note on IV, 28, 1: date of leaving, note on IV, 36, 4: sailing point for, p. 301; note on IV, 21, 6; Fig. 151, 158: landing, IV, 23-26; p. 301; notes on IV, 23, 5, 18; Figs. 152, 153: Plate facing p. 334: wrecking of ships, IV, 29
Caesar's second invasion, V, 1-23: date of arrival, note on V, 8, 6: date of leaving, note on V, 23, 12: sailing point for, p. 347; note on V, 2, 8: landing, p. 347; V, 8, 14-20; note on V, 9, 5: wrecking of ships, V, 10: and see Cassivellaunus
- BROOCHES, Gallic, Fig. 186
- BRUTUS, DECIMUS, commands fleet, III, 11, 10: defeats Venetan fleet, III, 14, 15: commands troops, VII, 9, 3: at Alesia, VII, 87, 1: coin of, Fig. 129
- BURIAL, Gallic methods of, VI, 19, 12; Fig. 184
- CAESAR, GAIVS JULIVS
characteristics of—as author, 22-24: as general, 19-21: as statesman, 16: humane or cruel? notes on I, 28, 3; II, 33, 2, 18; III, 16, 10; IV, 13, 17; 15, 12; VII, 78, 6-10; Fig. 8; (cf. cruelty of Gallic leader, VII, 4, 21-26; 78, 6-10): portraits of, Frontispiece, Figs. 2, 10, 11, 12, 123
- CAESAR, GAIVS JULIVS—*Continued*
events in his life—chronological table, 18: early life, 5: marries Cornelia, 5: first military experience, 9: offices held, 9-11: governor in Spain, 10: forms First Triumvirate, 11: his consulship, 11: marries Calpurnia, note on I, 12, 19: proconsul in Gaul, 11, 12: meets Pompey in Civil War, 13-15: victor at Pharsalus, Thapsus, Munda, 15: dictator four times, Fig. 9: assassinated, 17: avenged and deified by Octavianus, Fig. 10 for his actions in Gaul, see stories prefixed to each book
- CAESAR, L., guards the Province, VII, 65, 2
- CALENDAR, Roman, App. 297-300: years designated by consuls, note on I, 2, 2
- CAMP, Roman, 49-52: form and plan of, 50; Figs. 29, 31; Plate facing p. 287: fortifications of, 51; Fig. 30: gates of, 52; Fig. 145: gates blocked in emergency, V, 50, 10; VII, 41, 11; note on V, 51, 8
- CARNUTES, legions quartered among, II, 35, 6: murder their king, V, 25: apologize to Caesar, VI, 4, 9-11: investigated by Caesar, VI, 44, 3: massacre Roman citizens at Cenabum, VII, 2, 3: Cenabum is sacked by Caesar, VII, 11, 6-23: in rebel army, VII, 75, 10
coin of, Fig. 168
- CART, ancient, Fig. 77
- cassis, Fig. 146
- CASSIVELLAUNUS, commander in chief of Britons, V, 11, 15: defeated near Canterbury, V, 15, 17: defeated at the Thames, V, 18: harasses Caesar's marches, V, 19: his town taken, V, 21: instigates attack on Caesar's camp, V, 22, 1-8: submits to Caesar, V, 22, 8-17
- CATAPULT, 63, b; Fig. 41
- CAVALRY
Gallic, Fig. 116
German, I, 48, 10-19; IV, 2, 3-12; 12: employed by Caesar, VII, 13, 2, 3; 65, 8-16; 67, 10-13; 70; 80, 17
Roman (really either Gallic or German), 48; note on I, 24, 2; Figs. 28, 60, 116
- CELTIC GAUL, 28
- CENABUM, see Carnutes

- CENTURION, 42; Figs. 21, 117
- CENTURY, 33
- CHARIOTS, British, Figs. 157, 197:
use in battle, IV, 33; V, 16, 7
- CHIEF OF ENGINEERS, 40
- CICERO, QUINTUS TULLIUS, in command of camp, V, 24, 6: location of camp, note on V, 39, 4: attacked by Gauls, V, 38-45: rescued by Caesar, V, 46-52: complimented by Caesar, V, 52, 3-10: in command of camp, VI, 32, 16: surprised by German attack, suffers loss, VI, 35-41: stationed among Haedui, VII, 90, 11
- CIMBRI AND TEUTONI, 5, 27; I, 33, 16; 40, 13; II, 4, 6; 29, 10; VII, 77, 34, 40
- CINGETORIX, rival of Indutiomarus, favored by Caesar and loyal to him, V, 3, 4; 56, 8-11; 57, 4; VI, 8, 25
- cippi, VII, 73, 7-13; Fig. 194
- CISALPINE GAUL, 26, 28
- CIVIC CROWN, 9; Figs. 4, 21
- CIVIL WAR, between Caesar and Pompey, 13-15
- CLOCKS, Roman, note on V, 13, 12
- CLOTHING OF SOLDIER, 34; Fig. 20
- COHORT, 33
- COINS, crudeness of some Gallic, p. 8
- COMB, Gallic, Fig. 183
- COMMENTARIES, Caesar's purpose in writing, 23
- COMMIS, made king of Atrebates, IV, 21, 13: sent to Britain, IV, 21, 13-18: arrested, but returned to Caesar, IV, 27, 3-10: left to guard Menapii, VI, 6, 7: made king of Morini, VII, 76, 4: a chief general in the great rebellion, VII, 76, 1-12; 79, 1: is believed to have taken refuge in Britain, Figs. 114, 142
- COMMUNICATION, method of, among Gauls, V, 53, 1-6; VII, 3, 6-12
- CONFEDERATION OF GALIC STATES, 29, 30: headed by Arverni, I, 31, 10; note on VI, 12, 2: headed by Haedui, I, 31, 10; VI, 12: headed by Remi, VI, 12, 20: headed by Sequani, VI, 12; note on VI, 12, 2
- CORTOSOLITES, submit to Crassus, II, 34: arrest Roman envoys, III, 7, 11; 8, 11: Sabinus sent against them, III, 11, 9: in rebel army, VII, 75, 18: coin of, Fig. 81
- cornū, Figs. 26, 165
- COTTA, L. AURUNCULEIUS, pursues the Belgae, II, 11, 10: sent against the Menapii, IV, 22, 18; 38, 6: with Sabinus, commands camp among the Eburones, V, 24, 14: location of camp, note on V, 26, 1: camp attacked, V, 26: advises against abandoning camp, but yields, V, 28, 30, 31: wounded and killed, V, 35, 16; 37, 8
- COUNCIL, armed, of the Gauls, V, 56, 5-8: of the Gauls, called by Caesar, note on V, 2, 13
- COUNCIL OF WAR, 42; note on I, 40, 1: for instance, see V, 28, 6-31, 7
- CRASSUS, MARCUS LICINIUS, the father, 11, 13; I, 21, 11; IV, 1, 2
- CRASSUS, MARCUS LICINIUS, the son, commands a winter camp, V, 24, 9: left in command at Samarobriua, V, 46, 2; 47, 3: leads a division against the Menapii, VI, 6, 1
- CRASSUS, PUBLIUS LICINIUS, sends third line into battle, I, 52, 13: sent against northwestern states, II, 34: reports revolt to Caesar, III, 9, 1: is sent against Aquitania, III, 11, 5: subdues Aquitania, III, 20-27: coin of, Fig. 136
- CRUCIBLE, Gallic, Fig. 185, b
- DATES, method of expressing day of month, App. 298-300: year, note on I, 2, 2
- DEAL, pp. 301, 347; note on IV, 23, 18; Fig. 153
- DECORATIONS, of cohorts, 44; Fig. 24: of individuals, Figs. 21, 22: of helmets, note on II, 21, 10
- DIVICIACUS, a Druid, notes on VI, 13, 7; 14, 1: most influential of Haedui, I, 18, 20; 20, 4: visited Rome, I, 31, 25-30: VI, 12, 12: pleads for Dumnorix, I, 20: is spokesman for Gallic delegation, I, 31, 8: advises Caesar as to route, I, 41, 10: in command of Haeduan auxiliaries, II, 5, 4; 10, 17: pleads for the Bellovaci, II, 14: nothing further said about him
- DOVER, note on IV, 23, 5; Figs. 152, 155
- DRUIDS, VI, 13, 14; note on VI, 13, 7
- DUMNORIX, conspires with Orgetorix, I, 3, 13: negotiates for Helvetii, I, 9: is treacherous to Caesar, I, 18, 24: pardoned by Caesar, I, 20: death, V, 6, 7: Fig. 64
- EAGLE, see aquila

- EBURONES**, promise troops against Caesar, II, 4, 26: evidently submit in that year, V, 27, 2-9: treacherously destroy a legion and a half, V, 26-37: join in attack on Cicero, V, 39, 8: are completely ravaged, VI, 31, 33-35, 43: coin of, Fig. 170
- ESUVII**, submit to Crassus, II, 34: arrest Roman envoys, III, 7, 10; 8, 11: legion quartered among them, V, 24, 6: in rebel army, VII, 75, 15
- ĕvocātus**, notes on III, 20, 8; V, 35, 13
- FABIUS, GAIUS**, in command of camp, V, 24, 5: joins Caesar against Nervii, V, 46, 5; 47, 6: returns to winter quarters, V, 53, 9: commands division against Menapii, VI, 6, 1: left in charge of camp, VII, 40, 5; 41, 4-13: at Alesia, VII, 87, 2; 90, 7
- FACCTIONS IN GAUL**, 29, 30; VI, 11, 12: and see Confederations
- falx**, III, 14, 14; VII, 22, 4; Fig. 131
- fibulae**, brooches, Fig. 186: in bridge building, note on IV, 17, 17
- FLEET**, 64: and see Ships
- FOOD SUPPLY**, notes on I, 39, 1; II, 10, 10: VII, 17, 8-23
- FORAGING**, Fig. 165
- FORTIFICATIONS OF CAMP**, 51; Fig. 30: and see Alesia
- fossa**, 51; Fig. 30
- FUNERAL CUSTOMS**, of Gauls, VI, 19, 11-15; Fig. 184
- GALBA, SERVIUS**, defeats three Alpine tribes, III, 1-6; map, p. 261; Fig. 124
- galea**, 35, a; Fig. 16
- GAUL**, benefited by Caesar's conquest, 3: conquest of, important to Caesar, 4: to Rome, 2; map, p. 19
- geographical divisions of; I, 1
- GAULS**, 25-31; Fig. 13; Plate facing p. 479
- arms of, Fig. 13; Plate facing p. 479: and see Helmets, Swords, etc.
- customs and civilization of, 31; VI, 11-20
- origin of, 25; notes on VI, 18, 1; 24, 3
- quick to act on rumor, IV, 5; VI, 20
- GEOGRAPHICAL MISTAKES OF CAESAR**, 74-76; notes on I, 1, 17; III, 9, 27; V, 13, 5
- GERGOVIA**, attacked unsuccessfully by Caesar, VII, 36-53
- GERMANS**
- arms and dress, Plates facing pp. 175, 415: and see Swords, etc.
- battle formation of, note on I, 51, 7: and see Phalanx
- customs of, IV, 1-3; VI, 21-25
- danger from, 3; I, 28, 9-13; 33, 11; IV, 3, 1-4; VI, 23, 1-5; 24, 9-14; notes on I, 2, 8; 33, 18
- destroyed by Caesar, see Ariovistus, Usipetes
- invaded by Caesar, IV, 16-19; VI, 9, 10, 29
- refuse to enter Gaul again, V, 55, 1-8
- GODS, Gallic**, VI, 17: German, VI, 21, 3-5
- GRAVE OF GALIC CHIEF**, Fig. 184
- GREAVES**, Fig. 117
- GREEK LETTERS**, used by Helvetii, I, 29, 1: and by Druids, VI, 14, 7: apparently not understood by Belgae, V, 48, 7
- gubernātor**, 64; note on III, 9, 4
- HAEDUI**, "friends and brothers" of the Roman people, I, 33, 7; 35, 17; 36, 13: head of confederation of states, I, 31, 10; VI, 12, 1: defeated by Ariovistus, I, 31, 16, 40: appealed to Rome for help, I, 31, 27; VI, 12, 12: governor instructed to defend them, I, 35, 15: but did nothing, I, 44, 29; VI, 12, 14: complain of damage by Helvetii, I, 11, 3: fail to send supplies to Caesar, I, 16, 1-9: send supplies to Caesar, I, 48, 5: send troops to aid Caesar, II, 5, 4-9; 10, 17: are made the leading state of Gaul, VI, 12, 25: show increasing disaffection, VII, 5, 13-16; 9, 11; 17, 4-10; 32, 6-34, 6; 37-40, 42, 43: revolt, 54, 55: ask general command of war, but are refused, VII, 63: in rebel army, VII, 75, 6: submit to Caesar and pardoned, VII, 90, 1-5
- coins of, Figs. 46, 59, 64
- HEDGES**, Belgian, II, 17, 16-20
- HELMETS**:
- British, Fig. 159
- Gallic, Figs. 13, 14, 62; Plate facing p. 479
- Roman, 35, a; Figs. 16, 146
- HELVETII**, defeated Roman army in 107, I, 7, 12: coin of, Fig. 45
- prepare to leave Switzerland for a new home, I, 2-9: reasons for leaving, I, 2; 31, 46-50: length of baggage train, note on I, 5, 7:

HELVETII—*Continued*

- fail to cross Rhone, I, 8; map, p. 87; Figs. 48, 51, 54: get right of way through Pas de l'Écluse, I, 9; Fig. 50
- march to neighborhood of Bibracte, I, 11-22; notes on 11, 2; 15, 1: damage Allobroges, Ambarri, Haedui, I, 11: one-fourth destroyed at the Arar, I, 12: location, note on I, 12, 4; Fig. 56: turn from the Arar, I, 16, 7
- defeated by Caesar, I, 23-26: location of field, p. 67; notes on I, 23, 5; 24, 8, 10; plans, pp. 131, 135; Figs. 70, 71
- flee, submit, and return to Switzerland, I, 26, 12-28; note on I, 26, 13: 6000 try to escape, I, 27, 7-28, 3: in rebel army, VII, 75, 12
- number of, I, 29; notes on I, 2, 15; 26, 12
- HERCYNIAN FOREST, VI, 25
- HORSESHOE, Gallic, Fig. 190
- hospitium, note on I, 47, 15
- HOSTAGES, note on I, 9, 10
- HUMAN SACRIFICES, in Gaul, VI, 16; note on V, 56, 8
- ILLYRICUM, visited by Caesar, III, 7, 3; V, 1, 13
- impedimenta, 46
- INDUTIOMARUS, stirs up revolt among Treveri, but submits to Caesar, V, 3, 4: stirs up revolt among Eburones, V, 26, 5: plans to attack Labienus, V, 53, 7: tries to head a general revolt, V, 55, 56: attacks Labienus and is killed, V, 57, 58
- Itius, see Wissant
- JANUS, the god, Fig. 90
- JAVELIN, see pilum
- KINGS, in Gaul, 29
- KNIFE, Gallic, Fig. 187
- KNIGHTS, Gallic, VI, 15
- LABIENUS, T., rank of, note on I, 21, 5: left in command of Rhone fortifications, I, 10, 7: sent to occupy hill above Helvetii, I, 21, 5: in command of winter quarters, I, 54, 6: pursues Belgae, II, 11, 10: sent to Treveri, III, 11, 1: sent against Morini, IV, 38, 1-5: left on continent during second invasion of Britain, V, 8, 1: commands camp near Treveri, V, 24, 7: threatened by Treveri, V, 47, 8, 14; 53, 6: defeats Treveri, V, 57, 58: again, VI, 7, 8: commands division against

LABIENUS—*Continued*

- Eburones, VI, 33, 1: successfully invades the Parisii and rejoins Caesar, VII, 57-62: sent to command the critical point at Alesia, VII, 86, 1. With this record, the only higher officer who deserted Caesar in the Civil War
- LATOBRIGI, join Helvetii, I, 5, 9: return home, I, 28, 5
- lĕgātī, 38; note on I, 10, 7: those mentioned by Caesar are: certain—(in I-IV) Cotta, Galba, Labienus, Pedius, Rufus, Sabinus: (only in V-VII) Antonius, L. Caesar, Cicero, Plancus, Rebilus, Reginus, Sextius, Silanus, Trebonius
- too young, but treated as—(in I-IV) Brutus, P. Crassus
- possible—(only in V-VII) Basilus, Rutilus, Tullus
- LEGIONARY SOLDIER, equipment of, 34-37; Fig. 20; Plate facing p. 111
- LEGIONS, size and organization of, 32, 33; note on V, 49, 16
- number of, under Caesar's command—four originally, I, 7, 5; 10, 9: two new ones, I, 10, 8: two more, II, 2, 1: one and a half lost, V, 26-37: two more levied and one borrowed, VI, 1: had ten in VI, 44; VII, 34, 7, 8; one-half legion not accounted for
- LEGIONS, mentioned individually:
- seventh, suffers in battle with the Nervii, II, 23, 13; 26, 1: sent against the northwestern states, II, 34: surprised while foraging, IV, 32: storms a British stronghold, V, 9, 15: routs the Parisii, VII, 62, 6, 12-15
- eighth, in battle with Nervii, II, 23, 9: a centurion mentioned at Gergovia, VII, 47, 18
- ninth, in battle with Nervii, II, 23, 1
- tenth, on the Rhone, note on I, 7, 6: complimented by Caesar, I, 40, 44-48: thanks Caesar, I, 41, 3: used as mounted bodyguard, I, 42, 13-23: in battle with Nervii, II, 21, 2; 23, 1; 26, 11: its standard bearer first to land in Britain, IV, 25, 8-14: checks the victorious Gauls at Gergovia, VII, 51, 2
- eleventh, in battle with Nervii, II, 23, 9

LEGIONS—*Continued*

- twelfth, suffers in battle with Nervii, II, 23, 12; 25: fights in Alps, III, 1-6: fights against Parisii, VII, 62, 8
- thirteenth (it and the fourteenth were behind the baggage on the Sabis, II, 26, 6-9), winters among the Esvii, V, 53, 20: supports the tenth at Gergovia, VII, 51, 4
- fourteenth, apparently the one destroyed by Eburones: newly levied, VI, 32, 15
- LEUCI, send supplies to Caesar, I, 40, 34: coin of, Fig. 88
- LEXOVII, revolt and are defeated, III, 17-19: winter quarters established among, III, 29, 11: in rebel army, VII, 75, 19: coin of, Fig. 135
- LICTORS, Plate facing p. 111
- LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER, 47; Fig. 27
- ILIIUM, VII, 73, 13-22; Fig. 194
- LINGONES, Helvetii flee to, I, 26, 14: supply grain to Caesar, I, 40, 34: take no part in great rebellion, VII, 63, 11: coin of, Fig. 75
- LŌRICA, cuirass, 35, b; Figs. 17, 98: breastworks, V, 40, 13; note on VII, 72, 13
- LOSSES IN BATTLE, chief, of the Romans:
 legion and a half among Eburones, V, 26-37: effect on Caesar, note on V, 37, 14: replaced by three legions, VI, 1
 two cohorts under Cicero's command, VI, 39, 40, 44, 1
 46 centurions and 700 soldiers at Gergovia, VII, 51, 1, 9
- LOTS, German use of, note on I, 50, 11
- MAGETOBRIGA, battle of, I, 31, 41; notes on I, 40, 23; 44, 8-10
- MANIPLE, 33
- MARCH, order of, 53: length of, 54; note on II, 12, 3: longest, VII, 39, 9; 40, 1-4, 8-10; 41, 3, 14
- MARIUS, 5, 27
- MENAPII, II, 4, 25: send aid to Veneti, III, 9, 26: invaded by Suebi, IV, 4, 4-20: invaded by Sabinus and Cotta, IV, 22, 18; 38, 5-9: subdued by Caesar, VI, 5, 6
- MILL, Gallic, Fig. 49
- MOLDS, Gallic, Figs. 73, 94, 185, c
- MONEY, iron bars used as, V, 12, 8; Fig. 163: coins, p. 8
- MONTHS, names of, App. 297: number of days in, App. 297
- MORINI, II, 4, 25: send aid to Veneti, III, 9, 26: Caesar invades them unsuccessfully, III, 28, 29: submit to Caesar, IV, 22, 2: revolt, IV, 37: subdued, IV, 38, 1-5: given Commius as king, VII, 76, 4: in rebel army, VII, 75, 13: coin of, Fig. 139
- MOSA, description of, IV, 10, 1-4
- MUNDA, battle of, 15
- MUSCULUS, 62, b; Fig. 37
- MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS, 45; Figs. 25, 26, 165; Plate facing p. 111
- MUTINY, note on I, 40, 3
- NAMNETES, join Veneti, III, 9, 25: coin of, Fig. 128
- NĀVIS LONGA, 64: and see Ships
- NERVII, II, 4, 23: description of, II, 15, 8-15: fight desperately with Caesar, II, 15-28: description of battlefield, II, 18: plan of battle, p. 231: attack Cicero's camp, V, 38-45: defeated by Caesar, V, 46-52: ravaged by Caesar, VI, 3, 1-6: in rebel army, VII, 75, 13: coin of, Fig. 110
- NOBLES, Gallic, 29; notes on I, 18, 6; VI, 12, 7: dissatisfaction with Caesar's rule, notes on V, 7, 20; VII, 1, 10-13
- NORTHWESTERN STATES, submit to Crassus, II, 34: arrest Roman envoys, III, 8: defeated in naval battle, see Veneti: in land battle, III, 17-19: threaten Roscius, V, 53, 19
- NOVIODUNUM, of the Suessiones, site of, note on II, 12, 4
- OCTAVIANUS (later, Augustus), 17; Fig. 10
- OFFICERS, Roman, 38-42; Plate facing p. 111
- ONAGER, 63, d; Plate facing p. 47
- OPPUGNĀTIŌ, 61; Plate facing p. 47: best account of, VII, 15-23
- ORBIS, 57; note on IV, 37, 5: V, 33, 12-16
- ORGETORIX, conspiracy and death of, I, 2-5: Fig. 46
- OSISMI, submit to Crassus, II, 34: join the Veneti, III, 9, 25: in rebel army, VII, 75, 18
- PARIS (Lutecia Parisiŏrum), council held in, VI, 3, 10: captured by Labienus, VII, 57-62: Parisii in rebel army, VII, 75, 12
- PARTIES, POLITICAL, in Gaul, see Confederation, Factions: in Rome, 5
- PARTY STRIFE, in Rome, 5-8, 13, 14

- PEDIUS, Q., takes legions to Gaul, II, 2, 3: pursues the Belgae, II, 11, 9
 PHALANX, note on I, 24, 11: methods of breaking, I, 25, 4-10; 52, 9
 PHARSALUS, battle of, 15
 PICTONES, furnish ships, III, 11, 11: join Vercingetorix quickly, VII, 4, 15: in rebel army, VII, 75, 11: coin of, Fig. 127
 PILE DRIVER, Fig. 148
 PILUM, 36, a; I, 25, 5-10; note on I, 52, 7; Fig. 18
 PINNAE, V, 40, 13; note on VII, 72, 13
 PLANCUS, L. MUNATIUS, commands a winter camp, V, 24, 9: sent against Carnutes, V, 25, 8
 PLUTEUS, 62, a; Fig. 36; notes on VII, 25, 3; 72, 14
 POMPEIUS, CN. (Pompey), 8, 10, 11, 13-15; Fig. 7: consul, IV, 1, 1: lends Caesar a legion, VI, 1, 3: quells disorder in Italy, VII, 6, 2
 PRAEFECTUS FABRUM, 40
 PREFECT, 47, 48
 PRIMIPILUS, 42; note on II, 25, 7
 PROCILLUS, C. VALERIUS, arrested by Ariovistus, I, 47, 9-19: recovered by Caesar, I, 53, 11-21
 PROVINCE, the, 26, 28
 QUAEATOR, 39
 RAURACI, join Helvetii, I, 5, 9: in rebel army, VII, 75, 15
 REBILUS, C. CANINIUS, at Alesia, VII, 83, 6: quartered among Ruteni, VII, 90, 10
 REDONES, submit to Crassus, II, 34: in rebel army, VII, 75, 18: coin of, Fig. 91
 REGINUS, C. ANTISTIUS, levies troops, VI, 1, 2: at Alesia, VII, 83, 6: quartered among Ambivareti, VII, 90, 9
 REMI, welcome Caesar, II, 3; note on II, 3, 2: defended by Caesar, II, 6, 7: plead for Suessiones, II, 12, 13: made head of confederation, in place of Sequani, VI, 12, 20-26: Labienus sent to them, III, 11, 2, and note: Labienus stationed among them, V, 24, 7: one of two states not suspected by Caesar, V, 54, 14; note on V, 54, 16: Indutiomarus plans to ravage, V, 56, 14: plead for Carnutes, VI, 4, 10: Caesar holds council at their capital, VI, 44, 2: loyal in great rebellion, VII, 63, 11
 coin of, Fig. 100
 RHEIMS (*Durocortorum Rēmōrum*), note on II, 2, 10: council held in, VI, 44, 2
 RHINE, description of, IV, 10: crossed by Caesar, IV, 16-19; VI, 9, 10, 29
 RHONE, fortifications on, I, 8, 1-5; note on I, 8, 4; map, p. 87; Fig. 53
 ROSCIUS, LUCIUS, V, 24, 7: threatened with attack, V, 53, 19
 RÖSTRUM, 64; Figs. 42, 132, 133
 RUFUS, P. SULPICIUS, commands harbor, IV, 22, 20: quartered among Haedui, VII, 90, 12
 RUTENI, defeated by Romans in 121 B.C., I, 45, 5: join Vercingetorix, VII, 7, 1: ordered to invade the Province, VII, 64, 14: in rebel army, VII, 75, 10
 RUTILUS, M. SEMPRONIUS, quartered among Sequani, VII, 90, 6
 SABINUS, Q. TITURIUS, commands guard at Axona River, II, 5, 18; 10, 1: is sent against three north-western states, III, 11, 8: defeats them, III, 17-19: sent against Menapii, IV, 22, 18; 38, 5: with Cotta, commands camp among Eburones, V, 24, 13: location of camp, note on V, 26, 1: camp attacked, V, 26: insists on abandoning camp, V, 29, 30: killed in conference with enemy, V, 36, 37
 SADDLES, note on IV, 2, 10
 SAMAROBRIVA (Amiens), council held in, V, 24, 1: Crassus left in command of, V, 47, 3: Caesar's winter quarters, V, 53, 9-12
 SANTONI, their land desired by Helvetii, I, 10, 2; 11, 14: furnish ships, III, 11, 12: in rebel army, VII, 75, 10
 sarcina, 37; Figs. 20, 57
 SCABBARDS, see Swords
 scorpiō, 63, c; VII, 25, 10; Fig. 192
 SEGUSIAVI, I, 10, 17: in rebel army, VII, 75, 6: coin of, Fig. 55
 SENONES, instructed to report on Belgae, II, 2, 5: attempt to kill their king, V, 54, 4-11: Caesar marches on them, VI, 3, 14: they apologize, VI, 4, 1-8: investigated, leader of plot executed, VI, 44, 3-6: join Vercingetorix early, VII, 4, 15: Caesar takes a town of, VII, 11, 1-5: Labienus takes another, VII, 58, 4-9: in rebel army, VII, 75, 10
 coin of, Fig. 178
 SEQUANI:
 before Caesar entered Gaul—employed Ariovistus, I, 31, 12: who settled in their country, I, 31, 32: by his help they became leaders

SEQUANI—Continued

- of a confederation, note on VI, 12, 2: and nominally masters of all Gaul, VI, 12, 12: but cruelly ruled by Ariovistus, I, 32, 8-15
- after Caesar entered Gaul—permit passage of Helvetii, I, 9: sanction appeal to Caesar, I, 32: send supplies to Caesar, I, 40, 34; 48, 5: lose to the Remi the leadership of the confederation, VI, 12, 19, 20: in rebel army, VII, 75, 9
- coin of, Fig. 82
- SERTORIUS, note on III, 23, 10
- SEXTIUS, T., levies troops, VI, 1, 2: at Gergovia, VII, 49, 2; 51, 5
- SHEARS, Gallic, Fig. 188
- SHIELDS, British, Figs. 164, 169, 174, 175: Gallic, Figs. 13, 14, 74: Plate facing p. 479: Roman, 35, c; Fig. 99
- SHIPS, Roman, 64; Figs. 132, 133, 161: beaching of, notes on V, 1, 5; 11, 5, 7; 24, 1: of Veneti, III, 13
- SHOE, of Roman soldier, 34, c; Fig. 15
- SIEGE OF TOWNS, see Blockade of towns, *oppugnatio*
- signifer, 44; Fig. 24
- signum, 44; note on II, 25, 2; Figs. 24, 57; Plate facing p. 111
- SLING, Fig. 104: red-hot clay balls thrown by, note on V, 43, 1: slug thrown by, Fig. 105
- SLINGERS, 47; Fig. 103: used by Caesar, II, 7, 2; 10, 2; 19, 7; IV, 25, 4; VII, 81, 11
- SOTIATES, subdued by Crassus, III, 20, 10-21: coin of, Fig. 137
- SPARTACUS, note on I, 40, 15
- SPEARS, Gallic, Figs. 13, 14, 44, 66, 72
- SPUR, Gallic, Fig. 198
- STANDARD BEARER, of cavalry, Fig. 28: Gallic, Fig. 13; Plate facing p. 479: and see *aquilifer*, *signifer*
- STANDARDS:
 - of auxiliaries, see *vexillum*
 - of cavalry, see *vexillum*
 - of the cohort, see *signum*
 - of the legion, see *aquila*
 - Gallic, Figs. 13, 14; Plate facing p. 479
 - German, Plate facing p. 111
- stimulus, VII, 73, 22-25; Fig. 195
- SUEBI, description of, IV, 1-3: try to cross Rhine, I, 37, 5; 54: some with Ariovistus, I, 51, 9: drive Usipetes and Tencteri from homes, IV, 4, 1-3: harass Ubii, IV, 3, 5-13; 8, 7: prepare to meet Caesar, IV, 19, 4-11: send aid to Treveri, VI, 9, 2, 15: prepare to meet Caesar, VI, 10
- SUESSIONES, II, 3, 10-14; 4, 16: submit to Caesar, II, 12-13, 3: coin of, Fig. 108
- SUGAMBRI, refuse to surrender Usipetes and Tencteri, IV, 16, 6-15: raided by Caesar, IV, 18-19, 2: their cavalry attack Cicero, VI, 35, 8-41, 3
- SUICIDE, note on V, 37, 14
- SULLA, 6, 8
- supplicatio, II, 35, 10; IV, 38, 12; VII, 90, 15
- SWORD BELT, 36, b; Fig. 17
- SWORDS, Gallic, Figs. 67, 68, 122, 141: German, Fig. 84: Roman, 36, b; Fig. 19
- TASGETIUS, murder of, V, 25; Fig. 168
- TENCTERI, see Usipetes
- testudo, a shed, 62, c; note on V, 42, 10; Plate facing p. 47: of shields, 60; Plate facing p. 47
- THAMES, location of ford in, note on V, 18, 2
- THAPSUS, battle of, 15
- TIDE, at Deal, note on IV, 29, 2
- TIGURINI, destruction of, I, 12
- TITURIUS, see Sabinus
- TIN, in Britain, note on V, 12, 9
- TONGS, Gallic, Fig. 185, a
- TORQUES, Gallic, Fig. 181; Plate facing p. 479
- TOWERS:
 - on camp walls, 51; V, 40, 4; VII, 72, 15
 - movable, 61; note on VII, 22, 12; Plate facing p. 47; Figs. 119, 189
 - on ships, III, 14, 10; Figs. 132, 133
- TOWNS, capture of, 58-63: and see Blockade of towns, *oppugnatio*
- trâgula, Fig. 176
- TRAJAN, p. 8
- TRAJAN'S COLUMN, p. 8; Fig. 1
- TREBONIUS, C., sent to forage, V, 17, 5: commands winter camp, V, 24, 9: commands division against Eburones, VI, 33, 3: in charge of captured city, VII, 11, 6: at Alesia, VII, 81, 14
- TREVERI, ask help against the Suebi, I, 37, 5: their cavalry flee, II, 24, 10-18: fail to obey Caesar, V, 2, 14: are visited by Caesar, V, 2, 12-4: threaten Labienus, V, 47, 8, 14; 53, 6: fail to get German aid, V, 55, 1-8: defeated by Labienus, V, 57, 58: attack Labienus and are defeated, VI, 7, 8: take no part in great rebellion, VII, 63, 12-15
- coin of, Fig. 85
- tribûnal, Fig. 78

- TRIBUNE, military, 41; note on IV, 21, 2
- TRIBUTE, paid by Gallic states, note on VII, 76, 3
- TRIUMVIRATE, formed by Caesar, 11: renewed, provinces secured by members, note on IV, 1, 1: broken, 13
- TROPHY OF ARMS, Figs. 6, 14
- TRUMPETS, British, Fig. 167: Gallic, Figs. 14, 129: Roman, see *tuba tuba*, 45; Fig. 25
- TULINGI, join Helvetii, I, 5, 9: attack the Romans, I, 25, 13: return home, I, 28, 5
- TULLUS, C. VOLCACIUS, commands guard at bridge, VI, 29, 11
- TURONI, winter quarters among, II, 35, 7: join Vercingetorix quickly, VII, 4, 15: in rebel army, VII, 75, 12
- UBII, description of, IV, 3, 5-10: pursue Suebi, I, 54, 1-4: send hostages to Caesar, IV, 16, 15; note on II, 35, 5: harassed by Suebi, IV, 3, 10-13: ask help from Caesar, IV, 8, 6; 16, 15-26: Caesar helps, IV, 19: prove they have not sent help to Gauls, VI, 9, 9-17
- USIPETES AND TENCTERI, driven from home by Suebi, invade Menapii, IV, 4: exchange communications with Caesar, IV, 7-9, 11: their cavalry attack Caesar's during a truce, IV, 11, 14-12: slaughtered by Caesar, IV, 14, 15: location of battle, p. 301: their cavalry received by Sugambri, IV, 16, 6
- vallum, 51; Fig. 30
- VENELLI, submit to Crassus, II, 34: Sabinus sent against, III, 11, 9: and defeats them, III, 17-19: in rebel army, VII, 75, 19: coin of, Fig. 134
- VENETI, submit to Crassus, II, 34: arrest Roman envoys, III, 8, 7: collect fleet from many states, III, 9, 22-27: escape Caesar by sailing from town to town, III, 12: defeated in naval battle, III, 14, 15: sold into slavery, III, 15: in rebel army, VII, 75, 19
- country of, III, 9, 13-21; map, p. 272; Fig. 126
- ships of, III, 13
- towns of, III, 12, 1; plan, p. 276; Fig. 130: Caesar's method of taking, note on III, 12, 7
- VENUS, reputed ancestor of Caesar, 5; Fig. 3
- VERCINGETORIX, pp. 425-428: makes himself king of the Arverni, VII, 4, 1-13: becomes leader of several western states, VII, 4, 13-26; 5: severity of his punishments, VII, 4, 22-26: attacks town of Boi, VII, 9, 15-18: persuades Gauls to burn their own towns, VII, 14: reluctantly makes exception of Avaricum, VII, 15, 5-14: accused of treason, defends himself successfully, VII, 20, 21: authority not lessened by fall of Avaricum, VII, 30, 31: successfully defends Gergovia, VII, 36, 41, 43-53: is elected commander in chief by a council of all Gallic states but three, VII, 63: defeated in cavalry battle, retreats to Alesia, VII, 66-68: sends out cavalry in appeal for help, VII, 71, 1-12: a huge army responds, VII, 75, 76, 79: but fails, VII, 80-88: surrenders, VII, 89: coin of, Fig. 79: portraits of, Figs. 197, 201, 202: ideal representations of, Plate facing p. 479; Fig. 203
- VESONTIO, description of, I, 38, 8-14; plan, p. 163; Figs. 86, 87: false report that Ariovistus was marching on, I, 38, 1: used as winter quarters, note on I, 54, 6
- vexillum, 47, 48; note on II, 20, 1; Figs. 28, 112
- vinea, 62, d; Figs. 39, 189
- VIROMANDUI, II, 4, 26: defeated by Caesar, II, 16-23: coin of, Fig. 115
- VOLUSENUS, C., advises sortie, III, 5, 7: sent to report on British coast, IV, 21, 2, 19; 23, 12: in command of cavalry, VI, 41, 5
- WAGON, ancient, Fig. 77
- WALL:
of camp, 51; Plate facing p. 287; Fig. 30
of Gallic towns, 58; VII, 23; Figs. 33, 107, 191
- WISSANT, p. 347; note on V, 2, 8
- WORLD WAR, compared with Caesar's, 65-73
- YOKE, Gallic, Fig. 76: British, Fig. 157: as symbol of submission, note on I, 7, 14

